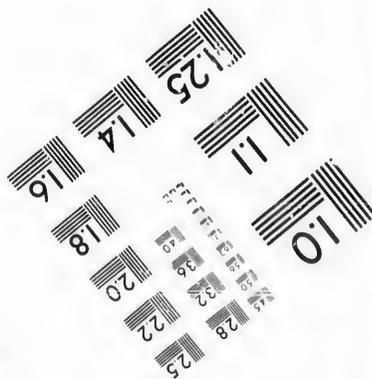
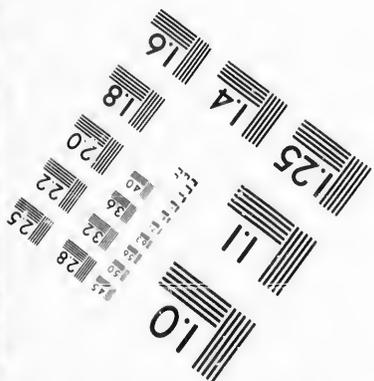
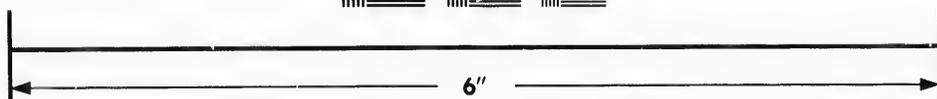
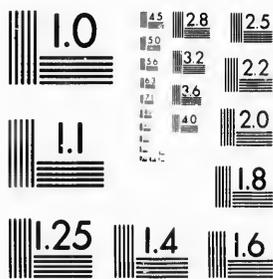


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1987

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				/							

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

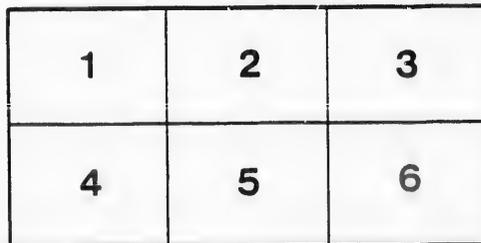
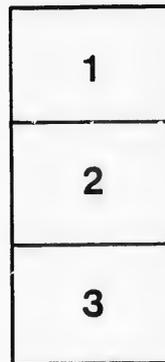
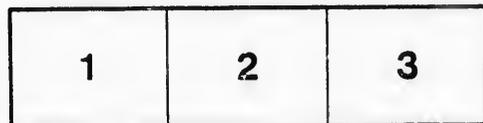
New Brunswick Museum
Saint John

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

New Brunswick Museum
Saint John

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



New Brunswick School Series.

G. L. Moore

Dup

SECOND LATIN BOOK:

CONSISTING OF EXTRACTS FROM

NEPOS, CÆSAR, AND OVID.

WITH NOTES, AND A COPIOUS VOCABULARY, ETC.

BY

ARCHD. H. ERYCE, LL.D., D.C.L., F.R.S.E.,
RECTOR OF THE EDINBURGH COLLEGIATE SCHOOL.

PRESCRIBED BY THE BOARD OF EDUCATION FOR NEW BRUNSWICK.

LONDON:
T. NELSON AND SONS, PATERNOSTER ROW,
EDINBURGH; AND NEW YORK.

1872.



T
I
s
a
c
N
I

O
by
ta
sh

ju
tha
ref

ip
rap
Pro
tho
in
ph
ps

Preface.

THIS volume forms an immediate sequel to the "FIRST LATIN BOOK" of the same Series, and is intended to supply all that will be required by pupils during the second and part of the third year of their course at school. It consists of Extracts for translation, a system of Syntax, Notes on the Reading Lessons, a Vocabulary, and a series of Imitative Exercises in Latin Composition.

The Extracts have been taken from Nepos, Caesar, and Ovid; and the choice of passages has been regulated mainly by two considerations: *First*, That each portion should contain a complete story; and *secondly*, That the subject matter should possess a special interest for the young.

In connection with the Reading Lessons it has been judged advisable to provide a system of Syntax, in order that constant opportunity may be afforded, by facility of reference, for impressing on the minds of boys the principles and facts of Latin construction, and thereby ensuring rapid and intelligent progress. In this portion of the work Professor Madvig's Grammar has been taken as the basis, though his arrangement has been often departed from, when, in so doing, there seemed to be a gain in perspicuity. The phrases exemplifying the Rules have been chosen, as far as possible, from the Extracts, in the hope that familiarity with

the illustrations may aid the pupil in more thoroughly comprehending and more accurately remembering the principles enforced. (See Prefatory Note to Syntax, p. 124.)

The Notes are generally of an elementary and simple character, and are necessarily more numerous in the elucidation of the earlier Extracts. The references to the Syntax, which at first are very frequent, become fewer as the work advances, in order that pupils may gradually be left to exercise an independent judgment. (See Note p. 164.)

The Vocabulary will be found copious and full. It has been constructed on the principle of giving the primary signification of each word, and of tracing the principal classes of derived meanings so far as is necessary to illustrate the different instances in which the word actually occurs in the Extracts. The quantity of first and middle syllables has been carefully indicated in cases in which a doubt might arise; but those syllables have rarely been marked which follow the rules laid down on p. 260. The quantity of syllables in several of the proper names cannot be fixed by any classical authority; and, in such instances, the most approved usage has been followed.

For many of the remarks on etymology, the Editor desires to acknowledge his obligations to the Latin Dictionary of Dr. W. Smith. From the editions of Caesar by Kraner, Schneider, and Long,—of Nepos by Nipperdey,—and of Ovid by Haupt, he has derived valuable assistance in the compilation of the Notes and in the adjustment of the text.

Contents.

	Page
I. EXTRACTS FROM NEPOS. ...	9
I. Miltiades, ...	11
II. Themistocles, ...	17
III. Alcibiades, ...	24
IV. Hannibal, ...	32
II. EXTRACTS FROM CAESAR,	
I. The Helvetic War (Book I.), ...	41
II. The German War (Book I.), ...	43
III. The First Invasion of Britain (Book IV.), ...	58
IV. The Second Invasion of Britain (Book V.), ...	69
V. Manners and Customs of the Gauls and the Germans (Book VI.),	78
	86
III. EXTRACTS FROM OVID, ...	95
I. IN HEXAMETER VERSE—FROM THE METAMORPHOSES,—	
I. The Four Ages (Book I.), ...	97
II. The Deluge (Book I.), ...	99
III. Deucalion and Pyrrha (Book I.), ...	101
IV. Phaethon (Book II.), ...	104
V. Pyramus and Thisbe (Book IV.), ...	113
II. IN ELEGIAC VERSE—FROM THE FASTI,—	
I. Romulus and Remus (Book II.), ...	117
II. The Building of Rome (Book IV.), ...	118
III. Union of the Romans and Sabines (Book III.), ...	120
IV. Lucretia (Book II.), ...	121
IV. SYNOPSIS OF SYNTAX, ...	123
CHAPTER I,—	
Sect. I. The Verb—Mood, Tense, &c., ...	125
II. Sentences, ...	128
III. Simple Sentences—Subject and Predicate. ...	128
IV. Compound Sentences, ...	129

SYNOPSIS OF SYNTAX—*continued.*

CHAPTER II.—

Sect. I. Subject and Predicate,	130
II. Adjective and Substantive	132
III. Apposition,	134
IV. The Nominative and Vocative,	135
V. The Accusative,	135
VI. The Dative,	139
VII. The Genitive,	141
VIII. The Ablative,	144
IX. The Infinitive Mood,	148
X. The Supines,	149
XI. The Particples,	149
XII. The Gerund,	150
XIII. The Imperative Mood,	151

CHAPTER III.—COMPOUND SENTENCES.—

Sect. I. Clauses,	151
II. Principal Clauses,	152
III. Subordinate Clauses,	153
IV. Final Clauses,	154
V. Conditional Clauses,	155
VI. Concessive Clauses,	156
VII. Temporal Clauses,	156
VIII. Causal Clauses,	157
IX. Relative Clauses,	158
X. Interrogative Clauses,	159
XI. Oratio Obliqua,	159
XII. Sequence of Tenses	160

V. NOTES ON EXTRACTS, 163

I. NOTES ON NEPOS,—

I. Mithrades,	165
II. Themistocles,	175
III. Alcibiades,	186
IV. Hannibal,	193

II. NOTES ON CAESAR,—

I. The Helvetian War,	201
II. The German War,	216
III. The First Invasion of Britain,	222
IV. The Second Invasion of Britain,	228
V. Manners and Customs of the Gauls and the Germans,	233

CONTENTS.

vii

NOTES ON EXTRACTS—continued.

III. NOTES ON OVID,—

I. The Metamorphoses,—

	Page
I. The Four Ages,	241
II. The Deluge,	242
III. Deucalion and Pyrrha,	244
IV. Phaethon,	246
V. Pyranus and Thisbe,	252

II. The Fasti,—

I. Romulus and Remus,	254
II. The Building of Rome,	255
III. Union of the Romans and Sabines,	256
IV. Lucretia,	257

VI. VOCABULARY,	259
------------------------	-----

TABLE OF GREEK NOUNS,	382
------------------------------	-----

VII. IMITATIVE EXERCISES,	388
----------------------------------	-----

LIST OF PHRASES,	420
-------------------------	-----

G. A. Moore.

Grammar

School.

Part First.

EXTRACTS FROM CORNELIUS NEPOS.

PREFATORY NOTE.

CORNELIUS NEPOS was born in Transpadane Gaul, probably at Hostilia, about 109 B.C. At an early age he went to Rome, where he resided till his death, which took place soon after Augustus became sole ruler of the Roman world. He refrained from entering the political arena, and devoted himself to literature, enjoying the society of Cicero, Atticus, Catullus, and other celebrated men, and even of Augustus himself. Of the numerous writings of Nepos, a few of his "Lives," and some detached fragments of other productions, are all that have been preserved to us. The style of his Latinity we are obliged to commend with reserve, and we are frequently compelled to call in question his historical accuracy, yet we cannot fail to admire the spirit of "virtuous morality and stern valour" which ever breathes forth from his pages.

I.

MILTIADES.

ARGUMENT.

I. Miltiades sent to the Chersonese.—II. Successes.—III. The Bridge of Darius over the Danube.—IV. Greece Invaded by the Persians.—V. Battle of Marathon, B.C. 490.—VI. The Reward of Victory.—VII. The Islands; Paros; Miltiades fined, B.C. 489.—VIII. Real Cause of his Condemnation.

I.—MILTIADES SENT TO THE CHERSONESE.

MILTIADES, Cimonis filius, Atheniensis, quum et antiquitate generis et gloria majorum et sua modestia unus omnium maxime floreret; eaque esset aetate, ut jam non solum de eo bene sperare sed etiam confidere eives possent sui, talem eum futurum, qualem cognitum judicarent; accidit, ut Athenienses 5 Chersonesum colonos vellent mittere. Cujus generis quum magnus numerus esset, et multi ejus demigrationis peterent societatem, ex his delecti Delphos deliberatum missi sunt, qui consulerent Apollinem, quo potissimum duce uterentur. Namque tum Thraces eas regiones tenebant, eum quibus armis erat 10 dimicandum. His consulentibus nominatim Pythia praecepit, ut Miltiadem imperatorem sibi sumerent; id si fecissent, incepta prospera futura. Hoc oraculi responso Miltiades cum delecta manu classe Chersonesum profectus quum accessisset Lemnum, et incolas ejus insulae sub potestatem redigere vellet 15 Atheniensium, idque Lemnii sua sponte facerent postulasset, illi irridentes responderunt tum id se facturos, quum ille domo navibus proficiscens vento aquilone venisset Lemnum. Hic enim ventus ab septentrionibus oriens adversum tenet Athenis proficiscentibus. Miltiades morandi tempus non habens cursum 20 direxit, quo tendebat, pervenitque Chersonesum.

II.—SUCCESSSES.

Ibi brevi tempore barbarorum copiis disjectis, tota regione quam petierat potitus, loca castellis idonea communiit, multitudinem, quam secum duxerat, in agris collocavit, crebrisque excursionibus locupletavit. Neque minus in ea re prudentia quam felicitate adjutus est. Nam, quum virtute militum devicisset hostium exercitus, summa aequitate res constituit, atque ipse ibidem manere decrevit. Erat enim inter eos dignitate regia, quamvis carebat nomine, neque id magis imperio quam justitia consecutus. Neque eo secius Atheniensibus, a quibus erat profectus, officia praestabat. Quibus rebus fiebat, ut non minus eorum voluntate perpetuo imperium obtineret, qui miserant, quam illorum, cum quibus erat profectus. Chersoneso tali modo constituta Lemnum revertitur, et ex pacto postulat, ut sibi urbem tradant;—Illi enim dixerant, quum vento borea domo profectus eo pervenisset, sese dedituros;—se autem domum Chersonesi habere. Cares, qui tum Lemnum incolebant, etsi praeter opinionem res ceciderat, tamen non dicto sed secunda fortuna adversariorum capti resistere ausi non sunt, atque ex insula demigrarant. Pari felicitate ceteras insulas, quae Cyclades nominantur, sub Atheniensium redegit potestatem.

III.—THE BRIDGE OF DARIUS OVER THE DANUBE.

Eisdem temporibus Persarum rex, Darius, ex Asia in Europam exercitu trajecto, Scythis bellum inferre decrevit. Pontem fecit in Histro flumine, qua copias traduceret. Ejus pontis, dum ipse abesset, custodes reliquit principes, quos secum ex Ionia et Aeolide duxerat; quibus singulis suarum urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sic enim facillime putavit se Graeca lingua loquentes, qui Asiam incolerent, sub sua retenturum potestate, si amicis suis oppida tuenda tradidisset, quibus se oppresso nulla spes salutis relinqueretur. In hoc fuit tum numero Miltiades, cui illa custodia crederetur. Hic quum crebri afferrent nuntii, male rem gerere Darium premique a Scythis, Miltiades hortatus est pontis custodes, ne a fortuna datam occasionem liberandae Graeciae dimitterent. Nam si cum iis copiis,

quas secum transportarat, interiisset Darius, non solum Europam fore tutam, sed etiam eos, qui Asiam incolerent Graeci genere, 15
 liberos a Persarum futuros dominatione et periculo;—et facile effici posse; ponte enim rescisso, regem vel hostium ferro vel inopia paucis diebus interiturum. Ad hoc consilium quum plerique accederent, Histiaeus Milesius, ne res conficeretur, obstitit dicens: non idem ipsis, qui summas imperii tenerent, expedire 20
 et multitudini, quod Darii regno ipsorum niteretur dominatio; quo extincto, ipsos potestate expulsos civibus suis poenas duros. Itaque adeo se abhorrere a ceterorum consilio, ut nihil putet ipsis utilius quam confirmari regnum Persarum. Hujus quum sententiam plurimi essent secuti, Miltiades, non 25
 dubitans tam multis consciis ad regis aures consilia sua perventura, Chersonesum reliquit, ac rursus Athenas demigravit. Cujus ratio etsi non valuit, tamen magnopere est laudanda, quum amicior omnium libertati quam suae fuerit dominationi.

IV.—GREECE INVADED BY THE PERSIANS.

Darius autem quum ex Europa in Asiam redisset, hortantibus amicis, ut Graeciam redigeret in suam potestatem, classem quingentarum navium comparavit, eique Datim praefecit et Artaphernem, hisque ducenta peditum decem millia equitum dedit, causam interserens se hostem esse Atheniensibus, quod 5
 eorum auxilio Iones Sardes expugnassent, suaque praesidia interfecissent. Illi praefecti regii classe ad Euboeam appulsa celeriter Eretriam ceperunt, omnesque ejus gentis cives abreptos in Asiam ad regem miserunt. Inde ad Atticam accesserunt, ac suas copias in campum Marathona deduxerunt. Is est ab 10
 oppido circiter millia passuum decem. Hoc tumultu Athenienses tam propinquo tamque magno permoti auxilium nusquam nisi a Lacedaemoniis petiverunt, Phidippumque cursorem ejus generis, qui *hemerodromoe* vocantur, Lacedaemonem miserunt, ut nuntiaret, quam celeri opus esset auxilio. Domi autem 15
 creant decem praetores, qui exercitui praessent; in eis Miltiadem. Inter quos magna fuit contentio, utrum moenibus defenderent, an obviam irent hostibus, acieque decernerent. Unus Miltiades maxime nitebatur, ut primo quoque tempore castra fierent; id si factum esset, et civibus arinum accessurum, 20

quum viderent de eorum virtute non desperari, et hostes eadem re fore tardiores, si animadverterent audere adversus se tam exiguis copiis dimicare.

V.—BATTLE OF MARATHON, B.C. 490.

Hoc in tempore nulla civitas Atheniensibus auxilio fuit praeter Plataeensis. Ea mille misit militum. Itaque horum adventu decem millia armatorum completa sunt: quae mauus mirabili flagrabat pugnandi cupiditate. Quo factum est, ut 5 plus quam collegae Miltiades valeret. Ejus ergo auctoritate impulsu Athenienses copias ex urbe eduxerunt, locoque idoneo castra fecerunt. Dein postero die, sub montis radicibus acie regione istructa non apertissima, proelium commiserunt, namque arbores multis locis erant rariae, hoc consilio, ut et 10 montium altitudine tegerentur, et arborum tractu equitatus hostium impediretur, ne multitudine clauderentur. Datis, etsi non aequum locum videbat suis, tamen fretus numero copiarum suarum configere cupiebat, eoque magis, quod, priusquam Lacedaemonii subsidio venirent, dimicare utile arbitrabatur. 15 Itaque in aciem peditum centum equitum decem millia produxit, proeliumque commisit. In quo tanto plus virtute valuerunt Athenienses, ut decemplicem numerum hostium profigarint, adeoque perterruerint, ut Persae non castra sed naves petierint. Qua pugna nihil adhuc est nobilius. Nulla enim 20 unquam tam exigua manus tantas opes prostravit.

VI.—THE REWARD OF VICTORY.

Cujus victoriae non alienum videtur quale praemium Miltiadi sit tributum docere; quo facilius intelligi possit eandem omnium civitatum esse naturam. Ut enim populi Romani honores quondam fuerunt rari et tenues ob eamque causam 5 gloriosi, nunc autem effusi atque obsoleti, sic olim apud Athenienses fuisse reperimus. Namque huic Miltiadi, quia Athenas totamque Graeciam liberarat, talis honos tributus est, in porticu, quae Poecile vocatur, quum pugna depingeretur Marathonia, ut in decem praetorum numero prima ejus imago 10 poneretur, isque hortaretur milites, proeliumque committeret. Idem ille populus, posteaquam majus imperium est nactus, et

largitione magistratum corruptus est, trecentas statuas Demetrio Phalereo decrevit.

VII.—THE ISLANDS—PAROS—MILTIADES FINED,
B.C. 489.

Post hoc proelium classem septuaginta navium Athenienses eidem Miltiadi dederunt, ut insulas, quae barbaros adjuverant, bello persequeretur. Quo imperio plerasque ad officium redire coegit, nonnullas vi expugnavit. Ex his Parum insulam, opibus elatam, quum oratione reconciliare non posset, copias e navibus 5 eduxit; urbem operibus clausit, omnique commeatu privavit; dein vineis ac testudinibus constitutis propius muros accessit. Quum jam in eo esset, ut oppido potiretur, procul in continenti lucus, qui ex insula conspiciebatur, nescio quo casu nocturno tempore incensus est. Cujus flamma ut ab oppidanis et op- 10 pugnatoribus est visa, utrisque venit in opinionem signum a classiariis regis datum. Quo factum est, ut et Paro a deditione deterrentur, et Miltiades timens, ne classis regia adventaret, incensis operibus, quae statuerat, cum totidem navibus atque erat profectus Athenas magna cum offensione civium suorum 15 rediret. Accusatus ergo est prodicionis, quod, quum Parum expugnare posset, a rege corruptus infectis rebus discessisset. Eo tempore aeger erat vulneribus, quae in oppugnando oppido acceperat. Itaque quoniam ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba fecit frater ejus Stesagoras. Causa cognita capitis absolutus 20 pecunia multatus est; eaque lis quinquaginta talentis aestimata est, quantus in classes sumptus factus erat. Hanc pecuniam quod solvere in praesentia non poterat, in vincla publica con- 25 jectus est, ibique diem obiit supremum.

VIII.—REAL CAUSE OF HIS CONDEMNATION.

Hic etsi crimine Paro est accusatus, tamen alia causa fuit damnationis. Namque Athenienses propter Pisistrati tyrannidem, quae paucis annis ante fuerat, omnium civium suorum potentiam extimescebant. Miltiades multum in imperiis magnisque versatus non videbatur posse esse privatus, prae- 5 sertim quum consuetudine ad imperii cupiditatem trahi videretur. Nam in Chersoneso omnes illos quos habitarat annos perpetuam

obtinuerat dominationem, tyrannusque fuerat appellatus, sed
justus. Non erat enim vi consecutus sed suorum voluntate,
10 eamque potestatem bonitate retinebat. Omnes autem et
dicuntur et habentur tyranni, qui potestate sunt perpetua in ea
civitate, quae libertate usa est. Sed in Miltiade erat quum
summa humanitas tum mira communitas, ut nemo tam humilis
esset, cui non ad eum aditus pateret; magna auctoritas apud
15 omnes civitates, nobile nomen, laus rei militaris maxima.
Haec populus respiciens maluit eum innoxium plecti, quam se
diutius esse in timore.

II.

THEMISTOCLES.

ARGUMENT.

- I. Early Life.—II. The Corcyrean and the Persian War; the Oracle.—III. Battles of Thermopylae and Artemisium, B.C. 480.—IV. Battle of Salamis, B.C. 480.—V. Flight of Xerxes.—VI. The Harbour of Piraeus; the Long Walls, B.C. 478.—VII. Themistocles at Sparta.—VIII. Banishment and Exile, B.C. 475.—IX. Takes Refuge in Persia.—X. Kindly Received by Artaxerxes; Death.

I.—EARLY LIFE.

THEMISTOCLES, Neocli filius, Atheniensis. Hujus vitia ineuntis adolescentiae magnis sunt emendata virtutibus, adeo ut anteferatur huic nemo, pauci pares putentur. Sed ab initio est ordiendus. Pater ejus Neocles generosus fuit. Is uxorem Halicarnasiam civem duxit, ex qua natus est Themistocles. 5 Qui quum minus esset probatus parentibus, quod et liberius vivebat, et rem familiarem negligebat, a patre exheredatus est. Quae contumelia non fregit eum, sed erexit. Nam, quum judicasset sine summa industria non posse eam exstingui, totum se dedidit reipublicae, diligentius amicis famaeque serviens. 10 Multum in judiciis privatis versabatur, saepe in contionem populi prodibat; nulla res major sine eo gerebatur; celeriter, quae opus erant, reperiebat,—facile eadem oratione explicabat. Neque minus in rebus gerendis promptus quam excogitandis erat, quod et de instantibus (ut ait Thucydides) verissime judicabat, et de futuris callidissime conjiciebat. Quo factum est, ut brevi tempore illustraretur.

II.—THE CORCYREAN AND THE PERSIAN WAR—THE ORACLE.

Primus autem gradus fuit capessendae reipublicae bello Corcyraeo: ad quod gerendum praetor a populo factus, non solum praesenti bello sed etiam reliquo tempore ferociorem

reddidit civitatem. Nam quum pecunia publica, quae ex metallis
 5 redibat, largitione magistratum quotannis interiret, ille per-
 suasit populo, ut ea pecunia classis centum navium aedificaretur.
 Qua celeriter effecta primum Coreyraeos fregit, deinde mariti-
 mos praedones consecrando mare tutum reddidit. In quo quum
 divitiis ornavit, tum etiam peritissimos belli navalis fecit
 10 Athenienses. Id quantae salutis fuerit universae Graeciae, bello
 cognitum est Persico. Nam quum Xerxes et mari et terra
 bellum universae inferret Europae cum tantis copiis, quantas
 neque ante nec postea habuit quisquam; (hujus enim classis
 mille et ducentarum navium longarum fuit, quam duo millia
 15 onerariarum sequebantur; terrestres autem exercitus septin-
 gentorum peditum, equitum quadringentorum millium fuerunt);
 cujus de adventu quum fama in Graeciam esset perlata, et
 maxime Athenienses peti dicerentur propter pugnam Mara-
 thoniam, miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de
 20 rebus suis. Deliberantibus Pythia respondit, ut moenibus
 ligneis se munirent. Id responsum quo valeret, quum intelligeret
 nemo, Themistocles persuasit consilium esse Apollinis, ut in
 naves se suaque conferrent; eum enim a deo significari murum
 ligneum. Tali consilio probato addunt ad superiores totidem
 25 naves triremes. suaque omnia, quae moveri poterant, partim
 Salamina partim Troezena deportant; arcem sacerdotibus
 paucisque majoribus natu ac sacra procuranda tradunt; reli-
 quum oppidum relinquunt.

III.—BATTLES OF THERMOPYLAE AND ARTEMISIUM,

B.C. 480

Hujus consilium plerisque civitatibus displicebat, et in terra
 dimicari magis placebat. Itaque missi sunt delecti cum Leonida,
 Lacedaemoniorum rege, qui Thermopylas occuparent, longiusque
 barbaros progredi non paterentur. Hi vim hostium non sus-
 5 tinerunt, eoque loco omnes interierunt. At classis communis
 Graeciae trecentarum navium, in qua ducentae erant Athenien-
 sium, primum apud Artemisium inter Euboeam continentemque
 terram cum classariis regis conflictit. Angustias enim Themis-
 tocles quaerebat, ne multitudine circumiretur. Hic etsi pari
 10 proelio discesserant, tamen eodem loco non sunt ausi manere,

quod erat periculum, ne, si pars navium adversariorum Eubocam superasset, ancipiti premerentur periculo. Quo factum est, ut ab Artemisio discederent, et exadversum Athenas apud Salamina classem suam constituerent.

IV.—BATTLE OF SALAMIS, B.C. 480.

At Xerxes Thermopylis expugnatis protinus accessit astu, idque nullis defendentibus, interfectis sacerdotibus, quos in arce invenerat, incendio delevit. Cujus flamma perterriti classiarii quum manere non auderent, et plurimi hortarentur, ut domos suas discederent, moenibusque se defenderent, Themistocles 5 unus restitit, et universos pares esse posse aiebat, dispersos testabatur perituros; idque Eurybiadi, regi Lacedaemoniorum, qui tum summae imperii præerat, fore affirmabat. Quem quum minus, quam vellet, moveret, noctu de servis suis quem habuit fidelissimum ad regem misit, ut ei nuntiaret suis verbis,—Ad 10 versarios ejus in fuga esse; qui si discessissent, majore cum labore et longinquiore tempore bellum confecturum, quum singulos consecrari cogeretur; quos si statim aggrederetur, brevi universos oppressurum. Hoc eo valebat, ut ingratum ad depug- 15 nandum omnes cogerentur. Hac re audita barbarus, nihil doli subesse credens, postridie alienissimo sibi loco, contra opportunitissimo hostibus, adeo angusto mari confligit, ut ejus multitudo navium explicari non potuerit. Victus ergo est magis etiam consilio Themistocles quam armis Graeciae.

V.—FLIGHT OF XERXES.

Hic etsi male rem gesserat, tamen tantas habebat reliquias copiarum, ut etiam cum his opprimere posset hostes. Iterum ab eodem gradu depulsus est. Nam Themistocles verens, ne bellare perseveraret, certiorum eum fecit id agi, ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur, ac reditu in Asiam 5 excluderetur; idque ei persuasit. Itaque qua sex mensibus iter fecerat, eadem minus diebus triginta in Asiam reversus est, seque a Themistocle non superatum sed conservatum judicavit. Sic unius viri prudentia Graecia liberata est, Europaeque suc- cubuit Asia. Haec altera victoria, quae cum Marathonio 10

possit comparari tropaeo. Nam pari modo apud Salamina parvo numero navium maxima post hominum memoriam classis est devicta.

VI.—THE HARBOUR OF PIRAEUS—THE LONG WALLS,
B.C. 478.

Magnus hoc bello Themistocles fuit, neque minor in pace. Quum enim Phalerico portu neque magno neque bono Athenienses uterentur, hujus consilio triplex Piraei portus constitutus est, isque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitate aequiparare, utilitate superaret. Idem muros Atheniensium restituit praecipuo suo periculo. Namque Laedaemonii causam idoneam nacti propter barbarorum exeursiones, qua negarent oportere extra Peloponnesum ullam urbem [muros] habere, ne essent loca munita, quae hostes possiderent, Athenienses aedificantes prohibere sunt conati. Hoc longe alio spectabat, atque videri volebant. Athenienses enim duabus victoriis, Marathoniam et Salaminiam, tantam gloriam apud omnes gentes erant consecuti, ut intelligerent Laedaemonii de principatu sibi cum his certamen fore. Quare eos quam infirmissimos esse volebant. Postquam autem audierunt muros instrui, legatos Athenas miserunt, qui id fieri vetarent. His praesentibus desierunt, ac se de ea re legatos ad eos missuros dixerunt. Hanc legationem suscepit Themistocles, et solus primo profectus est; reliqui legati ut tum exirent, quum satis altitudo muri exstructa videretur, praecepit; interim omnes, servi atque liberi, opus facerent, neque ulli loco parcerent, sive sacer sive privatus esset sive publicus, et undique, quod idoneum ad muniendum putarent, congererent. Quo factum est, ut Atheniensium muri ex sacellis sepulchris constarent.

VII.—THEMISTOCLES AT SPARTA.

Themistocles autem, ut Laedaemonem venit, adire ad magistratus noluit, et dedit operam, ut quam longissime tempus duceret, causam interponens se collegas expectare. Quum Laedaemonii quererentur opus nihilominus fieri, eumque in ea re conari fallere, interim reliqui legati sunt consecuti. A quibus quum audisset non multum superesse munitionis, ad ephoros

Lacedaemoniorum accessit, penes quos summum erat imperium, atque apud eos contendit falsa iis esse delata; quare aequum esse illos viros bonos nobilesque mittere, quibus fides haberetur, qui rem explorarent; interea se obsidem retinerent. Gestus 10 est ei mos, tresque legati functi summis honoribus Athenas missi sunt. Cum his collegas suos Themistocles jussit proficisci, eisque praedixit, ut re prius Lacedaemoniorum legatos dimitterent, quam ipse esset remissus. Hos postquam Athenas pervenisse ratus est, ad magistratum senatumque Lacedaemon- 15 iorum adiit, et apud eos liberrime professus est,—Athenienses suo consilio, quod communi jure gentium facere possent, deos publicos suosque, patrios ac penates, quo facilius ab hoste possent defendere, muris sepsisse, neque in eo quod inutile esset Graeciae fecisse; nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum 20 oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam jam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium: Lacedaemonios autem male et injuste facere, qui id potius intuerentur, quod ipsorum dominationi, quam quod universae Graeciae utile esset. Quare, si suos legatos recipere vellent, quos Athenas miserant, se remitterent; * * 25 aliter, illos nunquam in patriam essent recepturi.

VIII.—BANISHMENT AND EXILE, B.C. 475.

Tamen non effugit civium suorum invidiam. Namque ob eundem timorem, quo damnatus erat Miltiades, testularum suffragiis e civitate ejectus Argos habitatum concessit. Hic quum propter multas [ejus] virtutes magna cum dignitate viveret, Lacedaemonii legatos Athenas miserunt, qui eum absentem 5 accusarent, quod societatem cum rege Perse ad Graeciam opprimendam fecisset. Hoc crimine absens proditionis damnatus est. Id ut audivit, quod non satis tutum se Argis videbat, Corcyram demigravit. Ibi quum ejus principes [civitatis] animadvertisset timere, ne propter se bellum iis Lacedaemonii et 10 Athenienses indicerent, ad Admetum, Molossum regem, eum quo ei hospitium erat, confugit. Huc quum venisset, et in praesentia rex abesset, quo majore religione se receptum tueretur, filiam ejus parvulam arripuit, et cum ea se in sacrarium, quod summa colebatur caerimonia, coniecit. Inde non prius 15 egressus est, quam rex eum data dextra in fidem reciperet:

quam praestitit. Nam quum ab Atheniensibus et Lacedaemoniis
 exposceretur publice, supplicem non prodidit, monuitque, ut
 consuleret sibi; difficile enim esse in tam propinquo loco tuto
 20 eum versari. Itaque Pydnam eum deduci iussit, et quod satis
 esset praesidii dedit. Hic in navem omnibus ignotus nautis
 descendit. Quae quum tempestate maxima Naxum ferretur, ubi
 Atheniensium erat exercitus, sensit Themistocles, si eo
 pervenisset, sibi esse pereundum. Hac necessitate coactus
 25 domino navis, quis sit, aperit, multa pollicens, si se conservas-
 set. At ille clarissimi viri captus misericordia diem noctemque
 procul ab insula in salo navem tenuit in ancoris, neque quem-
 quam ex ea exire passus est. Inde Ephesum pervenit, ibique
 Themistoclem exposuit. Cui ille pro meritis postea gratiam
 30 retulit.

IX.—TAKES REFUGE IN PERSIA.

Scio plerosque ita scripsisse, Themistoclem Xerxe regnante
 in Asiam transisse. Sed ego potissimum Thucydidi credo, quod
 aetate proximus de iis, qui illorum temporum historiam reli-
 querunt, et ejusdem civitatis fuit. Is autem ait, ad Artaxerxem
 5 eum venisse, atque his verbis epistolam misisse: *Themistocles*
veni ad te, qui plurima mala hominum Graiorum in domum
tua intuli, quam diu mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem tuum
bellare patriamque meam defendere. Idem multo plura bona
feci, postquam in tuto ipse et ille in periculo esse coepit. Nam
 10 *quum in Asiam reverti vellet, proelio apud Salamina facto,*
litteris eum certiore feci id agi, ut pons, quem in Hellesponto
fecerat, dissolveretur, atque ab hostibus circumiretur. Quo nuntio
ille periculo est liberatus. Nunc autem confugi ad te, exagi-
 15 *tatus a cuncta Graecia tuam petens amicitiam. Quam si ero*
adeptus, non minus me bonum amicum habebis, quam fortem
inimicum ille expertus est. Ea autem rogo, ut de iis rebus,
quas tecum colloqui volo, annum mihi tempus des, eoque trans-
acto ad te venire patiaris.

X.—KINDLY RECEIVED BY ARTAXERXES—DEATH.

Hujus rex animi magnitudinem admirans, eupiensusque talem
 virum sibi conciliari, veniam dedit. Ille omne illud tempus

literis sermonique Persarum se dedit. Quibus adeo eruditus est, ut multo commodius dicatur apud regem verba fecisse, quam ii poterant, qui in Perside erant nati. Hic quum multa 5 regi esset pollicitus gratissimumque illud, si suis uti consiliis vellet, illum Graeciam bello oppressurum, magnis muneribus ab Artaxerxe donatus in Asiam rediit, domiciliumque Magnesiae sibi constituit. Namque hanc urbem ei rex donarat his quidem verbis, *quae ei panem praeberet*—(ex qua regione quin- 10 quaginta talenta quotannis redibant);—*Lampsacum autem, unde vinum sumeret*;—*Myunta, ex qua opsonium haberet*. Hujus ad nostram memoriam monumenta manserunt duo,—sepulchrum prope oppidum, in quo est sepultus; statua in foro Magnesiae. De cujus morte multis modis apud plerosque scriptum est, sed 15 nos eundem potissimum Thucydidem auctorem probamus, qui illum ait Magnesiae morbo mortuum, neque negat fuisse famam venenum sua sponte sumpsisse, quum se, quae regi de Graecia opprimenda pollicitus esset, praestare posse desperaret. Idem ossa ejus clam in Attica ab amicis sepulta, quoniam legibus 20 non concederetur, quod proditionis esset damnatus, memoriae prodidit.

III.

ALCIBIADES.

ARGUMENT.

I. Character and Advantages.—II. Education and Marriage.—III. The Syracusan Expedition; the Hermae, B.C. 415.—IV. Accusation, Condemnation, and Exile.—V. Danger, and Flight from Sparta; Recall and Success.—VI. Return to Athens.—VII. Second Banishment; Goes to Thrace.—VIII. Love of Country; Advice to Athenian Generals.—IX. Retires into Thrace; Joins the Persians Satrap.—X. Murdered by order of Pharnabazus.—XI. His Versatility of Genius.

I.—CHARACTER AND ADVANTAGES.

ALCIBIADES, Cliniae filius, Atheniensis. In hoc quid natura efficere possit videtur experta. Constat enim inter omnes, qui de eo memoriae prodiderunt, nihil illo fuisse excellentius vel in vitiis vel in virtutibus. Natus in amplissima civitate, summo genere, omnium aetatis suae multo formosissimus, ad omnes res aptus consiliique plenus, (namque imperator fuit summus et mari et terra; disertus, ut imprimis dicendo valeret, quod tanta erat commendatio oris atque orationis, ut nemo ei dicendo posset resistere); dives, quum tempus posceret laboriosus, patiens, liberalis, splendidus non minus in vita quam victu, affabilis, blandus, temporibus callidissime serviens;—idem, simul ac se remiserat, neque causa auferat, quare animi laborem perferret, luxuriosus, dissolutus, libidinosus, intemperans reperiebatur, ut omnes admirarentur in uno homine tantam esse dissimilitudinem tamque diversam naturam.

II.—EDUCATION AND MARRIAGE.

Educatus est in domo Pericli (privignus enim ejus fuisse dicitur), eruditus a Socrate. Socerum habuit Hipponicum, omnium Graeca lingua loquentium ditissimum, ut, si ipse fingere vellet, neque plura bona comminisci, neque majora posset consequi, quam vel natura vel fortuna tribueret.

III.—THE SYRACUSAN EXPEDITION—THE HERMAE, B.C. 415.

Bello Peloponnesio hujus consilio atque auctoritate Athenienses bellum Syracusanis indixerunt; ad quod gerendum ipse dux delectus est: duo praeterea collegae dati, Nicias et Lamachus. Id quum appareretur, priusquam classis exiret, accidit, ut una nocte omnes Hermae, qui in oppido erant 5 Athenis, dejicerentur praeter unum, qui ante januam erat Andocidi. Itaque ille postea Mercurius Andocidis vocitatus est. Hoc quum appareret non sine magna multorum consensione esse factum, quae non ad privatam sed publicam rem pertineret, magnus multitudini timor est injectus, ne qua repentina vis in 10 civitate exsisteret, quae libertatem opprimeret populi. Hoc maxime convenire in Alcibiadem videbatur, quod et potentior et major quam privatus existimabatur. Multos enim liberalitate devinxerat, plures etiam opera fornsi suos reddiderat. Qua re fiebat, ut omnium oculos, quotiescunque in publicum prodisset, 15 ad se converteret, neque ei par quisquam in civitate poneretur. Itaque non solum spem in eo habebant maximam sed etiam timorem, quod et obesse plurimum et prodesse poterat. Aspergebatur etiam infamia, quod in domo sua facere mysteria dicebatur, quod nefas erat more Atheniensium; idque non ad 20 religionem sed ad conjurationem pertinere existimabatur.

IV.—ACCUSATION, CONDEMNATION, AND EXILE.

Hoc crimine in contione ab inimicis compellabatur. Sed instabat tempus ad bellum proficiscendi. Id ille intuens neque ignorans civium suorum consuetudinem postulabat, si quid de se agi vellent, potius de praesente quaestio haberetur, quam absens invidiae crimine accusaretur. Inimici vero ejus quies- 5 cendum in praesenti, quia noceri non posse intelligebant; et illud tempus expectandum decreverunt, quo exisset, ut absentem aggrederentur; itaque fecerunt. Nam postquam in Siciliam eum pervenisse crediderunt, absentem, quod sacra violasset, reum fecerunt. Qua de re quum ei nuntius a 10 magistratu in Siciliam missus esset, ut domum ad causam dicendam rediret, essetque in magna spe provinciae bene administrandae, non parere noluit, et in triremem, quae ad

enim erat deportandum missa, ascendit. Hac Thurios in
 15 Italiam pervectus, multa secum reputans de immoderata
 civium suorum licentia crudelitateque erga nobiles, utilissimum
 ratus impendentem evitare tempestatem, clam se ab custodibus
 subduxit, et inde primum Elidem dein Thebas venit. Post-
 quam autem se capitis damnatum bonis publicatis audivit, et,
 20 id quod usi venerat, Eumolpidas sacerdotes a populo coactos,
 ut se devoverent, ejusque devotionis quo testator esset me-
 moria, exemplum in pila lapidea incisum esse positum in
 publico, Lacedaemonem demigravit. Ibi, ut ipse praedicare
 consueverat, non adversus patriam sed inimicos suos bellum
 25 gessit, quod iidem hostes essent civitati; nam, quum intelligerent
 se plurimum prodesse posse reipublicae, ex ea eiecisse, plusque
 irae suae quam utilitati communi paruisse. Itaque hujus con-
 silio Lacedaemonii cum Perse rege amicitiam fecerunt, dein
 Deceleam in Attica munierunt, praesidioque ibi perpetuo
 30 posito in obsidione Athenas tenuerunt. Ejusdem opera Ioniam
 a societate averterunt Atheniensium. Quo facto multo superi-
 ores bello esse coeperunt.

V.—DANGER, AND FLIGHT FROM SPARTA—RECALL
TO ATHENS, AND SUCCESS.

Neque vero his rebus tam amici Alcibiadi sunt facti, quam
 timore ab eo alienati. Nam, quum acerrimi viri praestantem
 prudentiam in omnibus rebus cognoscerent, pertimuerunt, ne
 caritate patriae ductus aliquando ab ipsis deseiceret, et cum
 5 suis in gratiam rediret. Itaque tempus ejus interficiendi
 quaerere instituerunt. Id Alcibiades diutius celari non potuit.
 Erat enim ea sagacitate, ut decipi non posset, praesertim quum
 animum attendisset ad cavendum. Itaque ad Tissaphernem,
 praefectum regis Darii, se contulit. Cujus quum in intimam
 10 amicitiam pervenisset, et Atheniensium male gestis in Sicilia
 rebus opes senescere, contra Lacedaemoniorum crescere videret,
 initio cum Pisandro praetore, qui apud Samum exercitum
 habebat, per internumtios colloquitur, et de reditu suo facit
 mentionem. Erat enim eodem quo Alcibiades sensu, populi
 15 potentiae non amicus, et optimatum fantor. Ab hoc destitutus,
 primum per Thrasybulum, Lyci filium, ab exercitu recipitur,

praetorque fit apud Samum; post, suffragante Theramene, populiseito restituitur, parique absens imperio praeficitur simul eum Thrasybulo et Theramene. Horum in imperio tanta commutatio rerum facta est, ut Lacedaemonii, qui paulo ante 20 vietores viguerant, perterriti pacem peterent. Victi enim erant quinque proeliis terrestribus, tribus navalibus; in quibus dueentas naves triremes amiserant, quae captae in hostium venerant potestatem. Alcibiades simul eum collegis receperat Ioniam, Hellespontum, multas praeterea urbes Graecas, quae 25 in ora sitae sunt Asiae, quarum expugnarant complures, in his Byzantium; neque minus multas consilio ad amicitiam adjunxerant, quod in captos elementia fuerant usi. Ita praeda onusti, locupletato exercitu, maximis rebus gestis, Athenas venerunt.

VI.—RETURN TO ATHENS.

His quum obviam universa civitas in Piraeum descendisset, tanta fuit omnium expectatio visendi Alcibiadis, ut ad ejus triremem vulgus conflueret, proinde ac si solus advenisset. Sic enim populo erat persuasum, et adversas superiores et praesentes secundas res accidisse ejus opera. Itaque et Siciliae 5 amissum et Lacedaemoniorum victorias culpae suae tribuebant, quod talem virum e civitate expulissent. Neque id sine causa arbitrari videbantur. Nam postquam exercitui praesesse coeperat, neque terra neque mari hostes pares esse potuerant. Hic ut e navi egressus est, quanquam Theramenes et Thrasyb- 10 ulus iisdem rebus praefuerant, simulque venerant in Piraeum, tamen unum omnes illum persequabantur, et, id quod nunquam antea usu venerat nisi Olympiae victoribus, coronis laureis taeniisque vulgo donabatur. Ille lacrimans talem benevolentiam civium suorum accipiebat, reminiscens pristini temporis acerbitatem. Postquam in astu venit, contione advocata sic verba fecit, ut nemo tam ferus fuerit, quin ejus casu illaerimaret, inimicumque iis se ostenderit, quorum opera patria pulsus fuerat, proinde ac si alius populus, non ille ipse qui tum flebat, eum sacrilegii damnasset. Restituta ergo huic sunt publice 20 bona, iisdemque illi Eunolpidae sacerdotes rursus resacrare sunt coacti, qui eum devoverant; pilaeque illae, in quibus devotio fuerat scripta, in mare praecipitatae.

VII.—SECOND BANISHMENT—GOES TO THRACE.

Haec Alcibiadi laetitia non nimis fuit diuturna. Nam,—quum ei omnes essent honores decreti, totaque respublica domi bellique tradita, ut unius arbitrio gereretur, et ipse postulasset, ut duo sibi collegae darentur, Thrasybulus et Adimantus, neque
 5 id negatum esset,—classe in Asiam profectus, quod apud Cymen minus ex sententia rem gesserat, in invidiam recidit. Nihil enim eum non efficere posse ducebant. Ex quo fiebat, ut omnia minus prospere gesta culpae tribuerent, quum aut eum negligenter aut malitiose fecisse loquerentur; sicut tum accidit.
 10 Nam corruptum a rege capere Cymen noluisse arguebant. Itaque huic maxime putamus malo fuisse nimiam opinionem iugeni atque virtutis. Timebatur enim non minus quam diligebatur, ne secunda fortuna magnisque opibus elatus tyrannidem concupisceret. Quibus rebus factum est, ut absenti
 15 magistratum abrogarent, et alium in ejus locum substituerent. Id ille ut audivit, domum reverti noluit, et se Pactyen contulit, ibique tria castella communiit, Bornos, Bisanthen, Neontichos; manuque collecta primus Graecae civitatis in Thraciam introiit,
 20 Graiorum. Qua ex re creverat quum fama tum opibus, magnamque amicitiam sibi cum quibusdam regibus Thraciae pepererat.

VIII.—LOVE OF COUNTRY—ADVICE TO ATHENIAN GENERALS.

Neque tamen a caritate patriae potuit recedere. Nam, quum apud Aegos flumen Philocles, praetor Atheniensium, classem constituisset suam, neque longe abesset Lysander, praetor Lacedaemoniorum, qui in eo erat occupatus, ut bellum quam
 5 diutissime duceret, quod ipsis pecunia a rege suppeditabatur, contra Atheniensibus exhaustis praeter arma et naves nihil erat super, Alcibiades ad exercitum venit Atheniensium, ibique praesente vulgo agere coepit;—Si vellent, se coacturum Lysandrum dimicare aut pacem petere spondet; Lacedaemonios
 10 eo nolle classe configere, quod pedestribus copiis plus quam navibus valerent; sibi autem esse facile Scutem, regem

Thracum, deducere, ut eum terra depelleret; quo facto necessario aut classe conflicturum aut bellum compositurum. Id etsi vere dictum Philocles animadvertibat, tamen postulata facere noluit, quod sentiebat se Alcibiade recepto nullius 15 momenti apud exercitum futurum, et si quid secundi evenisset, nullam in ea re suam partem fore; contra ea, si quid adversi accidisset, se unum ejus delicti futurum reum. Ab hoc discedens Alcibiades, *Quoniam*, inquit, *victoriae patriae repugnas, illud moneo, juxta hostem castru habes nautica; periculum* 20 *est enim, ne immodestia militum vestrorum occasio detur Lysandro vestri opprimendi exercitus.* Neque ea res illum fefellit. Nam Lysander, quum per speculatores comperisset vulgum Atheniensium in terram praedatum exisse, navesque paene inanes relictas, tempus rei gerendae non dimisit, eoque inpetu 25 bellum totum delevit.

IX.—RETIRES INTO THRACE—JOINS THE PERSIAN SATRAP.

At Alcibiades, victis Atheniensibus, non satis tuta eadem loca sibi arbitrans penitus in Thraciam se supra Propontidem abdidit, sperans ibi facillime suam fortunam oculi posse. Falso. Nam Thraces, postquam eum cum magna pecunia venisse senserunt, insidias fecerunt. Qui ea quae apportarat 5 abstulerunt, ipsum capere non potuerunt. Ille cernens nullum locum sibi tutum in Graecia propter potentiam Lacedaemoniorum ad Pharnabazum in Asiam transiit; quem quidem adeo sua cepit humanitate, ut eum nemo in amicitia antecederet. Namque ei Grynium dederat in Phrygia castrum, ex quo quin- 10 quagena talenta vectigalis capiebat. Qua fortuna Alcibiades non erat contentus, neque Athenas victas Lacedaemoniis servire poterat pati. Itaque ad patriam liberandam omni ferebatur cogitatione. Sed videbat id sine rege Perse non posse fieri, ideoque eum amicum sibi cupiebat adjungi, neque dubitabat 15 facile se consecuturum, si modo ejus conveniendi habuisset potestatem. Nam Cyrum fratrem ei bellum clam parare Lacedaemoniis adjuvantibus sciebat. Id si aperuisset, magnam se initurum gratiam videbat.

X.—MURDERED BY ORDER OF PHARNABAZUS.

Hoc quum moliretur, peteretque a Pharnabazo, ut ad regem mitteretur, eodem tempore Critias ceterique tyranni Atheniensium certos homines ad Lysandrum in Asiam miserunt, qui cum certiore facerent, nisi Alcibiadem sustulisset, nihil earum rerum fore ratum, quas ipse Athenis constituisset; quare, si suas res gestas manere vellet, illum persequeretur. His Laco rebus commotus statuit accuratius sibi agendum cum Pharnabazo. Societatem huic ergo renuntiat, quae regi cum Lacedaemoniis esset, nisi Alcibiadem vivum aut mortuum sibi tradidisset. Non tulit hunc satrapes, et violare clementiam quam regis opes minui maluit. Itaque misit Susametrem et Bagaem ad Alcibiadem interficiendum, quum ille esset in Phrygia, iterque ad regem compararet. Missi clam vicinitati, in qua tum Alcibiades erat, dant negotium, ut eum interficiant. Illi quum ferro aggredi non auderent, noctu ligna contulerunt circa casam eam, in qua quiescebat, eaque succenderunt, ut incendio conficerent, quem manu superari posse diffidebant. Ille autem, ut sonitu flammae est excitatus, etsi gladius ei erat subductus, familiaris sui subalare telum eripuit; namque erat cum eo quidam ex Arcadia hospes, qui nunquam discedere voluerat. Hunc sequi se jubet, et id, quod in praesentia vestimentorum fuit, arripit. His in ignem ejectis flammae vim transiit. Quem ut barbari incendium effugisse viderunt, telis eminus missis interfecerunt, caputque ejus ad Pharnabazum retulerunt. At mulier, quae cum eo vivere consuerat, muliebri sua veste contactum aedificii incendio mortuum cremavit, quod ad vivum interimendum erat comparatum. Sic Alcibiades annos circiter quadraginta natus diem obiit supremum.

XI.—HIS VERSATILITY OF GENIUS.

Hunc infamatam a plerisque tres gravissimi historici summis laudibus extulerunt: Thucydides, qui ejusdem aetatis fuit, Theopompus, qui post aliquanto natus, et Timaeus; qui quidem duo maledicentissimi, nescio quo modo, in illo uno laudando conspirant. Namque ea, quae supra scripsimus, de eo praedicarunt atque hoc amplius:—Quum Athenis, splendidissima

civitate, natus esset, omnes splendore ac dignitate superasse vitae; postquam inde expulsus Thebas venerit, adeo studiis eorum inservisse, ut nemo eum labore corporisque viribus posset equiparare (omnes enim Boeotii magis firmitati corporis quam ingenii acumini inserviunt); eundem apud Lacedaemonios, quorum moribus summa virtus in patientia ponebatur, sic duritiae se dedisse, ut parsimonia victus atque cultus omnes Lacedaemonios vinceret; venisse ad Persas, apud quos summa laus esset fortiter venari, luxuriose vivere: horum sic in-
 15
 initatum consuetudinem, ut illi ipsi eum in his maxime admirarentur: quibus rebus effecisse, ut apud quoscunque esset, princeps poneretur, habereturque carissimus. Sed satis de hoc; reliquos ordiamur.

IV.

HANNIBAL.

ARGUMENT.

I. His Military Genius; Hatred of Rome.—II. Excites Enemies against the Romans.
—III. Military Exploits in Spain.—IV. Invasion of Italy; Battles.—V. Advance to Rome; more Battles.—VI. Recalled to Africa; Defeated at Zama.—VII. Peace; Hannibal Ejected one of the Reges; Exile.—VIII. Return to Africa; Flight to Antiochus; Victory.—IX. Flight to Crete.—X. Goes to Prusias; Stratagem.—XI. Gains Victory for Prusias over Eumenes.—XII. The Romans Demand him from Prusias; his Death.—XIII. Conclusion.

I.—HIS MILITARY GENIUS—HATRED OF ROME.

HANNIBAL, Hamilcaris filius, Carthaginiensis. Si verum est, quod nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes gentes virtute superarit, non est infitandum Hannibalem tanto praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia, quanto populus Romanus antea cedat fortitudine cunctas nationes. Nam quotiescunque cum eo congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domi civium suorum invidia debilitatus esset, Romanos videtur superare potuisse. Sed multorum obtractatio devicit unius virtutem. Hic autem velut hereditate relictum odium paternum erga Romanos sic conservavit, ut prius animam quam id deposuerit; qui quidem, quum patria pulsus esset, et alienarum opum indigeret, nunquam destiterit animo bellare cum Romanis.

II.—EXCITES ENEMIES AGAINST THE ROMANS.

Nam, ut omittam Philippum, quem absens hostem reddidit Romanis, omnium his temporibus potentissimus rex Antiochus fuit. Hunc tanta cupiditate incendit bellandi, ut usque a rubro mari arma conatus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem quum legati venissent Romani, qui de ejus voluntate explorarent,

darentque operam consiliis clandestinis, ut Hannibalem in suspicionem regi adducerent, tanquam ab ipsis corruptum alia atque antea sentire; neque id frustra fecissent, idque Hannibal comperisset, seque ab interioribus consiliis segregari vidisset, tempore dato adiit ad regem, eique quum multa de fide sua et 10 odio in Romanos commemorasset, hoc adjunxit:—*Pater meus, inquit, Hamilcar, puerulo me, utpote non amplius novem annos nato, in Hispaniam imperator proficiscens, Carthagine Iovi optimo maximo hostias immolavit. Quae divina res dum conficiebatur, quaesivit a me, vellemne secum in castra proficisci. 15 Id quum libenter accepissem, atque ab eo petere coepissem, ne dubitaret ducere; tum ille,—Faciám, inquit, si mihi fidem quam postulo dederis. Simul me ad aram adduxit, apud quam sacrificare instituerat, eamque (ceteris remotis) tenentem jurare jussit nunquam me in amicitia cum Romanis fore. Id ego jus- 20 jurandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetatem ita conservavi, ut nemini dubium esse debeat, quin reliquo tempore eadem mente sim futurus. Quare, si quid amice de Romanis cogitabis, non imprudenter feceris, si me celaris; quum quidem bellum parabis, te ipsum frustraberis, si non me in eo principem 25 posueris.*

III.—MILITARY EXPLOITS IN SPAIN.

Hac igitur, qua diximus, aetate cum patre in Hispaniam profectus est. Cujus post obitum, Hasdrubale imperatore suffecto, equitatu omni praefuit. Hoc quoque interfecto, exercitus summam imperii ad eum detulit. Id, Carthaginem delatum, publice comprobatum est. Sic Hannibal, minor quinque et 5 viginti annis natus, imperator factus proximo triennio omnes gentes Hispaniae bello subegit. Saguntum, foederatam civitatem, vi expugnavit. Tres exercitus maximos comparavit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium in Italiam secum duxit. Saltum 10 Pyrenaeum transiit. Quacunque iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis confligit. Neminem nisi victum dimisit. Ad Alpes posteaquam venit, (quae Italiam ab Gallia sejungunt, quas nemo unquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat, quo facto is hodie saltus Graius appellatur), Alpico conantes 15

prohibere transitu concidit; loca patefecit, itinera muniit; effecit, ut ea elephantus ornatus ire posset, qua antea unus homo inermis vix poterat reperere. Hac copias traduxit, in Italiamque pervenit.

IV.—INVASION OF ITALY—BATTLES.

Confluxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornelio Scipione consule, eumque pepulerat. Cum hoc eodem Clastidii apud Paduram decernit, sauciumque inde ac fugatum dimittit. Tertio, idem Scipio cum collega, Tiberio Longo, apud Trebiam adversus 5 eum venit. Cum his manum conseruit, utrosque profligavit. Inde per Ligures Apenninum transiit petens Etruriam. Hoc itinere adeo gravi morbo afficitur colorum, ut postea nunquam dextro aeque bene usus sit. Qua valetudine quum etiamnum premeretur, lecticaque ferretur, C. Flaminius consulem apud 10 Trasimenum cum exercitu insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multo post C. Centenium praetorem eum delecta manu saltus occupantem. Hinc in Apuliam pervenit. Ibi obviam ei venerunt duo consules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitus uno proelio fugavit; Paulum consulem occidit et ali- 15 quot praeterea consulares, in his Cn. Servilium Geminum, qui superiore anno fuerat consul.

V.—ADVANCE TO ROME—MORE BATTLES.

Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est nullo resistente. In propinquis urbis montibus moratus est. Quum aliquot ibi die castra habuisset, et reverteretur Capuam, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator Romanus, in agro Falerno ei se objecit. Hic 5 clausus locorum angustiis noctu sine ullo detrimento exercitus se expedivit; Fabio, callidissimo imperatori, dedit verba. Namque, obducta nocte, sarmenta in cornibus juveneorum deligata incendit, ejusque generis multitudinem magnam dis- palatam immisit. Quo repentino objecto visu tantum terrorem 10 iniecit exercitui Romanorum, ut egredi extra vallum nemo sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam non ita multis diebus, M. Minucium Rufum, magistrum equitum pari ac dictatorem imperio, dolo productum in proelium fugavit. Tiberium Sempronium Gracchum, iterum consulem, in Lucanis absens in insidias

inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Marcellum, quinquies con- 15
sulem, apud Venusiam pari modo interfecit. Longum est
enumerare proelia. Quare hoc unum satis erit dictum, ex quo
intelligi possit, quantus ille fuerit: quamdiu in Italia fuit,
nemo ei in acie restitit, nemo adversus eum post Cannensem
pugnam in campo castra posuit. 20

VI.—RECALLED TO AFRICA—DEFEATED AT ZAMA.

Hic invictus patriam defensum revocatus bellum gessit ad-
versus P. Scipionem *****, quem ipse primum apud Rhodanum,
iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam fugarat. Cum hoc,
exhaustis jam patriae facultatibus, cupivit impraesentiarum
bellum componere, quo valentior postea congredetur. In 5
colloquium convenit; conditiones non convenerunt. Post id
factum paucis diebus, apud Zaman cum eodem conflixit.
Pulsus (incredibile dictu) biduo et duabus noctibus Hadrumetum
pervenit, quod abest ab Zama circiter millia passuum trecenta. 10
In hac fuga Numidae, qui simul cum eo ex acie excesserant,
insidiati sunt ei. Quos non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsos op-
pressit. Hadrumeti reliquos e fuga collegit. Novis delectibus
paucis diebus multos contraxit.

VII.—PEACE—HANNIBAL ELECTED ONE OF THE REGES—
EXILE.

Quum in apparando acerrime esset occupatus, Carthaginienses
bellum cum Romanis composuerunt. Ille nihilo secius exer-
citi prae fuit, resque in Africa gessit, itemque Mago,
frater ejus, usque ad P. Sulpicium, C. Aurelium consules. His
eum magistratibus legati Carthaginienses Romam venerunt, 5
qui senatui populoque Romano gratias agerent, quod cum iis
pacem fecissent, ob eamque rem corona aurea eos donarent,
simulque peterent, ut obsides eorum Fregellis essent, captivique
redderentur. His ex senatus consulto responsum est: munus 10
eorum gratum acceptumque esse; obsides quo loco rogarent
futuros; captivos non remissuros, quod Hannibalem, cujus
opera susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nomini Romano,
etiamnum eum imperio apud exercitum habent, itemque

fratrem ejus Magonem. Hoc responso Carthaginienses cognito
 15 Hannibalem domum et Magonem revocarunt. Huc ut rediit,
 praetor factus est, postquam rex fuerat, anno secundo, ex
 vicesimo. Ut enim Romae consules, sic Carthagine quotannis
 annui bini reges creabantur. In eo magistratu pari diligentia
 se Hannibal praebuit, ac fuerat in bello. Namque effecit, ex
 20 novis vectigalibus non solum ut esset pecunia, quae Romanis
 ex foedere penderetur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerario
 reponeretur. Deinde anno post praeturam, M. Claudio, L. Furio
 consulibus, Roma legati Carthaginem venerunt. Hos Hannibal
 ratus sui exposcendi gratia missos, priusquam iis senatus
 25 daretur, navem ascendit clam, atque in Syriam ad Antiochum
 profugit. Hac re palam facta Poeni naves duas, quae cum
 comprehenderent, si possent consequi, miserunt; bona ejus
 publicarunt, domum a fundamentis disjecerunt, ipsum exulem
 judicarunt.

VIII.—RETURN TO AFRICA—FLIGHT TO ANTIOCHUS—
 VICTORY.

At Hannibal anno tertio postquam domo profugerat, L.
 Cornelio, Q. Minucio consulibus, cum quinque navibus Africanam
 accessit in finibus Cyrenacorum, si forte Carthaginienses ad
 bellum Antiochi spe fiduciaque [posset inducere], cui jam per-
 5 suaserat, ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisceretur. Huc
 Magonem fratrem excivit. Id ubi Poeni resciverunt, Magonem
 eadem qua fratrem absentem poena affecerunt. Illi, desperatis
 rebus, quam solvissent naves, ac vela ventis dedissent, Hannibal
 ad Antiochum pervenit. De Magonis interitu duplex memoria
 10 prodita est. Namque alii naufragio, alii a servulis ipsius, in-
 terfectum cum scriptum reliquerunt. Antiochus autem, si tam
 in gerendo bello consiliis ejus parere voluisset, quam in susci-
 piendo instituerat, propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis de summa
 imperii dimicasset. Quem etsi multa stulte conari videbat,
 15 tamen nulla deseruit in re. Praefuit paucis navibus, quas ex
 Syria jussus erat in Asiam ducere, iisque adversus Rhodiorum
 classem in Pamphylia mari conflixit. Quo quum multitudine
 adversariorum sui superarentur, ipse, quo cornu rem gessit, fuit
 superior.

IX.—FLIGHT TO CRETE.

Antiocho fugato, verens ne dederetur, quod sine dubio accidisset, si sui fecisset potestatem, Cretam ad Gortynios venit, ut ibi, quo se conferret, consideraret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus magno se fore periculo, nisi quid providisset, propter avaritiam Cretensium. Magnam enim secum pecuniam 5 portabat, de qua sciebat exisse famam. Itaque caput tale consilium. Amphoras complures complet plumbo, summas operit auro et argento. Has, praesentibus principibus, deponit in templo Dianae, simulans se suas fortunas illorum fidei credere. His in errorem inductis, statuas aeneas, quas secum portabat, 10 omni sua pecunia complet, easque in propatulo domi abjicit. Gortynii templum magna cura custodiunt non tam a ceteris quam ab Hannibale, ne ille inscientibus iis tolleret, secumque duceret.

X.—GOES TO PRUSIAS—STRATAGEM.

Sic conservatis suis rebus, Poenus, illis Cretensibus omnibus, ad Prusiam in Pontum pervenit. Apud quem eodem animo fuit erga Italiam, neque aliud quidquam egit, quam regem armavit, et exercuit adversus Romanos. Quem quum videret domesticis opibus minus esse robustum, conciliabat 5 ceteros reges, adjugebat belliosas nationes. Dissidebat ab eo Pergamenus rex Eumenes, Romanis amicissimus, bellumque inter eos gerebatur et mari et terra. Quo magis cupiebat eum Hannibal opprimi. Sed utrobique Eumenes plus valebat propter Romanorum societatem. Quem si removisset, factura sibi 10 cetera fore arbitrabatur. Ad hunc interficiendum talem iniiit rationem. Classe paucis diebus erant decreturi. Superabatur navium multitudine; dolo erat pugnandum, quum par non esset armis. Imperavit quam plurimas venenatas serpentes vivas colligi, easque in vasa fetilia conjici. Harum quum effe- 15 cisset magnam multitudinem, die ipso, quo facturus erat navale proelium, classarios convocat, iisque praecipit, omnes ut in unam Eumenes regis concurrant navem, a ceteris tantum satis habeant se defendere: id illos facile serpentium multitudine consecuturos; rex autem in qua nave veheretur, ut scirent se 20

facturum. Quem si aut cepissent, aut interfecissent, magno iis pollicetur praemio fore.

XI.—GAINS VICTORY FOR PRUSIAS OVER EUMENES.

Tali cohortatione militum facta, classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. Quarum aëie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium in scapha eum caduceo mittit.

5 Qui ubi ad naves adversariorum pervenit, epistolamque ostendens se regem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemo dubitabat, quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. Tabellarius, ducis nave declarata, suis eodem, unde erat egressus, se recepit. At Eumenes, soluta epistola, nihil in

10 ea reperit, nisi quod ad irridendum eum pertineret. Cujus etsi causam mirabatur, neque reperiebatur, tamen proelium statim committere non dubitavit. Horum in concursu Bithynii Hannibalis praecepto universi navem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quorum

15 consecutus non esset, nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximo litore erant collocata. Reliquae Pergamenae naves, quum adversarios premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fetilia, de quibus supra mentionem fecimus, conjici coepta sunt. Quae

20 jacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarunt, neque quare id fieret, poterat intelligi. Postquam autem naves completas conspexerunt serpentibus, nova re perterriti, quum quid potissimum vitarent non viderent, puppes verterunt, seque ad sua castra nautica retulerunt. Sic Hannibal consilio arma Pergamenorum superavit, neque tum solum sed saepe alias pedestribus copiis

25 pari prudentia pepulit adversarios.

XII.—THE ROMANS DEMAND HIM FROM PRUSIAS—
HIS DEATH.

Quae dum in Asia geruntur, accidit easu, ut legati Prusiae Romae apud L. Quintium Flaminium consularem coenarent, atque ibi de Hannibale mentione facta ex his unus diceret eum in Prusiae regno esse. Id postero die Flamininus senatui

5 detulit. Patres conscripti, qui Hannibale vivo nunquam se sine insidiis futuros existimarent, legatos in Bithyniam miser-

unt, in his Flaminium, qui ab rege peterent, ne inimicissimum
 suum secum haberet, sibi que dederet. His Prusias negare ausus
 non est. Illud recusavit, ne id a se fieri postularent, quod
 adversus jus hospitii esset; ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent; 10
 locum ubi esset facile inventuros. Hannibal enim uno loco se
 tenebat in castello, quod ei a rege datum erat muneri, idque sic
 aedificarat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificii exitus haberet,
 scilicet verens, ne usu veniret, quod accidit. Huc quum legati
 Romanorum venissent, ac multitudine domum ejus circumde- 15
 dissent, puer ab janua prospiciens Hannibali dixit plures
 praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere. Qui imperavit ei,
 ut omnes fores aedificii circumiret, ac praepere sibi nuntiaret,
 num eodem modo undique obsideretur. Puer quum celeriter,
 quid esset, renuntiasset, omnesque exitus occupatos ostendisset, 20
 sensit id non fortuito factum, sed se peti, neque sibi diutius
 vitam esse retinendam. Quam ne alieno arbitrio dimitteret,
 memor pristinarum virtutum venenum, quod semper secum
 habere consueverat, sumpsit.

XIII.—CONCLUSION.

Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus laboribus,
 anno acquievit septuagesimo. Quibus consulibus interierit,
 non convenit. Namque Atticus, M. Claudio Marcello, Q. Fabio
 Labeone consulibus, mortuum in annali suo scriptum reliquit;
 at Polybius, L. Aemilio Paulo, Cn. Baebio Tamphio; Sulpicius 5
 autem Blitho, P. Cornelio Cethego, M. Baebio Tamphilo. At-
 que hic tantus vir, tantisque bellis districtus, non nihil temporis
 tribuit literis. Namque aliquot ejus libri sunt, Graeco sermone
 confecti, in his ad Rhodios de Cn. Manlii Volsonis in Asia
 rebus gestis. Hujus belli gesta multi memoriae prodiderunt, 10
 sed ex his duo, qui cum eo in castris fuerunt, simulque vixerunt,
 quam diu fortuna passa est, Silenus et Sosilus Lacedaemonius.
 Atque hoc Sosilo Hannibal literarum Graecarum usus est
 doctore.

Sed nos tempus est hujus libri facere finem, et Romanorum 15
 explicare imperatores, quo facilius, collatis utrorumque factis,
 qui viri praefereendi sint, possit judicari.

Part Second.

EXTRACTS FROM CAESAR.

PREFATORY NOTE.

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR was born at Rome in 100 B.C. He was nephew, by marriage, to the great Marius; his wife was the daughter of Cinna, and thus by his connections, as well as by the natural bent of his mind, he was early led to espouse the cause of the popular party. After filling some of the minor offices of the state, with credit to himself and benefit to the public, he was at length elected to the consulship in 59 B.C., notwithstanding the opposition of the aristocracy; and then entered into that coalition with Pompey and Crassus which is known by the name of the First Triumvirate. The events of the remaining years of his life—his campaigns in Gaul, Germany, and Britain—his war with Pompey and the Pompeian party—and his political and other reforms—are too many and too important to be narrated here. After a career of most extraordinary activity and success, he was assassinated in 44 B.C. by a band of conspirators, on pretence that he was aiming at regal power. He began the conquest of Gaul in 58 B.C., by the Helvetic war; and in his ninth campaign, 50 B.C., he succeeded in entirely subduing the country.

BOOK I.

PART I.—THE HELVETIAN WAR.

ARGUMENT.

I. Description of Gaul.—II. The Helvetii persuaded to emigrate.—III. Preparations for departure.—IV. Accusation and death of Orgetorix.—V. The Helvetii burn their towns.—VI. Routes to Gaul.—VII. Caesar prepares to oppose the Helvetii.—VIII. Caesar's defensive measures.—IX. The Helvetii treat with the Sequani.—X. Caesar increases his forces.—XI. The Helvetii reach the country of the Aedui.—XII. Caesar defeats the Helvetii at the Arar.—XIII. The Helvetii treat with Caesar.—XIV. Caesar's reply.—XV. The Helvetii march onward.—XVI. The Aedui fail to supply corn to Caesar.—XVII. The revelations of Liscus.—XVIII. The treachery of Dumnorix.—XIX. Caesar sends for Divitiacus, brother of Dumnorix.—XX. Caesar pardons Dumnorix.—XXI. Operations against the Helvetii.—XXII. Mistake of Cossidius, and failure of the Romans.—XXIII. Caesar retreats to Bibracte for provisions.—XXIV. The Helvetii follow, and prepare for battle.—XXV. The battle.—XXVI. The Helvetii defeated.—XXVII. Negotiations for peace.—XXVIII. The Helvetii forced to return to their own land.—XXIX. Numbers of the Helvetii who left home.

I—DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partēs tres; quarum unam incoleunt Belgae; aliam Aquitani; tertiam, qui ipsorum lingua Celtæ, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitanis Garūnna flumen, a Belgis Matronā et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi 5 sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitatē provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commēant, atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, impōtant; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa 10 Helvētii quoque reliquos Gallos virtutē praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, quum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit
 15 a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano,
 finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis
 flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis
 Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem flu-
 minis Rheni; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem.
 20 Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam
 partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter
 Oceanum solis et septentriones.

II.—THE HELVETII PERSUADED TO EMIGRATE.

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orge-
 torix. Is, M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus, regni cupiditate
 inductus conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit,
 ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse,
 5 quum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri.
 Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii
 continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno latissimo atque
 altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex
 parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios;
 10 tertia, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam
 nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus
 late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent;
 qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficie-
 bantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli
 15 atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui
 in longitudinem millia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX
 patebant.

III.—PREPARATIONS FOR DEPARTURE.

His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti con-
 stituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare;
 jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coemere;
 sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti
 5 suppeteret; cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam con-
 firmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse
 duxerunt; in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad
 eas res conficiendas Orgetorigis deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad

civitatē suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos 10 annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitatē sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumndorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci (qui eo tempore principatum in civitatē obtinebat, ac maxime plebi acceptus erat), ut idem conaretur, persuadet; eique filiam suam 15 in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem 20 et jusjurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

IV.—ACCUSATION AND DEATH OF ORGETORIX.

Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coegit, et omnes clientes 5 obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Quum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrarentur, quin 10 ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

V.—THE HELVETII BURN THEIR TOWNS.

Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicis ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt; frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis, uti eodem usu consilio,

10 oppidis suis vicisque exiſtis, una cum iis proficiſcantur; Boi-
osque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum
transierant, Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi
adſeiscunt.

VI.—ROUTES TO GAUL.

Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire
possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter
montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri
ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile per-
5 pauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram,
multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines
Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus
fluit, isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum
Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Geneva.
10 Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese
vel persuasuros, (quod nondum bono animo in populum Rom-
anum viderentur,) existimabant, vel vi eacturos, ut per suos
fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem con-
paratis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conve-
15 niant. Is dies erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pisone. A. Gabiniio
consulibus.

VII.—CAESAR PREPARES TO OPPOSE THE HELVETII.

Caesari quum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram
iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis
potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad
Genevam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest
5 militum numerum imperat—erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore
legio una—, pontem, qui erat ad Genevam, jubet rescindi. Ubi
de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum
mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cujus legationis Nannocius et
Verucloctius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent sibi esse
10 in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea
quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut ejus voluntate id
sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriam tenebat L. Cassium
consulem occisum exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et
sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines

mimieo animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi, 15
 temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut
 spatium intereedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, con-
 venirent, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumptu-
 rum : si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. revertentur.

VIII.—CAESAR'S DEFENSIVE MEASURES.

Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui
 ex provinciam convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen
 Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab
 Helvetiis dividit, millia passuum decem novem murum in alti-
 tudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo opere per- 5
 fecto praesidia disponit, castris communit, quo facilius, si se
 invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam
 constituerat eum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum revertentur,
 negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per
 provinciam dare, et si vim facere conentur, prohibitorium 10
 ostendit. Helvetii ea spe dejecti, navibus junctis ratibusque
 compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudi-
 o fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdum, saepius noctu, si per-
 rumpere possent conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et
 telis repulsi hoc conatu destiterunt. 15

IX.—THE HELVETII TREAT WITH THE SEQUANI.

Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitis
 propter angustias ire non poterant. His quum sua sponte per-
 suadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt,
 ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorigis gratiam et
 largitionem apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat 5
 amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium
 duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et
 quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere obstructas volebat.
 Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos
 Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit : 10
 Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine,
 maleficio et injuria transeant.

X.—CAESAR INCREASES HIS FORCES.

Caesari renuntiatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intelligebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, T. Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit; et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli et Caturiges locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsus, ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

XI.—THE HELVETII REACH THE COUNTRY OF THE AEDUI.

Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiozem faciunt, sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt et demonstrant sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. ^{us} rebus adductus Caesar non expectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

XII.—CAESAR DEFEATS THE HELVETII AT THE ARAR.

Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac linteribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugae mandarunt, atque in proximas silvas abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, quum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulm interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est, quod ejus soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

20

XIII.—THE HELVETII TREAT WITH CAESAR.

Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, quum id, quod ipsi diebus xx aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; 5 cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur 10 et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, quum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribucret, aut ipsos despi-

(136)

15 ceret; se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtutē quam dolō contēderent, aut insidiās niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et interneccione exercitus nomen caperet, aut memoriam prodēret.

XIV.—CAESAR'S REPLY.

His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod cas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent: qui si alicujus injuriāe sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intelligeret, quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliāe oblivisei vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam depōnere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Con-
 5 suesse enim deos immortales, quō gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his
 10 secundiore interdu res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Quum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae pollicantur facturos intelligat, et si Aeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisficiant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico
 15 respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuerint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato discessit.

XV.—THE HELVETII MARCH ONWARD.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitatumque omnem ad numerum quatuor millium, quem ex
 5 omni provinciā et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insēcuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublatis Helvetiis, quod quingentis equitibus tantam

multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnunquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere cœperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in 10 praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostram primum non amplius quinis aut senis millibus passuum interesset.

XVI.—THE AEDUI FAIL TO SUPPLY CORN TO CAESAR.

Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, (quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, parva est,) non modo frumenta in agris maturare non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppeditabat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine 5 Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant; a quibus discedere volebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui: conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, 10 quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Liseo, qui summo magistratui praeerat—quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus, et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem,—graviter eos accusat, quod, quum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam pro- 15 pinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim quum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit; multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

XVII.—THE REVELATIONS OF LISCUS.

Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacerat, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrefere, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestare 5 debeant: si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia praeferre, neque dubitare debeant, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem

10 nostra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessario rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

XVIII.—THE TREACHERY OF DUMNORIX.

Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius
 5 atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. Comrares annos portoria reliquaue omnia Aeduum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente
 10 contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere; neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse; atque hujus potentiae causa matrem
 15 in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse; ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere; sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia
 20 ejus deminuta, et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani, non modo de regno sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod
 25 proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus—nam equitatus, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat—: eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

XIX —CAESAR SENDS FOR DIVITIACUS, BROTHER OF DUMNORIX.

Quibus rebus cognitis, quum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios tradu-

xisset,—quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset,—quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset —quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur,—satis esse 5 causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne ejus sup- 10 plicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque prius quam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet, et quotidianis interpretibus remotis per C. Valerium Procellum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur; simul com- 15 monefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuatur, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

20

XX.—CAESAR PARDONS DUMNORIX.

Divitiacus multis eum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reli- 5 qua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur; sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, quum ipse cum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimatum non sua 10 voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec quum pluribus verbis fleus a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et republicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus 15 condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes sus-

picionēs vitet; præterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit.
 20 Dumnorigi custodes pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur,
 scire possit.

XXI.—OPERATIONS AGAINST THE HELVETII.

Eodem diē ab exploratoribus certior factis hostes sub monte
 consedissee millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset
 natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent,
 misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia T.
 5 Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et iis
 ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere
 jubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia
 eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque
 omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissi-
 10 mus habebatur, et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi
 fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII.—MISTAKE OF CONSIDIUS, AND FAILURE OF THE ROMANS.

Prima luce, quum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, ipse ab
 hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset,
 neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut
 Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admissio ad eum accurrit;
 5 dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus
 teneri: id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse.
 Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit.
 Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium com-
 mitteret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent,
 10 ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occu-
 pato nostros exspectabat proelioque abstinēbat. Multo denique
 die per exploratores Caesar cognovit, et montem a suis teneri,
 et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium timore perterritum,
 quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiassse. Eo die, quo con-
 15 suerat intervallo hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria ab
 eorum castris castra ponit.

XXIII.—CAESAR RETREATS TO BIBRACTE FOR PROVISIONS.

Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, quum
 exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte,

oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. 5
 Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent,—eo magis, quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commisissent,—sive eo quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato 10
 consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

XXIV.—THE HELVETII FOLLOW, AND PREPARE FOR BATTLE.

Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit; equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quatuor veteranarum; atque supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime 5
 conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocavit, ac totum montem hominibus complevit; interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti impedimenta in unum 10
 locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissima acie rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

XXV.—THE BATTLE.

Caesar primum suo deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disjecta gladiis dextris in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad 5
 pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, quum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistram impeditam satis commode pugnare poterant, multi ut diu jactato brachio praeoptarent scutum manum 10
 emittere, et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi, et pedem referre, et quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus circiter xv agmen

hostium clauderant, et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere
 15 nostros latere aperto aggressi circumvenire, et id conspicati
 Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et
 proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa
 bipartito intulerunt: prima et secunda acies, ut victis ac sum-
 motis resisteret, tertia, ut venientes sustineret.

XXVI.—THE HELVETII DEFEATED.

Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius
 quum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut
 coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et
 carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, quum ab
 5 hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem
 videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta
 pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e
 loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciebant, et non-
 nulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subiciebant,
 10 nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu quum esset pugnatum, impedi-
 mentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filiam atque
 unum e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milli-
 cxxx superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt:
 nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die
 15 quarto pervenerunt, quum et propter vulnera militum et propter
 sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi non
 potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas literas nuntiosque misit, ne
 eos frumento neve alia re juvarent: qui si juvissent, se eodem
 loco quo Helvetios habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum
 20 omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

XXVII.—NEGOTIATIONS FOR PEACE.

Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de ditione
 ad eum miserunt. Qui quum eum in itinere convenissent, seque
 ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petis-
 sent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum
 5 expectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit,
 obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum
 ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa circiter homi-
 num millia vi ejus pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore

perterriti, ne armis traditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam 10 fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

XXVIII.—THE HELVETII FORCED TO RETURN TO THEIR OWN LAND.

Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquirent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, 5 reverti jussit; et quod omnibus fructibus amissis domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida, vicosque, quos incendere, restituere jussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter 10 bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent, et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem 15 juris libertatisque conditionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

XXIX.—NUMBERS OF THE HELVETII WHO LEFT HOME.

In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt literis Graecis confectae, et ad Caesarem relatae; quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent; et item separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat, capitum Helvetiorum 5 millia CCLXIII, Tulingorum millia XXXVI, Latobrigorum XIV, Rauracorum XXIII, Boiorum XXXII; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad millia XCII. Summa omnium fuerunt ad millia CCCLXVIII. Eorum, qui domum redierant, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus millium C et X. 10

PART II.—THE GERMAN WAR.

ARGUMENT.

XXX. The Gallic States hold a council.—XXXI. Complaints against Ariovistus, king of the Germans.—XXXII. The Sequani oppressed.—XXXIII. Caesar's kind answer to the Gauls.—XXXIV. Caesar's proposal of a conference declined by Ariovistus— XXXVII. Commotions; Caesar marches against Ariovistus.—XXXVIII. Caesar takes possession of Vesontio.—XXXIX. Alarm in Caesar's army.—XL. Caesar addresses his men.—XLI. Confidence restored; Caesar marches.—XLII. Ariovistus proposes a conference.—XLIII. The place of the conference.— XLVI. Treachery of Ariovistus.—XLVII. Ariovistus wishes to renew the conference; Caesar's messengers bound.—XLVIII. Caesar offers battle.—XLIX. Caesar makes a second camp.—L. Ariovistus attacks Caesar's smaller camp.—LI. Caesar marches up to the camp of Ariovistus, and offers battle.—LII. The battle.—LIII. Defeat of Ariovistus.—LIV. Caesar returns to hither Gaul.

XXX.—THE GALLIC STATES HOLD A COUNCIL.

BELLO Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt. * * Petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere, idque Caesaris voluntate facere, liceret: sese habere quasdam
5 res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt, et jurejurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

XXXI.—COMPLAINTS AGAINST ARIOVISTUS, KING OF THE GERMANS.

Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt, petieruntque, uti sibi secreto in occulto de sua omniumque salute eum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata, sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes projecerunt:
5 Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent; propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos

viderent. Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus; * * Ariovistum, regem Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedissee, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisse, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere jubere, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum millia hominum xxiv ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur, atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem—ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobriam—superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberos poscere, et in eos omnia exempla cruciatibusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi quid in Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant, fortunamque, quaecunque accidat, experiantur. Caesarem deterrere posse, ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum transgatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuria posse defendere.

30

XXXII.—THE SEQUANI OPPRESSED.

Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit Caesarem unus ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes capite demisso terram intueri. Ejus rei quae causa esset, miratus ex ipsis quaesivit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Quum ab his saepius quaereret, neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare audent; absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent,

5

10

quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, omnes cruciatus
15 essent perferendi.

XXXIII.—CAESAR'S KIND ANSWER TO THE GAULS.

His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirma-
vit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram : magnam se
habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ario-
vistum finem injuriis facturum. Hac oratione habita con-
5 cilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur,
quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret ; im-
primis quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a
senatu appellatos in servitute atque in ditione videbat Germa-
norum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac
10 Sequanos intelligebat ; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani
turpissimum sibi et reipublicae esse arbitrabatur. * * Ipse
autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sump-
serat, ut ferendus non videretur.

XXXIV.—CAESAR'S PROPOSAL OF A CONFERENCE DECLINED
BY ARIOVISTUS.

Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret,
qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque
colloquio deligeret : velle sese de re publica et summis utrius-
que rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit :
5 Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse ;
si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea, se
neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas
Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno comaeatu
atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem
10 mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut
Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

[Chapters XXXV. and XXXVI. contain a message from Caesar to Ariovistus, and
the reply of Ariovistus. They are of no importance to the story.]

XXXVII.—COMMOTIONS—CAESAR MARCHES AGAINST
ARIOVISTUS.

Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur, et legati
ab Aeduis et a Treveris veniebant : Aedui questum, quod

Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Treveri autem, pagos centum Suevorum ad 5 ripam Rheni consedissee, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; his praecesserunt Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Suevorum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque, re frumentaria 10 quam celerrime potuit comparata, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII.—CAESAR TAKES POSSESSION OF VESONTIO.

Quum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id ne accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, 5 quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas; idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis, ut circino circumductum, paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, qua flumen 10 intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita ut radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit, et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat. 15

XXXIX.—ALARM IN CAESAR'S ARMY.

Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant—saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum 5 quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant ferre potuisse—, tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae

- 10 causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat, ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque inter-
- 15 dum lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut summatum querebantur, aut eum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque,
- 20 quique equitatu praerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris, magnitudinem silvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam
- 25 Caesari nuntiabant, quum castra moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signaturos.

XL.—CAESAR ADDRESSES HIS MEN.

Haec quum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio duerentur sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent.

5 Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? * * Factum ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, quum Cimbris et Teutonibus a Caio Mario pulsus non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritis vide-

10 batur; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quae a nobis acceperant, sublevarent. * * Hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non

15 potuerint. * * Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, quum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae: frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare, jamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de

itiner
audie
scire
aut in
perfo
vita,
se pr
primu
an tin
cum
eam
induls

Ha
omniu
innata
gratia
bellum
legion
onibus
dubita
sed in
cepta,
maxim
enitu
dixera
ab exp
millibu

Cogi
quod
quonia
existim
sanitat
denega
pro sui

itinere ipsos brevi tempore iudicaturos. Quod non fore dicto 20
audientes neque signa latuŕi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri;
scire enim, quibuscunq; exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit,
aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore com-
perto avaritiam esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetua
vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque 25
se proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam
primum intelligere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atq; officium
an timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se
cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, sibique
eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et 30
indulserat praecipue, et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

XLI.—CONFIDENCE RESTORED—CAESAR MARCHES.

Haec oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt
omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi
innata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei
gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad
bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae 5
legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centuri-
onibus egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacrent: se neque unquam
dubitasse neque timuisse, neque de summa belli suum iudicium,
sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione ac-
cepta, et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei 10
maximam fidem habebat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta cir-
cuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut
dixerat, profectus est. Septimo die, quum iter non intermitteret,
ab exploratoribus certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris
millibus passuum quatuor et xx abesse.

15

XLII.—ARIOVISTUS PROPOSES A CONFERENCE.

Cognito Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit:
quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere,
quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere posse
existimare. Non respuit conditionem Caesar, jamque eum ad
sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, quum id, quod antea petenti 5
denegasset, ultro polliceretur; magnamque in spem veniebat,
pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis

suis postulatis, fore, uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio
 dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultro citroque
 10 quum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne
 quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se, ne
 per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu
 veniret; alia ratione sese non esse venturum. Caesar quod
 neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volebat, neque salutem
 15 suam Gallorum equitatu committere audebat, commodissi-
 mum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eo
 legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confide-
 bat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus
 facto esset, haberet. Quod quum fieret, non irridicule quidam
 20 ex militibus decimae legionis dixit,—plus quam pollicitus esset
 Caesarem facere: pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco deci-
 mam legionem habituram ad equum rescribere.

XLIII.—THE PLACE OF THE CONFERENCE.

Planities erat magna, et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis.
 Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris
 aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt. Legio-
 nem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo
 5 tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo con-
 stiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur, et praeter
 se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit.

[The remainder of Chapter XLIII, with the whole of XLIV. and XLV., is taken up with the conference.]

XLVI.—TREACHERY OF ARIOVISTUS.

Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est
 equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere, et ad nostros
 adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conijcere. Caesar lo-
 quendi finem facit, seque ad suos recipit, suisque imperavit, ne
 5 quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo
 periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat,
 tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsus hostibus diei
 posset eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Postea-
 quam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio
 10 Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque

in nostros ejus equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitui injectum est.

XLVII.—ARIOVISTUS WISHES TO RENEW THE CONFERENCE—
CAESAR'S MESSENGERS BOUND.

Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere eum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie ejus 5 diei Germani retineri non poterant, quin in nostros tela conjicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno eum periculo ad eum missuram et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est Caium Valerium Procellum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adolescentem, 10 ejus pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Galliae scientiam, qua multa jam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et M. Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut, 15 quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscere, et ad se referrent. Quos quum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conelamavit: Quid ad se venirent? an speulandi causa? Conantes dicere prohibuit, et in catenas conjeit.

XLVIII.—CAESAR OFFERS BATTLE.

Eodem die castra promovit et millibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Fostridie ejus diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit, et millibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. 5 Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio quotidie contendit. Genus haec erat pugnae, quo se Germani 10 exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex, totidem numero pedites:

velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant : cum his in proeliis versabantur. Ad eos se equites recipiebant : hi, si quid erat durius, concurrerant, si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circum-

15 rebant, si qui longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut iubeantur equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

XLIX.—CAESAR MAKES A SECOND CAMP.

Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani conserant, circiter passus sexcentos ab iis, castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit.

5 Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire, iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae iostros perterrerent, et munitione prohiberent. Nihilominus Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere, iussit. Munitione castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quatuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

L.—ARIOVISTUS ATTACKS CAESAR'S SMALLER CAMP.

Proximo die, instituto suo, Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit, paulumque a majoribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in

5 castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnavit, misit. Acriter utrinque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. Quum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quamobrem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod

10 apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset, neque ; eas ita dicere,—non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

LI.—CAESAR MARCHES UP TO THE CAMP OF ARIOVISTUS AND OFFERS BATTLE.

Postridie ejus diei Cacsar praesidium utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est, reliquit, omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt, generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harudes, Marcomannos, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suevos, omnemque aciem suam rhedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitatem Romanis traderent.

LII.—THE BATTLE.

Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt; itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi non daretur. Rejctis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta impetus gladiatorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent, et scuta manibus revellerent, et de superno vulnerarent. Quum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. Id quum animadvertisset P. Crassus adolescens, qui equitatus praecrat, quod expeditior erat quam ii qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

LIII.—DEFEAT OF ARIOVISTUS.

Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt, neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenerunt.

Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt, aut
 5 lintribus inventis sibi salutem pepererunt. In his fuit Ario-
 vistus, qui naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit :
 reliquos omnes equitatu consecuti nostri interfecerunt. Duae
 fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueva natione, quam domo secum
 duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voctionis soror, quam in Gallia
 10 duxerat a fratre missam : utraeque in ea fuga perierunt. Duae
 filiae harum,—altera occisa, altera capta est. Caius Valerius
 Procillus, quum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus tra-
 heretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitatu persequentem
 incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa
 15 victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum
 provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e
 manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat, neque ejus calamitate
 de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quidquam fortuna deminu-
 erat. Is, se praesente, de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat,
 20 utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud reservaretur : sortium
 beneficio se esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus, et ad
 eum reductus est.

LIV.—CAESAR RETURNS TO HITHER GAUL.

Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suevi, qui ad ripas
 Rheni venerant, domum reverti ~~esse~~perunt; quos Ubii, qui
 proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti magnum ex his
 numerum occiderunt. Caesar una aestate duobus maximis
 5 bellis confectis maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat,
 in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum
 praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos
 profectus est.

BOOK IV.

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN BY THE ROMANS.

CHAPTERS XX. TO XXXVI.

ARGUMENT.

XX. Caesar's reasons for invading Britain.—XXI. Volusenus is sent to examine the coast of Britain.—XXII. Caesar's preparations.—XXIII. Caesar's fleet reaches Britain.—XXIV. The Britons oppose his landing.—XXV. The fight continued.—XXVI. The Britons defeated.—XXVII. The Britons sue for and obtain terms of peace.—XXVIII. Part of Caesar's fleet damaged by a storm.—XXIX. Remainder of fleet also injured by high tide and a storm.—XXX. The Britons renew the war.—XXXI. Caesar repairs the fleet.—XXXII. The Britons attack a foraging party.—XXXIII. The British war-chariots.—XXXIV. Caesar relieves his men; the Britons collect forces.—XXXV. The Britons entirely defeated.—XXXVI. Peace concluded.

XX.—CAESAR'S REASONS FOR INVADING BRITAIN.

Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat, et si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, 5 tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quidquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, 10 quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent, aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire 15 poterat.

XXI.—VOLUSENUS IS SENT TO EXAMINE THE COAST OF BRITAIN.

Ad hæc cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Caium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse eum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, 5 quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus, et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem, jubet convenire. Interim consilio ejus cognito, et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui 10 polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit, et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi 15 fidelem esse arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in his regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates, horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque eeleriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus, perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac 20 se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

XXII.—CAESAR'S PREPARATIONS.

Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos polliceerent. Hoc 5 sibi Caesar satis opportune accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponeudas judicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in 10 fidem recepit. Navibus circiter LXXX onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones

existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaes-
tori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc aecedebant XVIII
onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum VIII vento 15
tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum venire possent: has
equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et
L. Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos
Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum
dedit; P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum eum eo praesidio, quod 20
satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.

XXIII.—CAESAR'S FLEET REACHES BRITAIN.

His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tem-
pestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem
portum progredi, et naves conscendere, et se sequi jussit. A
quibus quum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora cir-
citer dici quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque 5
ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas con-
spexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura, atque ita montibus au-
gustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus
telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum
locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam 10
nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque
militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae
feri vellet, ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime
ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem
motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis 15
administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno
tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublati ancoris, circiter
millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano
litore naves constituit.

XXIV.—THE BRITONS OPPOSE HIS LANDING.

At barbari consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu
et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt,
reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus egredi prohibebant.
Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter mag-
nitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant; militibus autem, 5
ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi onere armorum

oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnaudum, quum illi aut ex arido, aut paulum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris ex-

10 peditis, notissimis locis, audacter tela conijcerent, et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant, nitebantur.

XXV.—THE FIGHT CONTINUED.

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatio, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis incitari, et ad latas apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis,

5 tormentis hostes propelli ac submoventi jussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura, et remorum motu, et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt, ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae

10 legionis aquilam ferebat contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: Desilite, inquit, milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero. Hoc quum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi projecit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri

15 cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus quum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

XXVI.—THE BRITONS DEFEATED.

Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare, neque firmiter insistere, neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscunque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magnopere perturbabantur; hostes

5 vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumstiebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conijcebant. Quod quum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus

10 compleri jussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia

submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

15

XXVII.—THE BRITONS SUE FOR AND OBTAIN TERMS OF PEACE.

Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pae miserunt; obsides daturos quaeque imperasset facturos esse polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi e navi 5 egressum, quum ad eos oratoris modo Caesaris mandata deferret, comprehenderunt, atque in vineula conjecerant: tum proelio facto remiserunt, et in petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et, propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, quum ultro in continentem 10 legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit, obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquiore locis accessitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque undique con- 15 venire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

XXVIII.—PART OF CAESAR'S FLEET DAMAGED BY A STORM.

His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves XVIII, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae quum appropinquarent Britanniae, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum 5 cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur; quae tamen aneoris jactis quum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

10

XXIX.—REMAINDER OF FLEET ALSO INJURED BY A HIGH TIDE
AND A STORM.

Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos
aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat
incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar
exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum sub-
5 duxerat, aestus compleverat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras
erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facul-
tas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus
navibus fractis, reliquae quum essent funibus, ancoris, reli-
quisque armamentis amissis ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id
10 quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta
est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent,
et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et, quod
omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his
in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

XXX.—THE BRITONS RENEW THE WAR.

Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium
ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se collocti, quum equites et
naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intelligerent, et pauci-
tatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc
5 erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones
transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellionem facta,
frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem
producere, quod his superatis aut reditu interclusis neminem
postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confide-
10 bant. Itaque rursus conjuratione facta paulatim ex castris
discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

XXXI.—CAESAR REPAIRS THE FLEET.

At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et
ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo, quod obsides dare inter-
miserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes
casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris quo-
5 tidie in castra conferbat, et quae gravissime afflictae erant naves,

earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, quum summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

10

XXXII.—THE BRITONS ATTACK A FORAGING PARTY.

Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, quum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari nuntiaverunt pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi, jussit. Quum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conjici, animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII.—THE BRITISH WAR-CHARIOTS.

Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae;—primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et, quum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt, et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi

10 ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari,
ac fleetere, et per temonem percurrere, et in iugo insistere, et se
inde in currus citissime recipere, consuerint.

XXXIV.—CAESAR RELIEVES HIS MEN—THE BRITONS
COLLECT FORCES.

Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae tempore
opportunitissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu
hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto
ad laessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tem-
5 pus arbitratus suo se loco continuit, et brevi tempore intermisso
in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus
occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Secutae sunt
continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris
continent, et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari
10 nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum
militum suis praedicaverunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque
in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris
expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna mul-
titudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

XXXV.—THE BRITONS ENTIRELY DEFEATED.

Caesar etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore
videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsī, celeritate periculum effuge-
rent, tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius
Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat,
5 legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio,
diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potue-
runt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum
cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occide-
runt, deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in
10 castra receperunt.

XXXVI.—PEACE CONCLUDED.

Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace
venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea impera-
verat, duplicavit, eosque in continentem adduci jussit, quod,

propin-
subjici-
nactus
incolum-
duae
paulo

moderari,
sistere, et se

tempore
adventu
Quo facto
esse tem-
intermisso
is omnibus
cutae sunt
in castris
m barbari
nostrorum
dae atque
nos castris
agna mul-
runt.

erat, fore
n effuge-
Commius
rtaverat,
proelio,
n potue-
quantum
occide-
is se in

de pace
impera-
, quod,

propinqua die acquinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi navigationem subjiendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem 5 nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eisdem, quos reliqui, portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

BOOK V.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.

CHAPTERS VIII. TO XXIII.

ARGUMENT.

VIII. Caesar's landing in Britain.—IX. The Britons are defeated in a battle.—X. Caesar's fleet damaged by a storm.—XI. Repair of the fleet.—XII. Description of Britain.—XIII. Description of Britain continued.—XIV. Habits of the Britons.—XV. The Britons attack Caesar on his march, but are defeated.—XVI. The British mode of fighting.—XVII. Another battle; the Britons defeated.—XVIII. Caesar advances to the Thames.—XIX. Cassivellaunus harasses the Romans on their march.—XX. The Trinobantes surrender.—XXI. Other tribes submit.—XXII. Unsuccessful attack by the Britons on Caesar's naval camp.—XXIII. Peace concluded; Caesar's return to Gaul.

VIII.—CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN.

His rebus gestis, Labieno in contiiente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur, et rem frumentariam provideret, quæque in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse eum
5 quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit, et leni Africo proventus media circiter nocte vento intermisso cursum non tenuit, et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis
10 contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum: superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermisso remigandi labore, longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus
15 meridiano fere tempore; neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed ut postea Caesares captivis cognovit, quum magnæ manus eo

advenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annoribus privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octogentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant, ac in superiora loca abdiderant. 20

IX.—THE BRITONS ARE DEFEATED IN A BATTLE.

Caesar, exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc, qui praesidio navium essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibus Q. Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus millia passuum circiter xii hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, 10 locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbatur, causa jam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praecclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant, nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae, testudine facta et 15 aggere ad munitiones adjecto, locum ceperunt, eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longins Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod magna parte diei consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat. 20

X.—CAESAR'S FLEET DAMAGED BY A STORM.

Postridie ejus diei maue tripartito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, quum jam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Q. Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes 5 naves afflictas, atque in litore ejectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI.—REPAIR OF THE FLEET.

His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque itinere desistere jubet; ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis literisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter XL navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno 5 negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit, et ex continenti alios arcessi jubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una 10 munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies x consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborum militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis, easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit; ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo quum venisset, majores jam undique in eum 15 locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellanno, cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum LXXX. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant. 20

XII.—DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN.

Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgio transierant (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex 5 civitatibus eo pervenerunt), et bello illato ibi permanserunt, atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaeque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in 10 mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed ejus exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cujusque generis ut in Gallia est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen aliunt

animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

15

XIII.—DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN CONTINUED.

Insula natura triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem 5 solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, diuidio minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona: complures praeterea minores objectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies con- 10 tinuos xxx sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, dcc millium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est objecta terra, sed ejus 15 angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc millia passuum dccc in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.

XIV.—HABITS OF THE BRITONS.

Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit 5 colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu.

XV.—THE BRITONS ATTACK CAESAR ON HIS MARCH,
BUT ARE DEFEATED.

Equites hostium essedariiue acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint, atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis auiserunt. At illi intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris 5

atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis eiecerant, impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare atque his primis legionum duarum, quum
 10 hae perexiguo intermisso spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios audacissime per-
 ruperunt, seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Q. Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

XVI.—THE BRITISH MODE OF FIGHTING.

Toto hoc in genere pugnae quum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi eedentes possent, neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem,
 5 equites autem magno eum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque eederent, et, quum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent, et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et eedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum
 10 inferebat. Aecedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur, stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exeiperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII.—ANOTHER BATTLE—THE BRITONS DEFEATED.

Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt, rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, quum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum eum Caio Trebonio
 5 legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto repulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, quum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum
 10 numero interfecto, neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hae fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque

post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII.—CAESAR ADVANCES TO THE THAMES.

Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesin in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo quum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis 5 munita, ejusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, quum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum 10 sustinere non possent, ripasque dimitterent, ac se figae mandarent.

XIX.—CASSIVELLAUNUS HARASSES THE ROMANS ON THEIR MARCH.

Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quatuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat, paulumque ex via excedebat, locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, 5 pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat; et, quum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros ejecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis erutebat, et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis conligebat, atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relin- 10 quebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar materetur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

XX.—THE TRINOBANTES SURRENDER.

Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubratius adolescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat,—cujus pater in ea civi-

tate regnum obtinuerat, interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno,
 5 ipse fuga mortem vitaverat—legatos ad Caesarem mittunt,
 pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos;
 petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuria Cassivellauni defendat,
 atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit, imperiumque obtineat.
 His Caesar imperat obsides XL frumentumque exercitui, Man-
 10 dubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt,
 obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

XXI.—OTHER TRIBES SUBMIT.

Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuria pro-
 hibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, lega-
 tionibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit non
 longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis paludi-
 5 busque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque
 numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, quum
 silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis
 hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur
 cum legionibus: locum reperit egregie natura atque opere
 10 munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit.
 Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non
 tulerunt, seseque alia parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi
 numerus pecoris reperit, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi
 atque interfecti.

XXII.—UNSUCCESSFUL ATTACK BY THE BRITONS ON CAESAR'S
NAVAL CAMP.

Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium,
 quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus
 quatuor reges praecrant. Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus,
 Segonax, nuntios mittit, atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus
 5 copiis castra navalia de improvviso adorianur, atque oppugnent.
 Ii quum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum
 interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes
 reducerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detri-
 mentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus de-
 10 fectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de dedi-
 tione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, quum constituisset hiemare

in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intelligeret, obsides imperat, et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicat, atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

XXIII.—PEACE CONCLUDED—CAESAR'S RETURN TO GAUL.

Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero, tot navigationibus, neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur; at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes rejicerentur. Quas quum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra exspectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit, ac summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita quum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit, omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

BOOK VI.

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND THE GERMANS.

CHAPTERS XI. TO XXVIII.

ARGUMENT.

XI. Prevalence of political parties.— . . . XIII. Two ruling classes, the Druids and the Equites.—XIV. The Druids.—XV. The Equites.—XVI. The religious services of the Gauls.—XVII. The gods specially worshipped by the Gauls.—XVIII. The naming and measuring of time.—XIX. Marriages and funerals.—XX. Power and policy of magistrates.—XXI. The Germans differ from the Gauls.—XXII. Agriculture not encouraged.—XXIII. Various customs—plunder, war, &c.—XXIV. Migrations and colonies of the Germans.—XXV. The Hercynian forest.—XXVI. Wild animals—the reindeer.—XXVII. Wild animals—the elk.—XXVIII. Wild animals—the *urus*, or bison.

XI.—PREVALENCE OF POLITICAL PARTIES.

QUONIAM ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur, de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus, et quo differant haec nationes inter sese, proponere.

In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus
5 pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones
sunt, earumque factionum principes sunt, qui summam aucto-
ritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbi-
trium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat.
Idque ejus rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex
10 plebe contra potentiores auxilii egeret: suos enim quisque
opprimi et eireumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam
inter suos habet auctoritatem. Hae eadem ratio est in summa
totius Galliae: namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt
duas.

[Chapter XII. recurs to the Aedui and the Sequani as the leaders of parties when
Caesar first came to Gaul.]

XIII.—TWO RULING CLASSES, THE DRUIDS AND THE EQUITES.

In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore, genera sunt duo : nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil a det per se, nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, quum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut injuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant 5 nobilibus. In hos eadem omnia sunt jura, quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur : ad eos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque 10 hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt ; et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, si de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt ; praemia poenasque constituunt. Si qui aut privatus aut publicus eorum decreto non stetit, sacri- 15 ficiis interdicitur. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur, his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant, neque his petentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem 20 omnibus druidibus praestit unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, aut si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum ; nonnunquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae 25 media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt, eorumque decretis judiciisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur, et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi 30 causa proficiscuntur.

XIV.—THE DRUIDS.

Druides a bello abesse consueverunt, neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt ; militiae vacationem omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis et sua sponte

AND

Druids and
religious ser-
vice Gauls.—
funerals.—
er from the
is—plunder,
V. The Her-
d animals—

um esse
erant hae

omnibus
factiones
m aucto-
ad arbi-
re deat.
e quis ex
quisque
iat, ullam
n summa
risae sunt

parties when

multi in disciplinam conveniunt, et a parentibus propinquisque
 5 mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur :
 itaque annos nonnulli vicanos in disciplina permanent. Neque
 fas esse existimant ea literis mandare, quum in reliquis fere
 rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis literis utantur.
 Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur ; quod neque in
 10 vulgum disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discunt, literis
 confisos minus memoriae studere ; quod fere plerisque accidit,
 ut praesidio literarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam
 remittant. In primis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire
 animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios, atque hoc
 15 maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto.
 Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac
 terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium
 vi ac potestate disputant, et juventuti tradunt.

XV.—THE EQUITES.

Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, quum est usus, atque aliquod
 bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis
 accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi injurias inferrent, aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello versantur, atque eorum ut quisque
 5 est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

XVI.—THE RELIGIOUS SERVICES OF THE GAULS.

Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum delita religionibus, atque ob eam causam qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant, aut se immolatu-
 5 ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur ; quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur ; publicaeque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii inmani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent ; quibus
 10 succensis circumventi flamma exaninantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliqua noxa sint comprehensi, gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur ; sed quum

ejus generis copia defecit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

XVII.—THE GODS SPECIALLY WORSHIPPED BY THE GAULS.

Deum maxime Mercurium colunt. Hujus sunt plurima simulaera; hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam. De his eandem 5 fere quam reliquae gentes habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Jovem imperium coelestium tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, quum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent: quum superaverunt, ani- 10 malia capta immolant, reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis consecratis conspiciari licet; neque saepe accedit, ut neglecta quispiam religione, aut capta apud se occultare, aut posita tollere, auderet; gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu 15 constitutum est.

XVIII.—THE NAMING AND MEASURING OF TIME.

Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant, idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum sed noctium finiunt; dies natales et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noetem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis 5 differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi quum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur, filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris assistere turpe ducunt.

XIX.—MARRIAGES AND FUNERALS.

Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis aestimatione facta cum dotibus communicant. Hujus omnis pecuniae conjunctim ratio habetur, fructusque servantur: uter eorum vita superarit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri 5

in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem ;
 et quum pater familiae in striore loco natus decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt, et de morte, si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent, et si com-
 10 pertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magna et sumptuosa ;
 omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia ; ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et elientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, justis funcribus
 15 confectis una cremabantur.

XX.—POWER AND POLICY OF MAGISTRATES.

Quae civitates commodius suam rempublicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de republica a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat, neve cum quo alio communicet ; quod saepe homines
 5 temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri, et ad facinus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capere, cognitum est. Magistratus quae visa sunt occultant ; quaeque esse ex usu judicaverunt, multitudini produnt. De republica nisi per consilium loqui non conceditur.

XXI.—THE GERMANS DIFFER FROM THE GAULS.

Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Decorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos ceruunt, et quorum aperte opibus juvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam ;
 5 reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit : ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student.

XXII.—AGRICULTURE NOT ENCOURAGED.

Agriculturae non student ; majorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios ; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui una
 5 coierunt, quantum, et quo loco visum est, agri attribuunt, atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Ejus rei multas afferunt causas ;

ne assidua consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agricultura commutent; ne latos fines parare stent, potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, quum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

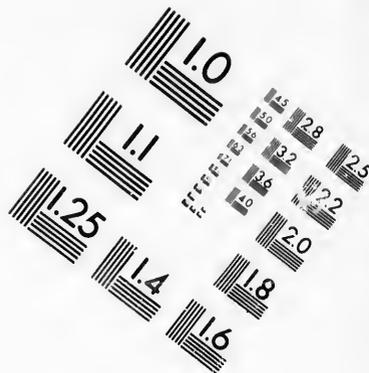
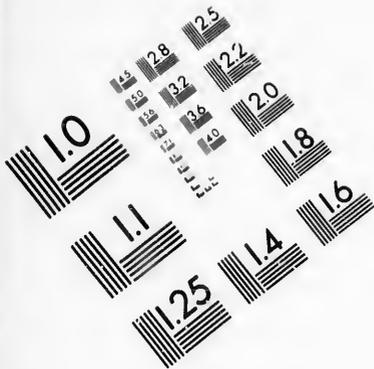
XXIII.—VARIOUS CUSTOMS—PLUNDER, WAR, ETC.

Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quemquam prope audere consistere; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Quum bellum civitas aut illatum defendit, aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos jus dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines ejusque civitatis fiunt, atque ea juventutis exercendae ac desidia minuendae causa fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, Se ducem fore—qui sequi velint, profiteantur; consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex his secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque his rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospitem violare fas non putant; qui quaque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab injuria prohibent, sanetos habent, hisque omnium domus patent, victusque communicatur.

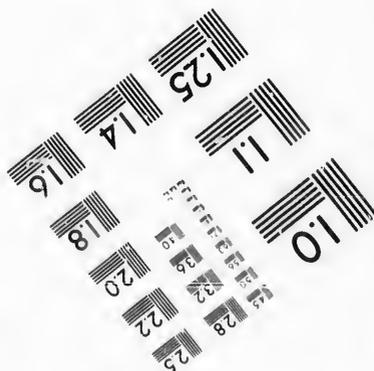
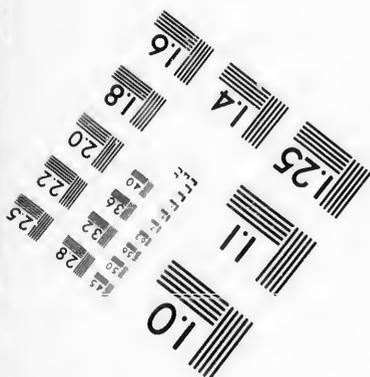
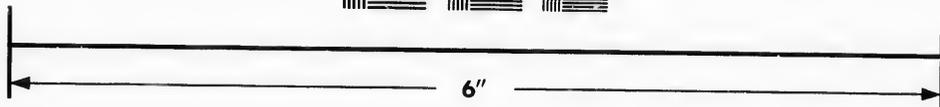
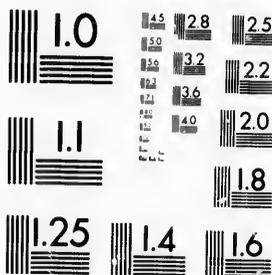
XXIV.—MIGRATIONS AND COLONIES OF THE GERMANS.

Ac fuit antea tempus, quum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis fama notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosages occupaverunt, atque ibi consederunt; quae gens ad hoc tempus





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40

10

his sedibus sese continet, summamque habet justitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem. Nunc quidem in eadem inopia, egestate, 10 patientiaque Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur; Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usus largitur: paulatim assuefacti superari, multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

XXV.—THE HERCYNIAN FOREST.

Hujus Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet: non enim aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauracorum finibus, rectaque fluminis 5 Danubii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est hujus Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvae dicat, quum dierum iter LX processerit, aut quo ex loco 10 oriatu acceperit: multaque in ea genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint; ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris, et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

XXVI.—WILD ANIMALS—THE REINDEER.

Est bos cervi figura, cujus a media fronte inter aures unum cornu existit excelsius magisque directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus: ab ejus summo sicut palmae ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natura, eadem 5 forma magnitudoque cornuum.

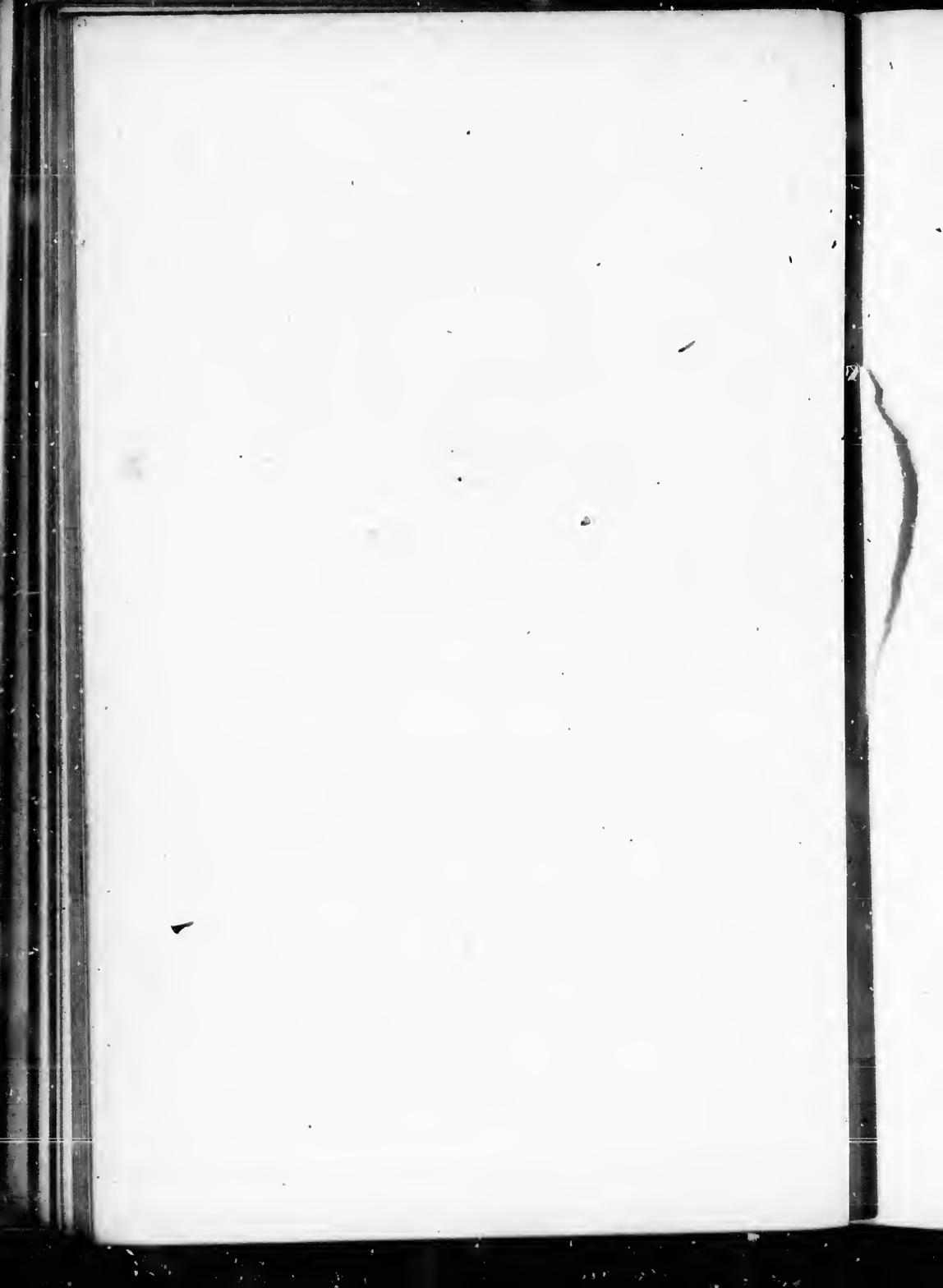
XXVII.—WILD ANIMALS—THE ELK.

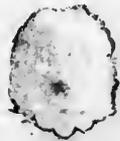
Sunt item quae appellantur alces. Harum est consimilis capris figura et varietas pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt, mutilaeque sunt cornibus, et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quietis causa procumbunt, neque, si quo 5 afflictae casu conciderunt, erigere sese aut subievare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus: ad eas se applicant, atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis quum est animadversum a venatoribus, quo se recipere con-

suerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt, aut accidunt arbores, tantum ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. 10 Huc quum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt, atque una ipsae concidunt.

XXVIII.—WILD ANIMALS—THE URUS, OR BISON.

Tertium est genus eorum, qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos; specie et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas, neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parant. Hos studiosè foveis captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore durant adolescentes, atque 5 hoc genere venationis exercent; et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homines et mansueferi ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus 10 differt. Haec studiosè conquisita ab labris argento circumcludunt, atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.





Part Third.



EXTRACTS FROM OVID.

PREFATORY NOTE.

P. OVIDIUS NASO was a native of Sulmo, in the country of the Peligni, where he was born, of an equestrian family, in 43 B.C. His education was carefully attended to, with a view to his becoming a pleader; and his mind was further enlarged by extensive travels in Greece, Asia, and Sicily. He filled some of the minor judicial offices of the state with great success, but ultimately withdrew from public life, and devoted himself to poetry. In A.D. 9, he was banished by the Emperor Augustus to Tomi, on the Black Sea, near the mouth of the Danube. Here he died, in A.D. 18, at the age of sixty,—all his own entreaties, and those of his friends, having failed to effect his release. The cause of his exile has never been satisfactorily ascertained. (See Notes to the “Metamorphoses” and the “Fasti,” at the beginning.)

[T
by th
and s
was d
all, m
state
espec
was r
The f
Brazo

I.—METAMORPHOSES.

I.—THE FOUR AGES.

(BOOK I, LINE 89.)

[The poet, after briefly announcing his subject, and invoking the gods to aid him by their inspiration, goes on to describe how primeval chaos was reduced to order, and separated into its four elements of air, earth, fire, and water; how the world was duly arranged; how animals of different kinds were formed; and how, last of all, man was created. The idea of man having fallen from a purer and happier state of being was, in ancient times, a prevailing one in almost every nation, and especially among the Greeks and Romans. This moral history of the human race was represented by a series of Ages, the number of which varies in different writers. The four which Ovid gives in the following extract are the Golden, the Silver, the Brazen, and the Iron.]

AUREA primâ sata est ætas, quæ vindice nullo,
Sponte sua, sine lege fidem rectumque colebat.
Poena metusque aberant; nec verba minaciæ fixo
Ære legebantur, nec supplex turba timebat
Judicis ora sui; sed erant sine iudice tuti. 5
Nondum caesa suis, peregrinum ut viseret orbem,
Montibus in liquidas pinus descenderat undas;
Nullaque mortales præter sua litora norant.
Nondum præcipites eingebant oppida fossæ:
Non tuba directi, non aeris cornua flexi, 10
Non galcæe, non ensis erant: sine militis usu
Mollia securæ peragebant otia gentes.
Ipsa quoque immunis rastroque intacta, nec ullis
Sauciæ vomeribus, per se dabat omnia tellus:
Contentique cibus nullo eogente creatis, 15
Arbutæos fetus montanaque fraga legebant,

- Cornaque et in duris haerentia mora rubetis,
 Et quae deciderant patula Jovis arbore glandes.
 Ver erat aeternum; placidique tepentibus auris
 20 Mulcebant zephyri natos sine semine flores.
 Mox etiara fruges tellus inarata ferebat,
 Nec renovatus ager gravidis canebat aristis:
 Flumina jam lactis, jam flumina nectaris ibant,
 Flavaque de viridi stillabant ilice mella.
 25 Postquam, Saturno tenebrosa in Tartara misso,
 Sub Jove mundus erat, subiit argentea proles,
 Auro deterior, fulvo pretiosior aere.
 Jupiter antiqui contraxit tempora veris;
 Perque hiemes aestusque et inaequales auctumnos
 30 Et breve ver spatium exegit quatuor annum.
 Tum primum siccis aër fervoribus ustus
 Canduit, et ventis glacies adstrieta pependit.
 Tum primum subiere domos: domus antra fuerunt,
 Et densi frutices et vinetae cortice virgae.
 35 Semina tum primum longis Cerealia sulcis
 Obruta sunt, pressique jugo gemuere juvençi.
 Tertia post illas successit aënea proles,
 Saevior ingeniis, et ad horrida promptior arma;
 Non scelerata tamen. De duro est ultima ferro.
 40 Protinus irrupit venae pejoris in aevum
 Omne nefas: fugere pudor verumque fidesque:
 In quorum subiere locum fraudesque dolique
 Insidiaeque et vis et amor sceleratus habendi.
 Vela dabant ventis, nec adhuc bene noverat illos
 45 Navita: quaeque diu steterant in montibus altis,
 Fluctibus ignotis insultavere carinae.
 Communemque prius, ceu lumina solis et auras,
 Cautus humum longo signavit limite mensor.
 Nec tantum segetes alimenta que debita dives
 50 Poscebatur humus, sed itum est in viscera terrae:
 Quasque recondiderat, Stygiisque admoventur umbris,
 Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.
 Jamque nocens ferrum, ferroque nocentius anrum
 Proderat: prodit bellum, quod pugnat utroque,

Sanguineaque manu crepitantia concutit arma. 55
 Vivitur ex raptō. Non hospes ab hospite tutus,
 Non soeer a genero; fratrum quoque gratia rara est:
 Imminet exitio vir conjugis, illa mariti:
 Lurida terribiles miscent aconita novercae:
 Filius ante diem patrios inquirīt in annos: 60
 Vieta jacet pietas: et virgo caecde madentes
 Ultima coelestum terras Astraica reliquit.

II.—THE DELUGE.

(BOOK I, LINE 244.)

[“There were giants in the earth in those days.” These, aiming at the sovereignty of heaven, were hurled headlong to earth by Jupiter’s thunderbolts, and slain. From their blood a race of savage men arose, who delighted in cruel deeds. Jupiter hearing their “evil report,” goes down to earth to judge by personal inspection; and while there his life is attempted by Lyeaon, his host. On his return to Olympus, he records to the assembly of the gods the events of his journey, and expresses his determination to destroy mankind. The story then proceeds as follows.]

Dieta Jovis pars voce probant, stimulosque frementi
 Adjiciunt; alii partes assensibus implent.
 Est tamen humani generis jaectura dolori
 Omnibus; et, quae sit terrae mortalibus orbae
 Forma futura, rogant; quis sit laturus in aras 5
 Tura? ferisne paret populandas tradere terras?
 Talia quaerentes, sibi enim fore cetera curae,
 Rex superum trepidare vetat; subolemque priori
 Dissimilem populo promittit origine mira.
 Jamque erāt in totas sparsurus fulmina terras: 10
 Sed timuit, ne forte sacer tot ab ignibus aether
 Coneiperet flammās, longusque ardeseeret axis.
 Esse quoque in fatīs reminiscitur, affere tempus,
 Quo mare, quo tellus, correptaque regia coeli
 Ardeat, et mundi moles operosa laboret. 15
 Tela reponuntur manibus fabricata Cycloꝝum.
 Poena placet diversa—genus mortale sub undis
 Perdere, et ex omni nimbos demittere coelo.
 Protinus Aeoliis aquilonem claudit in antris,
 Et quaecunq̄ue fugant inductas flamina nubes; 20

Emittitque notum. Madidis Notus evolat alis
 Ferribilem picea tectus caligine vultum :
 Barba gravis nimbis ; canis fluit unda capillis ;
 Fronte sedent nebulae ; rorant pennaequae sinusque
 25 Utque manu late pendentia nubila pressit,
 Fit fragor ; inclusi funduntur ab aethere nimbis.
 Nuntia Junonis varios induta colores
 Concepit Iris aquas, alimentaue nubibus affert.
 Sternuntur segetes, et deplorata colonis
 30 Vota jacent ; longique perit labor irritus anni.
 Nec coelo contenta suo est Jovis ira ; sed illum
 Caeruleus frater juvat auxiliariis undis.
 Convocat hic amnes. Qui postquam tecta tyranni
 Intravere sui, " Non est hortamine longo
 35 Nunc," ait, " utendum. Vires effundite vestras ;
 Sic opus est. Aperite domos, ac mole remota
 Fluminibus vestris totas immittite habenas."
 Jusserat. Hi redeunt, ac fontibus ora relaxant,
 Et defrenato volvuntur in aequora cursu.
 40 Ipse tridente suo terram percussit : at illa
 Intremuit, motuque vias patefecit aquarum.
 Exspatiata ruunt per apertos flumina campos,
 Cumque satis arbusta simul pecudesque virosque
 Tectaque, cumque suis rapiunt penetralia sacris.
 45 Siqua domus mansit, potuitque resistere tanto
 Indejecta malo, culmen tamen altior hujus
 Unda tegit, pressaeque latent sub gurgite turres.
 Jamque mare et tellus nullum discrimen habebant :
 Omnia pontus erant ; decrant quoque litora ponto.
 50 Occupat hic collem : cymba sedet alter adunca,
 Et ducit remos illic, ubi nuper ararat.
 Ille super segetes aut mersae culmina villae
 Navigat ; hic summa piscem deprendit in ulmo.
 Figitur in viridi, si fors tulit, ancora prato ;
 55 Aut subjecta terunt curvae vineta carinae.
 Et, modo qua graeciles gramen carpsere capellae,
 Nunc ibi deformes ponunt sua corpora phoecae.
 Mirantur sub aqua lucos urbesque domosque

Nercides : silvasque tenent delphines, et altis
 Incursant ramis, agitataque robora pulsant. 60
 Nat lupus inter oves; fulvos vehit unda leones;
 Unda vehit tigres. Nec vires fulminis apro,
 Crura nec ablato prosunt velocia cervo.
 Quacisitisque diu terris, ubi sistere detur,
 In mare lassatis volucris vaga decidit alis. 65
 Obruerat tumulos immensa licentia ponti,
 Pulsabantque novi montana cacumina fluctus.
 Maxima pars unda rapitur; quibus unda pepercit,
 Illos longa domant inopi jejunia victu.

III.—DEUCALION AND PYRRHA.

(BOOK I, LINE 313.)

[Deucalion and Pyrrha are saved from the flood.]

Separat Aonios Octaeis Phocis ab arvis,
 Terra ferax, dum terra fuit: sed tempore in illo
 Pars maris, et latus subitarum campus aquarum.
 Mons ibi vericibus petit arduus astra duobus,
 Nomine Parnassus, superantque cacumina nubes. 5
 Hic ubi Deucalion—nam cetera texerat acquor—
 Cum consorte tori parva rate vectus adhaesit,
 Corycidas nymphas et numina montis adorant,
 Fatidicamque Themis, quae tunc oracula tenebat.
 Non illo melior quisquam nec amantior aequi 10
 Vir fuit, aut illa metuentior ulla deorum.
 Jupiter ut liquidis stagnare paludibus orbem,
 Et superesse videt de tot modo millibus unum,
 Et superesse videt de tot modo millibus unam,
 Innocuos ambos, cultores numinis ambos, 15
 Nubila disjecit; nimisque aquilone remotis
 Et coelo terras ostendit, et aethera terris.
 Nec maris ira manet; positoque tricuspide telo
 Mulcet aquas rector pelagi, supraque profundum
 Exstantem, atque humeros innato murice tectum, 20
 Caeruleum Tritona vocat; conchaeque sonanti

- Inspirare jubet, fluctusque et flumina signo
 Jam revocare dato. Cava buccina sumitur illi
 Tortilis, in latum quae turbine crescit ab imo :
 25 Buccina, quae medio concepit ubi aëra ponto,
 Litora voce replet sub utroque jacentia Phœbo.
 Tunc quoque, ut ora dei madida rorantia barba
 Contigit, et cecinit jussos inflata receptus,
 Omnibus audita est telluris et aequoris undis ;
 30 Et quibus est undis audita, coercuit omnes.
 Flumina subsidunt, collesque exire videntur :
 Jam mare litus habet : plenus capit alveus amnes :
 Surgit humus ; crescunt loca decrescentibus undis.
 Postque diem longam nudata cacumina silvae
 35 Ostendunt, limumque tenent in fronde relictum.
 Redditus orbis erat : quem postquam vidit inanem,
 Et desolatas agere alta silentia terras,
 Deucalion lacrimis ita Pyrrham affatur obortis :
 “ O soror, O conjux, O femina sola superstes,
 40 Quam commune mihi genus et patruelis origo,
 Deinde torus junxit, nunc ipsa pericula jungunt :
 Terrarum, quasunque vident occasus et ortus,
 Nos duo turba sumus : possedit cetera pontus.
 Haec quoque adhuc vitae non est fiducia nostrae
 45 Certa satis. Terrent etiam nunc nubila mentem.
 Quid tibi, si sine me fatis erepta fuisses,
 Nunc animi, miseranda, foret ? quo sola timorem
 Ferre modo posses ? quo consolante doleres ?
 Namque ego—crede mihi—si te quoque pontus haberet,
 50 Te sequerer, conjux, et me quoque pontus haberet.
 O utinam possem populos reparare paternis
 Artibus, atque animas formatae infundere terrae !
 Nunc genus in nobis restat mortale duobus,—
 Sic visum superis,—hominumque exempla manemus.”
 55 Dixerat, et flebant. Placuit coeleste precari
 Numen, et auxilium per sacras quaerere sortes.
 Nulla mora est : adeunt pariter Cephisidas undas,
 Ut nondum liquidas, sic jam vada nota secantes.
 Inde ubi libatos irroravere liquores

Vestibus et capiti, flectunt vestigia sanctae 60
 Ad delubra deae; quorum fastigia turpi
 Pallabant musco, stabantque sine ignibus arae.
 Ut templi tetigere gradus, procumbit uterque
 Pronus humi, gelidoque pavens dedit oscula saxo.
 Atque ita, "Si precibus," dixerunt, "numina justis 65
 Victa remollescunt, si flectitur ira deorum:
 Dic, Themis, qua generis damnun reparabile nostri
 Arte sit, et mersis fer opem, mitissima, rebus."
 Mota dea est, sortemque dedit; "Discedite templo,
 Et velate caput, cinctasque resolvite vestes, 70
 Ossaque post tergum magnae jactate parentis."
 Obstupere dix; rumpitque silentia voce
 Pyrrha prior, jussisque deae parere recusat;
 Detque sibi veniam, pavido rogat ore; pavetque
 Laedere jactatis maternas ossibus umbras. 75
 Interea repetunt caecis obscura latebris
 Verba datae sortis secum, inter seque volutant.
 Inde Promethiæ placidis Epimethida dictis
 Mulcet; et, "Aut fallax," ait, "est sollertia nobis,
 Aut pia sunt, nullunque nefas oracula suadent. 80
 Magna parens terra est: lapides in corpore terræ
 Ossa reor dici: jacere hos post terga jubemur."
 Conjugis augurio quanquam Titania mota est,
 Spes tamen in dubio est. Adeo coelestibus ambo
 Diffidunt monitis. Sed quid tentare nocet? 85
 Descendunt, velantque caput, tunicasque recingunt,
 Et jussos lapides sua post vestigia mittunt.
 Saxa—quis hoc credat, nisi sit pro teste vetustas?—
 Ponere duritiem coepere suumque rigorem.
 Mollisque mora, mollitaque ducere formam. 90
 Mox, ubi creverunt, naturaque mitior illis
 Contigit, ut quaedam, sic non manifesta, videri
 Forma potest hominis; sed uti de marmore coepto,
 Non exacta satis, rudibusque simillima signis.
 Quæ tamen ex illis aliquo pars humida succo, 95
 Et terrena fuit, versa est in corporis usum:
 Quod solidum est, flectique nequit, mutatur in ossa:

- Quae modo vena fuit, sub eodem nomine mansit :
 Inque brevi spatio, superum numine, saxa
 100 Missa viri manibus faciem traxere virorum,
 Et de femineo reparata est femina jactu.
 Inde genus durum sumus, experiensque laborum,
 Et documenta damus, qua sumus origine nati.

IV.—PHAETHON.

(BOOK II, LINE 1.)

[Phaethon, the son of Sol and Clymene (wife of Merops, king of Aethiopia), having been taunted by Epaphus, son of Jupiter and Io, as to his origin, goes to the palace of the Sun to claim that Apollo would acknowledge him and put an end to his suspense.]

- REGIA Solis erat sublimibus alta columnis,
 Clara micante auro, flammisque imitante pyropo :
 Cujus ebur nitidum fastigia summa tegebat ;
 Argenti bifores radiabant lumine valvae.
 5 Materiam superabat opus : nam Mulciber illie
 Aequora caelarat medias cingentia terras,
 Terrarumque orbem, eolunque, quod imminet orbi.
 Caeruleos habet unda deos,—Tritona canorum,
 Proteaque ambiguum, balaenarumque prementem
 10 Aegaeona suis inmania terga lacertis ;
 Doridaeque et natas, quarum pars nare videntur,
 Pars in mole sedens virides siccare capillos ;
 Pisee vehi quaedam. Faeies non omnibus una,
 Nec diversa tamen : qualem deceet esse sororum.
 15 Terra viros urbesque gerit, silvasque ferasque,
 Fluminaque et nymphas, et cetera numina ruris.
 Haec super imposita est eocli fulgentis imago ;
 Signaque sex foribus dextris, totidemque sinistris.
 Quo simul aelivo Clymenecia limite proles
 20 Venit, et intravit dubitati teeta parentis,
 Protinus ad patrios sua fert vestigia vultus ;
 Consistitque procul : neque enim propiora ferebat
 Lumina. Purpurea velatus veste sedebat
 In solio Phoebus claris lucente smaragdīs.

- A dextra laevaue Dies et Mensis et Annus 25
 Saeculaque et positae spatiis aequalibus Horae;
 Verque novum stabat cinctum florente corona;
 Stabat nuda Aestas et spiccaserta gerebat;
 Stabat et Auctumnus, calcatis sordidus uvis,
 Et glacialis Hiems, canos hirsuta capillos. 30
- Inde loco medius, rerum novitate paventem
 Sol oculis juvenem, quibus aspicit omnia, vidit;
 "Quaeque viae tibi causa? quid haec," ait, "arce petisti,
 Progenies, Phaëthon, hanc infitianda parenti?"
 Ille refert; "O lux immensi publica mundi, 35
 Phoebepater, si das hujus mihi nominis usum,
 Nec falsa Clymene culpam sub imagine celat:
 Pignora da, genitor, per quae tua vera propago
 Credar, et hunc animis errorem detrahe nostris."
 Dixerat. At genitor circum caput omne micantes 40
 Deposuit radios, propiusque accedere jussit;
 Amplexuque dat, "Nec tu meus esse negari
 Dignus es, et Clymene veros," ait, "edidit ortus.
 Quoque minus dubites, quodvis pete munus, ut illud
 Me tribuente feras. Promissi testis adesto 45
 Dis juranda palus, oculis incognita nostris."
 Vix bene desierat; currus rogat ille paternos,
 Inque diem alipedum jus et moderamen equorum.
 Poenituit jurasse patrem. Qui terque quaterque
 Concutiens illustre caput, "Temeraria," dixit, 50
 "Vox mea facta tua est. Utinam promissa liceret
 Non dare! confiteor, solum hoc tibi, nate, negarem:
 Pissuadere licet. Non est tua tuta voluntas.
 Magna petis, Phaëthon, et quae nec viribus istis
 Munera conveniant, nec tam puerilibus annis. 55
 Sors tua mortalis: non est mortale, quod optas.
 Plus etiam, quam quod superis contingere fas est,
 Nescius affectas. Placeat sibi quisque licetbit:
 Non tamen ignifero quisquam consistere in axe
 Me valet excepto: vasti quoque rector Olympi, 60
 Qui fera terribili jaculatur fulmina dextra,
 Non agat hos currus;—et quid Jove majus habemus?

- Ardua prima via est, et qua vix mane recentes
 Enituntur equi. Medio est altissima coelo ;
 35 Unde mare et terras ipsi mihi saepe videre
 Fit timor, et pavida trepidat formidine pectus.
 Ultima prona via est, et eget moderamine certo.
 Tunc etiam, quae me subjectis excipit undis,
 Ne ferar in praeceps, Tethys solet ipsa vereri.
 70 Adde, quod assidua rapitur vertigine coelum,
 Sideraque alta trahit, celerique volumine torquet.
 Nitor in adversum ; nec me, qui cetera, vincit
 Impetus, et rapido contrarius evchor orbi.
 Pinge datos currus. Quid ages ? poterisne rotatis
 75 Obvius ire polis, ne te citus auferat axis ?
 Forsitan et lucos illic urbesque deorum
 Conceipias animo, delubraque ditia donis
 Esse ? Per insidias iter est formasque ferarum.
 Utque viam teneas, nulloque errore traharis,
 80 Per tamen adversi gradieris cornua Tauri,
 Haemoniosque arcus, violentique ora Leonis ;
 Saevaque circuitu curvantem brachia longo
 Scorpionum, atque aliter curvantem brachia Cancerum.
 Nec tibi quadrupedes animosos ignibus illis,
 85 Quos in pectore habent, quos ore et naribus efflant,
 In promptu regere est. Vix me patiuntur, ubi acres
 Incaluere animi, cervixque repugnat habenis.
 At tu, funesti ne sim tibi muneris auctor,
 Nate, cave ; dum resque sinit, tua corrige vota.
 90 Scilicet, ut nostro genitum te sanguine credas,
 Pignora certa petis. Do pignora certa tinendo,
 Et patrio pater esse metu probor. Aspice vultus
 Ecce meos. Utinamque oculos in pectora posses
 Inserere, et patrias intus deprendere curas !
 95 Denique quidquid habet dives, circumspice, mundus,
 Eque tot ac tantis coeli terraeque marisque
 Posce bonis aliquid : nullam patiére repulsam.
 Deprecor hoc unum, quod vero nomine poena,
 Non honor est : poenam, Phaëthon, pro munere possis.
 100 Quid mea colla tenes blandis, ignare, lacertis ?

Ne dubita, dabitur—Stygias juravimus undas—
 Quodcumque optaris. Sed tu sapientius opta.”
 Finierat monitus. Dictis tamen ille repugnat,
 Propositumque premit, flagratque cupidine currus.
 Ergo, qua licuit, genitor cunctatus ad altos 105
 Deducit juvenem, Vulcania munera, currus.
 Aureus axis erat, temo aureus, aurea summae
 Curvatura rotae, radiorum argenteus ordo.
 Per juga chrysolithi, positaeque ex ordine gemmae,
 Clara repercusso reddebant lumina Phoebō. 110
 Dumque ea magnanimus Phaëthon miratur, opusque
 Perspicit, ecce vigil rutilo patefecit ab ortu
 Purpureas Aurora fores et plena rosarum
 Atria. Diffugiunt stellae; quarum agmina cogit
 Lucifer, et coeli statione novissimus exit. 115
 At pater ut terras mundumque rubescere vidit,
 Cornuaque extremae velut evanescere lunae,
 Jungere equos Titan velocibus imperat Horis.
 Jussa deae celeres peragunt, ignemque vomentes,
 Ambrosiae succo saturos, praesepibus altis 120
 Quadrupedes ducunt, adduntque sonantia frena.
 Tum pater ora sui sacro medicamine nati
 Contigit, et rapidae fecit patientia flammae;
 Imposuitque comae radios, praesagaque luctus
 Pectore sollicito repetens suspiria dixit: 125
 “Si potes his saltem monitis parere paternis,
 Parce, puer, stimulis, et fortius utere loris.
 Sponte sua properant: labor est inhibere volentes.
 Nec tibi directos placeat via quinque per arcus.
 Sectus in obliquum est lato curvamine limes; 130
 Zonarumque trium contentus hinc polumque
 Effugit australem junctamque aquilonibus Arcton:
 Hac sit iter. Manifesta rotae vestigia cernes.
 Utque ferant aequos et coelum et terra calores,
 Nec preme, nec summum molire per aethera currum. 135
 Altius egressus coelestia tecta cremabis,
 Inferius terras. Medio tutissimus ibis.
 Neu te dexterior tortum declinet ad Anguem,

- Neve sinisterior pressam rota ducat ad Aram ;
 140 Inter utrumque tene. Fortunae cetera mando ;
 Quae juvet, et melius quam tu tibi eousulat, opto.
 Dum loquor, Hesperio positas in litore metas
 Humida nox tetigit : non est mora libera nobis :
 Poseimur. Effulget tenebris aurora fugatis.
 145 Corripe lora manu. Vel, si mutabile pectus
 Est tibi, consiliis, non eurribus utere nostris,
 Dum potes, et solidis etiam nune sedibus astas ;
 Dumque male optatos nondum premis in seius axes.
 Quae tutus speetes, sine me dare lumina terris.”
 150 Ocepit ille levem juvenili corpore eurrum ;
 Statque super ; manibusque datas contingere habenas
 Gaudet, et invito grates agit inde parenti.
 Interea volucres Pyrois, Eöus et Aethon,
 Solis equi, quartusque Phlegon, hinnitus auras
 155 Flammiferis implent, pedibusque repagula pulsant.
 Quae postquam Tethys, fatorum ignara nepotis,
 Reppulit, et facta est immensi copia mundi,
 Corripuere viam ; pedibusque per aëra motis
 Obstantes seindunt nebulas, pennisque levati
 160 Praetereunt ortos isdem de partibus euros.
 Sed leve pondus erat, nec quod eognoscere possent
 Solis equi ; solitaque jugum gravitate carebat.
 Utque labant curvae justo sine pondere naves,
 Perque mare instabiles nimia levitate feruntur ;
 165 Sic onere assueto vaeuus dat in aëra saltus,
 Succutiturque alte, similisque est eurrus inani.
 Quod simulae sensere, ruunt, tritumque relinquunt
 Quadrijugi spatium, nec quo prius ordine eurrunt.
 Ipse pavet. Nec qua commissas fleetat habenas,
 170 Nec scit qua sit iter ; nec, si sciat, imperet illis.
 Tum primum radiis gelidi caluere triones,
 Et vetito frustra tentarunt aequore tingi.
 Quaeque polo posita est glaciali proxima serpens,
 Frigore pigra prius, nec formidabilis ulli,
 175 Inealuit ; sumpsitque novas fervoribus iras.
 Te quoque turbatum memorant fugisse, Boöte,

Quamvis tardus eras, et te tua plaustra tenebant.
 Ut vero summo despexit ab aethere terras
 Infelix Phaëthon, penitus penitusque jacentes,
 Palluit, et subito genua intremuere timore; 180
 Suntque oculis tenebrae per tantum lumen obortae.
 Et jam mallet equos nunquam tetigisse paternos:
 Jam cognosse genus piget, et valuisse rogando:
 Jam Mecropis dici cupiens ita fertur, ut acta
 Praecipiti pinus borca, cui victa remisit 185
 Frena suus rector, quam dis votisque reliquit.
 Quid faciat? multum coeli post terga relictum,
 Ante oculos plus est: animo metitur utrumque.
 Et modo, quos illi fatum contingere non est,
 Prospicit occasus; interdum respicit ortus; 190
 Quidque agat ignarus, stupet; et nec frena remittit,
 Nec retinere valet, nec nomina novit equorum.
 Sparsa quoque in vario passim miracula coelo
 Vastarumque videt trepidus simulacra ferarum.
 Est locus, in geminos ubi brachia concavat arcus 195
 Scorpios, et cauda flexisque utrinque lacertis
 Porrigit in spatium signorum membra duorum.
 Hunc puer ut nigri madidum sudore veneni
 Vulnera curvata minitantem cuspide vidit,
 Mentis inops gelida formidine lora remisit. 200
 Quae postquam summo tetigere jacentia tergo,
 Exspatiantur equi; nulloque inhibente per auras
 Ignotae regionis eunt, quaque impetus egit,
 Hac sine lege ruunt; altoque sub aethere fixis
 Incursant stellis, rapiuntque per avia currum. 205
 Et modo summa petunt, modo per decliva viasque
 Praecipites spatio terrae propiore feruntur;
 Inferiusque suis fraternos currere Luna
 Admiratur equos, ambustaque nubila fumant.
 Corripitur flammis, ut quaeque altissima, tellus; 210
 Fissaque agit rimas, et succis aret ademptis.
 Pabula canescunt, cum frondibus uritur arbor,
 Materiamque suo praebet seges arida damno.
 Parva queror. Magnae pereunt cum mocibus urbes;

- 215 Cumque suis totas populis incendia gentes
 In cinerem vertunt. Silvæ eum montibus ardent :
 Ardet Athos, Taurusque Cilix, et Tmolus et Oete,
 Et tum sicea, prius celeberrima fontibus, Ide,
 Virgineusque Helicon et nondum Oeagrius Haemos.
- 220 Ardet in immensum geminatis ignibus Actæ,
 Parnassusque biceps et Eryx et Cynthus et Othrys,
 Et tandem nivibus Rhodope caritura ; Mimasque,
 Dindymaque, et Mycale, natusque ad sacra Cithæron.
 Nec prosunt Seythiæ sua frigora : Caucæus ardet,
- 225 Ossaque eum Pindo, majorque ambobus Olympus,
 Aëriæque Alpes, et nubifer Apenninus.
 Tum vero Phaëthon cunctis e partibus orbem
 Aspicit accensum, nec tantos sustinet aestus ;
 Ferventesque auras velut e fornacæ profunda
- 230 Ore trahit, currusque suos candescere sentit.
 Et neque jam cineres ejectatamque favillam
 Ferre potest, calidoque involvitur undique fumo ;
 Quoque eat, aut ubi sit, picca caligine tetus
 Neseit, et arbitrio voluerum raptatur equorum.
- 235 Sanguine tunc eredunt in corpora summa vocato
 Aethiopum populos nigrum traxisse colorem.
 Tum facta est Libye, raptis humoribus aestu,
 Arida. Tum nymphae passis fontesque laeusque
 Deflevere comis ; quaerit Bocotia Direen,
- 240 Argos Amymonen, Ephyre Pirenidas undas.
 Nec sortita loco distantes flumina ripas
 Tuta manent : mediis Tanais fumavit in undis,
 Peneosque senex, Teuthranteusque Caicus,
 Et celer Ismenos eum Phegiaeo Erymautho,
- 245 Arsurusque iterum Xanthus, flavusque Lycormas,
 Quique recurvatis ludit Macandros in undis,
 Mygdoniusque Melas et Tacnarius Eurotas.
 Arsit et Euphrates Babylonius, arsit Orontes,
 Thermodonque citus, Gangesque, et Phasis, et Hister.
- 250 Aestuat Alpheos : ripae Sperheïdes ardent :
 Quodque suo Tagus amne vehit, fluit ignibus aurum :
 Et, quæ Maconias celebrarant carmine ripas,

Flumineae volueres medio caluere Caystro.
 Nilus in extremum fugit perterritus orbem,
 Oeculuitque caput, quod adhuc latet. Ostia septem 255
 Pulverulenta vacant, septem sine flumine valles.
 Fors eadem Ismarios Hebrum cum Strymone siccant,
 Hesperiosque amnes, Rhenum Rhodanumque Padumque,
 Cuique fuit rerum promissa potentia, Thybrin.
 Dissilit omne solum, penetratque in Tartara rimis 260
 Lumen, et infernum terret eum conjuge regem.
 Et mare contrahitur; siccaeque est campus arenae,
 Quod modo pontus erat; quosque altum texerat aequor,
 Exsistunt montes, et sparsas Cycladas augent.
 Ina petunt pisces, nec se super aequora curvi 265
 Tollere consuetas audent delphinum in auras.
 Corpora phocarum summo resupina profundo
 Exanimata natant. Ipsum quoque Nerea fama est
 Doridaque et natas tepidis latuisse sub antris.
 Ter Neptunus aquis cum torvo brachia vultu 270
 Exserere ausus erat: ter non tulit aëris ignes.
 Alma tamen Tellus, ut erat circumdata ponto,
 Inter aquas pelagi, contractosque undique fontes,
 Qui se considerant in opacae viscera matris,
 Sustulit oppressos collo tenus arida vultus; 275
 Opposuitque manum fronti, magnoque tremore
 Omnia concutiens paulum subsedit, et infra
 Quam solet esse, fuit. Saeraque ita voce locuta est:
 "Si placet hoc, meruique, quid O tua fulmina cessant,
 Summe deum? liceat periturae viribus ignis 280
 Igne perire tuo, clademque auctore levare.
 Vix equidem fauces haec ipsa in verba resolvo"—
 Presserat ora vapor—"tostos en aspice crines,
 Inque oculis tantum, tantum super ora favillae.
 Hosne mihi fructus, huic fertilitatis honorem 285
 Officii que refers, quod adunci vulnera aratri
 Rastrorumque fero, totoque exerceor anno?
 Quod pecori frondes, alimenta que mitia fruges
 Humano generi, vobis quoque tura ministro?
 Sed tamen exitum fac me meruisse; quid undae, 290

- Quid meruit frater? cur illi tradita sorte
 Aequora decrescunt, et ab aethere longius absunt?
 Quod si nec fratris, nec te mea gratia tangit,
 At coeli miserere tui. Circumspice utrumque;
 295 Fumat uterque polus. Quos si vitiaverit ignis,
 Atria vestra ruent. Atlas en ipse laborat,
 Vixque suis humeris candentem sustinet axem.
 Si freta, si terrae pereunt, si regia coeli,
 In chaos antiquum confundimur. Eripe flammis,
 300 Siquid adhuc superest, et rerum consule summae."
 Dixerat haec Tellus. Neque enim tolerare vaporem
 Ulterius potuit, nec dicere plura: suumque
 Rettulit os in se propioraque manibus antra.
 At pater omnipotens, superos testatus et ipsum,
 305 Qui dederat currus, nisi opem ferat, omnia futo
 Interitura gravi, summam petit arduus arcem,
 Unde solet latis nubes inducere terris;
 Unde movet tonitrus, vibrataque fulmina jactat.
 Sed neque, quas posset terris inducere, nubes
 310 Tunc habuit; nec, quos coelo dimitteret, imbres.
 Intonat, et dextra libratum fulmen ab aure
 Misit in aurigam, pariterque animaque rotisque
 Expulit, et saevis compescuit ignibus ignes.
 Consternantur equi, et saltu in contraria facto
 315 Colla jugo eripiunt, abruptaque lora relinquunt.
 Illic frena jacent, illic temone revulsus
 Axis, in hac radii fractarum parte rotarum,
 Sparsaque sunt late laceri vestigia currus.
 At Phaëthon, rutilos flamma populante capillos,
 320 Volvitur in praeceps, longoque per aëra tractu
 Fertur, ut interdum de coelo stella sereno,
 Etsi non cecidit, potuit cecidisse videri.
 Quem procul a patria diverso maximus orbe
 Excipit Eridanus, fumantiaque abluit ora.
 325 Naïdes Hesperiae trifida fumantia flamma
 Corpora dant tunulo; signant quoque carmine saxum:
 HIC·SITUS·EST·PHAETHON·CURRUS·AURIGA·PATERNI
 QUEM·SI·NON·TENUIT·MAGNIS·TAMEN·EXCIDIT·AUSIS.

V.—PYRAMUS AND THISBE.

(BOOK IV, LINE 55.)

[Pyramus and Thisbe, two Babylonian lovers, whose parents are opposed to their marriage, slay themselves under a mulberry tree. The mulberry, formerly white, immediately becomes the colour of blood.]

"PYRAMUS et Thisbe, juvenum puleherrimus alter,
 Altera, quas oriens habuit, praelata puellis,
 Contiguas tenuere domos, ubi dicitur altam
 Coetilibus muris einxisse Semiramis urbem.
 Notitiam primosque gradus vicinia fecit: 5
 Tempore erevit amor. Taedae quoque jure eoissent:
 Sed vetuere patres. Quod non potuere vetare,
 Ex aequo captis ardebant mentibus ambo.
 Consciens omnis abest; nutu signisque loquuntur.
 Quoque magis tegitur, teetus magis aestuat ignis. 10
 Fissus erat tenni rima, quam duxerat, olim
 Quum fieret, paries domui communis utriusque.
 Id vitium nulli per saecula longa notatum—
 Quid non sentit amor?—primi vidistis amantes,
 Et vocis fecistis iter: tutaeque per illud 15
 Murmure blanditiae minimo transire solebant.
 Saepe, ubi constiterant, hinc Thisbe, Pyramus illine,
 Inque vias fuerat captatus anhelitus oris,
 'Invide,' dicebant, 'paries, quid amantibus obstas?
 Nee sumus ingrati. Tibi nos debere fatemur, 20
 Quod datus est verbis ad amiceas transitus aures.'
 Talia diversa nequiequam sede loenti
 Sub noctem dixere Vale, partique dedere
 Oseula quisque suae, non pervenientia contra.
 Postera nocturnos aurora removerat ignes, 25
 Solque prunos radiis siccaerat herbas:
 Ad solitum eoiere locum. Tum murmure parvo
 Multa prius questi statuunt, ut nocte silenti
 Fallere custodes foribusque excedere tentent,
 (135)

- 30 Quunq̄ue domo exierint, urbis quoque tecta relinquant :
 Neve sit errandum lato spatiantibus arvo,
 Conveniant ad busta Nini, lateantque sub umbra
 Arboris. Arbor ibi niveis uberrima pomis,
 Ardua morus, erat, gelide contermina fonti.
- 35 Pacta placent; et lux, tarde discedere visa,
 Praecipitatur aquis, et aquis nox surgit ab fsdem.
 Callida per tenebras versato cardine Thisbe
 Egreditur, fallitque suos, adopertaque vultum
 Pervenit ad tumulum, dictaque sub arbore sedit.
- 40 Audacem faciebat amor. Venit ecce recenti
 Caede leaena boum spumantes oblita rictus,
 Depositura sitim vicini fontis in unda.
 Quam procul ad lunae radios Babylonia Thisbe
 Vidit, et obscurum trepido pede fugit in antrum;
- 45 Dumque fugit, tergo velamina lapsa reliquit.
 Ut lea saeva sitim multa compescuit unda,
 Dum redit in silvas, inventos forte sine ipsa
 Ore cruentato tenues laniavit amictus.
 Serius egressus vestigia vidit in alto
- 50 Pulvere certa ferae, totoque expalluit ore
 Pyramus. Ut vero vestem quoque sanguine tinctam
 Repperit, 'Una duos,' inquit, 'nox perdet amantes :
 E quibus illa fuit longa dignissima vita ;
 Nostra nocens anima est : ego te, miseranda, peremi,
- 55 In loca plena metus qui jussi nocte venires,
 Nec prior huc veni. Nostrum divellite corpus,
 Et scelerata fero consumite viscera morsu,
 O quicumque sub hac habitatis rupe leones.
 Sed timidi est optare necem' . . . Velamina Thisbes
- 60 Tollit, et ad pactae secum fert arboris unbram.
 Utque dedit notae lacrimas, dedit oscula vesti,
 'Accipe nunc,' inquit, 'nostri quoque sanguinis haustus !'
 Quoque erat accinctus, demisit in ilia ferrum ;
 Nec mora, ferventi moriens e vulnere traxit.
- 65 Ut jacuit resupinus humo, cruor emicat alte :
 Non aliter, quam quum vitiato fistula plumbo
 Scinditur, et tenui stridente foramine longas

Ejaculatur aquas, atque ictibus aëra rumpit. Arborei fetus aspergine caedis in atram Vertuntur faciem, madefactaque sanguine radix Puniceo tingit pendentia mora colore.	70
Ecce metu nondum posito, ne fallat amantem, Illa redit; juvenemque oculis animoque requirit, Quantaque vitarit narrare pericula gestit. Utque locum, et visa cognoseit in arbore formam, Sic facit incertam pomi color; haeret, an haec sit. Dum dubitat, tremebunda videt pulsare cruentum Membra solum; retroque pedem tulit, oraque buxo Pallidiora gerens exhorruit acquoris instar, Quod tremit, exigua quum summum stringitur aura.	75 80
Sed postquam remorata suos cognovit amores, Percutit indignos claro plangore lacerr os; Et laniata comas amplexaque corpus amatum Vulnera supplevit lacrimis, fletumque cruori Miscuit; et gelidis in vultibus oscula figens, 'Pyrame,' clamavit, 'quis te mihi casus ademit? Pyrame, responde; tua te carissima Thisbe Nominat. Exaudi, vultusque attolle jacentes! Ad nomen Thisbes oculos jam morte gravatos Pyramus erexit, visaque recondidit illa.	85 90
Quae postquam vestemque suam cognovit, et ense Vidit ebur vacuum, 'Tua te manus,' inquit, 'amorque Perdidit, infelix. Est et mihi fortis in unum Hoc manus. Est et amor. Dabit hic in vulnera vires. Persequar extinctum, letique miserrima dicar Causa comesque tui. Quique a me morte revelli Heu sola poteras, poteris nec morte revelli. Hoc tamen amborum verbis estote rogati, O multum miseri, meus illiusque parentes, Ut, quos certus amor, quos hora novissima junxit, Componi tumulo non invideatis eodem.	95 100
At tu, quae ramis arbor miserabile corpus Nunc tegis unius, mox es tectura duorum; Signa tene caedis, pullosque et luctibus aptos Semper habe fetus, gemini monumenta cruoris.'	105

Dixit, et aptato pectus mucrone sub immum
Incubuit ferro, quod adhuc a caede tepebat.
Vota tamen tetigere deos, tetigere parentes ;
Nam color in pomo est, ubi permaturuit, ater:
110 Quodque rogis superest, una requiescit in urna."

I I.—FASTI.

I.—ROMULUS AND REMUS.

(BOOK II, LINE 383.)

SILVIA Vestalis coelestia semina partu
Ediderat, patruo regna tenente suo.
Is jubet auferri parvos et in amne necari.
Quid facis ? ex istis Romulus alter erit !
Jussa recusantes peragunt lacrimosa ministri, 5
Flent tamen, et geminos in loca jussa ferunt.
Albula, quem Tiberim mersus Tiberinus in undis
Reddidit, hibernis forte tuncbat aquis.
Hic, ubi nunc fora sunt, lintres errare videres,
Quaque jacent valles, Maxime Circe, tuae. 10
Huc ubi venerunt,—neque enim procedere possunt
Longius—ex illis unus et alter ait :
“At quam sunt similes ! at quam formosus uterque !
Plus tamen ex illis iste vigoris habet.
Si genus arguitur vultu, nisi fallit imago, 15
Nescio quem vobis suspicet esse deum”—
“At si quis vestrae deus esset originis auctor,
In tam praecepti tempore ferret opem.
Ferret opem certe, si non ope mater egeret,
Quae facta est uno mater et orba die. 20
Nata simul, moritura simul, simul ite sub undas
Corpora !” Desierat, deposuitque sinu.
Vagierunt ambo pariter ; sensisse putares.
Hi redeunt udis in sua tecta genis.
Sustinet impositos surama cavus alveus unda. 25

- Heu, quantum fati parva tabella tulit !
 Alveus in limo silvis appulsus opacis
 Paulatim fluvio deficiente sedet.
 Arbor erat. Remanent vestigia : quaeque vocatur
 30 Rumina nunc ficus, Romula ficus erat.
 Venit ad expositos—mirum !—lupa feta gemellos.
 Quis credat pueris non nocuisse feram ?
 Non nocuisse parum est ; prodest quoque. Quos lupa
 Perdere cognatae sustinuere manus ! [nutrit,
 35 Constitit, et cauda teneris blanditur alumnis,
 Et fingit lingua corpora bina sua.
 Marte satos scires : timor abfuit ; ubera ducunt,
 Nec sibi promissi lactis aluntur ope.
 Illa loco nomen fecit : locus ipse lupercis.
 40 Magna dati nutrix praemia lactis habet.

II.—THE BUILDING OF ROME.

(BOOK IV, LINE 809.)

- JAM luerat poenas frater Numitoris, et omne
 Pastorum gemino sub duce vulgus erat.
 Contrahere agrestes et moenia ponere utrique
 Convenit. Ambigitur, moenia ponat uter.
 5 “ Nil opus est,” dixit, “ certamine,” Romulus, “ ullo :
 Magna fides avium est. Experiamur aves.”
 Res placet. Alter adit nemorosi saxa Palati :
 Alter Aventinum mane cacumen init.
 Sex Remus ; hic volucres bis sex videt ordine. Pacto
 10 Statur, et arbitrium Romulus urbis habet.
 Aptā dies legitur, qua moenia signet aratro.
 Sacra Palis suberant ; inde movetur opus.
 Fossa fit ad solidum : fruges jaciuntur in ima,
 Et de vicino terra petita solo.
 15 Fossa repletur humo, plenaque imponitur ara ;
 Et novus accenso fungitur igne focus.
 Inde premens stivam designat moenia sulco :
 Alba jugum niveo cum bove vacca tulit.

Vox fuit haec regis : “ Condenti, Jupiter, urbem,
 Et genitor Mavors, Vestaque mater, ades ! 20
 Quosque pium est adhibere deos, advertite cuncti !
 Auspicibus vobis hoc mihi surgat opus.
 Longa sit huic aetas dominaeque potentia terrae,
 Sitque sub hac oriens occiduusque dies.”
 Ille precabatur. Tonitru dedit omnia laevo 25
 Jupiter, et laevo fulmina missa polo.
 Augurio laeti jaciunt fundamina cives,
 Et novus exiguo tempore murus erat.
 Hoc Celer urget opus, quem Romulus ipse vocarat,
 “ Sintque, Celer, curae,” dixerat, “ ista tuae. 30
 Neve quis aut muros aut factam vomere fossam
 Transeat ; audentem talia dede neci.”
 Quod Remus ignorans humiles contemnere muros
 Coepit, et “ His populus,” dicere, “ tutus erit ?”
 Nec mora, transiit. Rutro Celer occupat ausum. 35
 Ille premit duram sanguinolentus humum.
 Haec ubi rex didicit, lacrimas introrsus obortas
 Devorat, et clausum pectore vulnus habet.
 Flere palam non vult, exemplaue fortia servat ;
 “ Sicque meos muros transeat hostis,” ait. 40
 Dat tamen exsequias. Nec jam suspendere fletum
 Sustinet, et pietas dissimulata patet.
 Osculaque applicuit posito suprema feretro,
 Atque ait, “ Invito frater adempte, vale !”
 Arsurosque artus unxit. Fecere, quod ille, 45
 Faustulus et maestas Acca soluta comas.
 Tum juvenem nondum facti flevere Quirites.
 Ultima plorato subdita flamma rogo est.
 Urbs oritur—quis tunc hoc ulli credere posset ?”—
 Victorem terris impositura pedem. 50
 Cuuncta regas, et sis magno sub Caesare semper :
 Saepe etiam plures nominis hujus habe.
 Et quoties steteris domito sublimis in orbe,
 Omnia sint humeris inferiora tuis.

III.—UNION OF THE ROMANS AND SABINES INTO ONE STATE.

(BOOK III, LINE 179.)

[Mars is represented as narrating to the poet the origin of the festival called *Matronalia*, which commemorated the union of the Romans and Sabines.]

- Parva fuit, si prima velis elementa referre,
 Roma. Sed in parva spes tamen hujus erat.
 Moenia jam stabant, populis angusta futuris,
 Credita sed turbae tunc nimis ampla suae.
 5 Quae fuerit nostri, si quaeris, regia nati,
 Aspice de canna straminibusque domum.
 In stipula placidi carpebat munera somni,
 Et tamen ex illo venit in astra toro.
 Jamque loco majus nomen Romanus habebat :
 10 Nec conjux illi, nec socer ullus erat.
 Spernebant generos inopes vicinia dives,
 Et male credebar sanguinis auctor ego.
 In stabulis habitasse et oves pavisse nocebat,
 Jugeraque inculti pauca tenere soli.
 15 Extremis dantur connubia gentibus. At quae
 Romano vellet nubere, nulla fuit.
 Indolui, patriamque dedi tibi, Romule, mentem.
 "Tolle preces," dixi; "quod petis, arma dabunt."
 Festa para Conso : Consus tibi cetera dicet
 20 Illo facta die, dum sua sacra canes.
 Intumuere Cures, et quos dolor attigit idem.
 Tum primum generis intulit arma socer.
 Jamque fere raptae matrum quoque nomen habebant,
 Tractaque erant longa bella propinqua mora.
 25 Conveniunt nuptae dictam Junonis in aedem :
 Quas inter mea sic est nurus orsa loqui :
 "O pariter raptae,—quoniam hoc commune tenemus—
 Non ultra lente possumus esse piaec.
 Stant acies. Sed utra di sint pro parte rogandi,
 30 Eligite. Hinc conjux, hinc pater arma tenet.

Quaerendum est, viduae fieri malimus, an orbae.
 Consilium vobis forte piumque dabo."
 Consilium dederat. Parent, crinesque resolvunt,
 Maestaque funerea corpora veste tegunt. 35
 Jam steterant acies ferro mortique paratae;
 Jam lituus pugnae signa daturus erat:
 Quum raptae veniunt inter patresque virosque,
 Inque sinu natos, pignora cara, tenent.
 Ut medium campi scissis tetigere capillis,
 In terram posito procubuere genu: 40
 Et quasi sentirent, blando clamore nepotes
 Tendebant ad avos brachia parva suos.
 Qui poterat, clamabat avum tunc denique visum,
 Et qui vix poterat, posse coactus erat.
 Tela viris animique cadunt; gladiisque remotis 45
 Dant soceri generis accipiuntque manus,
 Laudatasque tenent natas, scutoque nepotem
 Fert avus. Hic scuti dulcior usus erat.
 Inde diem, quae prima, meas celebrare Kalendas
 Oebaliae matres non leve munus habent. 50

IV.—LUCRETIA.

(BOOK II, LINE 721.)

Cingitur interea Romanis Ardea signis,
 Et patitur lentas obsidione moras.
 Dum vacat, et metuunt hostes committere pugnam,
 Luditur in castris; otia miles agit.
 Tarquinius juvenis socios dapibusque meroque 5
 Accipit. Ex illis rege creatus ait:
 "Dum nos difficilis pigro tenet Ardea bello,
 Nec sinit ad patrios arma referre deos,
 Equid in officio torus est socialis? et equid
 Conjugibus nostris mutua cura sumus?" 10
 Quisque suam laudat. Studiis certamina crescunt,
 Et fervent multo linguaque corque mero.
 Surgit cui dederat clarum Collatia nomen:

- "Non opus est verbis, credite rebus!" ait:
 15 "Nox superest. Tollamur equis, Urbemque petamus!"
 Dicta placent; frenis impediuntur equi.
 Pertulerant dominos. Regalia protinus illi
 Tecta petunt. Custos in fore nullus erat.
 Ecce nurrum regis fisis per colla coronis
 20 Inveniunt posito pervigilare mero.
 Inde cito passu petitur Lucretia. Nebat;
 Ante torum calathi lauaque mollis erat.
 Lumen ad exiguum famulae data pensa trahebant:
 Inter quas tenui sic ait ipsa sono:
 25 "Mittenda est domino—nunc, nunc properate, puellae!—
 Quamprimum nostra facta lacerna manu.
 Quid tamen auditis? nam plura audire potestis:
 Quantum de bello dicitur esse super?
 Postmodo victa cades: melioribus, Ardea, restas;
 30 Improba, quae nostros cogis abesse viros!
 Sint tantum reduces! Sed enim temerarius ille
 Est mero, et stricto quolibet ense ruit.
 Mens abit, et morior, quoties pugnantis imago
 Me subit, et gelidum pectora frigus habet."
 35 Desinit in lacrimas, intentaque fila remittit,
 In gremio vultum deposuitque suum.
 Hoc ipsum decuit. Lacrimae decuere pudicae,
 Et facies animo dignaque parque fuit.
 "Pone metum, venio!" conjux ait. Illa revixit,
 40 Deque viri collo dulce pependit onus.

Part Fourth.



SYNOPSIS OF SYNTAX.

NOTE.

THE following Synopsis of Syntax is not meant to be exhaustive. It is merely intended to set forth in a methodical manner the great principles of Construction, with those irregularities which are of most frequent occurrence. Other peculiarities, of a more exceptional kind, which are met with in the Extracts, will be explained in the Notes.

SYNOPSIS OF SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.

SECTION I.

THE VERB.

1. A Verb is that part of speech which is used to make an assertion about something.
2. Verbs are divided into two classes, according to their meaning :—
 - (1.) TRANSITIVE, in which the action or feeling is represented as directed towards, or "*passing over*" to some object : as, I strike the dog ; He praises his friend.
 - (2.) INTRANSITIVE,* in which (a) the action or feeling is represented as not directed towards, or "*not passing over*" to an object, but as confined to the subject : as, I run ; I walk ; I reflect, (active intransitive) : or in which (b) a state or condition is expressed : as, I am ; I stand ; I rejoice.
3. Verbs have two VOICES,—the ACTIVE and the PASSIVE.
4. The forms of the Active Voice indicate that the subject of the sentence (see sect. iii., 2, p. 128) represents the doer of the action expressed by the verb : as, The boy strikes the dog.
5. The forms of the Passive Voice indicate that the subject of the sentence represents the object of the action expressed by the verb : as, The dog is struck by the boy.

* An active transitive verb does not make complete sense without a noun after it in the accusative case (or some other case, genitive, dative, or ablative, representing the object ; sect. vi., 4, p. 139 ; also sect. viii., 2, p. 145), whereas an intransitive verb does. Thus, "He praises," does not make complete sense till the person or thing praised is mentioned ; but "I run," "I walk," require no such addition. Many verbs are both transitive and intransitive : thus, *Excedo*, "I go out," is intransitive ; but *Excedo*, "I exceed," or "go beyond bounds," is transitive.

N.B.—Intransitive verbs have only those parts of the passive voice which are used impersonally. Thus, we cannot say, *Curror*, I am run; but we *can* say, *Curritur*, It is run—that is, people run: not *Pugnatur*, He is fought; but *Pugnatur*, It (the battle) is fought.

MOOD.

6. The Latin verb has four Modes, or "moods" (*modus*), of representing a state or an action.

7. The Indicative "represents a state or an action simply as a fact," or supposed fact.

8. The Subjunctive "represents a state or an action as a mere possibility, as a conception of the mind, or as a wish."

9. The Imperative "represents a state or an action in the form of a command," exhortation, or wish.

N.B.—These are called the *finite*, or limited parts of a verb, because they are capable of limitation as to manner, time, person, and number.

10. The Infinitive "represents a state or an action in its most general and indefinite form, without ascribing it to any subject."

11. Besides these there are certain forms which partake of the nature of the noun as well as of that of the verb, such as the Supine, Participles, and Gerund.

12. The SUPINE is a verbal substantive with two cases, the accusative and the ablative. (Sect. x., p. 149.) It is closely allied to the infinitive. (Sect. ix., 1, p. 148.)

13. The Participles are adjectives in form and in use, but differ from common adjectives in indicating *time*. (Sect. xi., p. 149.)

14. The Gerund, which is a verbal noun, is used only in the oblique cases. Like the other non-finite parts of the verb, it represents a state or an action in a very general and indefinite way. (Sect. xii., p. 150.)

TENSE.

15. Tense means *time*. All time is divided into three great periods—past, present, and future. Hence there are three *leading* tenses, to indicate past time, present time, and future time.

16. Thus, the leading or principal tenses are, the Present, Present-Perfect, and Future; the secondary or subordinate are, the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Perfect-Aorist (see 21).

17. The Present, Future, and Present-Perfect (see 21) are sometimes called the *primary tenses*; while the Imperfect, Perfect-Aorist, and Pluperfect, are called the *historical tenses*, because most frequently employed in the narration of past events. *

* But historians often use the present tense in narrating past events, to add vividness and life to the story, by representing incidents as if passing before our eyes; as,—“When that had been reported to Caesar, he *loses* no time in starting from Rome; he *hastens* into farther Gaul, and *reaches* Geneva.”—*Caes. Bell. Gall., Bk. I., 7*

18. The Present tense denotes,—
- (a) What is now in operation : as,—
Lego ; I am reading.
- (b) What goes on as a regular operation : as,—
Deus mundum gubernat ; God governs the world.
- (c) What has been in operation for some time, and is still proceeding : as,—
Jamdudum magna minaris ; You are promising great things now for a long time.
19. The Imperfect denotes,—
- (a) What was in operation in past time : as,—
Legebam ; I was in the act of reading.
- (b) What was often done in past time : as,—
Legebam ; I was in the habit of reading.
- (c) What was attempted in past time : as,—
Legebam ; I was trying to read ; (I was “for reading”).
20. The Future denotes,—
- (a) What will be in operation in future time (Future Incomplete) : as,—
Scribam ; I shall be writing.
- (b) Mere futurity (Future Indefinite) : as,—
Scribam ; I shall write.
- (c) What will be done (in future time) before some other action begins or is performed (Future Perfect) : as,—
Scripsero epistolam ; I shall have written the letter—(before he calls.)
[This Future Perfect is in English often expressed by the Future Indefinite, or even by the Present. See p. 162, 9.]
21. The Perfect denotes,—
- (a) An action complete in present time (Present-Perfect) : as,—
Scripsi epistolam ; I have written a letter—(and there it is).
- (b) An action spoken of in an indefinite way (Aorist in Greek—Perfect Aorist) : as,—
Scripsi epistolam ; I wrote a letter.
- (c) An action habitually occurring (Frequentative Perfect) : as,—
Messes ruperunt horrea ; The crops ARE WONT to burst the barns.
22. The Pluperfect denotes that one act was completed before the beginning of another : as,—
Scripserat epistolam ; He had written the letter (before I arrived).

SECTION II.

SENTENCES.

1. A thought expressed in words is called a *proposition* or *sentence*.
2. Sentences are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound*.
3. A *simple sentence* consists of a single proposition: as,—
Puer legit; The boy reads.
4. A *compound sentence* is one made up of two or more propositions: as,—
Puer legit, et scribit; The boy reads and writes.
Puer legit, ut discat; The boy reads, that he may learn.
5. The sentences which go to make up a compound sentence are also called *clauses*.
6. Syntax, which properly means *arrangement*, treats of the use of words in the formation of sentences, and of the relation of sentences or clauses to each other.

SECTION III.

SIMPLE SENTENCES—SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

1. Every sentence consists of two parts, the Subject and the Predicate.
2. The **SUBJECT** is the name of that about which something is asserted; and is generally—
 - (a) A substantive (including pronouns, and adjectives used substantively): as,—
Aquila volat; The eagle flies.
 - (b) Some (indeclinable) word, phrase, or clause used instead of a substantive: as,—
Humanum est errare; To err is human.
Quod librum legisti (subject), *gratum est mihi*; That you have read the book, is gratifying to me.
3. Subjects are of three kinds,—
 - (a) Simple, when there is one noun: as,—
Aquila volat; The eagle flies.
 - (b) Compound, when there are two or more nouns connected by conjunctions: as,—
Aquila et vultur volant; The eagle and the vulture fly.
 - (c) Complex, when some phrase, or quotation, or clause is the subject: as,—
Quod librum legisti (subject), *gratum est mihi*; That you have read the book, is gratifying to me.
4. The **PREDICATE** is that which is asserted of the subject, and is, generally either—

(a) A verb : as,—

Aquila volat; The eagle *flies*.

(b) A substantive, connected with the subject by a part of the verbs to be, exist, become, be named, elected, and such like : as,—

Miltiades erat filius Cimonis; Miltiades was *the son of Cimon*.

(c) An adjective or participle : as,—

Humanum est errare; To err is *human*.

5. In *b* and *c*, the verb (*est, erat*) which connects the subject and predicate is called the *Copula*.

6. But most verbs contain both predicate and copula : as,—

Aquila volat; The eagle *flies*;— which is equal to, The eagle *is-flying*.

7. The subject is often enlarged by the addition of an adjective, substantive, or phrase : as,—

Gallia omnis divisa est; *All* Gaul is divided.

Miltiades, Atheniensis, filius Cimonis, florebat; Miltiades *the Athenian, son-of-Cimon*, was in good repute.

8. The predicate is often enlarged by the addition of an adjective, substantive, or phrase : as,—

Cicero erat summus orator; Cicero was a *very great* orator.

Hostem occidit; He slew *his adversary*.

Cives sui poterant bene sperare de eo; His fellow-citizens were able to *entertain good hopes of him*.

SECTION IV.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

(See also chap. III., sect. I., p. 151.)

1. The clauses of a compound sentence are either (a) Principal or (b) Subordinate.

2. A Principal clause is one which makes a leading assertion.

3. A Subordinate clause is one which makes a statement explanatory of, or contingent on, the Principal clause : as,—

The priestess of Apollo advised them (*principal*), that they should choose Miltiades as their leader (*subordinate*).

4. Co-ordinate clauses are those which are connected by a conjunction corresponding to the English words, *and, but; either, neither; or, nor*.

5. Hence it follows that co-ordinate clauses may be either Principal or Subordinate.

6. Subordinate or secondary clauses are connected with the Principal clauses on which they depend by relative pronouns, or by conjunctions

and relative adverbs; such as, *qui, quae, quod; ut, quo, quin, quominus, si, quare, quum, quando.*

7. Clauses are called Collateral when they stand in the same relation to each other, but are not connected by conjunctions: as,—

Veni, vidi, vici; I came, I saw, I conquered.

8. When the subject or the verb of a clause is suppressed, the clause is called a contracted one: as,—

Miltiades direxit cursum, pervenitque, &c.; i.e., et Miltiades pervenit.

9. Co-ordinate clauses have their verbs in the same mood, and generally in the same tense. (See chap. iii., sect. xii. 1, p. 160.)

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

1. A Verb agrees with its subject in number and person: as,—

*Ego * sum pastor; tu es latro;—I am a shepherd; thou art a robber.*

2. *Obs.* 1. A compound subject (sect. iii., 3, b, p. 128) has a verb in the plural: as,—

Pater et filius ambulant in horto; The father and his son are walking in the garden.

3. *N.B.*—This takes place even when the members are not connected by a conjunction, but supposed to be connected: as,—

Pater, mater, filius in horto ambulant; The father, mother, (and) son are walking in the garden.

4. *Exception* 1.—A compound subject may have a singular verb, when its members are taken together as a united whole: as,—

Gallos a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit; The Marne and the Seine divide the Gauls from the Belgae.

Senatus populusque Romanus intelligit; The senate and Roman people understand.

* The person-endings of the Latin verb are so distinctly marked that the personal pronouns are expressed only when particularly emphatic, as when one individual is to be put in strong contrast to another.

5. *Exception 2.*—The verb often agrees with that member of a compound subject which is nearest to it: as,—

Amat te pater, et mater, et fratres; Your father loves you, and your mother (too), and your brothers.

Orgetorigis filia, et unus e filiis captus est; The daughter of Orgetorix, and one of his sons, was taken prisoner. (See sect. ii., 8, p. 133.)

[*N.B.*—This is generally the case when special attention is to be directed to one member of the subject more than another.]

6. *Obs. 2.* If the members of a compound subject be of different persons, the verb is put in the first person rather than in the second, and in the second rather than in the third: as,—

Ego et tu et ille sumus amici; He and you and I are friends.

Tu et ille estis clari; You and he are famous.

Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus; If Tullia and you are well, Cicero and I are well.

7. *Obs. 3.* When the subjects are connected by an adversative conjunction (e.g., *aut*), the verb may be plural, but is generally singular: as,—

Si Socrates aut Antisthenes diceret, (or dicerent); If Socrates or Antisthenes were to say.

Hæc neque tu neque ego feci, (or fecimus); These things neither you nor I have done.

8. *Obs. 4.* A collective noun or a distributive pronoun *may* have a verb in the plural: as,—

Partes cedunt; A part give way.

Decimus quisque ad supplicium lecti sunt; Every tenth man was selected for punishment.

Uterque eorum educunt copias; Each of them leads out his forces.

9. *Obs. 5.* When the second member of a compound subject is connected to the first by the preposition *cum*, "along with," the verb may be in the singular, but is generally in the plural: as,—

Ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur, (or capitur);
The general himself, with several chiefs, is taken.

10. *Obs. 6.* A complex subject has a verb in the singular: as,—

Humanum est errare; It is natural to man to err.

In errore perseverare, turpe est; To persevere in error is disgraceful.

Quod hunc librum legisti, gratum est mihi; It is gratifying to me that you have read this book; or, That you have read this book, is gratifying to me.

11. The subject to a verb in the infinitive mood is put in the accusative: as,—

Responderunt se (accus.) facturos esse, &c.; They replied that *they* would do, &c.

SECTION II.

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

1. An adjective (whether pronoun, numeral, participle, or adjective proper) agrees with its own * substantive in gender, number, and case: as,—

Puer est sedulus; The boy is diligent.

Puella est sedula; The girl is diligent.

Sorores tuas; Your sisters.

2. If an adjective refers to a substantive in a different clause, it agrees with it in gender and number only: as,—

Amicus adest, sed cum non video; My friend is present, but I do not see him.

3. Thus, the relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent substantive in gender and number, and also in person: as,—

Cares, qui tum incolbant Lemnum; The Carians, who at that time inhabited Lemnos.

[The case of the relative depends on the construction of the clause to which it belongs.]

4. When an adjective (or relative) applies to two or more substantives, whether singular or plural, it is put in the plural number: as,—

Pater et filius sunt clari; The father and the son are famous.

Tu et frater tuus, qui estis clari; Your brother and you, who are famous.

5. When an adjective (or relative) applies to two or more substantives of different genders, it takes the gender of the masculine substantive rather than that of the feminine; and of the feminine rather than of the neuter: as,—

Pater et mater puellae sunt mortui; The father and the mother of the girl are dead.

Matres et parvuli liberi, quorum aetas, &c.; The mothers and little children, whose age, &c.

6. *Exception 1.*—When the substantives are names of inanimate objects, the adjective (or relative) is put in the neuter, even though the substantives be both of the same gender: as,—

Virtus et vitium inter se contraria sunt; Virtue and vice are (*things*) contrary to one another.

* By the term "own substantive" is meant the substantive in the same clause as the adjective, and modified by it.

Otium atque divitiæ, quæ prima mortales ducunt; Leisure and riches, which (*things*) men consider chief blessings.

Nox atque præda hostes remorata sunt; Night and plundering delayed the enemy.

7. When the names of persons and inanimate objects are combined, the adjective (or relative) may agree with the personal names, or be in the neuter: as,—

Rex et regia classis profecti sunt; The king and the king's fleet started.

Romani regem regnumque Mædoniæ sua futura sciunt; The Romans know that the king and the kingdom of Mædonia will be theirs.

8. *Exception 2.*—But an adjective (or relative) often agrees only with the substantive which is nearest to it: as,—

Orgetorigis filia, et unus e filiis captus est; The daughter of Orgetorix, and one of his sons, was taken captive.

Eæ frugēs atque fructus, quos terra gignit; Those crops and fruits, which the earth brings forth.

Agri et mariæ omnia; All lands and seas.

Or it may be repeated before each: as,—

Omnes agri, et omnia maria; All lands, and all seas.

9. When the relative pron. refers to a subst. which is explained by another subst. in the relative clause (the verb of the relative clause being *sum*, or a verb of *naming*), it may agree either with the antecedent substantive or with the explanatory one: as,—

Animal quod homo vocatur; or, *Animal qui homo vocatur*; The animal which is called man.

10. When an adjective (or relative) refers to a phrase or a clause, it must be neuter: as,—

Humanum est errare; It is natural to man to err.

Sapientes contenti sunt rebus suis, quod est summum bonum; Wise men are content with their lot (*own things*), which (*circumstance of being content*) is the greatest blessing.

11. A collective noun, or a distributive pronoun, may have an adjective in the plural, the gender of the adjective being determined by the connection: as,—

Pars (seil. militum) dispersi cedunt; A portion (of the soldiers) being separated from the rest, give way.

Exercitum mittit, qui videant; He sends the army to reconnoitre.

12. The gender of an adjective is often determined rather by the idea conveyed than by the strict grammatical form; this is called the "*Constructio ad intellectum*," or "*Synesis*:" as,—

Capita conjurationis caesi sunt; The heads (*i.e.*, chiefs) of the conspiracy were put to death.

13. Adjectives are often used substantively,—those referring to males being masculine; to females, feminine; and to things, neuter: as,—

Boni et sapientes ex urbe pulsi sunt; The good and wise (*men*) have been driven from the city.

Il qui (or simply *qui*) *virtutem amant*; Those (men) who love virtue.

14. An adjective in the neuter gender often *appears* to modify a masculine or feminine substantive; but in such cases it is really an adjective used substantively, and is placed in apposition to the substantive: as,—

Lupus est triste stabulis; The wolf is a sad thing (or plague) on (or for) the stalls.

Varium et mutabile semper femina; A woman (woman-kind) is a changeable and fickle thing.

N.B.—These principles apply to adjectives, whether used as simple attributes or as predicates.

SECTION III.

APPOSITION.*

1. Substantives that stand in apposition to one another agree in case: as,—

Miltiades, filius Cimonis; Miltiades, the son of Cimon.

Tullia, deliciae meae; Tullia, my darling.

Maecenas, dulce decus meum; Maecenas, my sweet honour.

N.B.—In translating an apposition we often require to supply *as*,—

Miltiades praetor Persas fugavit; Miltiades, as praetor (*i.e.*, in his capacity of praetor, or general), routed the Persians.

2. *Obs.* 1. The same rule applies when the second substantive is used as part of the predicate: as,—

Caesar erat summus imperator; Caesar was a most distinguished commander.

N.B.—This kind of apposition occurs with—

(1.) Substantive verbs, (*as, sum, existo, fio, &c.*)

(2.) Passive verbs of naming and choosing (*as, nominor, creor*).

(3.) Verbs of seeming or being thought (*as, vidcor, existimor*).

(4.) Verbs of gesture (*as, incedo*).

3. *Obs.* 2. Those of the preceding four classes of verbs which have an active voice, may take after the active form two accusatives, the second of which is put in apposition to the former, to complete the idea of the verb: as,—

Romulus urbem Romam vocavit; Romulus called the city Rome.

* Two substantives are said to be in *apposition*, when one is appended to the other to explain or limit it.

Populus Numam regem creavit; The people elected Numa as king.

4. A substantive in apposition to two or more substantives is usually in the plural: as,—

Cneius et Publius Scipiones; Cneius and Publius Scipio (i.e., the Scipios, Cneius and Publius).

Cneius et Publius Scipiones, duo fulmina belli; Cneius and Publius Scipio, the two thunderbolts of war.

5. If the substantive in apposition has two forms (masculine and feminine), it generally assumes the gender of the noun explained: as,—

Leo, rex bestiarum; The lion, king of beasts.

Aquila, regina avium; The eagle, king of birds.

Philosophia, magistra vitae; Philosophy, the guide of life.

6. When *urbs*, *oppidum*, and such terms, stand in apposition to plural names of cities, they must be singular; and in these cases the adjective of the predicate must agree with the apposition: as,—

Pervenit Athenas, urbem Graeciae florentissimam; He reached Athens, a most flourishing city of Greece.

THE CASES.

SECTION IV.

THE NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE.

1. The Nominative is used to express the subject of the sentence, or the substantival predicate. (Sect. i., 1, p. 130, and iii., 2, p. 134.)

2. The Vocative is used in expressions of address; as, *Fili!* O son! But the nominative often takes the place of the vocative, even in address.

SECTION V.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

1. The Accusative expresses the direct object of an action indicated by a transitive verb. It answers to the questions, Whom? What? To what place? During what time? &c.

2. Transitive verbs govern* the accusative of the object; as,—

* By the term "govern," it is simply meant that the *practice* of the Latins was to put an accusative case after a transitive verb; just as in English it is the practice to use that form of the noun which we call the "objective" (accusative) case after transitive verbs and prepositions: as, "He struck me,"—*not*, "He struck I;" "I walked with him,"—*not*, "I walked with he."

Fugat hostes; He routs the enemy.

Mittunt colonos; They send colonists.

3. *Obs.* 1. But many transitive verbs govern the genitive, dative, or ablative. (See sects. vi., vii., and viii. of this chapter.)
4. *Obs.* 2. Many verbs which are usually intransitive are occasionally employed in a transitive sense, and may therefore have an accusative after them (see note, p. 125): as,—

Tuum casum doleo; I grieve at your misfortune.

Mater uerem filii flet; The mother weeps-for the death of her son.

5. Any verb, whether it be transitive or intransitive, may govern, in the accusative, a substantive of kindred signification: as,—

Vivere beatam vitam; To live a happy life.

Pugniam pugnare; To fight a battle.

Navigare aequor; To sail over the sea.

6. Hence many verbs are followed by two accusatives—the one expressing a person, the other a thing.* Such are verbs of asking,† teaching, entreating, warning, concealing: as,—

Caesar flagitat frumentum Aeduos; Caesar demands corn from the Aedui.

Legati Caesarem pacem poseunt; The ambassadors beg peace from Caesar.

Docuit pueros elementa; He taught boys the elements (of learning).

Puer patrem nihil celavit; The boy concealed nothing from his father.

7. *Obs.* 1. But instead of the accusative we often find the ablative of the thing, with *de*; as,—

Docuit senatum de conjuratione; He told the senate of the conspiracy.

And of the person with *a* or *ab*; as,—

Legati pacem a Caesare poseunt; The ambassadors beg peace from Caesar.

8. *Obs.* 2. Transitive verbs compounded with *trans* (see arts. 17 and 19 of this section) likewise take two accusatives, though the preposition is often repeated before the more remote accusative: as,—

Copias flumen transduxit; or, *Copias trans flumen transiit*;—He conveyed his troops over the river.

* It will be observed that the "accusative of the thing" is really an accusative of kindred signification, and therefore merely completes the meaning of the verb.

† But *peto*, *postulo*, and *quaero* take the ablative with a prep., *ab*, *de*, *ex*, &c.

9. The accusative is often put after intransitive verbs, passive forms, and adjectives, to define them and limit their application; (but see sect. viii., 12, p. 145:) as,—

Tremit artus; He trembles in his limbs.

Regor sententiam; I am asked my opinion.

Miles fractus membra; A soldier broken down in body.

N.B.—This is called the “accusative of reference or limitation.” It is common in poetry, but less so in prose, especially in the case of intransitive verbs and adjectives.

10. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the names of towns and small islands, with *domus*, *rus*, and such terms, are put in the accusative, to indicate the *point to which*: as,—

Pervenit Lemnum; He reaches Lemnus.

Delecti missi sunt Delphos; Chosen men were sent to Delphi.

Rediit domum; He returned home.

11. *Obs.* 1. But with names of countries and large islands a preposition is generally used: as,—

Revertitur in Asiam; He returns to Asia.

12. *Obs.* 2. When a preposition is used with the names of towns and small islands, it is for the purpose of bringing out some special idea: as,—

Ad Romam; Towards Rome,* or Near Rome.

13. *Obs.* 3. When *urbs* or *oppidum*, modified by an adjective, stands in apposition to the name of a town, the preposition *in* is usually added: as,—

Contulit se Tarquinius, in urbem Etruriae florentissimam;
He betook himself to Tarquini, a most flourishing city of Etruria.

14. The accusative expresses extent of space and duration of time: as,—

Perduxit fossam seddecim pedes altam; He ran a ditch sixteen feet deep.

Diem noctemque in salo navem tenuit; He kept the ship out at sea for a day and a night.

15. *Obs.* 1. But distance *how far*, and time *how long*, are sometimes expressed in the ablative: as,—

Sex millibus passuum a Caesaris castris; Six miles from Caesar's camp.

Tribus mensibus abfuit; He was absent for three months.

16. *Obs.* 2. Time how long is sometimes more emphatically noted by *per*: as,—

Per totam noctem; Throughout the whole night.

* The intermediate journey is the leading idea in the first case, and nearness or proximity in the second

17. The accusative is used after the following prepositions:—

<i>Ad</i> , to, up to, near, or nearly.	<i>Junctā</i> , near to, or beside.
<i>Adversus</i> or <i>adversum</i> , opposite,	<i>Ob</i> , against, or on account of.
<i>Antē</i> , before.	[against.
<i>Apud</i> , near, with.	<i>Pēnēs</i> , in the power of.
<i>Circa</i> or <i>circum</i> , around, about.	<i>Per</i> , through.
<i>Circiter</i> , about, (in regard to time or number).	<i>Pōnē</i> , behind.
<i>Cis</i> or <i>citra</i> , on this side of.	<i>Post</i> , after.
<i>Contrā</i> , against.	<i>Praeter</i> , besides, excepting.
<i>Ergā</i> , towards.	<i>Propter</i> , on account of, close by.
<i>Extrā</i> , without, (opposite of within.)	<i>Sēcundum</i> , next after, in accordance with.
<i>Infrā</i> , below, beneath.	<i>Suprā</i> , above.
<i>Inter</i> , between, among.	<i>Trans</i> , on the other side of, beyond.
<i>Intrā</i> , within.	<i>Ultrā</i> , beyond.
	<i>Versus</i> , towards (a place).

18. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, take an accusative when motion towards or throughout is expressed (see sect. viii., 32, p. 147): as,—

Ire in urbem; To go into the city.

Succedere sub aciem; To come close up to the army.

Navigat super segetes; He sails over (above) his corn-fields.

Amicum subter fastigia tecti duxit; He led his friend beneath the roof of his house.

19. Many intransitive verbs of motion, when compounded with the prepositions *trans*, *circum*, *per*, *super*, *praeter*, *ad*, *cum*, *in*, *subter*, (and sometimes *prae* and *ob*), become transitive, and thus take an accusative: as,—

Exercitus flumen transit; The army crossed the river.

Urbem obsident; They besiege the city.

20. *Obs.* But some of these compounds, as *supervenio* and *subeo*, occasionally take the dative.

21. The accusative is used (along with the genitive) after the impersonal verbs *miseret*, *poenitet*, *puget*, *taedet*, and *piget*. (See sect. vii., 8, c, p. 143.)

22. The accusative of neuter pronouns is often used where we might expect the genitive or ablative: as,—

Alia id genus; Other things of this kind.

Id temporis; At that time.

23. The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection, (but see sect. vi., 17, p. 141): as,—

Me miserum! (or, *O me miserum!*) Wretched me!

Heu me infelicem! Ah, luckless me!

24. The accusative is frequently used in elliptical phrases, to which an appropriate verb is easily supplied: as,—

Unde mihi lapidem; Where shall I get a stone? (Supply *sumam*.)

SECTION VI.

THE DATIVE.

1. As the accusative denotes the *direct* or *immediate object*, so the dative represents the *indirect* or *remote object*. In other words, it indicates the person or thing *to which, for which, or in reference to which*, something is done. Hence it denotes,

2. The individual (person or thing) to which anything is given or communicated: as,—

Honos Miltiadi tributus est; Honour was awarded to Miltiades.

Legati nuntiant Caesari; The lieutenants report to Caesar.

3. The individual which is benefited or injured in any way: as,—

Pastor insidias lupo parat; The shepherd lays snares for the wolf.

4. The principle of "advantage or disadvantage" laid down in 3 is a very comprehensive one, and to it may be referred by far the greater number of instances in which the dative occurs. It is more especially manifest in the following classes of verbs:—

(a) To study, consult for, favour, help, profit; heal, spare, indulge: as,—

Studabat novis rebus; He was anxious for a revolution.

(b) To flatter, please, displease; serve, obey, disobey; envy, be angry with, upbraid, threaten; distrust, resist, obstruct, hurt: as,—

Hujus consilium plerisque civitatibus displicebat; His plan was displeasing to most of the states.

(c) To meet, congratulate; trust, persuade, marry (of the female); command: * as,—

Persuadet Castico; He prevails on Casticus.

(d) Most verbs compounded with one of the ten prepositions, *ad, ante—in, inter—post, prae—sub, super—con* and *ob*,—and many verbs compounded with other *preps.*—*as, ab, circum, de, ex, re:* as,

Labienum equitatus praefecit; He appointed Labienus to command the cavalry.

N.B.—The passives of verbs governing the dative are used impersonally: as, *Mihi invidetur*; I am envied.

5. *Obs.* 1. But when the idea of place or movement is to be made prominent, the preposition is often repeated with its case: as,—

Signa inferre in hostes; To advance against the enemy.

* But *juvo, laedo, delecto, offendo, rego, jubeo*, and *guberno* govern the accusative, and some in the above lists take the accusative with the dative.

6. *Obs.* 2. Under one or other of the above heads are included *sum* and its compounds; as,—
Est mihi liber; I have a book.
Prodest amicis; He benefits his friends.
7. The dative often depends on,—
 (a) A whole clause: as,—
Finis-is-fuit populationibus; That put-an-end-to the forays.
 (b) A phrase: as,—
Boreas tenet-adversum proficiscentibus; The north wind blows-right-against those setting out.
Morem-gerere alicui; To humour a person.
 (c) A substantive derived from a verb governing the dative: as,—
Obtemperatio legibus*; Obedience to the laws.
Insidiae consuli; Snares for (against) the consul.
8. In like manner the dative follows adjectives which imply advantage or disadvantage, &c. the like: such as,—
 (a) Friendly, kind, just; useful, profitable; fit, suitable, † necessary;—and their opposites: as,—
Datis videbat locum non acquam esse suis (militibus); Datis saw that the ground was not favourable for his men.
 (b) Near to, like (in externals; see sect. vii., 9, p. 143), equal, related to, and their opposites: as,—
Finitimi Belgis; Next neighbours to the Belgae.
Similis patri; Like his father (in features, &c.)
9. *Obs.* Adverbs of a meaning similar to that of the above adjectives also take a dative: as,—
Convenienter naturae; Agreeably to nature.
10. Two datives are sometimes used after the verbs to be, give, come, send, impute, ‡ &c.; the one indicating the person benefited, and the other the *object, end, or result* of the action (see *Nep. Hann.*, xii., 12, note): as—
Miserunt equitatum auxilio Caesari; § They sent the cavalry for a help to Caesar.
Lacedaemonii veniebant subsidio (scil. iis); The Lacedaemonians were coming up as a reinforcement.

* *Obtempero* is one of the verbs which govern the dative. See 4 (b) of this section.

† But those denoting fitness or unfitness more usually take the accusative, with *ad*: as, *Locus aptus ad insidias*, A place fitted for an ambush.

‡ The verbs most commonly followed by a double dative are *sum, do, duco, tribuo, verto, accipio, relinquo, deliſo, mitto, venio, habeo*.

§ But *Caesari* may depend here on *auxilio*, according to the principle laid down in 7 (c) of this section.

11. The dative is often used after passive verbs and passive adjectives, to denote the principal agent, instead of the ablative with *a* or *ab*: as,—

Amabilis omnibus; To be loved by all.

Minus probatus parentibus; Disapproved of by his parents.

12. The dative is used after the impersonal phrase *opus est* (there is need), to indicate the person for whom something is necessary: as,—

Dux nobis opus est; We need a commander.

13. *Obs.* 1. The *thing wanted* may be expressed either in the nominative or ablative, (see sect. viii., 15, p. 145): as,—

Dux nobis opus est; A leader is necessary to us.

Celeri opus est auxilio; There is need of speedy help.

14. *Obs.* 2. It will be seen that in those constructions which are usually placed under the common rule, "Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the dative with the accusative," the dative is simply a dative of the remote object, as explained in one or other of the preceding articles; and the accusative is an accusative of the direct object. (See sect. v., 1, of this chap.)

15. *Obs.* 3. Many verbs which govern a dative in one sense, govern an accusative in another; as,—

Consulo fratri; I consult for my brother's good.

Consulo fratrem; I ask my brother's advice.

[Verbs of this kind which occur in the Extracts will be noted in the Vocabulary.]

16. *Obs.* 4. On the name of a town in the dative, see sect. vii., 13, note *, p. 144.

17. The dative is used with some interjections: as,—

Hei mihi! Ah, me!

Vac vobis! Woe to you!

SECTION VII.

THE GENITIVE.

1. The genitive case partakes largely of the nature of an adjective; and thus a substantive in the genitive is generally conjoined with another substantive in such a way that the two make up one definite idea: as, *Patris domus*, The father's house; *i.e.*, The paternal house. The genitive also depends on verbs, adjectives, and adverbs. It answers to the questions, Whose? Of whom? Of what?

Obs. Sometimes the genitive is equal to an apposition: as, *Nomen regis*, The name of king—*i.e.*, The kingly name; *Arbor ficis*, The fig-tree.

2. When the genitive follows a substantive derived from a transitive verb, or having a transitive meaning, it may be of two kinds;—(a) subjective; (b) objective. Thus, *Amor parentum*, The love of parents, may

mean (*a*) the love which parents (as the subject) bear to their children—(this is the subjective genitive;) or (*b*) the love which children bear to their parents (as the objects)—(this is the objective genitive.) The genitive denotes—

3. The author or possessor: as,—

Caesaris filius; Caesar's son.

Libri Ciceronis; The books of Cicero, (*i.e.*, either his writings or his property.)

4. The part, duty, or characteristic: as,—

Regis est administrare leges; It is the king's duty to execute the laws.

Exception.—But the possessive pronouns are used in the nominative singular neuter: as,—

Meum est id procurare; It is my duty to manage that.

5. The whole of which anything is a part, (partitive genitive:) as,—

Magna vis hominum; A great number of men.

6. The words which usually govern such genitives are,—

(*a*) The nominative or accusative singular neuter of quantitative adjectives and pronouns; as, *multum, amplius, minus, tantum, nihil, id, quid*, &c.: as,—

Multum pecuniae; Much money.

*Quid novi?** What news?

(*b*) Adverbs of quantity—*satis, nimis, nimium, parum*; of place—*huc, eo, ibi, ubi, ubicunque, nusquam*; of time—*postea, interea*: as,—

Satis pecuniae; Enough of money.

Ubicunque terrarum; In whatever part of the earth.

Eo recordiæ; To such a degree of madness.

Postea loci; Afterwards.

(*c*) All partitive words, of whatever kind—substantives, adjectives, numerals, pronouns, the comparatives and superlatives of adjectives: as,—

Multi militum; Many of the soldiers.

Solus omnium; He alone of all.

Tria millia equitum; Three thousand cavalry.

Quis vestrum? Which of you?

Doctissimus Romanorum; The most learned of the Romans.

7. The quality, nature, quantity, &c.; but in these instances, it is accompanied by an adjective, (see sect. viii., 16, p. 146): as,—

Puer magni ingenii; A boy of great talent.

* But if the adjective were of the third declension this would not be allowable, as it would cause ambiguity. We could not say, *quid utilis*, or *aliquid utilis*; but *quid utile*, or *aliquid utile*.

8. The object of mental affections, after—

(a) Adjectives denoting knowledge, memory, certainty, inclination to, patience, and their opposites: as,—

Ignarus mali; Ignorant of evil.*Memor beneficii*; Mindful of a favour.*Amantior virtutis*; More fond of virtue.*Avidus gloriae*; Greedy of fame.

(b) Verbs signifying to remember, pity, forget: * as,—

Meminit malorum praeteritorum; He remembers past misfortunes.*Miserere servorum*; Have pity on the slaves.(c) Certain impersonal verbs, such as *refert* and *interest*, †—as, *Refert regis*, It concerns the king; and *miseret*, *poenitet*, *pulet*, *taedet*, and *piget*, to express the object which excites pity, shame, &c.: as,—*Miseret me tui*; I pity you.*Taedet me vitae*; I am weary of my life.

9. The object, after verbs and adjectives expressing plenty, ‡ power, participation, likeness, § and their opposites: as,—

Indigebat opum; He needed resources.*Plenus irae*; Full of anger.*Similis patris*; Like his father (in nature, disposition, &c.)10. The price or value, in an indefinite way, in the case of such adjectives as *magnus*, *plurimus*, *plus*, *minor*, &c.: as,—*Avarus divitias magni aestimat*; The avaricious man sets a great value on wealth.*Pravum minimi habeo*; I hold the worthless man in very small esteem.11. *N.B.*—If a *substantive* is used to indicate the price, it is usually put in the ablative; and even with the adjectives noted in 10 the ablative is often used. (See sect. viii., 17, p. 146.)

12. The crime or ground of accusation, with verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting: as,—

Miltiadem proditoris accusaverunt; They accused Miltiades of treason.

* Verbs signifying to remember or forget also take the accusative.

† But with these verbs the possessive pronouns are used in the forms *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*: as, *Non mea refert*, It does not concern me. Some scholars consider these forms as the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re*; while others regard the phrases as abbreviations for *rem meam fert*, and *inter rem est meam*. See Key, Lat. Gr., § 910.

‡ Adjectives of plenty or want also take the ablative.

§ Adjectives of likeness or unlikeness also take the dative. (See sect. vi., 8, 9, p. 140.)

Obs. But with these verbs the ablative is often used: as,—
Accusat. ~ est crimine Paro; He was accused on a charge in
 reference to Paros.

13. Place where, in singular nouns of the first or second declension: * as—
Mortuus est Magnesiæ; He died at Magnesia.

14. *Obs.* So the following genitives:—*Domi,* At home; *Belli,* or *militiæ,*
 At war, (in the phrase, *Domi bellique*); *Humi,* On the ground.

SECTION VIII.

THE ABLATIVE.

1. The ablative is used in Latin to express those relations which in English we indicate by *from, with, in, by, at, &c.* Hence it denotes—

2. The cause or reason: as,—

Arideo studio; I burn with (*i.e.*, by reason of) zeal.

3. The instrument, means, or material: as,—

Interfecit hostem gladio; He slew his enemy with a sword.
Vivunt lacte et carne; They live on milk and flesh.

4. *Obs.* 1. Under one or other of the two preceding heads comes the ablative, after the adjectives, *contentus, natus, satus, ortus, editus,* and the like; also *fretus, praeditus*: as,—

Fretus numero copiarum; Relying on the number of his forces.

5. *Exception.*—After adjectives signifying origin or descent, a preposition (*ex, de, or ab*) is sometimes used before the ablative: as,—

Ex qua Themistocles natus est; Of whom Themistocles was born.

6. *Obs.* 2. But if the agent (or instrument) be a person, the preposition *a or ab* is used: as,—

Caesar certior factus est ab exploratoribus; Caesar is certified by scouts.

And sometimes *per* or *propter*, with the accusative: as,—

Per amicos liberatus est; He was set at liberty through (the instrumentality of) his friends.

7. *Obs.* 3. If the agent be a thing personified, the preposition is also used: as,—

Occasionem datam a fortuna; The opportunity afforded by Fortune.

* For the theory which regards these forms as datives, see Schmitz, *Advanced Lat. Gr.* (Chambers), § 268. See also sect. viii., 26, p. 146.

8. *Obs.* 4. Sometimes, on the contrary, the ablative of a personal name is used without a preposition, when the agency is more prominent than the person : as,—

Legione militibusque perducit fossam; By (the agency of) the legion and the soldiers he runs a ditch.

9. *Obs.* 5. The deponent verbs, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, take the ablative of the object : as,—

Potiri imperio; To take possession of the sovereignty.

[*N.B.*—These are simply instances of the “cause, manner, or instrument,”]

10. *Exception.*—But *potior* often takes the genitive : as,—

Potiri Galliae, To take possession of Gaul.

11. The mode or manner : as,—

Fecit more majorum; He did it after the manner of his ancestors.

12. Allied to the foregoing construction is the ablative of limitation, expressed in English by *as to*, *in regard to* : as,—

Aeger pedibus; Diseased in the feet.

Captus oculis; Blind.

Gallus natione; A Gaul by birth.

Major natu; Older.

13. *Exception.*—A preposition is sometimes used with an ablative of limitation ; as,—

Caesar metuebat, ne a re frumentaria laboraret; Caesar was beginning to be afraid lest he should be in difficulty in the matter of corn.

14. Supply, with verbs and adjectives signifying, plenty, want,* filling, emptying, &c. (see sect. vii., 9, p. 143); but when persons are mentioned, *liber* takes a prep., as, *Libera arbitris*; Free from witnesses : (see note to *Nep. Milt.*, iii. 16 :) as,—

Germania fluminibus abundat; Germany abounds in rivers.

Carebat nomine; He was without the name.

Plenus ira; Full of anger.

15. *Obs.* *Opus est*, and *usus est*, *one has need*, may take the ablative of the thing wanted ; which, however, is often expressed in the nominative (see sect. vi., 13, p. 141) : as,—

Opus est mihi adiutore; or, *Adiutor opus est mihi*;—I need a helper.

* *Ego* and *indigeo* also take the genitive.

16. Quality or property, when conjoined with an adjective (see sect. vii., 7, p. 142): as,—
Erat regia dignitate; He was of royal dignity.
Statura fuit humili; He was of low stature.
17. Price or amount, with verbs of buying, selling, valuing, hiring, fining, &c.: as,—
Patriam auro vendidit; He sold his country for gold.
Multatus est pecunia; He was fined in a sum of money.
18. *Obs.* Under this head comes the ablative with *dignus, indignus*: as,—
Dignus laude; Worthy of praise.
19. Measure, with comparatives and superlatives to express excess or deficiency: as,—
Multo major; Greater by far.
20. Superiority or inferiority, with comparatives to indicate the object with which comparison is instituted: as,—
Filia pulchrior matre; A daughter more beautiful than her mother.
21. *Obs.* When *quam* is used in comparisons, the second substantive is coupled to the first by it, and takes the same case: as,—
Filia pulchrior est quam mater; The daughter is more beautiful than the mother (*is*).
22. *Separation*, after verbs of removing, freeing, delivering, depriving, abstaining, abandoning (see 33, p. 147): as,—
Caesar castra loco movit; Caesar shifted his camp from the place.
Destiterunt hoc conatu; They abandoned this attempt.
Urbem commeatu privavit; He deprived the city of thoroughfare, (*i. e.*, of egress and ingress.)
23. *Obs.* With many of these verbs—such as to remove, abstain, prevent, exclude—a preposition is often added before the ablative: as,—
Pellere ex urbe; To drive from the city.
Exire e domo; To go forth from the house.
24. Place whence: as,—
Profectus est Athenis; He started from Athens.
25. *Obs.* A preposition is often added, to bring out more fully some particular idea, (see note *, p. 137): as,—
A Roma; From (near) Rome; or, (in a direction) from Rome.
26. Place where, more especially in the names of towns or small

islands, if the noun be of the third declension, or the plural number (see sect. vii. 13, p. 144): as,—

Mortuus est Carthagine; He died at Carthage.

Videbat se non tutum (esse) Argis; He saw that he was not safe at Argos.

27. *Obs.* 1. This implies the place or road by or along which one goes: as,—

Frumentum flumine Arare navibus subveerat; He had brought corn up the river Arar in ships.

Terra marique; By land and sea.

28. *Obs.* 2. Many words not proper names of places come under this principle; as, *domus, rus, locus, dextra, laeva*: as,—

Profeiscens domo; Starting from home.

Eo loco manere; To remain in that place.

Dextra; On the right hand.

29. Time when: as,—

Quinto die; On the fifth day.

Trecentesimo anno; In the three hundredth year.

30. *Obs.* So also occasionally time *within which*: as,—

Paucis diebus mortuus est; He died within a few days.

31. The ablative is used with the prepositions,—

A, ab, or abs, from.

Absque, without (*i.e.*, wanting).

Clam, secretly.

Coram, in presence of.

Cum, with.

De, down from, concerning.

E or *ex*, out of, of.

Prae, before, in consequence of.

Pro, before, instead of, or in defence of.

Palam, with the knowledge of, openly.

Sine, without.

Tenus, up to, as far as.

32. *In, sub, and super*, govern the ablative when *rest* or *position in* or *at* is indicated; and *subter*, though rarely (see sect. v. 18, p. 138): as,—

Sacerdotes in arce inveniit; He found priests in the citadel.

33. So also the ablative often follows certain verbs compounded with the prepositions, *a (ab), de, e (ex)*, &c. (see 23, above): as,—

Absesse domo; To be away from home.

Deturbat hostem muris; He dashes down his enemy from the walls.

34. The "ablative absolute." See note on *Nep. Milit.*, chap. iv., 1.

SECTION IX.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. The infinitive mood is a verbal substantive having only two cases, the nominative and the accusative. [The gerund supplies the other cases.] Hence it is used—
2. *First*, as the subject of a sentence, mostly with impersonal verbs and impersonal expressions; * as, *licet, oportet, taedet, certum est, constat, &c.* : as,—
Humanum est errare; It is natural to man to err.
Licet me scire id quid sit? Is it allowed me to know what that is?
3. *Second*, as the object completing the imperfect ideas expressed by the following classes of verbs:—
 - (a) To perceive, feel, think, hope, know, † and such like.
 - (b) To declare, inform, convince, allow, forbid, threaten.
 - (c) To wish, ‡ incline, pretend; be accustomed to, be able; begin, continue, hasten; cease, neglect.
 - (d) After certain adjectives; as, *dignus, indignus, audax, cupidus, nescius, &c.*
4. *Obs.* 1. The infinitive, when in the accusative case, is not governed by a preposition; thus, we do not say, *Ad scribere*, but *Ad scribendum*. (See sect. xii., p. 150, on the gerund.)
5. *Obs.* 2. After verbs signifying to *hope, threaten, promise*, the future infinitive is used in Latin when our idiom requires a present: as,—
Pollicitus est se negotium confecturum esse; He promised to finish the business.
6. The infinitive has its subject in the accusative: as,—
Pythia dixit, incepta prospera futura esse; The priestess said that their undertakings would be prosperous.
7. The infinitive is used in questions in indirect speech (see chap. iii., sect. xi., p. 159), instead of the first and third persons of the indicative. Those of the second person are usually changed into the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.
8. The infinitive is often used in exclamations of wonder, regret, indignant astonishment, &c.: as,—
Mene incepto desistere victam; (*To think*) that I should abandon my undertaking, as if conquered.

* But *accidit, contingit, evenit, restat, reliquum est*, and *fit*, take *ut* with the subjunctive.

† Verbs signifying to *ask, advise, command, and strive*, take *ut* with the subjunctive; but *jubeo* takes the infinitive almost invariably.

‡ A *purpose* is not expressed in Latin by the infinitive, but either (a) by *qui*, with the subjunctive; or (b) by *ut*, with the subjunctive; or (c) by the supine; or (d) by the future participle; or (e) by the gerund or (f) by the gerundive; or (g) by *causa* or *gratia*, with the genitive.

9. The infinitive is often used in animated narrative as an indicative. This is called the historical infinitive. The subject is then in the nominative case: as,—

Diem ex die ducere Aedui; The Aedui put him off, day after day.

SECTION X.

THE SUPINES.

1. The supine in *-um* is used after verbs expressing or implying motion, to indicate the *design* of the motion: as,—

Delicti Delphos profecti sunt deliberatum; Chosen men went to Delphi to consult (the oracle).

Misit legatos rogatum auxilium; He sent ambassadors to ask for help.

2. The supine in *u* is simply an *ablative of limitation* (see sect. viii. 12, p. 145), and is used with adjectives, such as *turpis, facilis, utilis, &c.*, and the substantives, *fas, nefas, opus*: as,—

Mirabile dictu; Wonderful to tell.

SECTION XI.

THE PARTICIPLES.

1. Participles are adjectives in form, and, like adjectives, agree with their own substantives in gender, number, and case (see rules for adjectives, chap. ii., sect. ii.) Participles are very often used in the construction called the ablative absolute; and in cases where the English language prefers a subordinate clause. (See sect. viii., 34, p. 147.)

2. But participles have two peculiarities—(a) they denote time; and (b) they may govern the same case as their verbs.

3. The present participle in *-ns*, and the perfect participle in *-us*, have no further peculiarities deserving of notice beyond those mentioned in 2, except that the latter, by an inversion of syntax similar to that which is found in the so-called ablative absolute, is often equivalent to a substantive: as,—

Ab urbe condita; From the city being built,—*i.e.*, From the foundation of the city.

4. The future participle active, as already stated, is used to express a *purpose*: as,—

Delphos profecti sunt, Apollinem consulturi They went to Delphi, to ask the advice of Apollo.

5. The future participle passive, or gerundive, implies *necessity* or

worthiness. It agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case :
as,—

Amandus est ; He deserves to be loved.

Amandae sunt ; They are worthy to be loved.

6. The nom. or acc. neuter of this gerundive is very often used impersonally with the parts of the verb *sum*, the name of the person by whom the action must be done being put in the dative : as,—

Morendum est omnibus ; All must die,—i.e., dying is (a necessity) to all.

7. *Obs.* Sometimes the ablative with *a* or *ab* is used instead of the dative : as,—

A consulibus mea causa suscipienda est ; My cause must be undertaken by the consuls.

8. The gerundive is very often used in agreement with a noun (in all cases except the nominative, and in all genders), instead of the gerund followed by the accusative, (but see below, xii., 2, b, p. 150;) as,—

Ad eas res conficiendas ; To complete these matters.

Gen. *Scribendae epistolae*, instead of *Scribendi epistolam* ;
Of writing a letter.

Dat. *Scribendae epistolae*, instead of *Scribendo epistolam* ; To
or for writing a letter.

Acc. *Ad scribendam epistolam*, instead of *Ad scribendum
epistolam* ; To write a letter

Abl. *Scribenda epistola*, instead of *Scribendo epistolam* ; By
writing a letter.

SECTION XII.

THE GERUND.

1. The gerund is a regular noun, wanting the nominative and vocative, and its cases are treated accordingly. *In use*, the infinitive and the gerund make up a perfect noun ; thus,—

Nom. *Scribere est utile* ; Writing is useful.

Gen. *Ars scribendi est utilis* ; The art of writing is useful.

Dat. *Charta scribendo est utilis* ; Paper is useful for writing.

Acc. { *Scribere disco* ; I learn writing.
 { *Inter scribendum disco* ; I learn during (or while) writing.

Abl. *Scribendo discimus* ; We learn by writing.

2. But observe—

(a) That the genitive of the gerund is governed by substantives and adjectives, but not by verbs.

(b) That the dative and accusative are not used with an accusative case following. Thus we can say, *Scribendo* (ablative) *epistolas*, By

- writing letters; but rarely *Charta est utilis scribendo* (dative) *epistolas*, or, *Ad scribendum epistolas*. In such cases the gerundive must be employed, and be made to agree with the substantive; as, *Charta est utilis scribendis epistolis*; or, *Ad scribendas epistolas*.
- (c) The accusative gerund is only used with prepositions, and most commonly with *ad*, *inter*, and *ob*.
- (d) The ablative gerund is most commonly used as the ablative of the instrument or manner, or after the prepositions *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*; not with *sine*.

3. The gerund governs the same case as its verb: as,—

Scribendi epistolas; Of writing letters.

Parcendo victis; By sparing the conquered.

SECTION XIII.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. The imperative mood is used in principal clauses to express a command or a wish.

2. In counsels, commands, exhortations, or requests, the subjunctive mood is very often used in the third person for the imperative; and also in the second person, especially when used indefinitely: as,—

Abeat; Let him be off.

3. In negative commands the second person perfect subjunctive (or future perfect indicative), and the third person present and perfect subjunctive (or future perfect indicative) are used for the present imperative: as,—

Hoc ne dixeris; Do not say so.

4. The future imperative is used in laws, and similar documents.
5. The imperative of direct statements becomes the subjunctive in indirect.

CHAPTER III.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

INTRODUCTORY.

1. THE clauses of a compound sentence are either (a) Principal or Independent, or (b) Subordinate or Dependent.
2. A Principal or Independent clause is one which makes a leading assertion; its construction does not depend on any other clause.

3. A Subordinate clause cannot stand by itself, but, to be understood, must be accompanied by a Principal clause.

4. A Subordinate clause serves to modify either a whole clause, or some special word or phrase of the clause on which it depends. Sometimes the Subordinate clause serves as subject to the verb of the Principal: as,—

Quod librum legisti, gratum est mihi.

Or as object,—

Misit de servis suis, quem habuit fidelissimum.

5. The clauses of a compound sentence are connected together either—

(a) By conjunctions; as *et, atque, nec, sed, aut, nam, si, ut, &c.*

(b) By relative adverbs; as, *quare, unde, &c.*

(c) By the forms of the relative pronoun *qui*.

6. Subordinate clauses are generally introduced to express such circumstances as *time, cause, purpose, result*. (See sect. iii., 2, p. 154.)

7. A clause which is introduced by a conjunction, indicating *time, condition, cause, &c.*, is called the *protasis* (or antecedent); the other (the independent) is called the *apodosis* (or consequent): as,—

Si Darius intereat (protasis), *Europa erit tuta* (apodosis);
If Darius perish, Europe will be safe.

8. In co-ordinate clauses, whether Principal or Subordinate, the verbs are almost always in the same mood, and generally in the same tense, (see sect. xii., 1, p. 160, and 4, *sq.*, p. 161): as,—

Lemnum revertitur, et postulat; He returns to Lemnus, and demands.

Quum esset magnus numerus, et multi peterent, &c.; When there was a great number, and (when) many sought.

9. In Principal clauses the verb, as making a main statement, is most commonly in the indicative or the imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive. (See sect. ii., 2, p. 153.)

10. In Subordinate clauses, in which the statement is generally of a doubtful or contingent character, the verb is usually in the subjunctive mood, but occasionally in the indicative.

SECTION II.

PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

1. Since the indicative mood is employed to represent a state or an action simply as a fact, either in an affirmative, or a negative, or an interrogative form, it is used,—

(a) In Principal clauses stating what is a fact, or assumed to be a fact: as,—

Tum Thraces eas regiones tenebant; The Thracians at that time possessed those parts.

(b) In direct questions: * as,—

Quid agis? What are you doing?

(For indirect questions, see sect. x., p. 159.)

2. Since the subjunctive mood is employed to represent a state or an action in a doubtful or contingent manner, it is found in those Principal clauses which partake of this character. These are,—

(1.) A wish: as,—

Valdeas; May you be in good health: (farewell.)

Utinam possim; Would that I were able!

(2.) A possibility: as,—

Aliquis dicat; Some one may (possibly) say.

(3.) A supposition: as,—

Dies deficiat, si; The time (I suppose) would fail me were I, &c.

(4.) A concession: as,—

Sint hæc falsa; (I grant) this may be false.

(5.) A question expressed doubtfully: as,—

Quid agamus? What can we do?

SECTION III.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

1. The first step to be taken in analysing a Latin sentence, or in turning an English sentence into Latin, is to decide the character of each clause of the sentence. This is, in most cases, easily done by examining the first word† of the clause, whether it be a conjunction, a relative adverb, or a relative pronoun; but the learner must remember that the same conjunc-

* Direct questions (*i.e.*, questions not dependent on any word or clause going before) are asked by interrogative particles (adverbs or conjunctions), *ne, nonne, num, utrum, an;* *quare, cur, quando, quomodo, ubi, &c.* Or, secondly, by pronouns; *as, quis, qui, qualis, quantus, equis, &c.*

1. Interrogative particles:—

(a) *Ve* simply asks for Information: *Scribite puer?* Is the boy writing?

(b) *Nonne* expects the answer, Yes: *Nonne putas?* Don't you think? (Yes.)

(c) *Num* expects the answer, No: *Num putas?* Do you think? (No.)

(d) *Utrum* (*uter*, which of two) is used in double questions, followed by *an;* as, *Utrum nosmet moenibus defendemus, an obviam hostibus ibimus?* Whether shall we defend ourselves by our fortifications, or shall we go to meet the enemy?

2. Interrogative pronouns; *as, Quis hoc fecit?* Who did this?—*Quid agis?* What are you doing?

† The characteristic word is, in Latin, sometimes projected into the clause, but very seldom farther than the third place: *as, Illi, desperatis rebus, quum solvissent nares;* for, *Quum illi, &c.*

tive word may express different ideas, and therefore introduce different kinds of clauses: thus *quum* may introduce either a temporal or a causal clause. Hence conjunctive words play an important part in subordinate clauses; but the learner must carefully guard against the too common error of supposing that the conjunctive word *governs* the mood. In all cases, it is *the nature of the statement* which decides not only what mood is to be used, but also what conjunctive word must introduce the clause.

2. It may be laid down, then, as a general rule, that in all subordinate clauses, in which the statement is represented as dependent on another statement, either as *purpose, aim, consequence, condition, or imaginary comparison*, the verb will be in the subjunctive mood.

3. It often happens that a *fact* is stated in a subordinate clause by a verb in the subjunctive mood. In such cases the *secondary* nature of the clause, which is connected with the leading clause, so as to be necessary to its completeness, seems to throw a shade of indefiniteness over it (see sect. vii., 2, a, p. 157): as,—

Accidit ut, &c., quum Miltiades floreret; It happened that, &c., when Miltiades flourished.

4. Subordinate clauses may be divided into *final, conditional, concessive, temporal, causal, relative, interrogative*.

SECTION IV.

FINAL CLAUSES.

1. FINAL CLAUSES, expressing the purpose or result, are introduced by the conjunctions *ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus*, and the relative *qui*; and have their verbs in the subjunctive mood.

2. *Ut* or *ne* expresses a *purpose* (see note †, p. 148): as,—

Misit servum ad regem, ut ei nuntiaret; He sent a slave to the king, to tell him (*i.e.*, for the purpose of telling).

Themistocles angustias quaerebat, ne multitudine circumiretur; Themistocles sought the narrow part (of the sea), that he might not be surrounded by the large number (of ships).

3. *Ut* or *ne* expresses a consequence or a result, (see Ncp. Milt., vii., 13, note): as,—

Adeo angusto mari conflavit, ut multitudo navium explicari non poterit (see sect. xii., 7, p. 161); He engaged in so narrow a part of the sea, that (as a consequence) the multitude of his ships could not be drawn out in full line.

4. *Quo* is sometimes used for *ut*, to express a purpose, especially when the sentence contains a comparative; (*quo* is equal to *ut eo*): as,—

Cæsar castella communit, quo facilius Helvetios prohibere possit; Cæsar erects forts, in order that he may the more easily be able to keep off the Helvetii.

5. *Quin* ("in what manner not," "but that," "but," "without") is used after negative clauses:* as,—

Nemo est quin putet; There is no one but thinks.

Nemo dubitabat, quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum; No one doubted but that some written proposal of peace had been made.

6. *Quominus*† is used (rather than *ne*) after verbs of hindering, preventing, opposing, &c. : as,—

Nihil impedit quominus hoc faciamus; Nothing hinders us from doing this.

7. The relative pronoun expresses a purpose : as,—

Servum misit ad regem, qui ei nuntiaret; He sent a slave to the king, to tell (*i.e.*, who should tell) him.

SECTION V.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

1. Conditional clauses, expressing a condition or contingency, are introduced by such conjunctions as *si*, *nisi*, *dum* (see also sect. vii. 1 and 3, pp. 156, 157), *dummodo*, *modo*, &c. ; and take,—

(a) The indicative, if the condition is represented as certain : as,—

Si vis, dabo tibi testes; If (*i.e.*, since) you wish, I will give you evidence.

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi; Arms are of little avail abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.

(b) The subjunctive, if the condition is represented as uncertain ‡ or doubtful : as,—

Si quid habeat, dabit; If he (*chance to*) have anything, he will give it.

2. In hypothetical sentences—

(a) The present subjunctive is used in both clauses (principal and subordinate) to indicate that the supposition, though possible, is not (now) true : as,—

Me dies deficiat, si hoc nunc dicere velim; The day would fail me, if I wish to tell you this now,—(implying that I don't wish.)

* When *quin* asks a (direct) question, it is joined with the indicative; as, *Quin consendimus equos?* Why don't we mount our horses?

† *Quominus*, literally, "in what manner the less;" *i.e.*, "so that not," "from.

‡ This will always be the case when *dum*, *dummodo*, and *modo* mean "provided that."

(b) The imperfect is used in both clauses to indicate that the supposition is not or cannot be true now, and that the inference is not true: as,—

Si pecuniam haberet, daret; If he had any money (but he has not), he would give it (now).

(c) The pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses to indicate that neither the supposition nor the inference was true at a time now past: as,—

Si pecuniam habuisset, dedisset; If he had had any money (but he had not), he would have given it (*then*).

SECTION VI.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

1. Concessive clauses, expressing a concession or admission, are introduced by such conjunctions as *etsi*, *quanquam*, *tametsi*, *licet* (which is properly a verb), *quamvis*, and sometimes *quum*; and take,—

(a) The indicative, when a fact is stated, [*etsi*, *quanquam*, and *tametsi* are most common in this sense:] as,—

Eripuit telum, etsi gladius erat subductus; He drew forth a weapon, though his sword had been abstracted.

(b) The subjunctive, when a mere possibility is expressed, [*licet* and *quamvis* almost always, and *etiamsi* very often in this sense:] as,—

Quamvis ille felix sit, tamen, &c.; Though he be happy, yet, &c.

2. The comparative conjunctions, *velut*, *ac si*, *quasi*, *tanquam si*, &c., when used concessively, ("as if," "as though,") take the subjunctive, because necessarily implying a doubt: as,—

Quid testibus utor, quasi res dubia sit? Why do I employ witnesses, as though the matter were doubtful?

SECTION VII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

1. Temporal clauses (*i.e.*, clauses expressing time) are introduced by such conjunctions as *quum*, *postquam*, *simulac*, *quando*, *dum*, *donec*, *ubi*; and when indicating time, and nothing else, generally take the indicative: as,—

Eo postquam Caesar pervenit; When (after that) Caesar arrived there.

Quum Caesar in Galliam venit; When Caesar came into Gaul.

2. But they take the subjunctive,—

(a) When the idea of *concession* is implied, (see sect. vi., p. 156), or when *time is expressed in a general way* (see sect. iii., 3, p. 154, with example): as,—

Quum haec ita sint; Since these things are so.

(b) When in historical narrative an event or circumstance is regarded as the cause or occasion of a subsequent one: as,—

Delecti Delphos missi sunt, quum multi peterent societatem, &c.; Chosen men were sent to Delphi, when (*i.e.*, because) many were seeking a share, &c.—*Nep. Milt.*, i., 7.

3. *Dum, donec, and quoad* take the subjunctive,—

(a) When the event is represented as contingent, or merely possible: as,—

Pontis custodes reliquit principes, dum ipse abesset; He left the chief men as guardians of the bridge, so long as he might be absent.

(b) When the clauses are final (see sect. iv., p. 154); *i.e.*, when an intention or purpose is suggested: as,—

Milites quievare, dum praefectus inspiceret; The soldiers remained quiet until (*i.e.*, while, or in order that) the commander should inspect, &c.

4. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used,—

(a) To express mere priority; and, in this sense, take the indicative: as,—

Hacc omnia ante facta sunt quam Verres Italiam attigit; All this was done before Verres reached Italy.

(b) To express a connection between one action and another; and, in this sense, have the subjunctive: as,—

*Caesar, priusquam quidquam conaretur, * Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet*; Caesar, before he attempted (should attempt) anything, orders Divitiacus to be called to him.

(c) To introduce a general or indefinite statement; and, in this sense, they have the subjunctive: as,—

Tempestas minatur, antequam surgat; The storm threatens before it rises.

Priusquam audire potuissent; Before they could have heard.

SECTION VIII.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

1. Causal clauses (assigning a cause, or reason, or ground) are introduced by such conjunctive words as *quod, quia, quoniam, quum*; and take,—

* See sect. xii., 5, p. 161.

(a) The indicative when the writer states his own opinion and represents it as the right one: as,—

Quoniam non est genus unum; Since there is not one kind (only).

(b) The subjunctive when the writer repeats the opinion of another, or hints that the reason is not the right one (see Nep. *Milt.*, vii., 19): as,—

Accusatus est proditoris, quod discessisset; He was accused of treason, because (they said) he had retired.

2. But *quum*, when expressing the *cause*, takes the subjunctive: as,—

Quum sit in nobis prudentia; Since (*i.e.*, because) there is wisdom in us.

3. Causal clauses are also introduced by the relative pronoun. (See sect. ix., 2, c, p. 159.)

SECTION IX.

RELATIVE CLAUSES.

1. Relative clauses are introduced by the relative pronouns, relative adverbs, or relative conjunctions; and take,—

(a) The indicative when a fact is stated distinctly: as,—

Nuntius, qui missus est; The messenger who was sent.

(b) The subjunctive when *indirect* statements are made (see sect. xi., 5, p. 160): as,—

Non idem ipsis, qui summas imperii tenerent, expedire: That the same thing was not expedient for them, who held supreme power.

(c) The subjunctive when stating the sentiments of another (see sect. xi., 1, p. 159, and viii., 1, b, above): as,—

Helvetii comparaverunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent; The Helvetii prepared those things which were necessary (as they thought) for their departure.

2. The relative pronoun is followed by the subjunctive when the clause expresses (see sect. iv., 7, p. 155),—

(a) A *purpose*: as,—

Misit servum, qui regi nuntiaret; He sent a slave, to tell the king.

(b) A *result*, (*v* here *qui* is equal to *ut ego, ut tu, ut is, &c.*, after *is, talis, tantus, dignus, tam, ita, &c.*; see iv., 3, p. 154:) as,—

Non is sum, qui (ut ego) hoc faciam; I am not the man to do this,—(*i.e.*, I am not such [a one] who can do this.)

Dignus est, qui laudetur; He is worthy to be praised.

(c) *Ground, reason, or cause* (see sect. viii., 3, p. 153), when *qui* is equal to *cur, quod, or quum* and a pronoun: as,—

Erras, qui census; You err, who think (*i.e.*, because you think.)

Male fecit Hannibal, qui Capuae hiemavit; Hannibal did wrong in wintering (because he wintered) at Capua.

3. The relative is also followed by the subjunctive,—

(a) When an *indefinite statement* is made, especially with such phrases as *Sunt qui, Nemo est, Nescio quis*: as,—

Sunt qui putent; There are persons who think.

(b) When a condition or supposition is implied: as,—

Nihil bonum est, quod hominem non meliorem faciat; Nothing is good, unless it makes (*i.e.*, which does not make) a man better.

SECTION X.

INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES.

1. For direct questions which belong to principal clauses, see chap. ii., sect. i., p. 130, *sq.*

2. Indirect questions are those which depend on some word or sentence going before; they have the verb in the subjunctive: as,—

Dic, quid agas; Tell me what you are doing.

Magna fuit contentio, utrum nocentibus se defenderent, an obviam irent hostibus; There was an earnest discussion whether they should defend themselves by their walls, or whether they should go to meet the enemy.

SECTION XI.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

1. When a writer relates the sentiments of another, he may do it in two ways—

First. He may represent him as speaking in the *first person*, and may therefore quote the words exactly as they were uttered; as, The priestess of Apollo said, "If you appoint Miltiades as commander, your undertaking will be successful." This is called the *oratio recta*, or direct statement.

Secondly. He may give the sentiments of the speaker, but in his own words; as, "The priestess of Apollo said, that if they appointed Miltiades as their commander, their undertaking would be successful." This is called the *oratio obliqua*, or indirect statement.

2. The principles already laid down for principal sentences regulate the construction of the clauses in the *oratio directa*.

3. In the *oratio obliqua*, what appears the most *important* clause in *English* (introduced generally by *that*), is commonly expressed in Latin by the infinitive mood and accusative: as,—

Pythia dixit, incepta prospera futura esse, si, &c.; The priestess of Apollo said, *that* their undertaking would be successful, if, &c.

4. *Exception*.—But when the principal clause contains a *command* or *wish*, the subjunctive is used (sect. xiii., 5, p. 151): as,—

Imperator dixit, milites saluti suae consulere; The commander said, that the troops should consult their own safety.

5. The subordinate clauses of the *oratio obliqua* take the subjunctive (see sect. ix., 7, p. 148): as,—

Pythia dixit incepta prospera futura esse, si Miltiadem imperatorem sumpsissent.

[For examples of the *oratio obliqua*, see Caes. Bell. Gall., chaps. 13, 14, 17, 20, 40.]

SECTION XII.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN THE CLAUSES OF A COMPOUND SENTENCE.

1. When co-ordinate clauses are connected by any of the co-ordinative conjunctions (*et, ac, atque, sed, aut, nec, &c.*), or when the clauses are collateral (see sect. iv. 7, p. 130), the verbs are generally in the same tense; but they often vary in tense when some peculiarity of time or action is to be represented by one or more of them (see Nep. Milt., i., lines 14, 15, 16), as,—

Quum accessisset Lemnum, et vellet redigere incolas sub potentem, et postulasset, &c.; When he *had* approached Lemnus, and *was wishing* to reduce the inhabitants to submission, and *had* demanded, &c.

2. When subordinate clauses are added to principal clauses, the general rule is,—

(a) That a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense in the subordinate clause. In other words—

Present	}	are followed by	{	Present subjunctive, or
Future				Perfect subjunctive (for a completed action).
Present-perfect				

(b) That a historical tense in the principal clause is followed by a historical tense in the subordinate clause. In other words—

Imperfect	}	are followed by	{	Imperfect subjunctive, or
Perfect-aorist *				Pluperfect subjunctive (for an action completed at a prior time).
Pluperfect				

* On the double use of the perfect, see chap. I, sect. 1, 21, p. 127.

Thus—

(c) PRINCIPAL.	SUBORDINATE.	PRINCIPAL.	SUBORDINATE.
{ <i>Scio</i>	<i>quid agas</i>	= I know	what you are doing.
{ <i>Scio</i>	<i>quid egeris</i>	= I know	what you have done.
{ <i>Cognoscam</i>	<i>quid agas</i>	= I shall discover	what you are doing.
{ <i>Cognoscam</i>	<i>quid egeris</i>	= I shall discover	what you have done.
{ <i>Cognovi</i>	<i>quid agas</i>	= I have discovered	what you are doing.
{ <i>Cognovi</i>	<i>quid egeris</i>	= I have discovered	what you have done.
(b) { <i>Sciebam</i>	<i>quid ageres</i>	= I knew	what you were doing.
{ <i>Sciebam</i>	<i>quid egisses</i>	= I knew	what you had done.
{ <i>Cognovi</i>	<i>quid ageres</i>	= I discovered	what you were doing.
{ <i>Cognovi</i>	<i>quid egisses</i>	= I discovered	what you had done.
{ <i>Cognoveram</i>	<i>quid ageres</i>	= I had discovered	what you were doing.
{ <i>Cognoveram</i>	<i>quid egisses</i>	= I had discovered	what you had done.

3. When a subordinate clause depends on an infinitive mood, the tense of its verb is regulated, not by the infinitive, but by the verb on which the infinitive depends: as,—

Dimicare utile arbitratur, priusquam Laedaemonii subsidio veniant; He thinks it advantageous to fight before the Laedaemonians come to help them.

Dimicare utile arbitratur, priusquam Laedaemonii subsidio venirent; He thought it advantageous to fight before the Laedaemonians should come to help them.

4. The above rules for the sequence of tenses are often violated, when some speciality of time or of action is to be indicated by the verb of the subordinate clause (see Notes, Nep. Milt., iv., 22, p. 171): as,—

Renuntiat societatem nisi Alcibiadem tradidisset; He threatens to break off friendly relations unless he should have (at an after time) delivered up Alcibiades.

5. Historical present. A present tense is often used by historians where we should expect a past; and as such presents are virtually past tenses, they are often followed by a verb in the past tense of the subjunctive (see note to Nep. Milt., iv. 16): as,—

Decem praetores creant, qui exercitui praesentent; They elect ten generals, to command the army.

6. The present subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause after a past tense, when the action is represented as continuing: as,—

Hujus vitia emendata sunt adeo virtutibus, ut nemo anteferatur; His vices were to such an extent counterbalanced by merits, that no one is up to this day preferred to him.

7. The perfect subjunctive is often used (where we might expect the imperfect) if the subordinate clause states a historical fact distinctly: as,—

Tanto plus valuerunt Athenienses, ut decemvicem numerum hostium profligarent; The Athenians excelled so much, that they put to flight ten times the (i.e., *their own*) number of the enemy.

[Nepos often uses the perfect subjunctive where the imperfect would be more regular.]

8. When the action or state indicated by the verb of the subordinate clause is represented as over before the action of the principal verb begins, the verb of the subordinate clause must be in the pluperfect* (see 2, *b*, of this sect.): as,—

Putavit se Gracos sub sua retenturum esse potestate, si amicis suis oppida tuenda tradidisset; He thought that he would keep the Greeks in his power, if he were to hand over (*literally*, should have handed over) the towns to their friends to guard them.

Quum venisset, dixit; When he came (i.e., had come), he said.

9. The future perfect (indicative) is often used in the subordinate clause, to indicate that the action of the dependent verb must be over before that of the principal verb begins: as,—

Faciam, si mihi fidem dederis; I shall do it, if you give (*literally*, shall have given) me your promise.

[In English we usually employ a present or a perfect in such cases.]

* This must be carefully attended to, since in English we do not commonly use a pluperfect in such cases.

numerum
so much,
wn) num-

would be

subordinate
rb begins,
cc 2, b, of

estate, si
ught that
were to
towns to

(ome), he

ordinate
over be-

you give

ses.]

only use a

Part Fifth.

NOTES ON EXTRACTS.

N O T E.



In the following 'Notes' reference is often made to the Synopsis of Syntax, at p. 123, *sqq.*, but not so frequently as to render inquiry unnecessary on the part of the pupil himself. The student is earnestly urged to lose no opportunity of impressing on his mind the facts and principles of Construction, by having constant recourse to the system of Syntax provided for his convenience. The habit formed by such a practice will be invaluable to him in his after studies.

Li
tiq
rep
Wa
2
refe
sec
str
gov
3
16,
alre
to
cell
kno
4
5
6
isla
prop
call
call
Tau
Che
tive
in th
Che
son
his
in th
§ C
resol

NOTES ON NEPOS.

MILTIADES.

CHAPTER I.

LINE 1. *Miltiades*: see Table of Greek Nouns, at end of book. § *Antiquitate, gloria*: his family was "of old standing," and of "glorious" reputation, Aeacus (son of Jupiter), Ajax (one of the heroes of the Trojan War), and Codrus (king of Athens), being among his ancestors.

2. *Modestia* (from *modus*) means "control of one's desires," and here refers to obedience and *dutifulness* as a citizen. See Synopsis of Syntax, sect. viii., 2 and 3, p. 144. § *Unus*: the superlative degree is often strengthened by the addition of *unus*, or *unus omnium*. *Omnium* may be governed either by *unus* or by *maxime*. § *On floreret*, see p. 157, 2, a.

3. *Ea actate*, "of such an age." See Synopsis of Syntax, sect. viii., 16, p. 146. § *Ut jam*, &c.: translate, "That his fellow-citizens were already able, not only to entertain good hopes in regard to him, but even to feel a confident assurance that he would turn out such (*i.e.*, of so excellent a character) as they (*afterwards*) judged him to be when thoroughly known;" (*i.e.*, after they had had a trial of his powers.)

4. *Possent*: see Syntax sect. iii., 3, p. 154, and vii., 2, a, p. 157.

5. *Cognitum* is equal to *quum cognovissent*.

6. *Chersonesum*: this is a Greek word, meaning literally a "dry-land-island," or "continent-island"—*i.e.*, a peninsula. It was applied as a proper name to the narrow tongue of land north of the Hellespont, now called the peninsula of Gallipoli, or Dardanelles. There were other places called Chersonese as well, but with some distinguishing epithet; as, the Tauric Chersonese (Crimea), the Golden Chersonese (Malacca), Cymric Chersonese (Jutland), and many others. For *Chersonesum* in the accusative, see Synopsis of Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137. There is a confusion in the statement of Nepos here. The Miltiades who planted the colony in Chersonese was the uncle of our hero, and son of Cypselus. Miltiades, the son of Cimon, was sent as governor of the Chersonese after the death of his brother, Stesagoras, who succeeded the elder Miltiades. § *On vellent* in the subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. iii., 3, p. 154, and vii., 2, a, p. 157. § *Cujus*: any relative (whether pronoun, adverb, or conjunction) may be resolved into a conjunction and a demonstrative; so that *cujus* is here equal

to *et hujus*. § *Generis* refers to *colonos*,—"and when there was a large number of this class." On the planting of colonies, consult Ramsay's "Antiquities," or Smith's "Dictionary of Antiquities."

8. *Delphos*, accusative of *motion-to*. See Synopsis of Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137. Delphi (now *Castrî*), a town in Phocis, on the slope of Mount Parnassus, famed for the oracle of Apollo. § *Deliberatum*, supine in *um*, after verb implying motion. See Syntax, sect. x., p. 149. § *Consulerent*: on this and the other verbs in the subjunctive mood, consult Syntax, pp. 153, 154, 155, 160; and on *consulo* with accusative and with dative, see Vocabulary. *Qui consulerent* is not a mere useless repetition of *deliberatum*. The latter is the general and indefinite term used in reference to seeking advice from an oracle, (and in this case, no doubt, the god was consulted on the proposed expedition generally); whereas *consulerent* here applies to a special point of inquiry—namely, who should lead the colony;—for that is *the point* which bears on the subject before us.

9. *Duce*: see Syntax, sect. viii., 9, p. 145. § *Quo*, ablative of *quis*. § *Potissimum*, "what leader more than another they should employ."

10. *Thracæ*: Thrace, now part of Turkey in Europe, extended from Macedonia and the river Strymon eastward to the Black Sea, and northward to the Danube. After it was conquered by the Romans in the time of Augustus, it was further circumscribed. § The best writers usually put *cum* after the pronouns; æ, *mecum, quibuscum*—not, *cum quibus*.

11. *Dimicandum*: on this gerundive and its construction, see Syntax, sect. xi., 6, p. 150. *Illis* must be supplied. *Armis dimicare* indicates that the contest is expected to be a severe one, and must be decided by valour. § *His* refers to *delecti* above. For its dependence on *præcepit*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, *d*, p. 139. § *Nominatim* is specially emphatic here. The oracles were usually mysterious in their replies, but in this case the very name of the leader is mentioned. § *Pythia*: Apollo was named *Pythius* from the serpent *Python*, which he slew; and hence his priestess, who gave the responses, was called *Pythia*.

12. *Ut sumerent*: see Syntax, sect. iv., 2, p. 154. *Ut* and *qui*, with the subjunctive, are generally to be translated by an English infinitive, as here, "to take." Observe, that though after *præcepit* the first dependent clause has *ut* with a subjunctive, the second has its verb in the infinitive mood. *Præcepit*, in fact, contains two ideas: (1) "She gave an order or advice;" and (2) "She told them." In this first sense it takes the subjunctive (see note †, p. 148); and in the second, like other verbs of *declaring*, it is followed by the accusative and the infinitive.

13. Supply *dixit* (taken out of *præcepit*) before *futura esse*.

14. Arrange the words thus: *Quum Miltiades, profectus Chersonesum classe hoc oraculi responso* ("having started for the Chersonese in the fleet, in accordance with this response of the oracle") *cum delecta manu, accessisset Lemnum*, &c. Strictly speaking, the sentence is a defective one, there being no verb to which *Miltiades* is subject. Examples of such an *anacolouthon* (i.e., in plain English, "blunder") are common in Nepos, who wrote in a careless style. Some consider the *quum* as merely *projected* into the sentence; but such a projection, beyond both the subject and the ablative of cause, is, to say the least, reprehensible.

15. *Lemnum*, (see Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137,) Lemnos, (now *Stalimene*), in the north part of the Aegean Sea, and south from the Chersonese.

16. Before *facere*nt we might expect *ut*; but with *postulo*, *persuadeo*, *monéo*, *volo*, *dico*, *mando*, *oro*, &c., the *ut* is often omitted. Verbs of this kind also take the infinitive instead of the subjunctive. § *Sponte* is used only in the ablative (very rarely in the genitive) singular, and almost always in connection with a possessive pronoun, *mea*, *tua*, &c.

18. *Aquilo*, the north-east wind. As the Chersonese became the home (*domus*) of Miltiades, he was able, after some time, to turn the taunt of the Lemnians into a serious reality.

19. *Septentrionibus* (*septem triones*), the seven plough oxen, or seven stars forming the constellation known as *Ursa Major*, or *Charles' Wain*. The word is often used to indicate the North Pole.

20. *Proficiscen*tibus is the dative depending on *tenet-adversum*, ("makes right against"—i.e., blows "in the teeth of,") which is a compound phrase, equal to a verb of opposing or resisting. See Syntax, sect. vi., 7, b, p. 140.

21. *Tendebat*, "he was bound." *Cursum* is often expressed after *tendebat*.

CHAPTER II.

LINE 1. *Barbarus* was a term applied by the Greeks (and, in imitation of them, by the Romans) to anything strange or outlandish. § *Regione*, ablative, depending on *potitus*. See Syntax, sect. viii., 9, p. 145.

2. *Castellis* is dative after *idonea*, "suited for fortresses." See Syntax, sect. vi., 8, a, p. 140.

3. *Collocavit*,—settled in the country parts, giving to each colonist a piece of ground in perpetuity.

5. *Devicisset*, "thoroughly conquered;" so, *debellare*, &c.

6. *Constituit res*, "arranged" or "settled affairs."

7. *Dignitate*, ablative of *quality*. See Syntax, sect. viii., 16, p. 145.

8. *Quamvis* is usually followed by the subjunctive. But see Syntax, sect. vi., 1, a, p. 156. § *Imperio*: i.e., "supreme military power." § For *nomine* in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 14, p. 145.

9. *Neque eo secius—praestabat*, "nor did he the less carefully, on this account, perform his duties to the Athenians." This refers to certain duties imposed on leaders of colonies; such as the sending home to the mother state supplies of grain or other things, acknowledging her supremacy, showing kindness to her citizens who might visit the Chersonese, &c. § *A quibus* implies not only "from among whom," but "by whose appointment."

13. *Lemnum*, accusative of place to which. See Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137. § *Ex pacto*, "according to agreement," "in fulfilment of the agreement;" i.e., "makes a demand arising out of their bargain."

14. Observe that *sibi* does not refer, as might be expected, to the subject of *tradant*, ("to themselves,") but to the speaker and principal person, Miltiades. § *Urbem*—no city is mentioned; but the chief city of the island, Myrina, is meant. § *Illi*, &c., is parenthetic, and is an explanatory

clause put in by Nepos himself. Had the phrase been that of Miltiades, it would have been, *cos enim dixisse*.

15. *Scse* is at once subject and object to *dedituros esse*, "that they would deliver themselves up." *Scse* is, in such a case, preferable to *se*. § *Sc* here refers to Miltiades; and *habere* is governed by *dicit*, "taken out" of *postulat*.

16. *Chersonesi*: on the case, see Syntax, sect. vii., 13, p. 144.

17. *Ceciderat*, "had fallen out," or "turned out;" "had happened." The metaphor is taken from throwing dice. § *Dicto*, "their own (rash) promise (to surrender)." § *Capti*, "being taken in," "entrapped," applies more particularly to *dicto*. A verb of kindred idea—such as *being forced, induced*—must be supplied to *secunda fortuna*.

19. This sentence is not historically accurate. § The Cyclades (*κύκλος*, a circle), a group of islands in the Aegean Sea, which clustered round Delos.

CHAPTER III.

LINE I. *Eisdem temporibus*, "about the same time," in a very indefinite way. It was about B.C. 508. § Darius the First, son of Hystaspes, was born about B.C. 550, and died B.C. 485.

2. *Scythis*, the dative, depending on *inferre*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 4, d, p. 139, and 14, p. 141. Scythia comprehended a vast region in the north and east of Europe, and the centre, north, and west of Asia.

3. *Qua* is here an adverb equal to *qua parte*, and *not* the relative referring to *pontem*, which is masculine. § *Traduceret* is the subjunctive mood, as noting the purpose in the mind of the builder of the bridge. See Syntax, sect. ix., 1, c, p. 158. *Qua* is equal to *ut ca*.

4. *Abscet* is in the subjunctive, because the thought is that of Darius, and not of Nepos; besides, it is pointedly indefinite,—“so long as he should be absent.” See Syntax, sect. vii., 3, a, p. 157.

5. Ionia and Aolia, or Aeolis, were rich and fertile countries on the western sea-board of Asia Minor, in which many Greek colonies had settled.

7. *Lingua* is an ablative of manner. See Syntax, sect. viii., 11, p. 145. The usual phrase for “to speak Greek” is *Græcè loqui*. § *Incolerent* is in the subjunctive, because expressing the opinion of another. See Syntax, sect. vi., 1, c, p. 158. So also *relinqueretur*, in line 9.

8. On *amicis*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 2, p. 139.

10. *Crederetur*, “might be (safely) intrusted,” as *Darius* thought; hence the subjunctive. See Syntax, sect. ix., 1, c, p. 158. § *Hic* may be an adverb, (“in this state of affairs;”) or it may belong, as an adjective, to *Miltiades* (line 12), for greater emphasis. See chap. vi., line 6, *huic Miltiadi*.

11. On *afferent* and *dimitterent* (line 13), in the subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. iii., 3, n. 154, and vii., 2, a, p. 157.

12. Observe the preposition *a* before *Fortuna*, Fortune being personified. See Syntax, sect. viii., 7, p. 144.

13. *Liberandæ Græciæ*, literally, “of Greece to be delivered”—*i.e.*, “of delivering Greece.” This is a very common inversion of the

syntax, whereby the word which is *inferior* in point of government—*i.e.*, the participial adjective *liberandae*—becomes most important in the sense, as expressing the prominent idea, namely, the *liberation*.

14. *Transportavit* is a remark of the historian put in parenthetically, and is therefore in the indicative mood.

15. From *hortatus est* supply *dixit*, to govern *fore, futuros (esse), posse, and interituum (esse)*. § *Qui Graeci genere*, “who being Greeks by descent.” *Graeci* is in apposition to *qui*, and *genere* is the ablative of limitation. See Syntax, sect. viii., 11 and 12, p. 145.

16. *Liberos a*, “free from,” the preposition being expressed because it is rather the *quarter from which* afflictions might come that is indicated than any definite injury. When persons are mentioned, *liber* is followed by *ab*: as, *Liber ab arbitris*. See Syntax, sect. viii., 14, p. 145.

17. As the bridge was made of boats, the verb *rescindere* is a very appropriate one.

18. *Paucis diebus*, “within a few days,” the ablative expressing not only a point of time, but also a time *within which* something occurs. See Syntax, sect. viii., 30, p. 147.

19. On the mood of *accederet* and *conficeretur*, see Syntax, sect. iii., 3, p. 154, vii., 2, a, p. 157, and xii., 2, p. 160; and on *teneret* (line 20), sect. viii., 1, b, p. 158, and xi., 5, p. 160.

20. *Ipsis* and *multitudini* are datives, after *expedire*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 3 and 4, a, p. 139. § *Summas imperii*, “the chief power.” The usual phrase is *summa*, in the singular; but several cities are spoken of, hence the plural, *summas*. To *summas* supply *res* or *partes*. Some take *summa* as a substantive.

21. *Regno* is the ablative depending on *interiturum*. See Syntax, sect. viii., 3, p. 144.

22. *Quo extincto*, either “who (Darius) having been killed;” or better, “which (kingdom) having been destroyed,” since that would more likely entail their expulsion than the mere death of the sovereign.

23. *Daturos poenas*, &c., “would suffer punishment at the hands of their fellow-citizens;” literally, “would give satisfaction to.” See *poena*, in Vocabulary.

24. *Ipsis*, dative after *utilius*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 8, a, p. 140.

26. *Tam multis consciis*, (because of) “so many being privy to his intentions.”

29. Observe *amicior*, comparative of *amicus*, followed, like *amicus, a, um*, by a dative. See Syntax, sect. vi., 8, a, p. 140. When *hostis, amicus, inimicus*, &c., are used adjectively, they are followed by the dative; and when substantively, by the genitive.

CHAPTER IV.

LINE 1. *Hortantibus amicis*: another instance of inverse syntax. See note 13, chap. iii., above. The main idea is the encouragement and incitement (of friends), but this is expressed by the adjective. This kind of phrase, commonly called an ablative absolute (*i.e.*, a phrase inserted in a sentence, but *said* not to depend in syntax on any word in the sentence),

always expresses either (1) time; or (2) cause, manner, or instrument; or (3) some other accessory notion; and *is* closely connected, both in sense and in syntax, with some word in the sentence. Thus, *amicis-hortantibus* here depends on *comparavit* as an ablative of cause—"he prepared an army, in consequence of (because of—in accordance with) the solicitations and encouragement of his friends."

3. *Ei*, dative after *praefecit*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 4, *d*, p. 139.

4. *Ducenda*, scil., *millia*.

5. *Interserens*, "alleging." § *Hostem* is used adjectively here, and therefore governs the dative, *Atheniensibus*. See note, *Milt.*, iii., 29.

7. *Illi praefecti*, those commanders mentioned before, viz., Datis and Artaphernes. § *Classe appulsa*, another so-called ablative absolute—"when the fleet had been wafted to," i.e., had reached, Euboea.

8. *Ejus gentis*, "that race,"—i.e., the people of Euboea, just mentioned.

9. On the preposition *ad*, before *Atticam*, see Syntax, sect. v., 11, p. 137.

10. *Marathona* is the Greek accusative of Marathon. It is in apposition to *campum*. The Latins did not usually say, as we do, "The city of Athens" (genitive), "The plain of Marathon;" but, "The city Athens," "The plain Marathon." In poets and late writers, however, the genitive is frequently found.

11. *Tumultu (tumeco)*: this word properly means a sudden "swelling or rising," causing panic. It referred specially to a sudden rebellion or war, such as the irruptions of the Gauls into Italy.

13. *Phidippum*, i.e., literally, "the horse-sparer." *Hemerodromos*, i.e., "day-runner," "courier."

14. *Qui* does not agree in gender and number with the antecedent, *generis*; but as the writer is thinking of the individuals of the class (*genus*), and not of the strict grammatical form, he puts the relative in the masculine plural. See Syntax, sect. ii., (9 and) 12, p. 133. This is called the *synesis*, or *ad intellectum* construction. § *Hemerodromos* is the Latin spelling for the Greek word ἡμεροδρόμοι, nominative plural of ἡμεροδρόμος.

15. *Ut nuntiaret*, "that he might declare,"—i.e., for the purpose of declaring. With *mitto*, *proficiscor*, and other such verbs, the *purpose* is usually expressed by *qui*, and the subjunctive mood; but also by *ut* with the subjunctive, as here. § *Quam celeri*, &c., "of how speedy (or immediate) help they stood in need." § On *auxilio*, after *opus est*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 13, p. 141. § *Domī*, "at home,"—i.e., at Athens, as opposed to the other two places, Sparta and Marathon, to which attention was also directed.

16. *Praetores* (from *prae*, before) was the name first given to the Roman generals. But it was afterwards applied to the civil judges, or praetors, and used as a military term only when speaking of foreign states. § On *exercitui*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, *d*, p. 139; and on *praesent*, in the subjunctive, sect. iv., 7, p. 155. Observe that *praesent* is past tense, though the verb of the leading clause is present. See Syntax, sect. xii., 4 and 5, p. 161. To impart more life and vividness to the description, historical writers often employ a present tense where we

should expect a past; and thus verbs which, like *creant* in this case, though actually present are virtually past, take after them a dependent verb in a past tense of the subjunctive: "They elect ten praetors, whose duty *was to be*, to command the army."

17. *Utrum*, (from *uter*, "which of two,") "whether,"—*i.e.*, which of *two* they should do. Its correlative is *an*. See Syntax, sect. x., 2, p. 159.

18. *Defenderet*, "ward off" the enemy; *hostes* being suggested by *hostibus* of the next clause. On *hostibus*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 7, b, p. 140; and for the verbs in the subjunctive mood, consult sect. ix., 1, b, p. 158, and x., 2, p. 159.

19. *Quoque* is the ablative of *quisque*, "at the earliest moment possible," "as soon as possible."

20. *Accessurum (esse)* depends on *dixit*, which is suggested by *nitentur*. Observe the force of the imperfect, "continued to use his utmost endeavours."

21. *Desperari* is used impersonally: "that it was not despaired,"—*i.e.*, that the leaders had no distrust of their courage and bravery. § Instead of *eorum*, we should rather expect *sua*.

22. *Viderent* and *animadvertent* are put in the imperfect, and not the pluperfect subjunctive, as might be expected, because they express continuance, and because the actions which they denote are contemporary with those of the verbs *desperari* and *audere*. § Before *audere* supply *eos*, as subject.

23. *Exiguis copiis* may be an ablative of means (see Syntax, sect. viii., 8, p. 145); but the more usual construction would be *cum*. It is perhaps better to consider it as a (so-called) ablative absolute (see note 1): "their forces being so small,"—*i.e.*, though or while their forces were so small.

CHAPTER V.

LINE 1. *Hoc in tempore*, "during this (eventful) time," or crisis. The preposition marks the *continuance* of the danger; *hoc tempore* would indicate merely a point of time. § On the two datives depending on *fuit*, see Syntax, ehap. ii., sect. vi., 10, p. 140.

2. *Plataeensis*, scil., *civitas*: *praeter* is here an adverb, not a preposition; hence *Plataeensis* is in the nominative. Another reading is *Plataeenses*, accusative plural; and another, *Plataeensium*, genitive plural, governed by *civitatem* understood. § *Mille militum*: *mille milites* would be a more usual construction than that here used; *mille*, though a substantive in the plural, is seldom so in the singular.

4. *Quo factum est*: "by which circumstance it came to pass that Miltiades prevailed over his colleagues." We learned in ehap. iv., that Miltiades was specially urgent for immediate action in the field; and now the eagerness of this band of Plataeans strengthened his hands and seconded his wish, so that his opinion was adopted rather than that of his colleagues.

6. Observe the repetition of the preposition *ex* before *urbe*.

7. *Dein*: less common than *deinde*. § *Montis*, a mountain sacred to Pan, which overlooked the plain of Marathon.

8. *Acie instructa*, "the army having been drawn out;" *regione non apertissima*, "in a district not the most open" (or, "by no means open").
9. *Rarae*, "thinly planted," "here and there." The ground was impeded with clumps and straggling rows of trees, so that the enemy's cavalry had not free scope to manoeuvre.
10. *Tractu*, "direction," "line."
12. *Non-aequum*, "disadvantageous." § On *numero*, in the ablative after *fretus*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 4, p. 144.
14. On *subsidio*, in dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 10, p. 140.
15. *Centum*, i.e., *centum millia*.
16. *In quo*, "in which battle." § *Tanto plus*, "so much more."
18. For the perfect subjunctive in the verbs *profligarint*, &c., instead of the imperfect, see Syntax, sect. xiii., 7, p. 161.
19. *Adhuc*, i.e., *ad-hoc (tempus)*, "up to the present day;" i.e., till the time of the writer.
20. *Prosterno*, and *profligo*, line 18. are verbs of special emphasis. See Vocabulary.

CHAPTER VI.

LINE 1. *Cujus*: any relative, whether pronoun, conjunction, or adverb, may be resolved into a demonstrative and a conjunction. Hence, *cujus* is equal to *et hujus* or *sed hujus*. § *Victoriae* depends on *praemium*, so that the sentence runs thus: *Et non videtur alicuium (foreign to my purpose) docere, quale praemium hujus victoriae tributum sit Miltiadi*,—"and it does not seem foreign to my purpose to state what kind of a reward was given to Miltiades for this victory."

3. *Naturam*, "character."
4. *Rari*, "few and far between." § *Tenuis*, "of little value." § *Obsoleti*, "old-fashioned," "out of date;" hence "worthless," as opposed to *gloriosi*, "of high repute, and honourable."
5. *Effusi*, "lavish in number and extravagant in value;" opposed to *rari* and *tenuis*.
6. On *hinc Miltiadi*, see note, chap. iii., 10.
8. Arrange thus: *Ut, quum pugna Marathonica depingeretur in porticu, quae vocatur Pœcile, ejus imago poneretur prima (in the foreground) in numero decem praetorum, &c.* § *Pœcile*, equal to *ποικίλη*, "variegated." "decorated," is a Greek adjective referring to *στοά*, *portico*, not expressed: In the porch "which is called Beautiful."

10. Observe the force of the imperfect in *hortaretur* and *committeret*: "He was represented as in the act of encouraging his soldiers, and setting the battle in order."

11. The recurrence of *est* with *nactus* and *corruptus* is awkward, and is owing to the fact that *nactus* is a deponent verb, while *corruptus* is a passive.

12. Demetrius of Phalerum was a celebrated statesman who flourished about 310 B.C. He governed Athens for Cassander of Macedon during ten years (B.C. 317 to 307). § Three hundred is merely an approximation; there were three hundred and fifty or three hundred and sixty statues.

CHAPTER VII.

2. *Adjuverant*, in the indicative, as stating a *fact*, not reporting part of the commission given to Miltiades.

3. *Quo imperio*, "by means of which command," as the instrument. *In quo imperio* would mean, "during the tenure of which command." § *Opportet*, "duty," "obligation;" hence, "allegiance," "obedience."

4. *Coegit*, "he induced." § *Ex his* refers to all the islands. Paros is still, as of old, famed for its marble. For the declension of the word, see Table of Greek Nouns, at end of book.

5. *Quam* is very often *projected* into a clause, to allow some important notion to begin the sentence, and thus to be specially emphatic. See Syntax, sect. iii., 1, with note, p. 153. § *Oratione* means "fair words," "argument," "persuasion;" not, "a set speech."

6. On *commatu*, in ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 22, p. 146.

7. On *vincae* and *testudines*, see the Vocabulary, but especially consult a text-book of Roman antiquities. § *Propius muros*: *prope*, *propius*, and *proxime*, are usually followed by an accusative, and occasionally by a dative. (Hann., viii., 13.) *Propior* and *proximus* take the dative more commonly than the accusative.

8. *In eo esset* may be used either personally, "when was on the point of;" or impersonally, "when it was (*i.e.*, when matters were) in such a state that," &c. § *Oppido*, ablative after verb *potior*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 9, p. 145. § *In continenti*: the fire was more probably on the island Myconos, near Paros.

9. *Nescio quo casu*, "by some accident, I know not (what),"—*i.e.*, "by some accident or other."

10. *Cujus flamma ut*: resolve *cujus* into *et hujus*, and translate, "and when the blaze of this."

11. *Utrisque venit in opinionem*, "both parties imagined." The more usual expression would be, *opinio venit in mentem*.

12. *Et Parii—et Miltiades*, "on the one hand the Parians, and on the other hand Miltiades."

13. *Ne* is equal to *ut non*; but after verbs of *fearing*, which really imply a negative, the negative part of *ne* is untranslated; so that *timens ne classis adveniret* means, "fearing that the fleet would approach;" whereas *timens ut* would mean, "fearing that it would approach." § *Advento* is a frequentative verb, but in this case is *intensive* rather than frequentative.

14. *Totidem navibus, atque*, (we should rather expect *quot*,) with "exactly the same number of ships as he had set sail with." It was therefore, the author means to say, not *actual loss* of which he was accused, but mere *want of success*.

15. *Cum magna offensione*, "to the great disgust."

16. On the construction of *proditiōnis*, and of *capitis* (line 20), see Syntax, sect. vii., 12, p. 143.

17. *Discessisset* is the subjunctive mood, because the writer is expressing the opinion of others: "Because (said they), when he might have

captured Paros, being bribed by the king, he had withdrawn without accomplishing his commission." See Syntax, sect. viii., 1, *b*, p. 153.

18. *Vulneribus*, ablative of cause. See Syntax, sect. viii., 2, p. 143.

19. Observe that when "for" signifies in defence of, or instead of, it must be expressed, not by the dative, but by *pro* with the ablative. § *Posset*, in the subjunctive, because expressing the reason given by Stesagoras for defending Miltiades. See Syntax, sect. viii., 1, *b*, p. 158.

20. *Stesagoras* is said by other writers to have died before Miltiades (see note 6, chap. i.), so that it is probable this is one of the historical blunders of Nepos. It was likely some one of his relatives who took his defence upon him. § *Capitis absolutus*, "he was acquitted of the capital charge, but was fined in a sum of money,"—i.e., of a charge which, if proved, would have been followed by capital punishment. Verbs of condemning sometimes take the fine in the ablative.

21. *Iccunia*, ablative after *multatus est*. See Syntax, sect. viii., 17, p. 146. § *Lis*: properly a law-suit, but here the *fine* which resulted from it. § *Talentis*, ablative of price. Fifty talents would (taking the talent at £243, 15s.) amount to rather more than £12,000 sterling.

22. *Quantus* is equal to *tantus enim*.

23. *In praesentia*, "on the spot," "at the time." Either the ablative of the substantive, *praesentia*, or accusative plural neuter of *praesens*, *tempora* being understood. § *Publicae vincla*, "the public prison," as the debt was due to the state; and he was not only cast into prison, but put in irons. This fact is mentioned with reference, no doubt, to the remark made in the first sentence of chapter vi.—*Eandem omnium civitatum esse naturam*.

24. *Obiit*, "he met his last day," "*facit* death."

CHAPTER VII.

LINE 1. *Crimine*, ablative depending on *accusatus*. See Syntax, sect. vii., 12, *obs.*, p. 144. "The charge in regard to Paros." See *crimen*, in Vocabulary.

2. *Pisistratus* made himself *tyrannus* (i.e., supreme ruler—see lines 11 and 12—but not *tyrant* in our sense of the word—see below, line 8) in 560 B.C. His son Hippias was driven from Athens in 510 B.C.

4. *Multum* is stronger than *saepe*; it suggests *importance* and *magnitudo*. The "weight of business fell" on his shoulders. Translate *multum versatus*, "largely engaged." § *In imperiis*, "in military commands;" *magnisque*, "and those of great magnitude." The *-que* is expletive, equal to *et quidem*, καὶ ταῦτα.

7. Some editions read *Chersonesi*, which may depend either on *habitarat*, as the genitive of *placē*, "in the Chersonese;" or on *dominationem*.

11. On *potestate*, in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 16, p. 146; and on *libertate*, sect. viii., 9, p. 145.

12. *Quem summa humanitas, tum mira communitas*, "both an unusual gentleness of disposition, and also an extraordinary courteousness of demeanour." *Humanitas* seems to signify that wide sympathy for all men by which one is enabled to say with a safe conscience, *Nil humanum*

a me clienum puto—a kind of universal fellow-feeling. *Communitas* probably refers to *affability, condescension, or courteousness*; or rather, perhaps, that *kindliness* of heart in virtue of which he *made the interests of others his own*. This last sense agrees best with the derivation of the word.

16. *Respiciens*: this participial phrase is equal to a clause introduced by *quonquam*—"although the people did not forget (literally, regarded) these recommendations, yet they considered it a less evil that he should suffer, even though innocent, than that they should be any longer in dread."

THEMISTOCLES.

CHAPTER I.

LINI. 1. The genitive of Greek nouns in *cs* often ends in *i*, instead of *is*. § *Hujus* does not agree with *adollescentiæ*, but is governed either by it or by *vitiæ*—"The vices of his early manhood were atoned for (or corrected) by great virtues;" or, "His vices in early manhood," &c. One substantive frequently governs two genitives in different relations to it. Thus, Caesar says, *Superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio*; "The delay of Sabinus during the preceding days."

2. *Antefertur* and *putentur* of the consequent clause (see Syntax, sect. iv., 3, p. 154, and xii., 6, p. 161) are in the *present* tense, though following a perfect, *emendati sunt*; because the consequence is spoken of as a *continued* one, remaining in force even till the time when this biography was written.

4. *Ordendus*: he, Themistocles, (*i.e.*, his life,) "must be set in order (described) from the beginning." Some editions read, *ordendum est*, "it must be begun (by us) at the beginning,"—*i.e.*, "we must begin." § *Generosus*, "of noble birth," "a man of family." He was said to be descended from Lycomeles, king of the Dolopians, in the island of Scyros, to whose court Achilles was sent in disguise, to prevent his going to the Trojan war.

5. *Halicarnasiam*, "of Halicarnassus," a maritime town of Caria, in Asia Minor. Some authors state that the mother of Themistocles was a native of Acharnæ, an Attic town; others, that she came from Thrace.

6. *Parentibus* is the dative after the passive participle *probatus*, instead of the ablative with the preposition *a*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 11, p. 141. § *Probatus alicui* means "always approved of by a person;" *probatus ab aliquo*, "approved of by a person on one particular occasion." Hence, in this case, *minus probatus*, &c., means that his general conduct was very displeasing to his parents. § *Liberius*, "more freely than he ought,"—*i.e.*, "too freely." § On *quod vivebat*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 1, a, p. 158.

7. *Negligebat*, "used to squander." The verb refers not only to his failing, through want of economy and fragality, to increase his patrimony, but to his lavish squandering of it.

8. *Quæ contumelia*, &c.: resolve *quæ* into *hæc tamen*, (see note on

Miltiades, vi., 1), and translate, "This disgrace, however, did not crush his spirit (*dis*: earten him), but roused him to action."

9. *Totum se dedit*, "devoted himself wholly to state business, paying more diligent regard to his friends and his own reputation;" *i.e.*, sacrificing his own tastes and wishes to the character (or perhaps the remonstrances, or interests) of his friends, and to his own reputation. Others find a zeugma in *serviens*: "serving his friends with more diligent zeal, and eagerly striving for fame." It often happens that one verb, expressive of a general notion, governs two substantives, receiving with each a signification suitable to the governed word. This is called *zeugma*. The Greek word *zeugma* means literally a "junction," a "combination," a "union" of two ideas in one word. The figure is very common in Greek and Latin, but less so in English. When we meet it in our own writers, it is generally in comic phrases. Thus Mr. Thackeray says, "The little lady makes her appearance, and a dignified curtsy to her lodger."

10. For *amicis* and *famae*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, b, p. 139.

11. *Privatis judiciis*: either causes decided by arbitration in private houses, or rather, perhaps, the common law courts, in which the interests of individuals were discussed, as opposed to the public assembly where affairs of the whole community (*i.e.*, of the state) were settled. § *In contionem prodibat*. "he used to address the public assembly;" literally, "he came forward before the assembly." *Ire in contionem* means merely to "attend a public meeting."

12. *Nulla res major*, "no affair of any (considerable) magnitude." See above, *liberius*, note 6. The comparative degree is often used in this way.

13. *Quae opus erant*: note that with *opus est, erat, &c.*, the thing needed may be either in the nominative (as here) or in the ablative; the name of the person needing is put in the dative: as, *Dux opus est nobis*; or, *Opus est nobis duce*: "What was needful he quickly discovered—and the same he easily made plain by language."

14. *Neque minus*: "nor was he less ready in carrying his plans into execution than he was in devising them; because, on the one hand, he came to a most just judgment in regard to matters of present interest; and because, on the other, he conjectured (or calculated) most shrewdly concerning things still future." This is one of the carelessly composed sentences which are frequently found in Nepos, there being a want of proper balance between the two leading members. The *quod* gives no satisfactory reason for his promptness in action. It would be rather forced to make *de instantibus* respond to *rebus gerendis*. *Instantibus*, "things of pressing importance, and now on hand," might perhaps refer to those matters which are removed from the sphere of conjecture and device to that of action; and though *judicabat verissime de inst. mtibus* might be twisted so as to denote that he came to the most just conclusions in reference to the means of gaining his end, and thus refer to action, yet the phrase would, at the best, be so very indistinct that we can scarcely believe even Nepos to have been guilty of it. We are inclined to think that he meant *gerendis* to be explained by the subsequent history; *judicabat* and *conjecit* both having reference to *excogitandis*.

16. *Callidissime*, "most shrewdly," or "knowingly." *Callidus* is de-

rived from *callus* or *calum*, "walked-skin," or "hardened skin;" and thus signifies that kind of *knowingness* which is acquired by *rubbing much with the world*.

CHAPTER II.

LINE 1. *Capessendae*, &c. : "his first step in (assisting in) the management of the state was taken in the Coreyrean war." This is a mistake; it was the Aeginetan war.

2. *Bello Coreyraeo*, and *praesenti bello*, denote the time in a general way. *In bello Coreyraeo*, and *in praesenti bello*, would indicate the several stages of the war: "during and throughout the war."

3. *Ferociorem*, "more self-confident," "more formidable." There is no English word which exactly answers to *ferox*; perhaps the Scotch *crouse* is the best equivalent.

4. *Metallis*, "the mines" of Laurium, in the south of Attica.

5. *Redibat*, "was derived," "returned."

6. On *populo*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, c, p. 139.

8. *Murimos praedones*, "the pirates." § *Consectando*, ablative gerund of *consector*, a frequentative or intensive verb from *consequor*, "by hunting down." § *In quo*, "in which expedition," or series of expeditions, in pursuit of the pirates.

9. *Ornavit*: *orno* means to equip thoroughly, and keep in first-rate condition. § On *belli*, in the genitive, see Syntax, sect. vii., 8, p. 143.

10. *Id*, "this," viz., the circumstance of the Athenians becoming skilful in naval war. § For the construction of the two datives *saluti* and *Graciae*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 10, p. 140.

11. *Persico bello*,—i.e., the great Persian war of B.C. 480. § *Xerxes*, second son of Darius Hystaspes. He reigned from 485 till 465 B.C. § *Mari et terra*, "by sea and land." The usual form of the phrase is, *terra marique*; but we also find *mari atque terra*, and *terra ac mari*.

12. On *Europae*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 14, p. 141.

14. *Navium* is said to depend on *classis* understood, the *classi* which is expressed governing *hujus*. So also *peditum* and *equitum*, in line 16, on *exercitus* understood. § The *naves longae* were ships of war, being, for speed's sake, made longer and narrower than "ships of burden," "transports," or "tenders" (*onerariae*).

15. *Exercitus* is plural, either because Nepos was thinking of the horse and foot separately; or more probably because such an immense host (by 5,000,000) could not advance as one army, but was necessarily subdivided into various bodies.

16. Observe that this is a faulty sentence; there is no verb to respond to *inferret bellum*; the principal verb is *miserunt*, which responds to *perlati esset* and *dicerentur*. The long parenthesis from *hujus* to *fuertur* had evidently caused the oversight. But as *cujus* is equal to *et hujus*, the author is really not so far wrong, after all, as we shall see by the following translation: "For when Xerxes was waging war on Europe (&c., &c.); and when the news of his approach had reached Greece, and the Athenians were said to be specially the object of his attack, on account of the battle of Marathon, (then) they sent men to Delphi," &c. See chap. vii., 22. note.

19. After *miserunt* supply *legatos* or *homines*. So, in English, we often say, "he sent to ask," without the accusative of the person. § On *Delphos*, in the accusative, see Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137; and on *consultum*, sect. x., 1, p. 149.

20. *Respondit* is usually followed by the accusative and infinitive; but as an exhortation is here implied, it takes *ut* with the subjunctive.

21. *Quo* is properly an adverb of place, "in what direction the reply tended," "what was the drift of," or "meaning of."

22. *Persuasit*, "convinced his fellow-citizens," *civibus*, or some such word, being understood. § *Consilium-esse* is equal to a verb of *advising*, and therefore is followed by *ut* with the subjunctive. Sometimes such a clause beginning with *ut* comes in as an explanation of, and in apposition to, some general expression going before.

23. *Eum* agrees with *marum* following, not with *naves* going before, on the principle explained in Syntax, sect. ii., 9, p. 133.

24. *Tali*, "such (excellent) advice." *Talis* is thus often used to signify "such very" (either good or bad, according to the context).

25. *Salamina* and *Troezena* are Greek accusatives, for the declension of which see Table of Greek Nouns; and for the construction consult Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137. *Salamis*, now *Colouri*, an island in the Saronic Gulf; *Troezen*, now *Danata*, in Argolis.

27. Observe that *procuranda* applies to *arcem* as well as *sacra*, but agrees only with the latter. It applies specially to the latter in sense, as the non-interruption of the worship of Athena was of even more importance than the defence of the citadel. See Syntax, sect. ii., 8, p. 133. § *Arcem*, the Acropolis. § *Sacra*, the sacred things belonging to the temple of Athena (*Minerva*) on the Acropolis. § On *natu*, in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. x., 2, p. 149; and on *saibus*, in the dative, sect. vi., 14, p. 141.

28. *Reliquum oppidum*, "the remaining part of the town." So *proxima alluvies*, "the nearest part of the flood;" *imo monte*, "at the bottom of the mountain;" *in summa umbra*, "on the top of an elm tree."

CHAPTER III.

LINE 1. On *civitatibus*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, *b*, p. 139.

2. *Dimicari*, used impersonally, "it should be fought;"—*i.e.*, the war should be conducted.

3. *Occuparent* and *paterentur*, see Syntax, sect. iv., 7, p. 155; and ix., 2, p. 153.

5. *Omnes interierunt*: that is, speaking roughly; the great majority of three hundred Spartans and seven hundred Thespians *did* perish, but a few escaped. For a list of the forces which mustered at Thermopylae (the majority of which, however, retired before the Persian advance), see Herodotus, vii., 202.

6. *Gracciae* and *navium* both depend on *classis*. See above, Them., chap. i., note 1. "The common (or conjoint) fleet of Greece, consisting of three hundred ships."

7. *Apud*, "off," or "near."

9. *Multitudine*, scil., *navium*.

10. *Pari proelio*, like the more common expression, *aequo Marte*, means "a drawn battle."

11. On *ne*, "that," after *periculum erat*, which is equal to *metuerunt*, see note on *Milt.*, vii., 13; and *Syntax*, sect. iv., 3, p. 154.

12. *Superasset*, "had rounded," or "doubled;"—*i.e.*, "had got the better of it," as it were, or "had got beyond it."

13. Instead of *discederent*, we might at first sight expect *decéderent*, since *discedo* means "to go away from one another," said of two or more individuals or parties; while *decédo* means "to go away from a place," in speaking of one or more. But as in line 10 *discesserant* is said of the Greeks alone, as the main agents, so it seems to be used in this instance likewise. The best equivalent in English is "parted company;" in which the idea of two parties separating is kept in view, while at the same time one party is represented as the *main agent*. In this sense, *ab Artemisio* will mean "at Artemisium; like a *dextra ripa*, "at or on the right bank;" *ab altera parte*, &c. § *Exadversum* is a rare compound. It is equal to our phrase, "out-opposite."

CHAPTER IV.

LINE 1. *Astu* is a Greek word transferred into Latin letters; it means the city, as opposed to the town, and is here applied to Athens by way of pre-eminence. It is the accusative of *motion towards*; but after *accessit* we find more usually the dative (see *Syntax*, sect. vi., 4, d, p. 139), or *ad* with the accusative. § *Protinus*, "immediately," is said of time; *protenus*, "farther on," "onward," of space. This distinction, however, is not always observed.

2. *Nullis dependentibus*: see note on chap. ii., line 27.

4. *Domos*, accusative of "motion to"—"to their homes."

6. *Universos* and *dispersos* are equal, each to a conditional clause, "if they kept all together," and, "if they separated."

7. *Testabatur*, "he strongly asserted." § *Eurybiadi*: another historical error. Eurybiades was commander, but not king, of the Lacedaemonians.

8. *Summae*: see *Syntax*, sect. vi., 4, d, p. 139.

9. *Vellet* is in the subjunctive, as not stating a *fact*, but as referring to the *mind* of Themistocles. § *De servis suis*, &c., "the most faithful slave he had."

10. *Suis verbis*, "in his words," "as from him," "in his name." *Suo nomine* would mean, "on his authority," but at the discretion of the messenger as to words.

11. *Qui*: resolve *qui* into *et ii*, and *quos* in line 13 into *sed eos*—"and if they should separate (into bands)," "but if he were to attack them at once." § *cum labore*: the preposition implies concomitancy—his efforts to put an end to the war would be "attended with greater labour." *Cum* is often thus used, so as to be equal to another assertion: so here, "he would finish the war, but his operations would be attended with greater labour."

14. *Haec eo valdebat*: see note, chap. ii., 21, above.

15. *Barbarus*,—*i.e.*, Xerxes. See *Milt.*, chap. ii., note 1. § *On doli*, in the genitive, see *Syntax*, sect. vii., 6, a, p. 142.

16. *Subesse*, "to be under it," as we say; "to be concealed." This idea of something underhand often attaches to *sub* in composition. § *Alienissimo*, "most disadvantageous." § On the construction of *sibi*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 8, a, p. 140; and of *loco* and *mari*, sect. viii., 26, p. 146, and 28, p. 147.

18. *Potuerit*: on this perfect subjunctive, instead of imperfect, see Milt., chap. v, note 18.

19. *Consilio* means here "prudence," "far-sightedness," "scheming." § On *armis*, in ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 21, p. 146.

CHAPTER V.

LINE 1. *Iic*,—i.e., *barbarus*, equal to Xerxes of preceding chapter. § *Male-gerere* means either "to manage ill," or "to be unsuccessful."

3. *Ab eodem*, "by the same person"—namely, Themistocles. § *Depulsus est gradu*, "he was driven from his vantage-ground." This figure is taken from the gladiatorial contests, in which combatants took up a position so as to be as steady as possible. To be driven from that first posture was a sign of weakness and coming defeat. § On *ne* after verbs of fearing, see note on Milt., vii., 13.

4. *Perseveraret* is past tense, though depending on *verens*, because *fecit*, a past tense, is so intimately associated with it. § *Fecit-certiorcm* is a compound expression equal to a verb: "to certify," "assure." So *reddere homines caecos* (i.e., *reddere-caecos homines*) means "to blind men." Adjectives are often thus attached to verbs, to complete the idea. Nouns, too, are thus placed in apposition: as, *Urbem Romam vocavit*, "He called the city Rome." § *Id agi*, "that this is in contemplation," "in the course of being carried out."

5. Observe *fecerat*, in the indicative, as a phrase put in by the writer, and not represented as part of the message of Themistocles. § Note that *reditus*, a verbal substantive, is construed like the verb whence it comes. § On *dissolveretur* and *excluderetur*, in the imperfect subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. iv., 2, p. 154, and xii., 3, p. 161. § *Dissolvo*, "to break up," is an appropriate verb here, seeing the bridge was made of boats. Observe that though *dissolveretur* and *excluderetur* are closely connected by *ac*, their subjects are not the same; and that while *pons*, the first subject, is expressed, *ille*, the second, referring to Xerxes, is omitted. This is an irregularity arising from careless writing. See chap. ix., lines 11 and 12.

6. *Id ei persuasit*: note the idiom. We say, "persuaded him of this." § *Qua*, scil., *via* or *parte*, "by what route;"—i.e., "by the route along which." § *Sex mensibus*: see Syntax, sect. viii., 30, p. 147.

7. *Reversus est*: see Vocabulary, under *revertor*.

10. *Hacc* is subject to *est*, understood. § *Altera* is used (not *secunda*), as Nepos speaks of the two great battles only.

11. *Possit* is the subjunctive, as leaving the comparison to be carried out by the reader. § *Tropaeo*, "the trophy," put for the battle.

12. *Post hominum memoriam*, "since men began to hand down such deeds to memory." Observe that the adjective *maxima* is modified by the whole phrase *post hominum memoriam*.

L
fully
idea
2.
9, p
3.
Mun
Cant
5.
(or g
6.
7.
(pret
of th
9.
(1) n
10.
whic
to wh
13.
chief
sect.
supre
14.
possib
16.
genera
17.
refers
21.
22.
24.
to a co

LINE
of the
elected
3. D
7. A
8. C
9. Q
is equal
10, C

CHAPTER VI.

LINE 1. The preposition *in* is expressed before *pace* to bring out more fully the idea of continuance; while it is omitted before *bello*, because the idea of *cause in bello* is more prominent than that of *time*.

2. *Phalerico portu*, the harbour of Phalerum. See Syntax, sect. viii., 9, p. 145.

3. Piræus was the most northerly of the three harbours (Phalerum, Munychia, and Piræus) of Athens. It had three basins, Aphrodisium, Cantharos, and Zea; hence called *triplex*.

5. *Ut acquiraret*, "so as to equal (vic with) the city in splendour (or grandeur), and to surpass it in public benefit."

6. *Præcipuo suo periculo*, "at his own especial risk."

7. *Negarent*, "said no." Translate *qua*, &c., "(founding) on which (pretext) they declared it to be inexpedient that any city beyond the bounds of the Peloponnese should have walls."

9. *Aedificantes*: instead of this participle, we should expect either (1) *ne* or *quominus aedificarent*, or (2) *aedificare*.

10. *Hoc longe alio*, &c., "this had a far different object from that which (*i.e.*, than) they wished to be supposed." *Alio* is an adverb of *place* to which.

13. *Principatu*, "supremacy" among the states of Greece, giving the chief direction of military operations. § *Sibi* depends on *fore*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 6, p. 140. "That they would have a struggle with them for the supremacy."

14. *Quam infirmimos*, "as little strong as possible," "as helpless as possible."

16. *Qui vetarent*, "to forbid." *Qui* or *ut*, with the subjunctive, is generally translated by our "to."

17. The subject to *desierunt* (*desino*) is *Athenienses*, understood. *Eos* refers to the Lacedæmonians.

21. On *loco*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, a, p. 139.

22. *Et* has a kind of adversative force, and may be translated "but."

24. *Sepulchris* means grave-stones. § *Constaret ex*, "consisted of,"—*i.e.*, to a considerable extent.

CHAPTER VII.

LINE 1. *Ut*, "when." § *Adire ad magistratus*, "to have an audience of the magistrates," or ephori, of whom there were five, and these elected annually.

3. *Duceret tempus*, "might protract the time," "procrastinate."

7. *Accessit ad*, "sought an interview with," or "had an audience."

8. *Contendit*, "affirmed," "alleged," "boldly maintained."

9. *Quibus* depends on the compound expression *fides haberetur*, which is equal to a verb of trusting. See Syntax, sect. vi., 7, b, p. 140.

10. *Qui* is equal to *ut illi*. § *Cestus est ei mos*, "his request was

granted." *Mos* means one's manner, humour, whim; hence *gerere morem alicui* means to "gratify one's humour," "to please," or grant a request.

11. *Honoribus*: see Syntax, sect. viii., 9, p. 145.

13. *Praedixit*, "charged;" hence *ut ne* with the subjunctive. See Syntax, sect. ix., 3, *a*, note †, p. 148, and iii., 2, p. 154; also xi., 4, p. 160, and xii., 2, *b*, p. 160. § On *cis*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, *d*, p. 139.

14. *Remissus esset* is put in the pluperfect, because the action which it represents is to be completed before the action of *dimitterent*. See Syntax, sect. xii., 8, p. 162.

16. *Liberrime professus est*, "most frankly acknowledged."

17. *Quod possent*, "a thing which (he alleged) they were by the common law of nations quite entitled to do." Observe that *possent* is the subjunctive mood, because the writer is giving, in the indirect form of narrative, the argument of Themistocles.

18. *Deos publicos*, the national gods of all Greece; *patrios*, those of Attica; *penates*, those of each household.

19. *In eo*, "in that act," viz., in building walls.

20. *Illorum*,—i.e., the Athenians.

21. *Oppositum (esse)* agrees with *propugnaculum*, the substantive nearest to it. See Syntax, sect. ii. 8, p. 133. The infinitive, *oppositum esse*, depends on "he said," taken out of *professus est*.

22. *Fecisse naufragium*, "had made shipwreck" at Marathon and at Salamis; i.e., "had been baffled," or "defeated,"—a figurative expression. Observe that *quam* (in line 21) is equal to *et hanc*, and that *fecisse* is thus co-ordinate with *oppositum esse*, and governed by the same verb. See above, note on chap. ii., line 16. See also Aleib., xi., 17.

23. *Qui intuerentur*, "inasmuch as they regarded;" the verb being subjunctive, as giving the ground of the charge of injustice. See Syntax, sect. ix., 2, *e*, p. 159.

24. On *dominationi* and *Græciæ*, in the dative after *utile*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 8, *a*, p. 140. *Græciæ* does not balance well with *dominationi*: we should have expected *saluti*.

25. *Miserant*: indicative, because not part of the indirect narrative, but a remark thrown in by the writer.

CHAPTER VIII.

LINE 2. *Quo*: on the ablative after a verb of condemning, see Syntax, sect. vii., 12, *obs.*, p. 144. § *Testularum*, &c., "by the votes of the shells." This refers to the process of *ostracism*, which was conducted as follows: It was put to the people whether there was any one in the community whom they thought to be dangerous to the liberty of the state, from his power, popularity, or other cause. No name was mentioned, but each man was allowed to think and judge for himself; though, of course, the person specially obnoxious to any party was readily guessed. The ten tribes voted in an enclosed place in the Agora, each individual being provided with an *ὄστρακον*, or piece of tile (potsherd), on which he inscribed the name of the person whom he wished to be banished. If the votes

against one individual amounted to 6,000, he was compelled to leave the city in ten days. Several states of Greece besides Athens adopted this plan, which was rather a *precautionary* than a *penal* measure.

3. *Suffragiis*: this word is said by some to be derived from *sub-frango*, and thus would mean a "broken piece," or "fragment;" and thus a "piece of tile." Others connect it with *suffrago*, an "ankle" or "knuckle bone,"—such being used for voting, dice, &c. § On the construction *ejectus e*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 23, p. 146. § *Argos* may be either the accusative singular of the neuter form *Argos*, or the accusative plural of *Argi, orum*, masc. Observe that *concessit* ("retired") governs *habitatum* in the supine, and *Argos* in the accusative, as the *place* to which.

4. *Cum dignitate*, "in great honour or consideration." On *cum*, in this phrase, see above, chap. iv., note 11; and Milt., vii. 15. § Instead of *ejus*, we should expect *suas*; but Nepos, if he wrote the word at all, probably employed it to avoid ambiguity, since *Lacedaemonii* is the principal subject of the whole sentence.

5. *Qui accusarent*, "to accuse." On the modes of expressing a purpose in Latin, see Syntax, sect. ix., 3, c, with note ‡, p. 148.

6. On the construction of *ad Gracciam opprimendam*, see Syntax, sect. xii., 2, b, p. 150; and note on Inverse Syntax, Milt., iii., 13.

7. *Hoc erimine*, "on this charge." See Milt., viii., 1; and on *proditionis*, in the genitive, Syntax, sect. vii., 12, p. 143.

8. *Ut audivit*, "when he heard." This tense is often used (to denote the time when a person *had done* so and so) with *ut, postquam, ubi*, when we should rather expect a pluperfect. § On *Argis*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 26, p. 146.

10. On *timere*, in the infinitive, see Syntax, sect. ix., 3, a, p. 148; and on *ne*, after verbs of fearing, compare chap. iii., 11, above. § *Se*: as *Athenienses* and *Lacedaemonii* are subject to the verb of this clause, *se* should, strictly speaking, apply to them; but it refers to the principal character of the sentence, Themistocles, and the subject of the governing clause.

12. *Hospitium*, "a guest friendship." These "covenants of salt" were very common in the heroic times, and even in later days. In the East, even at the present moment, no obligation is more sacred than the duty of protecting and befriending the man who has "eaten of your salt." The "guest friendships" of which we speak were formed sometimes by accidental meetings, and sometimes by preconcerted arrangement; but, however established, they were most sacredly observed, so long as they existed. They could be broken by mutual consent, but they usually descended from father to son. They might exist (1) between individuals, (2) between families, (3) between states, (4) between individuals and states. This last kind served some of the purposes which *consulships* now effect. See, for further information, Smith's "Dictionary of Antiquities," or other Hand-book.

13. *In praesentia*: see note on Milt., chap. vii., 23. § *Religione* depends on *tueretur*; and *receptum* is equal to a conditional clause, "if received;" or, perhaps, simply "when received,"—Themistocles having no doubt as to his being taken under protection.

15. *Cuerimonia* seems to mean here "a feeling of reverential awe," "religious veneration." § *Conjecit*, &c., "flung himself," "rushed."

16. *Reciperet in fidem*, "took him under his protection," "undertook by a solemn pledge of faith to protect him." Instead of *reciperet*, we might rather have expected a pluperfect, "had received."

17. *Praestitit*, "which (promise) has made good;" as we say, "stood to."

18. *Exposceretur publice*, "he (Themistocles) was demanded in the name of the states,"—*i.e.*, "his extradition was demanded in the name of the states." Observe that though *exposceretur* and *prodidit* have different subjects, that of *prodidit* being *Admctus*, yet neither is expressed.

19. On *sibi*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, a, p. 139, and 15, p. 141. Consult Vocabulary on *consulo*. § *Tuto* is an adverb, "in safety," "safely."

20. *Versari* depends on *dicit*, "taken out" of *monuit*.

21. On *praesidii*, in the genitive after *quod*, see Syntax, sect. vii., 6, a, p. 142; and on *navis*, in the dative, sect. vi., 11, p. 141.

22. *Escedere in navem* is less common than *ascendere in navem*, or *conscendere navem*.

24. On *sibi*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. xi., 6, p. 150.

25. *Quis sit*, "who he is,"—*i.e.*, his name. *Qui sit* would mean his rank, condition, office, character, &c. Again, *se* refers, not to the subject of *conseruasset*, the verb of its own clause, but to the principal subject of the whole sentence. § *Conseruasset* is pluperfect, because the promise would not be binding till after he had saved him.

26. *Viri* depends on *misericordia* as the objective genitive—"compassion for the most illustrious man." See Syntax, sect. vii., 2, p. 141. § On *diem* and *noctem*, in the accusative, see Syntax, sect. v., 14, p. 137.

27. *Procul ab insula*, "at some (considerable) distance from the island, in the open sea,"—*i.e.*, outside the harbour.

30. *Retulit gratiam*, "returned a (substantial) recompense;" *agere gratias*, "to give thanks," "express gratitude;" *habere gratias*, "to feel gratitude."

CHAPTER IX.

LINE 1. *Ita* is explained by the infinitive, *transisse*, and its connection. *Ita* and *sic* are often used in an apparently superfluous manner after verbs of hearing, declaring, doubting, persuading, and such like.

2. *Ego*: see Syntax, sect. i., 1, p. 130, with note; and on *Thucydidi*, in the dative, sect. vi., 4, c, p. 132. § *Potissimum*, "most especially," "more than any other:" "place the highest confidence in."

3. On *atate*, in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 11 and 12, p. 145. § *De iis*,—*i.e.*, *ex iis*, "from among," "of."

4. On *civitatis*, in the genitive, see Syntax, sect. vii., 7, p. 142. § *Is*, *viz.*, Thucydides. § *Autem* is often used like our "well, then." § *Artaxerxes Longimanus*: other writers say it was to Xerxes he went.

6. *Qui plurima*, &c., "who, of (all) the Greeks, (Greek men,) have inflicted on your house (family) the greatest number of calamities." § *Graecus* is the usual prose form for "Greek."

8. *Idem*, "I too," has an adversative force—to remind Artaxerxes that, if he had fought against his father in defending his own father-land, yet

the benefits he conferred on him were, after all, more than the injury he did.

9. *In tuto*, "in safety." The accusative and abl. 'ive of the adjective *tutus* are frequently used as substantives. § Ob. that *coepit* agrees with the subject nearest to it. See Syntax, sect. i., v, p. 131. § To *ipse* supply *coepi*.

11. See notes on chap. v., lines 4 and 5.

13. On *periculo*, in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 22, p. 146.

16. *De*, "in regard to," "as concerns."

17. *Ho transacto*: on the so-called ablative absolute see note on Milt., iv., 1.

18. After *putiaris* supply *me* from the preceding *mihî*.

CHAPTER X.

LINE 1. *Unjus* is governed by *animi*, "his mind." § *Talem*, "so great," "so able," "so distinguished." See note on chap. ii., 24, above.

3. *Literis*, "the literature,"—*i.e.*, written language. § *Sermoni*, "conversational phraseology."

4. *Multo commodius*, "with much more ease," or, "with much more propriety." This must be an exaggeration, unless we consider *qui in Perside erant nati* to mean, not the native Persians, but Greeks born in Persia.

6. *Illud*, "this" that follows. § For *consiliis*, in the ablative after *uti*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 9, p. 145.

7. *Illum* refers to Artaxerxes, not to Themistocles. § For *muneribus*, depending in the ablative on *donatus*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 11 and 12, p. 145.

8. *In Asiam*,—*i.e.*, into Asia Minor, which, as the Roman province of Asia, was in the days of Nepos specially called Asia. For the position of the towns mentioned see Vocabulary. § On *Magnesiæ*, in the genitive, see Syntax, sect. vii., 13, p. 144.

10. *Quæ* is equal to *ut ea*. § On *præberet*, in subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. ix., 2, a, b, p. 158. § *Panem*, "bread," "the staff of life," includes other necessary articles of food. § *Vinum*, "drinkables." § *Opsimum*, properly anything cooked which is eaten along with bread, as fish, flesh, vegetables, includes also delicacies of food, as well as elegancies of dress, furniture, and other equipments of a luxurious establishment.

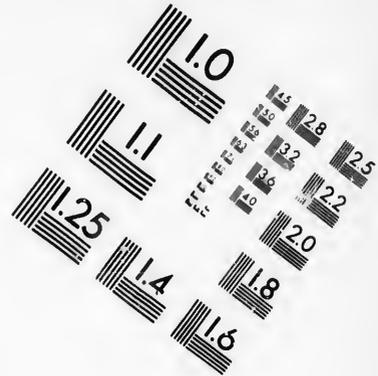
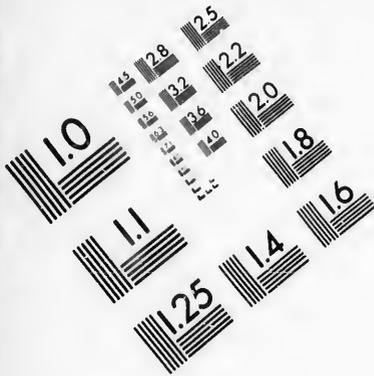
14. *Oppidum*,—*i.e.*, Athens, where Pausanias saw it, near the Piræus, about (say) 160 A. D.

17. *Neque* is equal to *sed non*, "but he does not deny."

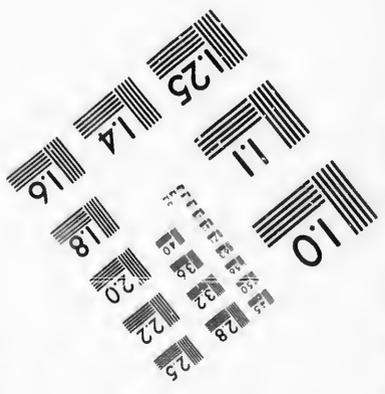
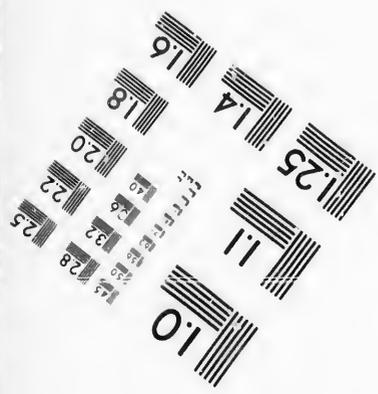
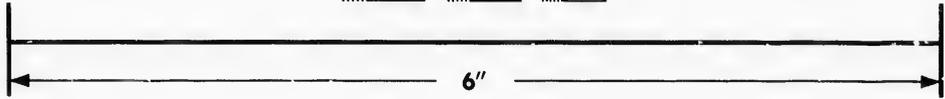
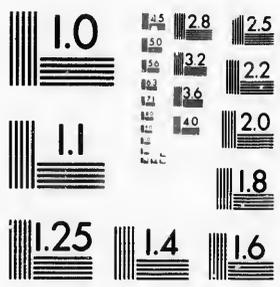
18. *Regi*: see Syntax, sect. vi., 2, p. 139. § *Graecia opprimenda*: see Syntax, sect. xi., 8, p. 150.

20. *Clam*, "in a clandestine manner." § *Quoniam legibus*, "since it was not allowed by the laws," is opposed to *clam*. *Concedetur* is the subjunctive, as recording the statement of Thucydides; so also *damnatus est*.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5 2.8
2.0 3.2 2.5
3.6 2.2
2.0
1.8

10

ALCIBIADES.

CHAPTER I.

LINE 1. *In hoc*, "in him," "in his case."

2. *Possit* might be expected to be in the imperf. subj. after the past tense, *experta (esse)*; but it is here put in the present because the expression is a general one—"what she (really) can effect,"—i.e., "what is the best she can do," what is the best specimen she can put forth; and because *videtur* is pres. See Syntax, sect. xii., 3, p. 161.

3. Observe the neuter *nihil*, "no created thing," and not *neminem*. § For *illo*, in the ablative after *excellentius*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 20, p. 146. § *Excellens*, "surpassing," "prominent," either in good or evil.

5. On the government of *genere* see Syntax, sect. viii., 4, p. 144, or 16, p. 146; and on *omnium*, sect. vii., 6, c, p. 142.

6. On *aptus ad* see Syntax, sect. vi., 8, a, note †, p. 140; and on *consiliū*, sect. vii., 9, p. 143. § *Summus* means "very distinguished," "very able;" not highest in rank.

7. *Dicendo*, ablative gerund, depending on *valeret*. See Syntax, sect. xii., 2, d, p. 151.

8. *Commendatio*, &c., "such was the persuasiveness of his elocution and his language." § *Oris* seems to refer to his utterance, and *oratio* to his language. *Oris* may mean his appearance while speaking—his animation, action, energy, &c. § On *ei*, in dative after *resistere*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, b, p. 139.

10. *Vita*, his public life; *victu*, his private life—the appointment of his table, and household arrangements generally.

11. On *temporibus*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, b, p. 139; and on *callidissime*, note on Them., i., 16.

12. *Remiserat*, "had unbent himself," "relaxed" from business. The metaphor is taken from the unstringing of a bow. § *Suberat*, "remain behind," "remain as a ground or reason."

14. *Dissimilitudinem*, &c., "all wondered greatly that one individual should present so great inconsistencies, and traits of character so opposite." *Dissimilitudo* seems to mean that contrariety in qualities which rendered it impossible for them to work harmoniously, so as to produce a man of consistent behaviour.

CHAPTER II.

LINE 1. Observe the difference between *educatus* and *eruditus*. § *Domus* is usually construed without a preposition, like names of towns; in this place, however, it is not used in the sense of "home" as a *mere spot*, but, as we say, "in the family;" hence the preposition.

3. *Omnium*: see chap. i., note 5.

4. *Fingere vellet*, &c., "so that if he himself had wished to have the

making of his own lot, he could not either have devised more blessings, or have obtained greater ones, than either nature or fortune was bestowing." We might have expected pluperfects here, rather than imperfects, but the phrase seems a general one, like *possit* in chap. i., line 2, and similar to our "were he going to shape."

CHAPTER III.

LINE 1. "During the Peloponnesian war," which continued from B.C. 431 to B.C. 404. The principal opponents were the Athenians and the Spartans, but most of the other states of Greece were drawn into the conflict. § *Hujus consilio*, "it was by his advice and influence that the Athenians declared war."

4. *Id*, scil., *bellum*, "when this expedition was being equipped."

5. *Hermæ*, busts of Hermes (Mercury) which were set up in public places, and at the doors of private houses.

6. *Oppido-Athenis*: see Syntax, sect. iii., 1, p. 134. § *Dejicerentur*, "were thrown down" from the pedestals on which they stood.

7. *Andocidi*: dative. See Syntax, sect. vi., 6, p. 140. It is quite unnecessary to consider *Andocidi* the genitive here, as some do. Andocides was an Athenian orator, and opposed to Alcibiades; hence it was supposed that Alcibiades had left the bust of Hermes which was before his door untouched, in order that his enemy might be accused of the crime, and punished. § *Vocitatus*, "was familiarly or commonly called."

9. *Quæ*, referring to *consensione*, "inasmuch as it pointed, not to a private, but a public interest; or a unanimity which had reference, not to the interests of an individual, but of the state;"—*i.e.*, the act, which must have been committed with the cognizance of a large number of men, was construed into a manifestation of enmity to the constitution, and not to any private persons. § *Pertineret*, the subjunctive, as giving the thoughts of the people.

10. *Multitudini*: in dative. See Syntax, sect. vi., 4, d, p. 139. § *Ne qua*: feminine of *nequi*; so *siqui*, *sequi*. § *Repentina vis*, "lest any sudden outbreak should take place, such as (*quæ*) to crush the liberty of the people."

11. *Hoc—convenire in Alcibiadem*, "this suspicion (of violence, with ambitious views) seemed to be specially applicable to Alcibiades." In *convenire* there is the idea of circumstances *conspiring* or combining to fix the suspicion on Alcibiades,—*viz.*, the circumstances of his greater power, influence, consideration, and dignity.

14. *Devinxerat*, "had bound down," "laid under obligation." § *Opera forensi*, "by services in the law courts." § *Reddiderat suos*, "had made his own;"—*i.e.*, had rendered entirely subservient to his wishes."

15. *Fiebat*: observe the force of the imperfect—"it regularly took place as often as he appeared in public."

16. On *ei*, in the dative after *par*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 8, b, p. 140. § *Quisquam* is the word for "any one," in a negative clause.

17. Observe the very emphatic position of *maximam*, so far removed from *speci*. In *habere* there is a zeugma (see note on Them. chap. i., 9); for

while it is quite applicable to *spem*, it cannot be used with *timorem*. It suggests, however, a verb of kindred meaning to govern *timorem*.

18. *Aspergebatur*, &c., "he was assailed, too, with a scandal, that," &c.

19. *Mysteria*, "it was said that he celebrated the mysteries in his own house." The sacred rites of Demeter (Ceres) and her daughter Persephone (Proserpine), which were specially connected with the Attic burgh Eleusis, were allowed to be performed only in presence of those solemnly initiated, and never in the house of a private individual.

20. *Diccbatur*, a remark of *Nepos*, and therefore in the indicative. § *Quod*, "a thing which was an impiety."

CHAPTER IV.

LINE 1. *Hoc crimine compellabatur*, "with this charge he was assailed by name." His enemies only taxed him with it in the public assembly, but so far brought forward no formal accusation.

2. *Intuens*, "looking into,"—*i.e.*, regarding carefully. § *Neque* is equal to *et non*, "and being well aware of,"—literally, "not being ignorant of;" but that is a softening down of the expression (a figure called by grammarians *meiosis* or *litotes*, "lessening").

3. *Quid agi de se*, "any action to be taken concerning him."

4. *Praesente*: of the two forms of the ablative, *e* and *i*, of adjectives of this kind, the inflexion *i* is generally preferred, except (1) in the construction called the *ablative absolute*, and (2) when the adjective is used substantively, as here.

5. *Invidiae crimine*: if *invidiae* be taken as a *subjective* genitive (see Syntax, sect. vii., 2, p. 141), the meaning will be, "a charge which envy or hatred (as the *subject*) calls forth;" if the *objective* genitive, "a charge which will call forth the hatred (as the *object* produced) of the public against the accused."

6. *Quiescendum (esse)* depends on *decreverunt*; so also *expectandum (esse)*. See Syntax, sect. xi., 6, p. 150.

8. *Itaque*: not "therefore," but "and thus."

9. *In Siciliam*: see Syntax, sect. v., 11, p. 137.

11. *Ut rediret*, "telling him to return."

12. Observe that the subject of *esset* is not *nuntius*, but *he* (Alcibiades), understood. § *Quum* is to be repeated before *esset*, and in the sense of "although." § *Provinciae* is a general term, meaning "charge," "duty," "commission."

14. *Thurios*, "to Thurii." See Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137. Observe the preposition with the name of the large country, *Italiam*.

19. Note *capitis*, in the genitive after *damnatum*.

20. *Eumolpidas*. The Eumolpidae were a priestly family at Athens, who had charge of the Eleusinian mysteries, and took cognizance of all violations of religion. They were said to be descended from the famous Thracian bard Eumolpus, of mythic legend.

21. *Ut deberent*: *cogere* is generally followed by the infinitive, not by *ut* with the subjunctive.

22. *Incisum*, "being inscribed." § *Positum esse*, "had been set up in a public place."

24. Observe the difference between *inimicos* and *hostes*—the former denoting a private, the latter a public enemy.

29. *Decleam*: see Vocabulary. Nepos has made a slip here; the treaty with the Persian king was posterior to the fortification of Decleam.

CHAPTER V.

LINE 2. *Acerrimi*, "most acute," "vigorous," "sagacious."

4. Observe *patriæ* as the objective genitive after *caritate*. See Syntax, sect. vii., 2, p. 141.

5. *Tempus* is here in the sense of "fitting time," "opportunity."

6. *Alcibiades celari*, "Alcibiades could not any longer be kept in the dark about the matter." Observe the construction. It might also be *id Alcibiadi* (dative) *celari*; &c.; or *the thing concealed*, if not expressed, by the neuter of a pronoun, might be in the ablative, with *de*. *Id* is an accusative of reference. Syntax, sect. v., 9, p. 137.

7. On *sagacitate*, in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 16, p. 146. *Sagax* properly means "keen-scented," like a dog. Our word "penetration" comes near the meaning, but does not properly express it.

9. Alcibiades went to Tissaphernes in B.C. 412.

11. Before *Lacædæmoniorum* supply *opcs*.

15. *Destitutus ab hoc*, "being disappointed in this man." It does not mean being abandoned by him; because he had not taken him up.

19. *In imperio*, "during the command." *Imperio* alone would mean "by reason of the command."

21. *Viguerant victores*: a very expressive phrase, like our "had been flushed with victory."

25. *Hellespontum* means here the land on each side of the strait.

27. *Byzantium*, afterwards Constantinople. Nepos has been accused of representing Byzantium as an Asiatic city; but while we cannot defend him against the charge of careless writing in this place, we think that he meant the *quarum* to refer to and include all the places previously mentioned, and not only *Græcæ urbes in ora Asiæ*.

29. *Venerunt*: in B.C. 407.

CHAPTER VI.

LINE 1. *His*: in the dative, after *obviam*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 7, b, p. 140.

2. *Visendæ*, "of seeing,"—*i.e.*, as a great sight, which it was worth while to strive for. *Viso* is a frequentative, or rather an *intensive* verb. Such verbs are formed in the first conjugation from the stem of the present by adding *ito*, as *rog-o, rogito*; in the third, from the stem of the supine, as *vis-um (video), viso, visere*; also in those of the second and fourth, whose supine is like verbs of the third conjugation.

4. *Sic erat populo*, &c., "for the people were convinced of this, that

both their former adversities and their present successes had occurred through his instrumentality."

6. *Amissum* is a substantive here: "the loss." It is very rarely so used.

7. *Expulissent* is the subjunctive, as giving, not the idea of Nepos, but of the Athenians. See Syntax, sect. viii., 1, *b*, p. 158.

14. *Vulgo*, "on every hand," "by everybody." § *Benevolentiam*, "good will," "kindly feeling."

17. *Casu* is the contracted dative for *casui*. § On *illaerimarit* and *ostenderit*, in the subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. xii., 7, p. 161.

22. *Pilae*: the plural is used in a general way. In chapter iv. only one *pila* was mentioned.

CHAPTER VII.

LINE 1. *Non nimis diuturna*, "not of too long duration,"—*i.e.*, of very short duration.

3. *Domi bellique*: on this construction see Syntax, sect. vii., 13 and 14, p. 144. So also *domi militiaeque*. But *belli* is not so used alone; it would be *bello* or *in bello*.

5. *Cymen*. There is some confusion in the narrative here. There were three causes why Alcibiades fell into disfavour: 1st, He failed in his attack on the island of Andros; 2d, His lieutenant, Antiochus, having fought with the Lacedaemonian fleet during his absence, and contrary to orders, was defeated, the blame falling, of course, on Alcibiades; and, 3d, He attacked and ravaged, on some false pretext, the territory of Cyne, which was in alliance with Athens; but suffered loss.

6. *Ex sententia*, "to their satisfaction."

7. *Nihil non*: this phrase is equal to two clauses, "(there was) nothing (which) they did not think him able to effect." *Non nihil* means "something," but *nihil non*, "everything."

13. Observe that *ne concupisceret* depends on *timebatur*, and not on *diligebatur*.

14. *Absenti*: on this construction see Syntax, sect. vi., 3, p. 139, and 14, p. 141.

15. *Magistratu*: this word very seldom used of military office.

18. *Introit*, "entered," or rather, "penetrated into the heart of, Thrace (with hostile intentions);" for the Greeks had long before this settled colonies in Thrace.

CHAPTER VIII.

LINE 1. *Recedere a caritate*: the verb means, *to withdraw one's self forcibly, as against a sense of duty*. Here it may be rendered, "give up," "tear himself from," "renounce."

2. *Aegros flumen*: see Vocabulary.

5. *Duceret*, "protract," "prolong."

7. *Erat super*,—*i.e.*, *supererat*, "was left over," "remained."

8. *Vulgo*, "the common soldiers." § *Vellent*, in the imperfect subjunctive, after *spondet coacturum*, is an irregularity in syntax. See Syntax, sect. xii., 4 and 5, p. 161. So also *valeret*, in line 11.

10. *Eo*, "on this account," "for this reason."

12. *Deducere*, "to prevail on." The idea seems to be that of "bringing one over" to a course which is either distasteful or prejudicial to himself. § *Eum*,—*i.e.*, Lysander.

15. *Nullius momenti*: see Syntax, sect. vii., 7, p. 142; and on *secundi*, sect. vii., 5, and 6, *a*, p. 142. § *Alcibiade recepto*, "if Alcibiades were received."

17. *Contra ea*, "on the other hand."

20. *Illud*, "this,"—*viz.*, the following. § Supply *ut* before *habeas*. § By *castra nautica* is meant "a camp on shore," which in most cases was so formed as that the ships lay under cover of it. It is also called *castra navalia*. The object of having the camp close to the enemy, was to keep the soldiers more in fear.

21. *Immodestia* means the "passing due bounds,"—*i.e.*, "laxity of discipline," "insubordination."

22. On *vestri opprimendi exercitus* see Syntax, sect. xi., 8, p. 150. Note also the change from *habeas*, singular, referring to *one*, to *vestri* and *vestrorum*, plural, referring to more than one.

23. On *comperisset* of the subordinate clause, depending on *dimisit*, see Syntax, sect. xii., 2, *b*, p. 160.

CHAPTER IX.

LINE 2. *Arbitrans*: most deponent verbs have the participles complete, both of the active and of the passive form.

3. *Abdidit se in Thraciam*: *abdere* generally takes a preposition with the accusative, since motion is implied; but sometimes the ablative with a preposition. § *Fortunam*: either his "means;" or his "condition," "misfortune," "reverse of fate."

5. On *senserunt* after *postquam*, see Syntax, sect. vii., 1, p. 156.

9. *Humanitate* is a word so expressive here, as that it cannot be translated by any single word or phrase. It seems to express what we imply by, "the thorough gentleman,"—*i.e.*, refinement of mind and of manners, education and polish.

10. *Castrum*, "Fort-Grynium." See Vocabulary, *Grynium*.

13. *Ad patriam liberandam*: see Syntax, sect. xi., 8, p. 150, and xii., 2, *b*, p. 150.

17. Cyrus the younger, who, in B.C. 401, attempted to dethrone his brother Artaxerxes.

18. On *aperuisset* see Syntax, sect. v., 1, *b*, p. 155, and xii., 2, *b*, p. 160; also xii., 8, p. 162.

CHAPTER X.

LINE 2. *Tyranni*. On the conclusion of the Peloponnesian war, in B.C. 404, the Lacedaemonians changed the government of Athens, and set up thirty men as rulers, who, by their severity and high-handed measures, gained for themselves the name of "The Thirty Tyrants." Of these Critias was the most notorious.

3. *Certos*, "trusty."
4. Observe that *sustulisset* does not depend on *fore ratum* alone, but on *certiorem facerent fore-ratum*. See Syntax, sect. xii., 3, p. 161.
5. *Ratum*: see Vocabulary, *rātus*.
6. *Res-gestas*, "measures." § In direct narrative, *persequeretur* would be an imperative form. The word here means "to hunt him down." § *Laco*, "the Laconian,"—*i.e.*, Lysander.
7. *Societatem renuntiat*, "to him, therefore, he threatens to renounce (break off) the friendly-relation which exists between the Lacedæmonians and the (Persian) king, unless," &c. Observe that *esset* and *tradidisset*, depending on *renuntiat*, a present, are exceptions to the rule for the sequence of tenses. See Syntax, sect. xii., 4 and 5, p. 161. It will be remarked, however, that *renuntiat*, "threatens to break off," is almost equal to the past tense, "he would break off."
10. *Non tulit hunc*, "could not resist him,"—*i.e.*, could not bear up against the force of his appeal. Some editions read *hoc* for *hunc*. § *Violare clementiam*, "do violence to mercy,"—*i.e.*, violate the dictates of compassion, and break his promise of protection.
12. *Vicinitati* depends on *dant negotium*. It means literally "the neighbourhood,"—*i.e.*, the people of the neighbourhood. This is an example of what is called the "abstract (noun) for the concrete." So *servilia* is often used for *servi*. § *Clam* may be joined to *missi*, "those who were secretly sent," or to *dant negotium*.
16. *Ea*,—*i.e.*, *ligna*.
19. On *subulare* see Vocabulary, *subalcris*. § *Eripuit*, "drew forth (from the sheath)." § *Familiaris sui*, "of his intimate friend" (probably Axiochus), mentioned in next sentence.
21. Observe that *vestimentorum* is drawn into the relative clause. Regularly it would be *id vestimentorum, quod fuit*. § On *in praesentia* see note on Milt., chap. vii., 23.
22. *Ejectis in ignem*: having thrown out (of the house) on the fire all the garments he could find, he thus subdued the violence of the flames at one part, and escaped unscathed.
25. *Aedificii incendio*, "the woman (Theodote) covered up the dead body in her own robe, and burned it in the blaze of the house, (and of the timber) which had been prepared to cause his death when alive." The place where this occurred is said by Athenæus to have been *Melissæ*.
27. On *annos*, the accusative after *natus*, see Syntax, sect. v., 14, p. 137. He was about forty-five years of age.

CHAPTER XI.

LINE 1. *Gravissimi historici*, "historians of very weighty name," "of great authority." On the historians see Vocabulary.

4. *Maledicentissimi*, "very much given to evil-speaking," "very fault-finding,"—*i.e.*, so as to blacken characters. Observe this irregular mode of comparison, which is adopted by adjectives in *-dicus*, *-fexus*, and *-volus* (from *dico*, *facio*, *volo*). The comparative and superlative are made (as if the nominative were *maledicens*), *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*.

§ *Nescio quo modo*, "somehow or other," "I can scarcely tell why." So *nescio quis*, "some one or other;" and in Milt., vii., 9, *nescio quo casu*.

5. *Conspiciant*, "agree in praising him." § *Supra*: see chaps. i. and ii.

6. Before *splendidissima civitate* we should expect the preposition *in* Syntax, sect. v., 13, p. 137.

7. *Splendore*, "magnificence;" *dignitate*, "grave and dignified conduct," "princely demeanour." Note that the subject, *eum*, is omitted before *superasse* and *inservisse*.

9. *Eorum*, referring to Thebani, which is not expressed, but only suggested by *Thebas*. This is an instance of what is called the construction "*ad intellectum*," or "*ad synecdo*;" on which see above, Milt., iv., 14. § *Inservisse*, "devoted himself to."

10. The Boeotians were proverbial for dullness and stupidity. So Horace, speaking of a dolt, says, "*Boeotum in crasso jurares acre natum*." We must remember, however, that Pindar and Hesiod were Boeotians.

12. *Ponebatur* is in the indicative mood, since the remark is made by Nepos, and is not part of the indirect statement.

14. *Venisse*: we should rather expect *quum venisset*.

17. *Quibus rebus effecisse* is equal to *et his rebus effecisse*; it is thus coordinate with the preceding infinitives. See Them., ii., 16, note, and vii., 22.

19. *Ordiamur*, "let us begin," "set-to the rest,"—*i.e.*, the lives of the others.

HANNIBAL.

CHAPTER I.

LINE 1. On *si verum est* (in the indicative), see Syntax, sect. v., 1, a, p. 155.

3. *Ut superavit*: this is a peculiar construction. After *verum est* we should expect the infinitive. See Syntax, sect. ix., 2, p. 148. It is employed on the analogy of *reliquum est, ut, —aequum est, ut, —necessum est, ut, —*and others, in which the idea of "happening" is implied. The Latin language expresses the idea of *happening*, as a result or effect, by *ut*: hence, as the phrase *si verum est* is equal to *si re vera factum est*, it takes *ut* in like manner. See Zumpt, Lat. Gr., § 623. § *Præstitisse*, "excelled (in his day);" *antecedit*, "surpasses (now while I write):" hence the difference of tense. Instead of *antecedit*, we should expect the infinitive, *antecedere*, depending on *infitandum est*.

6. *Et*, "it,"—*i.e.*, the Roman people.

7. *Quod nisi*, &c., "but had he not been crippled," &c. § *Debilitatus* *est* is pluperfect subjunctive, though *videtur* is present; but *potuisse* gives a *past* aspect to the whole phrase, *videtur superare potuisse*. See Syntax sect. xii., 4 and 8, pp. 161 and 162.

11. *Qui* is equal to *et is*; and *destiterit* is thus made co-ordinate with *deposuerit*, both depending on *conseruavit*. See Syntax, sect. xii., 7, p. 161.

12. *Indigeret* is imperfect tense, as denoting a *continuing state*; while *pulsus esset* is pluperfect, as indicating an action completed antecedent to the time of the other verb. See Syntax, sect. xii., 8, p. 162. § On *opum*, in the genitive, see Syntax, sect. vii., 9, p. 143.

CHAPTER II.

LINE 1. *Nam* is meant to introduce a proof of Hannibal's ceaseless enmity to the Romans (*nunquam destiterit*, i., 12); but the writer, with his not unusual carelessness, instead of saying *nam inecidit Antiochum*, makes mention of the power of Antiochus as the principal statement; which is, of course, no illustration of what he had alleged, but only a preparation for giving the intended instance.

4. *Rubro mari*. This term, in its widest acceptation, meant the Indian Ocean, with the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea. The proper designation for what we now call the Red Sea, is *Sinus Arabicus*.

5. *Legati venissent*: this was in b. c. 192.

6. "To bring Hannibal into suspicion with the king, as if (he), being bribed by them, was entertaining different sentiments from those which he formerly held."

3. *Neque* connects *fecissent* to *venissent* at the beginning of the sentence.

10. *Tempore dato*, "an opportunity being afforded" by the king for an audience.

12. *Puerulo me*, "when I was a very little boy."

13. *Proficiscens*, "on the very point of starting;"—more graphic than *profecturus*, which would be the more usual form to employ in such a case. § *Carthagine* depends on *immolauit*. See Syntax, sect. viii., 26, p. 146.

14. *Divina res*,—i. e., the sacrifice. § *Dum confitebatur*: after *dum*, the present is more usual, even when referring to past events. On the indicative here, see Syntax, sect. vii., 1, p. 156.

18. *Dederis*: depending on *faciam*, through *si*. See Syntax, sect. xii., 9, p. 162.

19. *Instituerat*, "had begun." See Alcib., v., 6, where our phrase, "set about," well expresses the idea. § With *tenentem* supply *me*.

22. *Debeat* is present subjunctive, since *conseruauit* is a present perfect. See Syntax, sect. xii., 2, a, p. 160.

24. *Ceteris me*, "conceal it from me,"—literally, "will have." See Syntax, sect. i., 20, c, p. 127; and on *me*, in the accusative, sect. v., 6, p. 136. Observe the force of the tenses—*Cogitabis*: "should you be in the act of entertaining friendly feelings,"—"you will have acted not unwisely," "if you will have concealed."

25. *In eo*,—i. e., in bello parando.

CHAPTER III.

LINE 1. *Profectus est*, "started," in the year b. c. 237.

4. *Id*, "this appointment, being referred (i. e., reported and referred to the authorities) to Carthage, was publicly sanctioned."

5. *Annis* depends on the comparative, *minor* (Syntax, sect. viii., 19 and 20, p. 146); so that the usual construction of the accusative after *natus* is not adopted. He was twenty-six, or nearly so, at the time.

7. *Foederatam*, "allied with Rome." § *Civitas* is here used in a double sense; first, when referred to *expugnavit*, it means the city, the buildings; secondly, when connected with *foederatam*, it means the community, the body politic. "He took by storm (*vi*) the town of Saguntum, (which formed) a state in alliance with Rome." The date is B.C. 219.

11. *Transiit*: in the year B.C. 218. § *Omnibus* is used in a general way,—"almost all;" but not actually all, for some of the tribes did not interfere with him.

13. *Nemo*: this is not correct, as Gallic tribes had often crossed before Hannibal's day.

14. *Herculem*: there were many mythical heroes in ancient days called Hercules—a Celtic, a Phoenician, &c. Hence he adds the epithet *Graivus*.

15. *Quo facto*, "in consequence of which."

16. *Munivit itinera*, "he constructed roads."

17. *Ea*, scil., *via*, is answered by *qua* following. § *Ornatus*, "fully equipped."

CHAPTER IV.

LINE 1. Hannibal fought at the passage of the Rhone with the Celtic allies of Rome, but not with Scipio, who was then at Marseilles.

2. *Clastidii*: the battle was fought (B.C. 218) on the banks of Ticinus (*Ticino*), north of the Po, not at Clastidium (*Casteggio*), which was south of the Po, and which fell into the hands of Hannibal some after the battle of Ticinus.

4. Tiberius Sempronius Longus was defeated on the Trebia in B.C. 218. Scipio had been severely wounded at the Ticinus, and Sempronius had the sole command.

6. Hannibal crossed the Apennines in B.C. 217, having spent the winter of 218-17 near the Po.

8. *Valetudine*, "state of health,"—implying *bad health*.

10. The battle of Lake Trasimenus (*Perugia*) was fought (probably) in April of B.C. 217. Centenius and a body of 4,000 cavalry were soon afterwards partly slain, partly made prisoners.

12. *Apuliam*: the great battle of Cannae was fought in B.C. 216; but Nepos anticipates events, as the actions recorded in chap. v. ought to precede Cannae.

CHAPTER V.

LINE 1. *Romam*: "he marched towards Rome." It was not till B.C. 211, five years after the battle of Cannae, that Hannibal marched to Rome.

2. *Urbis* depends on *montibus*. Some consider it to be governed by *propinquis*, which is usually followed by a dative.

5. By the stratagem mentioned in next sentence, he drew off the Romans from the main road through the pass, and thus marched onwards unimpeded.

6. *Dedit verba*, "imposed on." The phrase means literally, "to give words (and nothing else) to one."

12. Owing to the accusations against Fabius (*Cunctator*) for his inaction, Marcus Minucius, his quondam lieutenant, was invested with dictatorial power; and wishing to show strongly in contrast with Fabius, he imprudently engaged Hannibal, and would have been utterly annihilated, with his army, had not Fabius sent a fresh corps to his help.

14. *In Lucernis* depends on *sustulit*—"he slew in Lucania." § *Absens*, "though absent,"—*i.e.*, by means of one of his lieutenants he slew, &c.

15. *Quinques* should be *quintum*. So *iterum*, in line 14, should be *bis*.

16. *Pari modo*,—*i.e.*, by a stratagem. § *Venusia* (*Venusia*), in Apulia, near the confines of Lucania. It was the birth-place of Horace.

CHAPTER VI.

LINE 1. The events of this chapter belong to the year B.C. 202. Hannibal's recall took place in the end of B.C. 203.

2. This P. Scipio is the son of him who was defeated at the battle of Ticinus, and who was *not* at the battle of the Rhone. This is the great Scipio Africanus. It is difficult to understand how Nepos fell into so gross an error.

6. Observe the close proximity of *convenit* and *convenerunt*, which is perhaps intentional. § *Convenerunt*, supply *inter se*—"the terms were agreed upon between them."

7. *Paucis diebus*, "a few days." Some say, "the very next day."

8. The phrase *incredibile dictu* belongs to what follows, *viz.*, the speed of his march. Zama lay considerably inland, and Hadrumetum on the coast, east by south of Zama.

CHAPTER VII.

LINE 1. *Apparando*, "in making preparations." While making preparations for war, he was, nevertheless, an advocate of the peace which was concluded in B.C. 201.

4. Sulpicius and Aurelius were consuls in B.C. 200. But some say that Mago died on his return voyage to Africa, in B.C. 203, of a wound received in a battle fought with the Roman generals in Cisalpine Gaul. If so, Nepos is again at fault in historical detail. As Mago was a common Carthaginian name, the confusion is easily accounted for.

6. *Cum iis*: we should rather have expected *secum*, more especially as *cos* follows so immediately, referring to the people and senate of Rome. So in line 8, for *corum* we might expect *sui*.

8. *Essent*,—*i.e.*, "should remain."

11. Before *remissuros* (*esse*) the subject *se* is omitted.

13. *Cum imperio*, "in military command,"—*i.e.*, with full military authority.

15. On *domum*, in the accusative, see Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137. Observe its peculiar position between the two names.

16. He was elected praetor in the twenty-second year after he had been

rex or *suffes*,—*i.e.*, probably in B.C. 199. The arrangements of the Carthaginian constitution are little known; but it would appear that the same person might be general, and also *rex*, or, as it is otherwise called, praetor, or *suffes* (*shofete*). The *suffes* was properly an annual magistrate, though the term of office seems to have been extended sometimes; but the general had no fixed period of service, and in Hannibal's case the honorary title of *rex*, or *suffes*, seems to have been conferred on him in his absence (B.C. 221), as a confirmation of the choice of the army in making him general. On his return, however, after the peace, he was elected one of the *shofetes*, or praetors, or supreme judges, who had charge of the administration of justice and of the finances. On this subject the advanced student should consult Mommsen's "History of Rome" (Dickson's translation), vol. ii., pp. 15, 261.

20. *Ut* must be taken before *non solum*, "that from the new taxes there should not only be money to pay (literally, which might be paid to) the Romans, in accordance with the treaty, but also that there might be a surplus."

21. On *quae*, with the subjunctives *penderetur* and *reponeretur*, to express a purpose, see Syntax, sect. iv., 7, p. 155, and sect. ix., 2, a, p. 158.

23. *Legati venerunt*: this embassy was sent to Rome in B.C. 196.

24. *Daretur iis*: this is a very common phrase in such cases, and means "to give an audience to." The passive is like the Greek middle, "before the senate should give-itself (*i.e.*, give a hearing) to them."

26. *Palam facta*, "being made public," "disclosed."

CHAPTER VIII.

LINE 1. *Anno tertio postquam*,—*i.e.*, in B.C. 193. From the Roman method of counting the year *from* which, and also the year *to* which, an event is reckoned, we might have expected *quarto* here.

3. After *accessit* we should expect either *ad* before *Africam*, or the dative. See Them., ii., 1. See Syntax, sect. v., 11, p. 137. § *Si forte*: "to try" is implied in the foregoing words.

4. *Spe fiduciaque* are said to be equal to "the confident hope." We think not. *Spe* means the *hope* of his joining; and *fiducia*, the *confidence* of success thereby inspired.

6. *Magonem*: see note 4, chap. vii.

8. Observe how far *quum*, which ought to introduce the clause, is projected into it. See Syntax, sect. iii., 1, with note †, p. 153.

9. *Duplex memoria*, "a double tale,"—*i.e.*, two stories.

10. In *naufragio* and *servulis*, both depending on *interfectum esse*, in a slightly different sense, we have an example of zeugma; on which see Them., i., 9. To *naufragio* the kindred verb *periisse* would be more appropriate.

13. Observe *Tiberi*, in the dative after *propius*, instead of the more usual accusative. See Milt. vii., 7, note. Antiochus was defeated at Thermopylae, in B.C. 191, by M^aAcilius Glabrio, the Roman consul.

14. *Quem* is equal to *et eum*: "and when he (Hannibal) saw that he (Antiochus) was attempting," &c.

16. *In Asiam*,—*i.e.*, Asia Minor. The year of this exploit was B.C. 190.

17. *Quo*: supply *proelio*, which is suggested by the preceding verb, *construxit*,—"And in this battle, though his men were overpowered by the numbers of their opponents, yet he was victorious in the wing where he commanded."

CHAPTER IX.

LINE 1. *Antiocho fugato*: Antiochus was defeated by the Romans at Magnesia, near Mount Sipylus, not far from Smyrna, in Asia Minor, B.C. 190.

2. *Si sui fecisset potestatem*, "if he had put himself in his power." The phrase literally means, "to make (a person) master of one's self," "to give to another the power over one's self."

3. *Quo se conferret*, "where he should betake himself."

4. On *callidissimus*, see Them., i., 16. § *Nisi*, "unless he took some precaution."

7. *Summas*, scil., *amphoras*, "the tops of the jars."

9. *Illorum*, and *his* in next line, refer to the people of Gortyna. § *Fidei*, "protection."

11. *Abjicit*, &c., "he throws down carelessly in front of his house," as if worthless.

13. *Iis*,—i.e., the Gortynians.

CHAPTER X.

LINE 3. On *animo*, in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 16, p. 146. § Observe, that "any," in a negative clause, is expressed by the proper part of *quisquam*; so here, *quidquam*.

4. *Exercuit* means, "he kept the king constantly in training, and in a state of anger against the Romans."

5. *Minus*, used here, as it often is, for *non*, but with a stronger emphasis.

6. *Dissidebat ab eo*, "was at variance with him,"—i.e., with Prusias.

8. *Quo*, "on which account,"—viz., his friendship to the Romans.

9. *Utrobique*, "on both sides,"—i.e., both by land and sea.

12. *Decreturi*, future participle of *decerno*, "about to fight (a pitched battle)." § *Suprabatur*, "he was surpassed in the number of ships."

15. *Effecisset*, "had made up," "secured."

18. *Tantum satis* is somewhat tautological: "they should deem it only enough." *Tantum* may be joined with *defendere*, though the position of the words is rather opposed to such a construction.

20. *Sc autem facturum, ut scirent, in qua nave rex veheretur*, "but that he would insure that they knew in what ship the king was sailing."

21. On *iis* and *praemio*, in the dative after *fore*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 10, p. 140.

CHAPTER XI.

LINE 1. *Utrisque*, "both parties."

2. *Quarum*: supply *classium* or *navium*, which is suggested by *classis ab utrisque* going before. Resolve *quarum* into *ei harum*, "and when the line of these (fleets) was marshaled."

3. *Daretur* depends on *mittit*, through *priusquam*. This is contrary to the general rule for the sequence of tenses, as laid down in Syntax, sect. xii., 2, p. 160; but the peculiar sense, "before the signal should be given," requires a past tense of the subjunctive. Besides, *mittit* is a historical present. See Syntax, sect. xii., 5, p. 161.

5. *Qui ubi*: resolve *qui* into *et is*, "and when he."

7. On *dubitabat*, in indicative after *quod*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 1, a, p. 158; and on *scriptum esset*, after *dubitabat quin*, see Syntax, sect. iv., 5, p. 155.

10. Instead of *cum* we should expect *se*, since the pronoun refers to the principal subject, *Eumenes*. But Nepos is rather careless in the use of pronouns; and, indeed, the rule about the use of *se* is, in other writers, very often violated. § *Pertineret*. "tended." § *Cujus*, either, "of which letter;" or, "of which manœuvre,"—viz., the sending of the taunting letter.

11. *Neque* is equal to *et non*, and *causa* must be supplied (from the preceding *causam*), as subject to *reperiebatur*.

12. *Horum*,—i.e., the Bithynians and the Pergamenians.

13. Resolve *quorum* into *et horum*; and observe how far *quum* is projected into its clause. So also *quum* in line 17. See Syntax, sect. iii., 1, p. 153.

18. *Quae jaeta*, "the throwing of which;" literally, "which being thrown."

21. *Nova re*. "the unusual affair," "strange." § *Quid potissimum*, "what thing more than another,"—i.e., the serpents or the attack of the enemy. § The clause *quum viderent* depends on *verterunt* and *retulerunt*.

22. *Puppae verterunt*, "they turned their ships about,"—i.e., "turned tail." So the phrase, *Terga verterunt*.

24. *Pedestribus*,—i.e., "land forces."

CHAPTER XVII.

LINE 1. *Quae dum*: resolve *quae* into *et haec*, "and when these affairs," &c.

2. *L. Quintium Flaminium*: it was Titus Flamininus, the conqueror of Philip of Macedonia, and the liberator of Greece (B.C. 196), and not Lucius, who was sent on this embassy. Mommsen ("History of Rome," vol. ii., p. 282, Dickson's translation) relieves the senate from any share in this disgraceful business, and lays the whole blame on the "restless vanity" of Flamininus.

6. *Qui existimarent* expresses the ground or reason of their sending the embassy.

7. *Inimicissimum suum*, "their greatest enemy." Observe the confusion in the reflexive pronouns, *suum*, *secum*, *sibi*,—the first and the last referring to the Romans, and the second to Prusias.

8. Before *dederet, ut*, suggested by *ne* going before, must be supplied. § *Negare*, "say no."

9. *Ne* is used in the sense of *impedio*, thus: "He refused the former, to prevent them from demanding that an act should be done by him which would violate the rights of hospitality."

10. Before *ipsi* we must supply some such verb as, "he consented," which is suggested by *recusavit*. Observe that the construction is changed from (*ut*, with) the subjunctive to the accusative and infinitive, *inventuros (esse)*.

12. On *ei* and *muneri*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 10, p. 140.

13. *Haeret*, "he might (always) have." This peculiar meaning requires the imperfect subjunctive, although *aedificarat*, in the principal clause, is the pluperfect.

14. *Ne usu veniret*, "lest that should come about, in the course of events, which (actually) did happen."

16. *Puer*, "the boy,"—*i.e.*, the slave. This is a very common use of *puer* in Latin writers.

17. Resolve *qui* into *et is*.

19. *Quum puer renuntiasset*, "when the boy had reported."

21. Hannibal, understood, is subject to *sensit*.

22. *Retinendam*, the gerundive, expresses here not so much "necessity" or "duty," as "difficulty" or "improbability:" "that his life was with difficulty to be preserved any longer;" or, "was not likely to be preserved." § Resolve *quam* into *et eam*.

23. *Virtutum*: not "virtues," but rather "deeds of fortitude."

CHAPTER XIII.

LINE 2. *Acquievit*, "went to his rest," "fell on sleep." But he could not have been seventy years old, even on Nepos' own showing. In chap. ii. he told us that he was nine when his father started for Spain,—*i.e.*, in B.C. 237; and as he "fell asleep" in B.C. 133 (or 182 even), he could not have been more at his death than sixty-three or sixty-four. But it is more probable that he was born in B.C. 249, and that he died in B.C. 133; so that he would be in his sixty-sixth year. § *Quibus consulibus*, "in whose consulship."

3. Marcellus and Labeo were consuls in B.C. 183.

4. *Annali*: Atticus wrote a work called "Annalis," (which is lost), giving an outline of Roman history down to his own day.

5. Aemilius Paulus and Cn. Baebius Tamphilus were consuls in B.C. 182.

6. Cethegus and M. Baebius Tamphilus were consuls in B.C. 181.

7. *Tentus* must be translated separate from *vir*, and after it, because it is connected by *-que* to *districtus*. § *Non nihil*, "no inconsiderable."

8. *Literis*, "literature."

9. *Volso*, or *Vulso*, was consul in B.C. 189. He defeated the Galatians in Asia Minor. He allowed his soldiers great licence; and the luxurious habits thus contracted, being continued after their return to Rome, did infinite evil to the state.

10. *Hujus* is governed by *belli*, and that by *gesta*: "the events of his (Hannibal's) war,"—*i.e.*, the Second Punic.

11. *Sed ex his duo*, "but of these (*there are*) two (specially worthy of note),—*viz.*, Silenus and Sosilus, who," &c.

13. *Usus est*, "employed," "had."

NOTES ON CAESAR.

[The records which Caesar has left of his military operations in Gaul are called "Commentarii,"—*i.e.*, not a regular and complete history, but rather "notes," or "jottings," "pencilings by the way," from which a full history might afterwards be compiled. When he wrote them is not positively known, but it was most likely during the years in which the events occurred, and while the incidents and the places were fresh in his mind. It must have been before B.C. 46.]

BOOK I.

PART I.—THE HELVETIAN WAR.

CHAPTER I.

LINE 1. *Gallia*: by Gaul Caesar means all the country from the Pyrenees on the south to the Rhine on the east and north, including part of the modern Switzerland, but excluding a portion of the country in the south-east, formerly occupied by the Allobroges, and at that time a Roman province, called, by way of eminence, *Provincia*, or, **THE PROVINCE**. *Omnis* is joined to *Gallia* to prevent any misunderstanding, as *Gallia* was sometimes used, in a restricted sense, of one portion,—*viz.*, that inhabited by the Galli, line 3. Observe the emphatic position of *omnis* after its substantive, and separated from it by the verb; so in book vi., chap. xvi., 1, *Natio est omnis Gallorum*, &c.

2. *Aliam*: we should rather expect *alteram*, "the second;" but such a use of *aliam* is not uncommon, when the idea of *order* is not to be brought out specially.

5. *Dividit* is singular, although *Matrona-et-Sequana* is a compound subject; because each of them forms a boundary by itself, so far as it goes; or because there is one continuous boundary made by the Seine (*Sequana*) and its tributary the Marne (*Matrona*).

6. *Cultu* refers to all the appliances of outward life—"manner of life;" while *humanitate* applies to the intellectual cultivation and refinement.

7. *Mercatores*: "traders very seldom go back and forwards to them."

These travelling merchants were found in great numbers hanging on to Roman armies in the provinces. They carried their wares about in wag-gons, or on the backs of beasts of burden, and drove a profitable trade with the natives, specially by way of *barter*.

9. Before *proximi sunt* supply *propterea quod* from the preceding clause, since it is co-ordinate with *important* and the other dependent verbs, and gives another reason for the greater bravery of the Belgae.

12. Observe the use of the pronouns in this and the next line—*suis, eos, ipsi, eorum*.

14. *Eorum*,—*i.e.*, of these Gauls. But we should have expected *harum trium partium*.

15. *A flumine*, "at the river." So, in next line, *ab Sequanis*, "on the side or quarter of the Sequani;" and in line 17, *ab extremis finibus*.

17. *Septentriones*; see note on Nep. *Milt.*, i., 19. § *Ab extremis finibus*, "on or at the frontier limits of."

21. *Ad Hispaniam*, "near Spain,"—*i.e.*, the lower part of the Bay of Biscay.

CHAPTER II.

LINE 2. Messala and Piso were consuls in B.C. 61.

3. *Nobilitatis* here means the "body of nobles or chieftains." So *civitati* does not mean "citizenship," but the "body of citizens."

4. On *exirent*, in the imperfect subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. iv., 3, p. 154. § *Perfacile esse* depends, in the infinitive, on "he assured them," to be "taken out" of *persuasit*.

5. On *praestarent*, in the subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. viii., 2, p. 153; and on *omnibus*, in dative, sect. vi., 4, d, p. 139; and on the construction of *potiri*, sect. viii., 9, p. 145. See also next chap., line 22.

6. *Persuasit id eis facilius hoc*, "he persuaded them to this the more easily for the following reason (*hoc*), that," &c.

7. On the geography see a map; and for the proper names consult the Vocabulary.

12. *Minus late*, "less extensively" than they wished.

13. *Qua ex parte*: literally, "on which side,"—*i.e.*, "on which point," "in regard to which," "in which respect." Some books read, *qua de causa*.

14. *Pro*, "in proportion to," "in consideration of."

15. *Angustos fines*, "a narrow (*i.e.*, confined) territory." The most competent judges are of opinion that Caesar's measurements are very nearly correct, and that he cannot be more than ten miles wrong,—*i.e.* from south to north-east 180 Roman miles, or 144 geographical; and from west to east 230 Roman miles, or 180 geographical. See Long's "Caesar."

CHAPTER III.

LINE 2. *Comparare* and the following infinitives depend on *constituerunt*. § On *ad proficiscendum*, see Syntax, sect. xiii., 2, b and c, p. 150.

4. *Sementes quam maximas facere*, "to make as extensive sowings as possible,"—*i.e.*, to lay as great an extent of land as possible under grain.

5. On *supplicet*, and *pertinet* (line 2), in the imperfect subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. xii., 2, b, and 3, pp. 160 and 161.

6. *Ad conficiendas*: see Syntax, sect. xi., 8, p. 150.

7. *Lege*, "a public resolution," adopted at some national assembly.

12. *Occuparet* depends on *persuadet* through *ut*, verbs that signify to ask, advise, command, or strive, taking *ut* with the subjunctive, and not an infinitive. Observe that this is another example of the historical present being followed by a past tense of the subjunctive, because it is in reality equal to a perfect-aorist. So also *conarctur*, in line 15. See Syntax, sect. xii., 5, p. 161; and note on Nep. Milt., iv., 16.

16. On *factu* see Syntax, sect. x., 2, p. 149.

18. On *quin possent* see Syntax, sect. iv., 5, p. 155. § *Plurimum possent*, "were most powerful."

20. Observe that *adducti* applies only to Casticus and Dumnorix, whereas *dant* includes Orgetorix as well. The two were persuaded by the third, and then all three pledged their faith.

21. *Regno occupato*, "if sovereign power were secured (by each), they would make themselves masters of all Gaul by means of these three most powerful and most resolute (or warlike) states."

CHAPTER IV.

LINE 1. *Indicium*, "by deposition," or "information" for nally lodged, —i.e., by "informers." § *Suis moribus*, "according to their customs."

2. *Ex vinculis*, "out of chains,"—i.e., as we say, "in chains." So *ex equo pugnare*, "to fight on horseback;" *ex equis colloqui*, "to hold a conference on horseback." § *Coegerunt* means, as the latter part of the chapter shows, that they were going to force him to plead in chains. As yet he was free; and the trial, we see, did not come on.

3. *Ut igni cremaretur* is in apposition to *poenam*,—"the punishment, viz., to be burned with fire, must of necessity follow on his condemnation;" literally, "him (if) condemned." § *Die constituta* is an ablative of time, and not a so-called "ablative absolute."

4. *Familiam*, "his household" of slaves and retainers.

6. *Obacratos*, "debtors,"—probably persons who had forfeited their liberty to their creditor.

7. *Ne diccret causam, eripuit se*, "he saved himself from (the necessity of) pleading his cause."

8. *Suum jus*, "its rights," or "authority."

10. *Quin consciverit*, "but that he was a party to his own death,"—i.e., made away with himself.

CHAPTER V.

LINE 2. *Ut exeat* is in apposition to *id quod constituerant facere*,—viz., "to leave their territory."

4. *Privata aedificia*: either isolated towns in the country, as opposed to the "towns and villages;" or else houses for special purposes, such as sheds for their cattle, granaries, and other buildings.

6. Observe *domum*, in the accusative of *place to which*, after *reditionis*, a substantive; and see Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137, and vi., 7, c, p. 140.

7. On *pericula subeunda*, see Syntax, sect. xi., 8, p. 150.

8. *Molita cibaria*, "ground provisions for three months,"—*i.e.*, "ground corn."

10. *Cum iis*: not *secum*, as at first sight might be expected. Had Caesar used *suadent*, and had he been detailing the arguments of the Helvetii, he would then have written *secum*; but he speaks of the matter as over, and employs *persuadent*, so that *cum iis* is the legitimate phrase.

12. *Receptos* had better be translated as a finite verb—"they receive to themselves, and assume as partners, the Boii," &c.

CHAPTER VI.

LINE 3. *Singuli carri*, "a single line of cars."

4. *Ducerentur* is the subjunctive (see Syntax, sect. ix., 2, b, p. 153), because *qua* is equal to *ut ea (parte or via)*, and is to be connected with *angustum et difficile*,—"so narrow and difficult that one waggon at a time could scarce be drawn along it."

5. In like manner, *possent* is to be immediately connected with *altissimus*, through *ut*,—"so very high that a very few would be able," &c.

7. *Nuper pacati*, "recently reduced to subjection,"—*viz.*, a few years before (B.C. 61), by C. Pomptinus, the praetor.

9. *Geneva*: the best MSS. write the name *Genua*; but we have retained *Geneva*, in deference to long custom. Kraner writes *Genava*.

11. On *bono animo*, in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 16, p. 146.

13. *Eos* should rather be *se*; but as *suos*, referring to the Allobroges, immediately precedes, it would be awkward and somewhat ambiguous, to use *se* of the Helvetii. Caesar might have written, *se per ipsorum fines*.

14. *Qua die—is dies*: observe the difference of gender. The feminine form is used in speaking of a fixed *time or period*, the masculine of the *natural day*.

15. *A. d. V.*, &c.,—*i.e.*, *Ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis*, "on the fifth day before the Kalends of April,"—*i.e.*, the 28th March. The year was B.C. 58.

CHAPTER VII.

LINE 1. Again observe the clause, *eos per provinciam*, &c., in apposition to *id*. See chap. v., 2, above.

2. *Urbe*,—*i.e.*, Rome. He passes over the Alps to farther Gaul, but gives no details of his journey, as he hastens on to his subject proper.

3. *Ad Genevam*, "near Geneva."

4. *Provinciae imperat*, "he imposes on the province (to levy) as many soldiers as possible."

7. *Certiores facti sunt*, "are certified," "assured," "credibly informed."

8. *Cujus legationis* refers to *legatos* going before. This is a usual kind of *synesis* with Caesar (see note, Nep. Milt., iv., 14).

9. *Dicerent*: the imperfect subjunctive after *mittunt*, which is a *historical present*.

11. Note the emphatic position of *nullum*. Mr. Long translates it well,—“other road they had none.” § Before *rogare* (which depends on *dicerent*) supply *se* as subject.

12. This disaster befell Cassius in B.C. 107, on the banks of Lake Geneva. The “yoke” was made by laying a spear horizontally across two others placed upright. The idea was borrowed from the yoke by which oxen were fastened to the plough or waggon.

15. *Data facultate*: this ablative is equal to a conditional clause,—“if an opportunity were afforded.”

16. *Temperaturos*, “would restrain themselves (would refrain) from acts of injury and mischief.” See chap. xxxiii., where Caesar uses the form, *temperaturos sibi*. The preposition is not always expressed before the ablative, so that we can say *temperare maleficio*, as well as *ab maleficio*.

17. On the mood of *convenirent* see Syntax, sect. vii., 3, p. 157.

18. *Diem*, “time,”—not “a day,” as the context shows.

19. *Ad Idus*, “about the Ides.” § Observe that *revertentur* is in the subjunctive mood, though *sumpturum (esse)* of the former clause is the infinitive; and both depend on *respondit*. But *respondit* in the first case is simply a verb of *declaring*, whereas in the second case it is used in the sense of *advice* or *command*. See Syntax, sect. xi., 4, p. 160.

CHAPTER VIII.

LINE 1. *Ea legione* and *militibus*, though personal names, have not the preposition. See Syntax, sect. viii., 8, p. 145.

3. *Intuit*: the Rhone flows *through* the Lake of Geneva, and as Caesar mentions the south-west end of the lake, he speaks not of the river flowing into the lake, but of the lake flowing into the river.

4. *Decem novem*, “nineteen.” Observe this form of the numeral. So Livy says, *decem octo*.

5. *Sexdecim (pedes)*, “sixteen feet,”—*i.e.*, from the bottom of the ditch to the top of the wall.

7. For *possit* some editions read *posset*, which would be quite allowable in tense (see Syntax, sect. xii., 5, p. 161), since *communit* and *disponit* are historical presents.

9. *Negat*, “says-not.” He says that he cannot, consistently with the practice and precedents of the Roman people, permit any one to march through the province.

12. *Alii vadis Rhodani*. *Alii* seems to mean “some few,” as opposed to the general body of the Helvetii, who attempted to cross on rafts and boats. Had the writer meant that about equal numbers tried each way, he would most probably have repeated *alii*.

14. *Operis*,—*i.e.*, the wall and fosse.

15. On *conatu*, in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 22, p. 146.

CHAPTER IX.

LINE 1. *Una via*: see chap. vi., line 1.

2. *Sua sponte*, “by their own means,” “by themselves.”

4. *Deprecatore*, "intercessor," "an earnest pleader (for them)."
 7. *Novis rebus studebat*, "was eager for (political) change,"—*i.e.*, a revolution.
 9. Observe the sequence of tenses in the following lines; and consult Syntax, sect. xii., 1 and 2, *a*, p. 160.
 11. *Sequani* is subject to *dent* (*obsides*) understood, *prohibeant* depending on *dent*. So also *Helvetii*.

CHAPTER X.

- LINE 1. *Renuntiatur*, "word is brought," "it is reported," by those who had been sent to make inquiry.
 2. *Santonum*: the Santones or Santoni lived on the "right bank of the lower Garonne;" and though their principal town was some 180 miles from Toulouse, still, as the way was open, their route to the province would have been easy, and not at all tedious.
 3. Observe *Tolosatum—quae civitas*. This kind of apposition is not at all unusual. It is a kind of *ad intellectum* construction. See note to Milt., iv., 14.
 4. *Id si*, &c., "should this take place, he well knew that it would be attended with great danger to the province to have on its borders (*finitimos*) warlike men, enemies of the Roman people, in places exposed, and very rich in corn crops." Some make *locis* depend on *finitimos*,—"bordering on places."
 10. *Qua*, "he hastened to go by that route by which the journey over the Alps to farther Gaul was shortest."—Caesar had six legions in all, besides the troops raised in the province. See chap. vii., 5. The number in a legion varied at different times; but as the average of the legion was from 4,000 to 5,000 men, not including the cavalry, we may infer that he had about 30,000 foot in all.
 14. *Extremum*, "the last town," or, "a frontier town." Gaul on this side (*i.e.*, on the side next Rome) the Alps was called Citerior, as opposed to Gaul beyond the Alps, Ulterior. § *Occlum* was at the foot of the Alps, on the Italian side.

CHAPTER XI.

- LINE 1. *Jam*, "by this time." The *Helvetii* were so many in number, and their train so cumbersome, that they required a long time to make their way through the passes of Jura and the territory of the *Sequani*; and thus Caesar overtook them, though he went to Italy and returned in the meantime.
 4. On *possent*, after *mittunt*, see Syntax, sect. xii., 5, p. 161.
 5. Supply "saying" (*dicentes*) before this infinitive clause.
 9. *Depopulatis agris*, "their fields being devastated,"—*i.e.*, after their fields were devastated.
 13. *Reliqui* is the genitive, governed by *nihil*,—"nothing of remains;" *i.e.*, "that nothing was left," or "remained."
 14. *Sibi expectandum*: see Syntax, sect. xi., 6, p. 150.

CHAPTER XII.

LINE 1. "There is a river called Arar,"—*i.e.*, the Saone, forming part of the boundary between the Sequani and the Aedui.

4. *Transibant*, "were in the act of crossing."

5. *Tres partes*, "three-fourths." § On *traduxisse* with two accusatives—*partes* and *stumen*—see Syntax, sect. v., 8, p. 136.

7. *De tertia vigilia*, "about the third watch,"—meaning, probably, soon after it began. The *natural* day (as opposed to the *civil* day, beginning at midnight) was divided into light and darkness. The night was divided into twelve hours, or four watches (*vigiliae*), which varied in length according to the season of the year. Each watch consisted of three hours.

8. *Eos* refers to *partem*; but the writer thinks of the men, and not the word *partem*. See note on Milt., iv., 14.

9. *Eorum*: observe the repetition of this form so soon after *eos*.

10. *In proximassilvas*. After *abdo* (or at least after our equivalent, "hide") we might expect an ablative with the preposition, rather than the accusative. But it very often happens, both in Greek and Latin, that a verb of *rest* is followed by a preposition and case indicating motion; while, on the contrary, a verb of *motion* is followed by a preposition and case indicating *rest*. This is called the *constructio praeagnans*,—*i.e.*, the *doubly-significant construction*.

11. *Abdiderunt* may be translated, "fled to the nearest fores' for concealment." § *Pagus*, "canton." Hence comes the French, *pays*. § The Tigurini are thought by some to have lived near *Zurich*; by others, in the district *Uri*; but the best authorities place them in the *Pays de Vaud*, near Lake *Morat*. See Long's "Caesar."

13. *L. Cassium*: L. Cassius, the consul, was defeated, in B.C. 107, by these Tigurini, who had crossed into the country of the Allobroges, under Divico. His lieutenant was L. Piso, grandfather of L. Calpurnius Piso, whose daughter, Calpurnia, Caesar married in B.C. 59.

15. *Quae—ea*, "what part of the Helvetic state, &c.—that part," &c. This is a good example of the "indefinite followed by a demonstrative, instead of the relative with an antecedent." It is a much more emphatic mode of expression than the usual form.

CHAPTER XIII.

LINE 2. On *posset*, after the historical present *curat*, see note on chap. vii., 9, above.

4. *Id—ut transirent*: see note on chap. v., 2.

5. *Uno die*, "in one day,"—the bridge must therefore have been made of boats.

7. On the principles of the *obliqua oratio*, or indirect statement, see Syntax, sect. xi., p. 159. § *Egit cum Caesare*, "treated with Caesar." From this *egit* verbs must be supplied to govern *ituros esse*, and *remisceretur*, *ut* being understood with the latter; thus, "He said that they would go"—"He begged him to remember." See Syntax, sect. xi., 4.

p. 160. § Observe that *faceret* takes its tense, not from *ituros esse*, but from the verb in the past tense which governs *ituros esse*.

11. On *Incommodi*, and *virtutis*, in the genitive, see Syntax, sect. vii., 8, b, p. 143.

12. *Quod*, "as to the fact that he had attacked one cartou mmawares, &c., he should not on that account either give very much credit to his own valour, or despise them." The full phrase is, *tribuere aliquid*, or *multum virtuti*.

15. *Didicisse* depends, like *ituros esse* of line 8, on, "he said;" while *ne committeret*, of line 17, requires such a verb as "he begged," or "he advised him." See Syntax, sect. xi., 4, p. 160.

17. *Committeret*, "bring it to pass," "cause." § *Constitissent*: they, viz., the Helvetii, who were still on their march, and had taken up a position.

19. *Proderet memoriam*, "hand down the recollection of it."

CHAPTER XIV.

LINE 1. *His*, "to these things." § *Eo* is answered by *quod*, "on this account, because."

3. *Eo* is answered by *quo*, "in that proportion, in what proportion;" "in proportion as." § *Merito* is not an adverb, but the ablative—"according to, or by reason of, any (bad) desert, or fault." The whole may be translated as follows: "That he had the less hesitation (*as to how he should act*) for this reason, that he bore in mind those circumstances which the Helvetian ambassadors had referred to; and that he felt (all) the more indignant on this account, because they had come about (occurred) by no means through any fault of the Roman people."

4. *Qui*: resolve *qui* into *et is*, "and if it" (or they)—*i.e.* the Roman people. Observe the peculiarities of the *obliqua oratio*.

8. *Num*—*posse deponere*. *Num* usually expects the answer, "No." It is used in direct questions, and, in the *oratio obliqua*, is often joined with the infinitive when a direct statement of the first or third person is turned into that form. If the direct statement is in the second singular, the subjunctive (imperfect or pluperfect), with *num*, is used in the indirect. § *Eo invito*: we should expect *se*, as it refers to the speaker.

10. *Quod*, "as to the circumstance that," "inasmuch as."

11. *Victoria* is the ablative of cause: "because of their success."

12. *Eodem pertinere*, "had the same tendency," "both pointed in the same direction,"—viz., to their impending chastisement, as set forth in the next sentence.

13. "For (he said), in order that men may experience more grievous affliction in consequence of a change of circumstances, the immortal gods were in the habit of granting greater prosperity sometimes, and more lengthened exemption from punishment, to those whom they wished to chastise for their crimes."

16. *Quum sint*, "although these things are so." See Syntax, sect. vii., 2, a, p. 157; and on the tense of *dentur* and the other verbs, sect. xii., 2, p. 160.

18. On *ipsis* and *sociis*, in the dative after *intulerint*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 14, p. 141; and on *Allobrogibus*, after *satisfaciant*, sect. vi., 4, b, p. 139.

CHAPTER XV.

LINE 3. *Quem habebat coactum*, "which, collected from the province, &c., he had (with him)."

4. *Qui videant*, "to see." Observe that *qui* is plural, though the antecedent, *equitatum*, is singular. See Syntax, sect. ii., 11, p. 133.

5. *Novissimum agmen*, "the rear." § *Alieno*, "unfavourable;" (literally, "belonging to another.") So, conversely, *suo*, "belonging to one's self," means "favourable."

10. *Habebat satis*, "deemed it enough."

11. *In praesentia*: see note on Nep. Milt., chap. vii., 23.

12. *Dies* is the accusative of duration of time.

13. *Primum nostrum*, "our van."

14. *Quinis aut senis*, "five or six miles each day."

CHAPTER XVI.

LINE 1. On *Aeduos* and *frumentum*, governed by *flagitare*, see Syntax, sect. v., 6, p. 136.

2. *Flagitare* is the historical infinitive used like a past tense of the indicative, "he demanded." § *Essent publice polliciti*, "they had promised on the part of the public." We should rather have expected *erant*, the pluperfect indicative; but there seems to be a covert reference to the obligation of the Aedui, and the phrase is almost equal to *quum polliciti essent*, "since, or because, they had proffered it." § *Frigora*, "the colds,"—i.e., "the cold weather." It was still early in the year, and the climate was probably not so mild in those days as it now is, owing to the higher culture of the soil, better drainage, clearing of forests, and other causes.

3. *Sub septentrionibus*, "under the north,"—i.e., in a much more northerly position than Rome.

6. *Arare*, in the ablative, expressing the course *along which* (Syntax, sect. viii., 27, p. 147); or, perhaps, it may be regarded as the ablative of means or instrumentality.

8. *Ducere*, scil., *Caesarem*, (as *se duci* of next line shows), "led on,"—i.e., put off Caesar day after day.

10. *Eum* is to be supplied, as subject to *metiri*, "it behoved him to measure."

12. *Vergobretum*, "vergobretus." Liscus was chief magistrate at the time, it appears. The word is of Celtic origin, and means, literally, "a man for judgment." It is stated by Schneider, on the authority of Le Maire and others, that in *Audin*, formerly Augustodunum, the capital of the Aedui, even as late as the end of the eighteenth century the chief magistrate was called *viere*.

14. There is one long, complex parenthesis, from *quorum*, line 11, to *potestatem*, line 14; so that we must go back to *frumentum*, line 9, for the subject to *posset* of line 15: "it (the corn) could not be bought."

CHAPTER XVII.

LINE 2. *Proponit*, "declares plainly." Observe that *tacuerat* is transitive here, governing *quod*: "what he had previously concealed."

3. *Privatim*, "in a private capacity." Some copies read *privati*.

5. The text of these lines is hopelessly corrupt. We have adopted the readings which seem to give the simplest sense: "That these individuals are preventing the public from contributing the corn which it is their due to supply; that since they cannot now obtain the supremacy of Gaul, they prefer the rule of the Gauls to that of the Romans; and that they ought not to doubt but that, if the Romans overpowered the Helvetii, they would wrest their freedom from the Aedui along with the rest of Gaul."

10. *Quaecumque*, "and whatsoever things."

11. *A se*, "by him,"—*i.e.*, Liscus, the vergobretus.

CHAPTER XVIII.

LINE 2. *Designari*, "was aimed at." § *Pluribus*, "many (more than usual) being present."

4. *Quærit*,—*i.e.*, Caesar asks. § *Æe solo*, from him, by himself. § *Dicit*,—*i.e.*, Liscus speaks.

6. *Ipsam*, "that this *very* Dumnorix (whom he suspected) was a man of the greatest daring, in great favour with the people on account of his generosity, desirous of revolution."

8. *Portoria*, "transit dues,"—*i.e.*, duties on all imports or exports, whether by land or sea, on rivers, over bridges, at frontiers, gates, &c. *Vectigalia* is a more general term, and includes *portoria* as well as "*scriptura*," or rent of the public pasture-land, and "*decumae*," or tithe of productions, such as oil, wine, and fruits. These taxes and imposts were farmed or contracted for—*redempta*—(as is done with toll-bars in some parts of our own country); and it was therefore the interest of the collector to make them as remunerative as possible. Hence the *redemptores* or *publicani* (publicans) became notorious for extortion. § On the case of *annos*, see Syntax, sect. v., 14, p. 107; and on *pretio*, line 9, sect. viii., 17, p. 146.

9. *Illo licente*, "when he was bidding, no one dared to bid against him." *Licente* is the participle of the deponent *licet*.

11. *Facultates*, "ample means for the exercise of munificence." § On *ad largiendum*, see Syntax, sect. xii., 2, c, p. 151.

14. *Largiter posse*, "had great influence."

15. *Biturigibus*: the Bituriges were a Celtic tribe occupying territory on the opposite side of the Loire from the Aedui. The modern town of Bourges represents their capital, Avaricum.

17. *Collocasse*, "had married," "had settled." The full phrase is, *collocasse in matrimonium* or *in matrimonio*; or, as here, *collocasse nuptum*. § *Nuptum*, supine of *nubo*, is to be connected with *in auras civitatis*.

The phrases *nubere in domum*, and *in familiam*, "to marry into a family," were common; and on the same analogy he writes, "to marry into other states."

18. *Favere et cupere*, "that he favoured and wished well to." § On *Helvetiis*, in dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, a, p. 139.

19. *Suo nomine*, "on his own account," "on private grounds."

20. *Divitiacus* was one of the Druids (see book vi., chap. xiii., *sqq.*); but his brother had injured him, and he had been reinstated by the Romans in his position and dignity.

21. *Si quid accidat*, "if any disaster befell the Romans, he (thereby) conceived the very strongest hope of gaining supreme power by means of the Helvetii."

22. *Imperio*, "during the supremacy of the Roman people,"—*i.e.*, "so long as the Roman people were all-powerful."

25. *Quod proelium*, &c. : this is another example of the indefinite followed by the demonstrative, *ejus*, instead of the relative with the antecedent before it. See chap. xii., 15. Literally, "that *what* battle had been unsuccessfully fought by the cavalry a few days previously, in *that* (battle) a beginning of the flight had been made," &c. More freely, and with a little inversion, "Caesar found out, on inquiry, that as to (or, in) the battle which had been fought by the cavalry with disastrous results, a few days previously, the example of flight had been set in it by Dumnorix," &c. *Ejus* may refer to *proelium*, and be governed by *fugae* (see note on Nep. Them., i., 1), or may agree with *fugae*,—the two words referring to, and being equivalent to, *adversum proelium* of the preceding clause: "of that flight."

CHAPTER XIX.

LINE 2. *Quod*, "how that." § *Certissimae res*, "the most undoubted facts."

4. *Injussu suo et civitatis*, "without his order and that of the state" (of the Aedui). § *Ipsis*, "themselves,"—*i.e.*, the people of his own *civitas*, the plural idea being derived from the collective noun.

5. *Satis causae*: see Syntax, sect. vii., 6, b, p. 142.

6. *In eum animadverteret*, "should inflict punishment on him." Observe that when *aut—aut* are used, the one supposition excludes the other; but *vel—vel* leave an option. See line 19.

7. *Unum*, "one circumstance was set opposite to," "counterbalanced."

10. On *ne*, after *verebatur*, see Nep. Milt., vii., 13.

12. *Quidquam* is used in negative clauses. This, however, contains only an *implicit* negative.

13. *Interpretibus*, "the daily (*i.e.*, usual) interpreters."

14. *Principem*, "a chief man." § *Cui*, &c., "to whom he gave his entire confidence in regard to all matters;" or, "in whom he placed the highest confidence."

18. *Sine ejus offensione animi*, "without any injury to his feelings." § *Causa cognita*, "after examining into his cause."

CHAPTER XX.

LINE 2. *Scire* depends on "he said," to be "taken out of" *except observare*.

5. Supply *quum* before *ille*.

6. *Crevisset*, "he had grown into influence." § *Nervis* and *opibus* depend on *uterctur*. *Nervis* seems to mean "power," or "strength."

8. *Si quid*, &c., "if anything of a severe character befell him."

9. *Eum locum*, "such a place,"—*i.e.*, so high a place.

10. *Apud eum*, "with him,"—*i.e.*, Caesar.

13. Before *faciat finem*, supply *ut*.

14. *Tanti*, "of so great value." See Syntax, sect. vii., 10, p. 143.

15. *Voluntati*, in the dative after *condonet*, "make a present of the state's wrong and his own grudge to his wish and entreaty." *Voluntas* is, perhaps, "affection," or "friendly disposition," as in line 9 of preceding chapter, rather than "wish." See line 19 below, "*condonare fratri Divitiaco*."

16. Observe the mood and the tense of the following verbs. The death of Dumnorix is recorded in book v., 7. He was attempting to escape from Caesar's camp with some Aeduan cavalry, but was pursued and slain.

CHAPTER XXI.

LINE 2. *Millia octo*: the ablative, *millibus*, would be more usual, to express an interval. The usage varies.

3. *Ascensus*, &c., "what kind of an ascent there was in going round,"—*i.e.*, if one went round to the opposite side. § On *qui cognoscerent* see Syntax, sect. ix., 2, a, p. 158.

4. *Facilem esse*, scil., *ascensum*. § On *de tertia vigilia* see above, chap. xii., line 7, note.

5. *Legatum pro praetore*, "lieutenant, with the power of praetor." Caesar was praetor or proconsul, and Labienus was next in command, representing Caesar in his absence. § *Is*, "such leaders." *Is, ea, id*, is often used like *talis*.

7. *Sui consilii* is here rather a *predicate* than an *enlargement of the subject*,—*i.e.*, *consilii* is not governed by *quid*, as in the phrases *Quid novi? Multum pecuniae*, and such like; so that we translate "What is his plan?"

10. Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the dictator; and Marcus Licinius Crassus, the conqueror of the slaves under Spartacus in B. C. 71.

CHAPTER XXII.

LINE 1. *Prima luce*, "at day-break,"—*i.e.*, at the first part of the light. § So *summus mons*, "the top of the mountain,"—*i.e.*, the highest part of the mountain. § *Ipse*,—*i.e.*, Caesar.

4. *Equo admisso*, "at full gallop;" literally, "his horse let out,"—*i.e.*, with slackened rein.

6. *Id* refers to the substance of the preceding clause, and not to any special word in the clause. See Syntax, sect. ii., 10, p. 133. § *Insignibus* may mean either "standards," or some particular kind of "facings" or ornament.

8. The clause, *ne proelium*, &c., is in apposition to *praeceptum erat*,—namely, "not to close in fight unless," &c.

11. On *proelio*, in the ablative after *abstinebat*, see Syntax, sect. viii., 22, p. 146.

12. *Multo die*: some interpret, "the day being far spent;" others, with perhaps more show of reason, "the day being fully dawned," "it being clear light."

14. *Quo intervallo*, "at the usual interval," "at what interval he was accustomed, (at that interval) he follows the army." On this construction see above, chap. xii., 15. The demonstrative (*eo*) is here omitted, as it often is.

CHAPTER XXIII.

LINE 1. On *dici*, in the genitive after *postridie*, see Syntax, sect. vii., 6, b, p. 142. § *Quum* here means, as it frequently does, "until the time when." It also means, occasionally, "since the time that."

2. Before *metiri* supply *cum* as subject. § *Bibracte*, afterwards Augustodunum, and now *Autun*.

4. *Rei frumentariae*, &c., "he thought he should look after (take precautionary measures to secure) a supply of corn."

5. On *Bibracte*, in the accusative, see Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137.

6. *Fugitivos*: either "runaway slaves," or "deserters" from the army, —*i.e.*, Gallic horse. § *Decurionis*: the turma, or troop of cavalry, was originally divided into three portions of ten each, the man commanding a decuria being called decurio; but decurio was afterwards applied to him who commanded the whole troop of thirty or thirty-two.

8. *Discedere* is said to be an example of the "imperfect infinitive;" but it will be seen that, as the time of the departure is coincident with that of the conjecture of the Helvetii, this is not necessary,—"they supposed the Romans to be diverging from their route, through fear." *Helvetii* is subject to *coeperunt*; and the clauses, *quod existimarent*, and *quod confiderent*, depend on *coeperunt insequi et laessere*.

CHAPTER XXIV.

LINE 2. Observe that *subducit*, which expresses a continued and progressive operation, is the present tense; whereas *misit*, which denotes a momentary act, is the perfect-aorist.

3. *In colle medio*, &c., "on the middle (*i.e.*, the slope) of the hill he drew up a triple line of four veteran legions; and above him, on the summit of the hill, he posted the two legions which he had most recently levied in hither Gaul, as well as all the auxiliaries,"—*i.e.*, the non-Italian soldiers.

7. *Sarcinas*: the smaller baggage, such as each soldier carried with him; while *impedimenta*, line 9, means the heavier baggage.

10. *Ipsi*, &c., "they, in a very compact array, having repulsed our

cavalry, (and) having formed a phalanx, came close up to our front line." This phalanx was formed by the soldiers pressing closely together, and overlapping (see chap. xxv., line 7) their shields over their heads, so as to form a roof, like the Roman *testudo*—not the Macedonian phalanx.

CHAPTER XXV.

LINE 1. *Equis omnium*,—*i.e.*, the horses of all his immediate staff,—not the cavalry generally

3. *Pilis*, "their javelins." *Pila* were of various sizes. The heavy kind was about six feet long, with an iron head of nine inches. One kind of *pilum* had the iron part as long as the wooden shaft, the two being fastened together by iron rivets or clasps. In the war with the Cimbri, Marius ordered that a wooden pin should be substituted for one of these iron pins or rivets, so that, when the weapon struck with force an enemy's shield, the wooden pin might break, and the one end of the javelin hang down, thus preventing the possibility of its being hurled back again; and if it pierced the armour, impeding the movements of him who was struck.

5. On *Gallis* and *impedimento*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 10, note †, p. 140.

7. *Colligatis*, "pinned together."

9. *Multi ut*, "so that many."

11. *Pedem referre*, "to retreat." § *Suberat*, "was near at hand," "was close behind them, at about a mile distant."

12. *Capto*, "having been gained."

14. *Agmen claudebant*, "closed the enemy's march,"—*i.e.*, brought up the rear. § *Ex itinere*, "on their march." § *Aperto latere*, "on the exposed flank."

17. *Conversa signa*, &c. The Romans were fighting in front with the Helvetii, when the Boii and Tulingi attacked them on the flank. The third line of the Roman cohorts then wheeled round, and took up a position at *right angles* to that of their fellow-soldiers of the first two lines, and thus a double battle (*anceps proelium* of chap. xxvi., 1) was carried on,—one in front with the Helvetii, and one in the flank with the Boii and Tulingi,—and the Romans were in two divisions,—*bipartito*.

CHAPTER XXVI.

LINE 1. *Pugnatum est*, "it was fought" by them. See Syntax, sect. i., 5, *N.B.*, p. 126. § *Ancipiti*: see note 17, foregoing chapter.

6. *Ad nullam noctem*, "to far on in the night," or, "till darkness had fairly (or fully) set in."

9. *Matüras*: the *matara* seems to have been a sort of pike; the *tragula*, a lighter kind of weapon, probably with a thong attached, and armed with a barb.

12. *Captus est*: see Syntax, sect. i., 5, p. 131.

14. *Nullam partem noctis*, "no part of the night,"—*i.e.*, of the night succeeding the battle—not all the nights of their march.

18. *Qui*: resolve *qui* into *et ii*,—"and if they should aid them."
 19. *Eos* must be understood after *habiturum* (*esse*).

CHAPTER XXVII.

LINE 2. *Qui*: resolve into *et ii*. On the verbs in the subjunctive mood, consult Syntax, sect. xii., 2, *b*, p. 160, and 8, p. 162.

4. *Essent*: the subjunctive mood, as there is a doubt about the matter,—"where they were (said to be) at that time." See also Syntax, sect. ix., 1, *c*, p. 158.

8. *Verbigenus* is otherwise called *Urbigenus*. This caution seems to have been north of the Tigurini. § *Circa* is an adverb here; and *millia* is subject to *contenderunt* (last word of chapter), *perterriti* and *inducti* agreeing with it. On the apparent disagreement in gender between *millia* and *perterriti*, see note, Nep. Milt., iv. 14.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

LINE 1. Resolve *quod* into *et hoc*,—"and when Caesar discovered this, he ordered those through whose territory they had gone, to search for them and bring them back, if they wished to be freed from suspicion in his eyes." Or *quorum per fines ierant* may be in apposition to *quod*,—"and when Caesar knew this, namely, through whose territory," &c.

3. *Reductos*, &c., "when they were brought back, he treated them as (in the number of his) enemies,"—*i.e.*, either sold them or slew them. But it is most probable that the 6,000 were all slain.

6. *Fruetibus* means all kinds of produce. *Pruges* would be more restricted.

7. *Tolerarent famem*, "bear up against (the cravings of) hunger."

8. *Copiam facerent*, "should afford them a supply."

9. *Ea ratione*, "for this reason," "on this account."

13. The order is, (*Caesar*) *concessit Aeduis ptenibus, ut collocarent in finibus suis Boios, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti*.

CHAPTER XXIX.

LINE 1. *Tabulae*, "lists," "records." Marsilles had been colonized by Greeks about B.C. 600, so that the Greek characters must have been known by many of the Celts and Gauls. Some of them learned the Greek language, too, in Strabo's time. See book vi., 14, 7.

3. The clauses, *qui numerus exisset, qui arma ferre possent*, are a kind of apposition to *ratio*: "a calculation was made out with the individual names,—*viz.*, what number of them had left their native country,—who were able to carry arms; and also in lists by themselves,—the boys, the old men, and the women." Thus *pueri, senes, and mulieres*, are in the same case as *qui numerus* and *qui*. There is no use for supplying *numeri* after *ratio*, as some editors suggest.

5. *Rerum*: *res* is often used thus in a general way, like our "com-

modity," or "article." § *Capitum*, "of heads,"—*i.e.*, individuals. We say "souls."

8. *Summa*—*fuertur*: in line 5 he uses *summa* with a singular verb, when he uses *rerum*, and does not think so much of individuals; but here, where *omnium* (of them all) is employed, persons are more distinctly noted, and the two words together are equal to *omnes*.

PART II.—THE GERMAN WAR.

CHAPTER XXX.

LINE 1. *Totius Galliae*,—*i.e.*, of all Gallia Celtica, the third division of Gaul. See chap. i.

2. *Gratulatum*: see Syntax, sect. x., 1, p. 149.

3. *Uti liceret*: see Syntax, sect. ix., 3, a, with note †, p. 148.

4. *Id*, "that,"—*viz.*, the calling of the general meeting. § Observe that though *liceret* is the subjunctive after *petierunt*, *habere* is the infinitive, because the idea of "saying" is to be taken out of *petierunt*.

6. *Jurejurando*: the oath seems to have been taken, not *before* the meeting, as we might at first suppose, but at the meeting. § On the verbs *vellent* (line 5), *eventiaret*, and *mandatum esset* (line 7), consult Syntax, sect. xi., p. 159; iv., p. 154; and xii., 8, p. 162.

CHAPTER XXXI.

LINE 1. *Ante fuerant*, "had previously been" (with Caesar). Some editions put the comma after *Caesarem*.

2. *Secreto* means "in private," there being no witnesses. § *In occulto* signifies that no one was to know that there had been a conference at all.

5. Observe the peculiarities of the *oratio obliqua* in this and some of the following chapters, and consult Syntax, sect. xi., p. 159.

10. *Esset*: subjunctive, as expressing, not the sentiments of the writer, but of him whose speech he reproduces.

12. *Harudum* is governed in the genitive by *hominum*.

14. *Futurum esse*, "it would come to pass."

15. *Neque enim*: resolve *neque* into *et non*, and translate, "the reason was:"—thus, "And the reason was, that the Gallic territory could not be compared," &c.

16. *Neque hanc*, "nor the mode of life here (in Gaul) with that there (in Germany),"—*i.e.*, the Gallic soil was infinitely superior, and the Gallic mode of life more refined.

21. *Edere exempla cruciatibusque*, "showed forth upon them all kinds of warning and torture,"—*i.e.*, made them public examples, to warn others.

27. Before *petant* and *experiantur* supply *ut*, as with *emigrant* of line 26.

CHAPTER XXXII.

LINE 6. *Respondere* and *permanere* are historical infinitives. See Syntax, sect. ix., 9, p. 149.

7. *Exprimere vocem*, "get a word out of them," "extort a word."

8. *Hoc*, "on this account." § *Quod* (line 9), "because."

12. *Tamen*, "still." Although subject to the annoyances, "still" they can help themselves by flight, which the others cannot do.

15. Account for the mood of the verbs in this sentence.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

LINE 3. *Beneficio suo*: this refers to Caesar having obtained for Ariovistus, from the Senate, the title of "King and Friend."

5. *Secundum ea*, "next (in importance) to those things" which he heard from Divitiacus and others.

6. On *sibi*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 11, p. 141.

7. *Consanguineos*, "kinsmen." This is a mere complimentary term. Compare the use of "cousin," formerly employed by our kings in certain state documents addressed to foreign sovereigns and others.

10. *Quod*, "a circumstance which." § *In tanto imperio*, "under so powerful an empire,"—i.e., when the Romans were so powerful.

12. *Spiritus*: our phrase, "such *airs*," comes very near this, both literally and figuratively.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

LINE 2. *Medium utriusque*, "half way between the two."

5. *Quid opus esset*: see Syntax, sect. vi., 12 and 13, p. 141, with references.

6. *Si quid ille se velit*, "if he (Caesar) wished anything with him," (Ariovistus). *Se* is the accusative. It is a kind of conversational phrase, found often in the comic writers, and may be regarded as an accusative of reference. See Syntax, sect. v., 9, p. 137. Some would supply *facere*, with *se* as its subject. Observe the difference of tense in *opus esset*, and *velit*, and distinguish the meaning expressed by each.

8. *Commeatu* means here "supplies" of every kind, and not provisions only.

10. *Quid negotii*, &c., "what business Caesar had, or the Roman people at all, in his part of Gaul."

CHAPTER XXXVII.

LINE 1. *Eodem tempore—et*. Observe this phrase. Hence arise such expressions as *parem—atque*, chap. xxviii., 15.

2. *Questum*, supine, depending on *veniebant* understood.

5. *Potuisse* is governed by *dixerunt*, taken out of *questum*. So *Treveri* is subject to *dixerunt* understood.

5. *Pagos*,—i.e., people of the districts, or, at least, portions of them.
 10. *Resisti*, used impersonally, "resistance could less easily be offered."
 11. *Magnis itineribus*, "by forced marches,"—from twenty to twenty-five Roman miles per day. A Roman mile was about 142 yards shorter than an English mile.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

LINE 2. *Vesontionem, quod*: this is a very common construction. See Syntax, sect. ii. 9, p. 133; also chap. x., 3, of this book, *a finibus TOLoSATIUM, QUAE CIVITAS*.

4. *Profecisse*, "had got the advantage of," "had made good."
 6. Instead of *ad bellum* we might have *bello*.
 10. *Non amplius* and *amplius* are very irregular in their construction. Sometimes they are found with the ablative, sometimes with the accusative, sometimes with the genitive, as here, and sometimes even with the nominative. In some of these constructions *amplius* is used adverbially and absolutely. Here there seems to be an ellipse, such as *spatio*.
 11. *Intermittit*, "breaks off," "is interrupted," "ceases to run."
 12. *Contingant*, "touch," "reach to." The meaning is, that a hill or mountain occupies all that part which intervenes between the two bends of the river.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

LINE 5. *Congressos*, "engaged," scil., in battle. Observe that *occupavit*, in line 7, is the principal verb of the sentence.

9. *Tribunis*: there were properly six tribunes to each legion. The *praecepti* were most likely officers of the auxiliary troops.
 17. *Vulgo*, "by the soldiers generally." It was a common practice for the Romans to make their wills before they went out to battle.
 27. *Audientes dicto*, "obedient to the word of command."

CHAPTER XL.

LINE 2. *Centurionibus omnium ordinum*. Each legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each maniple into two centuries. Over each century was a centurio, so that there were sixty centurions in a legion. But in each maniple there was one of the centurions who ranked above the other, and it was these centurions of superior rank (*primorum ordinum*) who were usually summoned to councils of war. As this *consilium* was not for consultation, but to hear a "lecture," he invited them all, of whatever rank.

3. *Quam in partem (ducerentur), aut quo consilio ducerentur*, "because they supposed that they had any right to ask or to consider in what direction they were to be led, or with what intention they were led," &c.
 9. *Videbatur*: as this is indirect narrative, we should have expected the subjunctive; but the indicative is retained. In other words, this *clause* is probably intended to bring out very strongly the *fact* to be impressed. See Syntax, sect. xi., p. 159.

10. *Servili tumultu*, "the Servile War," "insurrection of the slaves," which broke out in B.C. 73. There were many Germans in the ranks of Spartacus on that occasion. § *Quos*, scil., *servos*, which is suggested by *servili*. Resolve *quos* into *et hos*.

14. *Supcrarint*: supply *cos*, referring to *quibuscum*. which depends on *congressi*.

20. *Quod*, "as to the fact that they are said," &c.

22. *Quibuscunq* depends on the combined phrase *audiers-dicto*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 7, b, p. 140.

24. *Convictam*, "proved against him," "brought home to him." This verb, *convinco*, is usually followed by a genitive of the crime.

30. *Practoriam cohortem*, "body-guard."

CHAPTER XLII.

LINE 7. *Egerunt*, "treated," "negotiated." § *Satisfacerent*, "apologise."

8. *Summa belli*, "the general management of the war," or "the supreme control of the war."

10. *Exquisito*, "sought out," "discovered." This route some suppose to have taken him "fifty miles round about," out of his way; others think it means that the whole route, circuitous though it was, was only fifty miles.

CHAPTER XLIII.

LINE 2. *Per se*, "as far as he was concerned."

7. *Pro*, "in consideration of."

11. Observe the change in the following lines from the subjunctive to the infinitive,—a verb of *asking* governing the subjunctive, and a verb of declaring, the infinitive. See Syntax, sect. xi., 4, p. 160.

16. "All the Gallic horsemen having been removed from their horses, to place upon them" (*eo*),—*i.e.*, upon the horses.

19. *Facto*, depending on *opus esset*, "for action." § *Non irridicule*, "not without some humour." This word is very rare, and, indeed, is said not to occur elsewhere.

22. *Rescribere*, "to enroll a second time,"—*i.e.*, they were now to be entered as "equites."

CHAPTER XLIII.

LINE 1. *Satis*, "tolerably."

4. *Passibus*: see Syntax, sect. v., 14 and 15, p. 137.

6. *Ex equis*, "on horseback."

CHAPTER XLVI.

LINE 2. On the construction of *propius*, see Nep. Milt., vii., 7.

3. Observe the repetition of the preposition with *adequitare*.

7. *Committendum*, "that he should cause."

8. *Per fidem*, "by a breach of faith."

10. *Interdixisset*: this verb is sometimes followed by the accusative and the dative, instead of the ablative and dative, as here.

11. *Ut*, "how;" equal to *quomodo*.

13. Observe that *injectum est* agrees with the subject nearest to it, viz., *studium*, and not with the more remote, *alacritas*. See Syntax, sect. i., 5, p. 131.

CHAPTER XLVII.

LINE 2. Resolve *neque* into *et non*.

5. *Quod—poterant*: see Syntax, sect. viii., 1, a, p. 153.

6. On *quin conjicerent* see Syntax, sect. iv., 5, p. 155.

7. *Legatum e suis*, "a deputy from among his own men;" not "one of his lieutenants."

10. *Humanitate* seems to mean "mental endowments," "of a cultivated mind," "accomplished."

11. *Donatus erat civitate*, "had been presented with the franchise," or rights of a Roman citizen, by Valerius Flaccus, who was governor of Gaul in B.C. 83.

12. *Qua* refers to *lingua*, not to *scientiam*. § *Multa*, equal to *multum*, "readily," "fluently," or "often."

13. On *consuetudine* see Syntax, sect. viii., 2, p. 144. Observe the change of construction from *et propter fidem* to *et quod*.

18. *Quid ad se venirent*: observe the *oratio obliqua*, and change the phrase into the *oratio directa*.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

LINE 2. *Sub monte*, "at the base of a mountain;" Mr. Long thinks the Vosges range is meant.

9. *His diebus*, "on (each one of) these days,"—the idea being a series of "points of time," and so the phrase is in the ablative; but in line 6 we find *dies* in the accusative, expressing *duration*.

10. *Hoc*, "the following was the kind of battle."

13. *Cum his*, "in company with these they moved up and down (*i.e.*, engaged) in the battle."

18. *Sublevati*, "supporting themselves by the manes of the horses, they kept up with them."

CHAPTER XLIX.

LINE 3. On the government of *idoneum* see Syntax, sect. vi., 8, a, p. 140. Most adjectives of this kind, with a vowel before the *-us*, compare by *magis* and *maxime*, and not by terminations.

8. *Expedita* means "light-armed" in this place. It often denotes simply "free from baggage," "unencumbered."

CHAPTER L.

LINE 1. *Instituto*, "according to his purpose," or "custom." See Syntax, sect. viii., 11, p. 145.

6. On *quae oppugnaret* see Syntax, sect. ix., 2, *a*, p. 153.
7. *Pugnatum est*: see Syntax, sect. i., 5, *N.B.*, o. 126. § *Occasu*: see Syntax, sect. viii., 29, p. 147.
12. *Sortibus*. These "lots" were taken by means of rods. The shoot of a fruit-bearing tree was cut up into small pieces, which were marked in a particular way, and then flung carelessly on a white cloth. After a prayer, the officiating person (a priest, if the lots were consulted on a state affair,—the head of a family, if on a domestic matter) took up each piece three times, and from his observations of the marks foretold the future. Tacitus speaks only of *men* performing these ceremonies, but Caesar here represents the women as the principal diviners. The *vaticinatio* means the *declaration* of the prophecy by the mouths of the women.
13. *Ex usu esset*, "would be to their advantage." See Syntax, sect. x., 2, p. 159, on *utrum-an*, or *neque*.

CHAPTER LI.

- LINE 2. *Alarios*, "the allies." They were generally posted on the wings of the legion, and hence received the name "*alae*," or "*alarii*."
4. In proportion to the number of the enemy, Caesar was weak in legionary soldiers, and therefore used the *alarii* to make a show (*ad speciem*) of strength.
7. *Generatim*, "according to their tribes," with an equal distance between each tribe.
8. On the proper names see the Vocabulary.
10. *Circumdederunt*: the cars and waggons were placed behind and on the flanks of the army, so as to render retreat impossible. § *Eo*, "upon them." See chap. xlii., 16.

CHAPTER LII.

- LINE 1. *Quaestorem*. The proper duty of the quaestor was to attend to the money matters of the army; but in this case Caesar seems to have used him as a kind of general officer, to have an oversight of the *legati*. Others (*e.g.*, Kraner) think that over five legions there were *legati*, one to each; but that over the *sixth* a quaestor was placed, and not a *legatus*,—Caesar himself superintending the whole. But as Caesar was fully occupied, *a dextro cornu*, the explanation first given seems the right one.
4. *Ita acriter*, "with such spirit and speed."
5. *Ita repente*, "so suddenly."
6. *Spatium* means "time" here.
9. *Complures nostri milites*, "many soldiers, who were on our side."
10. On the mood of *insilirent* and *revellerent* see Syntax, sect. ix., 3, *a*, p. 159. § *De supero*, "from above." Most editions read *desuper*.
14. P. Crassus was son of the famous triumvir. He was killed, along with his father, in the Parthian war.
16. As to the two datives depending on *misit*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 10, note †, p. 140.

CHAPTER LIII.

LINE 3. *Quinquaginta*: some editions read *quinque*. Commentators differ widely as to the place where the battle was fought. Some (e.g., Mr. Long) are of opinion that it took place in the plain of Alsace, near the Rhine; others, west of the *Vosges Mountains*. § On *pervenerunt*, in the indicative after *prius quam*, see Syntax, sect. vii., 4, a, p. 157.

5. *Ariovistus* died some time after this, either from grief at his defeat, or from the effects of wounds. See book v., 29.

8. *Uxores*; the Germans, as a general rule, had only one wife each; but the nobles often married more, for reasons of policy.

10. *Duae filiae*: there is no verb to which the word *filiae* is subject, because, as a different fate befell each of the sisters, no one verb will express the writer's meaning. This is sometimes called the *nominative absolute*; but it is simply a case of *apposition*. The *general* subject is mentioned, to call attention to it, and then the particulars are given with minuteness.

12. *Calenis*. This word is usually found in the plural; hence *trints* here. So *trina castra*. It may also mean, "a triple chain," "chains enough for three men."

19. On *sortibus* see note, chap. L., 12, above.

CHAPTER LIV.

LINE 2. Resolve *quos* into *et hos*.

3. *Proximi Rhenum*: see note on Nep. Milt., vii., 7.

7. *Ad conventus agendas*. The Roman provinces were divided into *circuits*, with some principal town as the centre; and as the meetings of the people of each circuit were held in this town, the word *conventus*, which means simply "a meeting," came to be applied to the district. The governor of a province went on circuit once a year, to hear causes and transact public business generally, as Caesar did at this time into either Gaul,—i.e., Gaul south of the Alps.

BOOK IV.

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN BY THE ROMANS.

CHAPTER XX.

LINE 4. *Inde*, "from it,"—viz., Britain. The assistance given to the Gauls by the Britons was one of Caesar's reasons for invasion. The Roman thirst for empire, and the glory of breaking new ground, were, doubtless, others.

6. *Insulam*. The common belief is, that it was during the government of Agricola, about one hundred and thirty-five years after this time, that

Britain was discovered to be *in reality* an island. Caesar would seem to speak according to the then received notion on the subject.

9. *Illo* is here an adverb—"thither," "to it." It is really a form of the dative, depending on *adit*. *Adisset* is followed by an accusative, *insulam*, in line 6.

10. *Gallias*, "the (several) parts of Gaul." § *Vocatis*: this ablative absolute is best translated as a concessive clause,—“although he summoned to him.”

12. Observe that *neque quanta esset*, and all the other clauses, depend on *poterat reperire* of line 15.

13. *Quem usum* may mean either, "what practice," or "what particular mode" of warfare.

CHAPTER XXI.

LINE 1. On *priusquam*, with the subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. vii., 4, b, p. 157.

3. For *ut revertatur* after *mandat*, see Syntax, sect. ix., 3, a, note †, p. 148. See also line 16 below, *imperat, ut*.

5. *Huc* refers to Morinos—"to this place,"—*i.e.*, the territory of the Morini. Cf. *illo*, line 9 of preceding chapter; and *ibi*, in line 13 below.

10. Observe that *dare* and *obtemperare* are in the present infinitive, and not the future, as we should expect after a verb of promising. See Syntax, sect. ix., 5, p. 148. § On *imperio*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, b, p. 139.

11. *Ut permaneret* depends on *hortatus*, not on *pollicitus*. See note 3 above, with reference.

12. *Eos*, repeated after *quibus* in the ablative absolute construction, is an irregularity, and seems to be expressed for the sake of emphasis. § On *domum*, in the accusative, see Syntax, sect. v., 10, p. 137.

13. *Ibi*, "among them,"—*i.e.*, the Atrebatas.

16. *Magni habebatur*, "was held in high esteem," "was much set by." See Syntax, sect. vii., 10, p. 143. § *Ut* is omitted before *adeat*. See Nep. Milt., i., 16, note.

17. *Fides* means "confident belief" in the virtue, honour, &c., of another. Hence, to *follow your belief*, implies to *trust in a person*, confide implicitly in.

19. "As far as one had an opportunity, who did not dare," &c. Or *ci* may be taken as referring *definitely* to *Volsenus*, *qui* being thus made equal to *quum is*. See Syntax, sect. ix., 2, c, p. 159, and viii., 2, p. 158.

CHAPTER XXII.

LINE 1. *Parandarum navium causa*: see Syntax, sect. ix., 3, c, with note †, p. 148. § On *dum moratur* see Syntax, sect. vii., 1, p. 156.

3. *Excusarent*, &c., "should apologise for their past conduct." The Roman "habit" referred to in next line is that of treating kindly and protecting from injury those states which confided in them, and submitted peaceably.

5. Observe the verbs in the subjunctive, and refer to the Syntax.

7. *Volebat*, in the indicative after *quod*; see Syntax, sect. viii., 1, *a*, p. 158; and on *quod*—*fecissent* (line 4), sect. viii., 1, *b*, p. 158.

9. *Rerum tantularum*, "with such very trifling matters," is an objective genitive. See Syntax, sect. vii., 2, p. 141.

11. *Coactis* perhaps implies the *impressing* of ships; and *contractis*, the more willing supply, and the general muster. *Coactis*, however, may refer to *onerariis* above, and *contractis* to *quot satis esse*,—"having collected about eighty ships of burden, and having mustered as many vessels as he thought sufficient to transport the legions."

13. *Quod navium longarum*, "whatever number of ships of war,"—*i.e.*, all the ships of war. See Syntax, sect. vii., 6, *a*, p. 142.

16. *Portum*: the harbour is supposed to be *Portus Itius*, or *Witland*; the farther harbour, where the eighteen ships were detained, *Sanyatte*, not *Calais*.—*Mr. Long*.

CHAPTER XXIII.

LINE 2. *Tertia fere vigilia*, "about the third watch,"—*i.e.*, a little after midnight, if the phrase means about the beginning of the third watch. See note on book i., chap. xii., line 7. § *Solvit*, *scil.*, *naves*, "he unmoored his ships,"—*i.e.*, set sail.

4. *Hora quarta*,—*i.e.*, about ten o'clock in the morning.

7. *Hacc*, "such." § *Ita*, "so." § *Angustis* means that the mountains ran down close to the shore, terminating in precipitous cliffs, so that the passage between the tide and the rocks was very narrow. It might be translated, "by cliffs so *narrowing* that," &c.

10. On *dum*, with *convenirent*, see Syntax, sect. vii., p. 156. § *Horam novam*,—*i.e.*, three o'clock p.m.

13. *Monuit—ut postularent* does not mean, "he warned them that military affairs were quired;" but, as Mr. Long explains it, "he warned them, consistently with the rules of military art, and particularly with those of naval matters, that as they had to move with rapidity, and on an unstable surface, everything must be done with strict regard to the signal and the time."

16. Mr. Long is of opinion that Caesar landed near *Dcal*, both now and in the second invasion. Others think it was farther down the coast, beyond Dover.

CHAPTER XXIV.

LINE 1. Observe that *praemisso* agrees with the substantive nearest to it. See Syntax, sect. ii., 8, p. 133.

2. The *Essedarii* were those who fought from the *essedum* or *esseda*, a kind of two-wheeled war-chariot or car. The Britons used this kind of force more especially; they do not seem to have had cavalry proper,—at least if they had, it was in very small numbers.

3. *Prohibebant*, "tried to prevent," "were for preventing." See Syntax, sect. i., 19, *c*, p. 127.

5. *Alto*, "deep sea." § *Constitui*, "be moored." § On *militibus*, in the dative after *desiliendum* and the other gerundives, see Syntax, sect. xi., 6, p. 150.

9. *Ex arido* is equal to an adjective, and is coupled to *progressi* by *aut*.
 10. *Insuefactos*, "accustomed" to go into the water. "The verb *insuefacere*, it is said, occurs only here."—*Long*.

CHAPTER XXV.

LINE 3. *Removeri*: this verb means, "to change the position of." *Submoveri*, in line 5, "to put out of the way," "clear the ground."

8. *Paulum modo*, "a little way only,"—*i.e.*, a little, and no more.

9. *Qui*, "he who." § The standard of the legion was an eagle on the top of a pole.

13. *Præstitero*: the future perfect—"I shall have performed," suggesting the idea before meeting *acath*, which, under the circumstances, seemed inevitable. See Syntax, sect. xii., 9, p. 162.

CHAPTER XXVI.

LINE 4. On *occurrerat*, and on *conspexerant* (line 6), see Syntax, sect. xii., 8, p. 162.

8. *Universos*, "a whole ship's company." It is opposed to *singulares*, of line 5.

9. *Scaphas*, "small boats." § *Speculatoria navigia* were light vessels or "cutters," for rapid sailing, designed to keep a watch on the enemy's movements.

13. *Cursum tenere*, "to continue, or hold on, their course."

CHAPTER XXVII.

LINE 1. *Simul*, with a verb, is sometimes accompanied by *atque* or *ac*, as here; sometimes by *ut*; and sometimes stands alone, as in line 11 of preceding chapter.

6. *Modo oratoris*: he was not a regular orator or envoy, but (see chap. xxi.) was intrusted with a duty similar to that of envoy.

8. *Ejus rei*,—*viz.*, the putting *Commius* in chains.

9. *Contulerunt*, "attributed," "laid the blame."

12. On *imprudentiæ*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, a, p. 117. § *Imperavit obsides*, *scil.*, *iis*.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

LINE 1. *Post diem quartum quam*, "on the fourth day after they (the Romans) reached Britain." *Quam* is explained as an example of *attraction*, being drawn into the same case as *diem* going before. It does not agree in gender with *diem quartum*; but this Mr. Long attributes to the circumstance that it had become a kind of everyday expression, not admitting of strict grammatical analysis. Some consider the phrase equal to *die quarto postquam*.

3. *Superiore portu*: the same harbour which, in chap. xxiii., was called *ulterior*. It was east of *Portus Itius*, whence *Caesar* himself set sail. § *Sustulerant*, "had taken on board."

4. On *Britanniae*, in dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, *d*, p. 139.
7. *Inferiorem*, &c.: that is, farther west along the south coast.
8. *Sui* is an objective genitive (see Syntax, sect. vii., 2, p. 141)—“with great danger to themselves.”

CHAPTER XXIX.

LINE 1. *Luna plena*: some astronomers count that this full moon happened on the night of the 9th September, *v.c.* 55; others, on that of the 30th of August. The calendar, however, had not been reformed at this time.

2. *Aestus maximos*, “very high tides,”—viz., spring tides. These tides were unknown to Caesar’s men who had charge of the ships. It seems extraordinary that they had not seen this phenomenon during the Venetian war (book iii., 12), or that they had not heard of it, if not themselves present. Caesar himself must have known of it.

7. *Administrandi*, “of managing them.”

8. *Reliquae quum*, &c., “when the rest were rendered useless for sailing, by the loss of their ropes,” &c. On *inutiles ad*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 8, *a*, note †, p. 140. So also *erant usui ad*, line 12.

13. *Constabat*, “it was agreed on,” “was an understood thing,” “was evident.”

14. *In hiemem*, “against the winter.”

CHAPTER XXX.

LINE 1. *Principes* is subject to *duxerunt* of line 6. Note and distinguish the clauses of this involved sentence.

4. *Hoc*, “on this account.”

6. On *factu* see Syntax, sect. x., 2, p. 149.

7. *Rem*, “the war.”

10. *Rursus*, “again,”—*i.e.*, “changing their sentiments,” “taking a turn.”

CHAPTER XXXI.

LINE 2. *Eventu*, &c., “from what befell,” or “happened to;” “the disaster.” § *Ex eo, quod*, “from this circumstance, that.”

3. *Ad omnes casus*, “for (or against) all chances,” or “every emergency.”

6. On *materia*, in ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 9, p. 145; and on *ad naves reficiendas*, xi., 8, p. 150.

CHAPTER XXXII.

LINE 2. *Neque* is equal to *et non*,—“and no suspicion of war having in the interval arisen.”

5. *In statione* is a military phrase, “on guard.”

6. *Ferret*, “than custom would (or was likely to) bring,”—*i.e.*, than was usually brought.

10. *In stationem succedere*, "to take their place on guard." § *Reliquas*, There were ten cohorts in the legion. Of these, four which were on guard (line 8) he took with him. Of the other six, two were left to guard the camp (line 9), and the remaining four (*reliquas*) he ordered to follow.

14. *Reliquis partibus*, the other parts of the country.

17. *Incertis ordinibus*. The soldiers were busily engaged in cutting down the corn when attacked. They speedily tried to fall into line; but in their haste they scarcely knew where to run to find their proper ranks, and hence they were more easily "put into confusion" and driven in.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

LINE 1. *Pugnae ex essedis*, "the mode of fighting from the chariot is as follows."

2. *Perequitant*, "drive about." The subject is *essedarii*, to be taken out of *ex essedis*. § *Terrore equorum* most probably means "the wild excitement of their own horses"—(not those of the Romans, as some interpret), or the "terror caused by the maddened horses." But from the close connection of *strepitu rotarum*, the former seems preferable.

6. *Illi*, "they," viz., the fighters. In each chariot there were two men,—the *auriga* or driver, and the *essedarius* or fighter.

8. *Praestant*, "they exhibit the rapid movement of cavalry and the steadiness of infantry."

10. *Sustinere*, either to "hold in," like *retinere*, or to "hold up." § *Moderari brevi*, "to check them (regulate their speed as they wish) in a short time."

CHAPTER XXXIV.

LINE 1. "To our men, therefore, who were bewildered by these things, (especially by) the novelty of the battle, Caesar brought help in the very nick of time." *Novitate pugnae* is the special explanation of *quibus rebus*, which depends on *perturbatis*.

8. *Dies*: see Syntax, sect. v., 14, p. 137; and on *quae continerent*, sect. ix., 2, b, p. 158.

12. *Sui liberandi*, "of securing their liberty." *Sui* is the genitive singular neuter of *suus*, a, um,—"of their own interest (affair, state, or some such idea) to be set free." This *sui* must not be confounded with the genitive plural of the reflexive pronoun. See also Caes. Bell. Gall., book v., chap. 17, line 10.

CHAPTER XXXV.

LINE 3. *Nactus*, "having fortunately procured." So in chap. xxiii. 1.

6. *Diutius*, "for any (considerable) length of time."

7. *Quos*: resolve into *et eos*, "and having pursued them as far as they were able to accomplish by their speed and their strength,"—i.e., as far as their strength enabled them to pursue; or as far as their strength lasted, and as long as they saw there was any use in pursuit.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

LINE 3. *Eos*,—*i.e.*, the hostages.

4. *Aequinoctii*: the autumnal equinox (22d September), when storms usually prevail. This shows that Caesar was in Britain about three weeks in all. § *Uicini*, &c., "that his voyage should not be exposed to stormy weather."

8. For *reliqui*, "the other troops," some editions read *reliquae*, "the other ships." § *Capere*, "to make," "reach."

BOOK V.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.

CHAPTER VIII.

LINE 2. For *rem* some editions read *rei*, with a slight difference of meaning. § *Ut tueretur*: observe *ut* with the subjunctive, all these clauses expressing a *purpose*.

3. *Quaeque*, "and (that) he might make himself thoroughly cognizant of what was being done in Gaul."

4. *Pro tempore et re*, "according to time and circumstances,"—*i.e.*, as time and circumstances demanded.

5. *Pari numero—quem*, "with the same number (2000) as." The full expression would be something like this,—*Numero equitum pari ei numerem quem*, &c.

7. The wind having lulled, Caesar's fleet is carried a very considerable distance down the coast, so that at dawn Britain is seen far away on the left.

9. *Commutationem*, "the turn of the tide." The flood-tide had carried him out of his course, and he now takes advantage of the ebb to return to his original position.

12. *Virtus* cannot be translated by any one word here. It is explained by what follows:—1st, They *patiently endured* the hard work of rowing; and, 2d, They put forth *great vigour*, and that, too, successfully, for they kept up with swifter ships, though they were handling transports (*vectoris*) and heavy-laden hulks.

17. On *annotinis* see Vocabulary.

18. *Sui commodi*, "which each one had deemed necessary for his own convenience (or comfort)." *Causa* may be supplied to complete the phrase; but this is unnecessary, as *facio*, *habeo*, and some other verbs, are often followed by such a genitive, which is a "genitive of price or value." "Each one had set a value on these private ships,—the value being, *his own comfort*."

CHAPTER IX.

LINE 5. *Veritus navibus*, "fearing for the safety of his ships." This verb is seldom followed by a dative, though *metuo* and *timco* are. See

Syntax, sect. vi., 15, p. 141. § *Molli* refers to the sandiness of the shore, and *aperto* to the unobstructedness of view; that is, there are not high cliffs, but low rising ground, which admits of viewing the interior of the country. The place described is supposed to be the neighbourhood of Deal.

6. After *praefecit*, supply *copiis*, or such word, referring to line 3. § *Praesidio* depends on *praefecit*, and *navibus* or *praesidio*,—"he appointed Atius to command the forces, (which were intended) as a guard for the ships." See Syntax, sect. vi., 1 and 4, p. 139; and 7, c, p. 140.

8. *Flumen*. Mr. Long supposes the river to be the *Stour*, and the place *Grove Ferry*. The distance and the locality agree with Caesar's description.

14. *Propugnabant ex silvis*, either "came forth in small numbers (*rari*) from the woods to fight," or "fought (with missiles) from under cover of the woods."

CHAPTER X.

LINE 1. *Milites*, foot soldiers, as opposed to *equites*. § *Expeditionem* means an "excursion with *expediti*, or troops free from baggage," for the purpose of observation, pursuit, clearing the country, or other such service requiring quick movement.

3. *Extremi*. By this word some understand "the rear of the troops which Caesar had despatched," and which he immediately recalls (chap. xi.) when he hears of the disaster to the fleet. This is undoubtedly the right interpretation, as the phrase *aliquantum itineris progressis* shows. Others think that *extremi* refers to the rear guard of the enemy, in search of whom the Romans had gone out. But there is no mention of the enemy, and the ellipse of *hostium* in such a case would be a most unusual one.

6. *Ejectas in litore*: this is another example of the *constructio praegnans*, for which see note on Caes. Bell. Gall., i., 12, 10. We might expect *in litus* after such a verb of motion.

7. *Subsisterent*, "held their own."

CHAPTER XI.

LINE 2. *Itinere desistere*, "to abandon the march." See Syntax, sect. viii., 22, p. 146. Some editions read *in itinere recsistere*.

4. Caesar "sees by personal inspection almost the same state of things which he had learned from the messengers and from despatches,—to this extent, that though about forty ships were lost, the rest could nevertheless be refitted with great trouble."

5. *Fabros*,—*i.e.*, carpenters and smiths, men who had made these occupations their special trade at home.

9. *Subduci*, "to be hauled up on shore."

18. *Tamensis*, the Thames. Caesar calculates the distance of this part of the river from the sea by his own march from the coast. His ideas on the geography of the island were very hazy.

CHAPTER XII.

LINE 4. *Orti eo*: see Syntax, sect. viii., 4 and 5, p. 144.

8. *Tuleis*, bars or rods of metal.

9. The *plumbum album*, or tin, was found in Cornwall, but not in the interior of the country (*mediterraneis regionibus*).

10. *Ferrum in maritimis*: the maritime regions are not now-a-days the iron-producing districts; but formerly Sussex yielded supplies, and to this Caesar doubtless refers.

11. *Materia*, "timber," "trees." The *fagus* and *abies* Caesar had not seen or heard of; but this does not prove that they did not exist. *Abies* is the white or silver fir. Some consider *abies* the "Scotch fir," and *fagus* the "sveet chestnut."

14. *Animi voluptatisque causa*, "for fancy and for pastime." § *Temperatiora* means more moderate both as to heat and cold.

CHAPTER XIII.

LINE 4. *Pertinet*, "extends." This verb is almost always accompanied by a preposition, as *ad*, or by an *adverb* denoting *direction*.

5. *Ad Hispaniam*. This is, of course, a great mistake; but Caesar gained most of his geographical and other facts about Britain from *mercatores* or traders. The size of Ireland (*Hibernia*), too, is over-estimated; it is only about one-third that of Great Britain.

7. *Transmissus* the genitive singular, depending on *spatio*, "an equal length of voyage."

9. *Mona*, "Isle of Man;" some say Anglesea; but no person who had seen the island could make such a mistake. By *minores insulae* the Hebrides are probably intended.

11. *Sub bruma*, "about (*i.e.*, near) the winter solstice." But, of course, it is not true that darkness prevailed for thirty days.

12. *Ex aqua mensuris*, "by water-measures,"—*i.e.*, by the water-clock, or clepsydra, which was formed on the same principle as our sand-glass. The water fell drop by drop from one vessel into another; and on the side of the lower vessel a scale to indicate the hours was inscribed.

16. *Maxime*, "more than any other,"—*i.e.*, it does not look towards any country *properly*; but if there be any one at all to which it may be said to look, it is Germany.

18. *Vicies centum*: 2000 miles for the coast line of Great Britain is much below the mark. The real length is 4500 miles for England and Scotland combined. Caesar's measurements are probably taken, as Mr. Long suggests, from one salient corner to another; and if so, not far from the truth.

CHAPTER XIV.

LINE 1. *Humanissimi*, "most advanced in civilization."

3. *Consuetudine*, "manner of life," "customs." § *Frumenta*, "cereals,"—*i.e.*, grain crops generally.

4. *Lacte et carne*: so it is to the present day,—milk, cheese, butter, and flesh-meat, being more used in Britain as staple articles of food than in any other country of Europe. On the construction, see *Syntax*, sect. viii., 3, p. 144.

5. *Vitro*, "with woad." This plant is still grown in some parts of Europe, for a dye of bluish colour, which is pressed from its leaves.

CHAPTER XV.

LINE 1. The thread of the story is resumed from chapter xi., line 14.

5. *Intermisso spatio*, "some time having intervened."

9. *Atque his primis*, "and these the first." In each legion there seems to have been one choice cohort, called *prima*, which ranked higher than the others.

13. *Submissis*, "sent to their aid."

CHAPTER XVI.

LINE 4. On *aptos ad* see Syntax, sect. vi., 8, a, with note †, p. 140.

6. *Cederent*: for the mode of fighting adopted by the British *essedarii*, see book iv., chap. 33. Hence he calls the battle an *unequal (dispari)* one.

9. *Ratio*, "the manner" in which the enemy fought brought to both infantry and cavalry alike a danger of the same kind and of equal amount.

10. *Conferti*, "in compact masses," or in "close array." § *Rari*, "in small numbers," "here and there." Observe that *magnis intervallis*, "at great intervals," is equal to an adjective, and is therefore coupled to *rari* by *-que*.

CHAPTER XVII.

LINE 3. *Pabulandi causa*: see Syntax, sect. ix., 3, c, with note ‡, p. 148.

7. *Repulerunt*: some scholars, among whom is Mr. Long, prefer to spell this perfect with two p's, *reppuli*, on the ground that it is syncopated for *repepuli*. So *rettuli* and *repperi*.

10. On *sui (colligendi)* see note, Caes. Bell. Gall., book iv., chap. 34, line 12.

12. *Auxilia*, "the auxiliaries, who had assembled from every quarter, went each his several way."

13. *Summis copiis*, "with the full muster of his forces together."

CHAPTER XVIII.

LINE 1. *Consilio*, viz., to stop him at the river, but not to risk a general engagement.

2. *Uno loco*: where this ford was, cannot now be determined. See a learned note on the topography of this chapter, in Long's "Caesar."

5. Sharp stakes were driven in on the margin of the river, and others in the bed of the stream, so as to be covered by the water.

CHAPTER XIX.

LINE 3. *Servabat*, "kept close to," "dogged;" or, perhaps, it is used in the sense of *observabat*, "watched narrowly."

10. *Illoc metu*, "through fear of this." § *Relinquebatur*, "it remained for Caesar, on the one hand, not to allow."

13. *Quantum*, "as far as the legionary troops, *i.e.*, the infantry, were able to accomplish by toil and by marching." The cavalry could not rove too far away from the infantry, whose aid they might require against the enemy; and thus their efforts against the Britons were restricted by the physical strength and power of endurance of the infantry, and by the length of their marches.

CHAPTER XX.

LINE 1. The *Triobantes* occupied the territory corresponding in great part to the county of Essex. The capital was Camalodunum (*Colchester*). § *Firmissima*, "most warlike," or "most resolute," as in book i., chap. 3. The mention of this and other tribes is the only hint afforded us as to Caesar's route. He crossed the Thames, about eighty miles (not from its mouth, but) from the part of the coast where he landed,—some think at Kingston, others at Cowey Stakes,—and marched onward through Hertfordshire. § *Farum regionum*, "of those districts" to which Caesar was directing his course.

2. On *fidem scutus* see note, Caes. Bell. Gall., book iv., chap. 21, line 17.

8. *Qui praesit*, "to preside." See Syntax, sect. ix., 2, p. 158.

CHAPTER XXI.

LINE 1. *Defensis*, defended from the attacks of Cassivellaunus. § *Prohibitis*, secured from injury at the hands of the soldiers. § *Militum* is a subjective genitive. See Syntax, sect. vii., 2, p. 141.

2. For the proper names see the Vocabulary.

4. *Ex eo loco*, from the place referred to in last line of preceding chapter, where the corn and hostages were given up.

6. *Oppidum*: the British term for town was *caer*, as still found in *Caerleon*. These *oppida* were forts for defence in time of war, not for the constant residence of a settled population.

13. *Multi*, "many men."

CHAPTER XXII.

LINE 1. *Dum geruntur*: see Syntax, sect. vii., 1, p. 156. Compare chapters xi. and xiv. of this book, on the *castra navalia* and the position of Kent.

4. *His*: see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, c, p. 139; and on *uti adorianur*, sect. ix., 3, a, with note †, p. 148.

12. On *multum aestatis*, and on *quid vectigalis* (line 14), see Syntax, sect. vii., 6, a, p. 142. *Quid*, "what amount."

13. *Extrahi* means to be "wasted fruitlessly," "passed in inactivity."

15. *Interdicit atque imperat*, "he forbids, and (in doing so) strictly charges." The next clause depends specially on *interdicit*.

16. *Neu* is equal to *et, ut, non*. § On *Mandubratio*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, b, p. 139.

CHAPTER XXIII.

- LINE 2. *His deductis*, "these (ships) being hauled down," or launched.
4. *Commeatibus* means here, "comings and goings,"—*i. e.*, "journeys," "trips." So also in line 8.
5. *Tot navigationibus*, "after (or during) so many voyages."
6. *Desideraretur*, "was amissing."
8. *Et*, "both those on the first trip, after the soldiers had been landed, and those which Labienus had got built." To these latter the verb *remitterentur* cannot strictly apply, as they were sent for the *first* time; but the proper verb is easily supplied.
10. *Caperent locum*, "made their port." *Caperent* depends on *accidit*, through *uti* (line 4).
12. On the *time* of these events, the advanced student should consult Mr. Long's note. It is supposed that Caesar left Britain on the 25th September B.C. 54. The Romans do not seem to have molested the islanders again till A.D. 43, in the reign of Claudius.
13. *Angustius collocavit*, "packed more closely" on board the ships.

BOOK VI.

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND THE GERMAN.

CHAPTER XI.

- LINE 1. *Ad hunc locum*, "to this part of the history." In the foregoing chapter mention is made of the Suevi, a German tribe, and thus Germany is again introduced; while a connected account of the manners and customs of the Gauls, of which we have only had incidental notices, was perhaps deemed by Caesar a necessary part of his Commentaries.
2. Observe that *et* couples *de moribus*, not to another phrase of the same form, but to a relative clause, *quo differant*,—both, however, standing in the same relation to *proponere*.
5. *Pagis partibusque*, "cantons and parts of states." It is not unusual with Caesar thus to add the genus to the species. By *partibus* some understand subdivisions of the pagi. § *Factiones*, "political parties."
7. *Eorum*, "of them,"—the Gauls. § *Quorum* refers not to *eorum*, but to *princeps*.
8. *Summa*, "the chief direction of all affairs and of all measures (or public resolutions) is referred to their pleasure and judgment."
9. *Idque*, "and this arrangement seems to have been entered on from early times, with this view, that," &c.
10. On *auxilii*, in the genitive, see Syntax, sect. vii., 9, p. 143.

13. *Totius Galliae* depends on *ratio*, and *in summa* is to be taken absolutely,—“this same principle pervades the whole of Gaul, in the mass,” or “in the main.”

CHAPTER XIII.

LINE 1. *Aliquo numero*, “of any account at all.” *Numero* means worthy of being reckoned or counted; and so our word “account” answers the double meaning.

3. Observe *nullo*, in the dative, and not *nulli*. § On *consilio*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, *d*, p. 139.

4. *Aut* is rarely thus repeated three times. Debt (arising, probably, from money borrowed at high interest to assist in the cultivation of the land), taxes, and tyrannical oppression, were the great causes of the miserable condition of the lower orders.

6. *In hos*, “over these the nobles had by law the same power as masters have over their slaves.”

7. *Druidum*. This word is said to be derived from a Celtic word signifying an “oak tree.” There were three classes of Druids;—the Druids proper, who were profoundly learned in their religious system, had the charge of education, and dispensed justice; the Vates, who performed sacred rites, and cultivated a knowledge of things material; and the Bardii, who were the poets or bards.

8. *Intersunt*: “these Druids are conversant with, or take part in, all religious matters, have the charge of (*procurant*) all sacrifices, and explain (*interpretantur*) the religious system (doctrines, omens, &c., &c.) to the uninitiated.”

11. *Ili* refers to the Druids; *eos* to the Gauls. § *Fere*, “for the most part.” It applies to the whole sentence.

14. *Præmia* probably means “punishment by fines;” and *pœnas*, “general punishments.”

15. *Si qui*, “whoever,”—more definite than *si quis*. § *Decreto* is the ablative, governed by *stetit*. The preposition *in* is sometimes added. § *Sacrificiis* is the ablative, depending on *interdicunt*. See Syntax, sect. viii., 22, p. 146. The verb *interdico* governs the accusative of the person, and the ablative of the thing forbidden, as here; or the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing. It occurred a few chapters ago with *ut* and the subjunctive.

18. *Iis decedunt*, “get out of their way,” (for fear of contamination). Some books read *discedunt*.

20. *Cum iis* must be supplied after *communicatur*,—“they have no part in any office of honour.”

22. *Hoc mortuo*: “on the death of this (chief), if, on the one hand (*aut*), any person from among all the rest is conspicuous by his weight of character, he succeeds, (in virtue of that eminence;) but if, on the other hand, there are several on an equality, he (*viz.*, the new Archdruid) succeeds in virtue of the (majority of) votes of the Druids,”—*i.e.*, the succession is decided by the votes of the Druids. After *druidum* some books read *allegitur*, but without proper MS. authority.

26. *Considunt*, "sit down together,"—*i.e.*, "form a bench" for the administration of justice. We must receive with reserve these statements of Caesar about the Druids, as he seems to have heard them only, and not to have had personal knowledge.

28. *Disciplina* means the "whole system" of the Druid religion. § *Reperta (est)*, "was devised."

CHAPTER XIV.

LINE 2. *Vacationem militiae*, "exemption from military service, and freedom from all public burdens," or "privileges of every kind." Their sacred character freed them from all the calls which might be made on laymen,—such as war, taxes, labour on public works, and other such things.

4. *In disciplinam*, "for training."

7. *Ea*, "these subjects,"—*i.e.*, the subjects of the verses. The Celts, both in Gaul and in Britain, had been in the habit, long before Caesar's time, of writing *their own language* in Greek characters. See book i., chap. 29, line 1, note.

8. *Rationibus*, "affairs,"—not "accounts," as usually.

10. *Disciplina* again means the "religious system." They do not wish it to run the risk of publication by being written down; "and, on the other hand, they do not wish that those who learn should relax in cultivating the memory, through a reliance on written characters; for this commonly happens to most persons, that, relying on the help of written characters, they relax their diligence in thorough learning, and fail to exercise the memory."

14. *Post mortem transire*: they believed in the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, or *metempsychosis*.

15. The subject to *excitari* is *homines*, understood.

16. *Mundi*, "the universe." § *Terrarum*, "the globe of our earth."

18. *Vi* seems to mean the inherent might of the gods; *potestate*, their authority and influence over men.

CHAPTER XV.

LINE 1. *Alterum*: see line 7 of chapter xiii. § *Hi omnes* is subject to *versantur*.

5. *Ambactos* is a Gothic word, meaning "vassal," or "retainer." Some consider *clientes* to be merely an explanation of it, more comprehensible to Romans.

6. *Gratiam potentiamque*, "influence and authority."

CHAPTER XVI.

LINE 1. *Admodum*, &c., "exceedingly given to religious ceremonial," "in all things too superstitious."

8. *Simulacra*: these gigantic images are supposed to have been figures of their gods. § *Alii*: there is no second *alii* to correspond; it is there-

fore probable that Caesar means to confine this barbarous custom to a few tribes.

11. *Noxa* is a very comprehensive term, including theft, robbery, injury done to a man's person or property, &c. The immolation (*supplicia*) of such felons was deemed specially acceptable to the gods.

CHAPTER XVII.

LINE 1. Caesar gives Roman names to the Gallic deities which were assigned similar attributes. The supreme god among the Gauls was called *Teut*; and he who corresponded to Mercury, *Teutates*. But on the subject of these and the other deities mentioned, the opinions of the learned vary much.

7. *Initia tradere*, "teaches the rudiments (or first principles) of (useful) labour and the arts."

10. *Quam superaverunt*, "when they have gained the victory." Some books read *quae superaverunt*, "whatever things remain after the offering to the god."

13. *Neque saepe*, &c., "nor did it often happen that any one, forgetful of religious obligations, dared either to secrete booty in his own grounds (*apud se*), or to carry it off (from the tumulus) when once deposited." *Tumuli* are found in many parts even of Britain, out of which specimens of ancient armour and other things are often obtained; but these *tumuli* were perhaps used as burying-places. The *tumuli* spoken of here seem to have been mere piles of weapons and other articles captured in war.

CHAPTER XVIII.

LINE 1. *Dite*,—Dis, *i.e.*, Pluto. This seems to indicate that they supposed themselves *autochthones*, or sprung from earth. Pluto's kingdom is the kingdom of darkness; and so, in honour of their great father, they made *night* the grand starting-point in their reckoning of time. So we say "fortnight;" and "se'nnight," for seven-night.

4. *Noctem*: birth-days, the first days of months and of years, are so marked or kept "as that the day follows the night,"—*i.e.*, the day is counted from sunset to sunset. So among the Jews, "The evening and the morning were the first day."

7. *Ut possint*, "so as to be able." § *Palam adire ad se*, "to approach them in public," or "before strangers."

CHAPTER XIX.

LINE 1. *Quantas pecunias*, "all the means that men receive from their wives in the name of dowry." *Pecunias* implies not only money, but everything which might be converted into money. This they put into a common stock, which was managed separately from the husband's other property. Separate accounts were kept. The produce of each year went to increase the joint-dowry stock, and the longest survivor obtained the whole accumulations. § *Acceperunt* is used like our present, and denotes

what take
p. 127.

3. *Fru*
anything,

9. *In*
slaves" (a

as they d
they put

is omitted
ficiunt, v

11. *Pr*

12. *Vi*
literally,

p. 140.

13. *Sup*
of this (i.

LINE 1
greater re

2. *San*
enforced b

its observ

7. *Qua*

8. *Per*
assembly

LINE 1
priests an

they differ

3. *Quos*
the sun, t

Germans

LINE 1
agricultur

wealth.

4. The
men, for a

ever part

land, or a

7. The
agricultur

war; to k

oppression

what takes place usually and from time to time. See Syntax, sect. i., 21, c, p. 127.

3. *Fructus* is used in a very general sense of the yield or produce of anything, as the interest of money, profit on trading, &c.

9. *In servilem modum*, "they examine their wives, just as they do slaves" (*i.e.*, by torture); or, "they hold an investigation on their wives, as they do on slaves; and if anything (*i.e.*, any foul play) is discovered, they put them to death," &c. Observe that the subject to *compertum est* is omitted (*suspicionem* of line 8 suggesting it), as also the object of *interficiunt*, *viz.*, *cas*, referring to *uxoribus*.

11. *Pro cultu*, "in proportion to the means," "for the means."

12. *Vivis cordi fuisse*, "to have been pleasing to them when alive,"—literally, "to the heart of them when living." See Syntax, sect. vi., 10, p. 140.

13. *Supra hanc memoriam*, "farther back than the recollection of men of this (*i.e.*, Caesar's) day."

CHAPTER XX.

LINE 1. *Commodius*, "more judiciously" than others,—*i.e.*, with a greater regard to the *commodum*, or public advantage.

2. *Sanctum*: another form of *sanctum*, from *sancio*,—"have a law, enforced by a penalty." The "sanction" of a law is the penalty by which its observance is secured.

7. *Quae visa sunt*, "whatever seems proper (to them)."

8. *Per concilium*,—*i.e.*, it is only in the public and regularly constituted assembly that permission is given to speak on affairs of state.

CHAPTER XXI.

LINE 1. *Neque druides habent*. This is scarcely correct. They had priests and also religious institutions; but in this and other respects they differed greatly from the Gauls.

3. *Quos cernunt*, "whom they perceive with the outward senses," such as the sun, the moon, and fire. Tacitus gives a very different account of the Germans and their religion.

CHAPTER XXII.

LINE 1. *Student* means that they don't pay very great attention to agriculture,—don't make it their chief employment and great source of wealth. § *Victus*, "of their food."

4. The magistrates and chief men assign to clans and brotherhoods of men, for a year at a time, as much land as they think right, and in whatever part of the country they see fit. But nobody has a fixed portion of land, or an estate of his own.

7. The reasons for this practice (*ejus rei*) are now given:—to prevent agricultural pursuits from absorbing their attention to the exclusion of war; to keep down the desire for large estates, which might lead to the oppression of the weaker citizens; to discourage the building of permanent

houses (they had only huts), with very great care in regard to the defence against heat and cold; to ward off the first approaches of avarice, which begets party-spirit and civil broils; to keep the people contented, by preserving equality and thereby crushing envy.

10. *Vitandos* agrees with *actus*, which is nearest to it, and not with *frigora*, the more remote substantive, though it applies to both.

CHAPTER XXIII.

LINE 1. States take special credit to themselves for driving off their neighbours, and keeping in a state of desert the territory bordering on their own.

2. *Proprium*, "a peculiar mark (or proof) of valour."

6. *Magistratus*, "special officers to take charge of the war." § Before *ut, ita* must be supplied,—“on such a footing that they have power of life and death.” In times of peace, on the contrary, justice is administered by the chief men of the districts.

12. *Prædicant*, “they avow,” “profess,” “plainly acknowledge,” that this is done to afford their young men discipline, and to keep down slothful habits.

13. *Qui sequi velint*, “let those who are inclined to follow him give their names.” See Syntax, sect. xi., 4, p. 160.

15. *Qui ex his*: Kræmer interprets this, we think, rightly, “those of the men who had volunteered.” Mr. Long says, “those who had not promised.”

17. *Rerum* is an objective genitive,—“confidence in regard to all matters.” § *Derogatur his*, “is withdrawn from them.” The word properly means to “repeal a law.” On *his*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 14, p. 141; also 3 and 4, p. 139.

18. *Quaque*, “each,” “every,”—*i.e.*, any whatever. Some books read *quacunque*.

CHAPTER XXIV.

LINE 6. The *Volcae Tectosages* occupied part of the *provincia* in Caesar's time. Their chief town was Toulouse.—*Long*. They had settled in Germany about B.C. 300, and there some of them remained till Caesar's day.

9. *Laudis*, “glory,” “renown;”—not praise, but what commands praise. This is a frequent use of *laus*.

12. *Multa ad copiam*, &c., “supplies plentifully many articles for luxury and for necessary use.”

CHAPTER XXV.

LINE 2. *Expedito*, “to a rapid traveller;” literally, “lightly equipped.”

3. *Noverunt*, “they (the Germans) have no knowledge of road measuring.”

4. The *Nemetes* and *Rauraci* dwelt on the banks of the Rhine. From their territory he represents the Hercynian Forest as starting. Thence it ran along the straight course of the Danube to the boundaries of the *Daci* and *Anartes*, whose limits at the time spoken of are not well ascertained,

but are sup-
turned to the

8. *Hujus*
or eastern e

LINE 1.
two horns.

2. The u
branch whi
imagined th
the main he
spoke only
next note.

3. *Palma*
to resemble
like trees.

5. *Magn*
smaller, th

LINE 1.

2. *Figur*
similar to
understand
of the hair
colours at a

3. *Mutil*
correct, uni
formation 1
nodis, “wit
probably fr
ment.

5. *Afflict*
they cannot
(*sublevare*)
horses, &c.,
sudden star

6. *Applic*
little, take

9. *Subru*
through, so
of standing
referring to

LINE 1.
aur-och, or

but are supposed to begin about the *Thiess*, in Hungary. It then takes a turn to the left.

8. *Iujus*, "of this (western) Germany." § *Initium* means the farther or eastern end.

CHAPTER XXVI.

LINE 1. *Los*: the animal intended is evidently the reindeer; but it has two horns.

2. The *unum cornu* is a mistake, unless, as some suppose, it refers to a branch which springs from the front of each horn. But it can hardly be imagined that Caesar would speak of such a branch without mentioning the main horns. The fact seems to be that he never saw the beast, and spoke only from the report of some one not well acquainted with it. See next note.

3. *Palmae ramique*: towards the top the horns become flattened, so as to resemble the palm of the hand or the blade of an oar, and branch out like trees. This remark *so far* redeems the phrase *unum cornu*.

5. *Magnitudo*. This is hardly correct. The horns of the female are smaller, thinner, and less branched.

CHAPTER XXVII.

LINE 1. *Alces*: the elk is meant; but the description is again faulty.

2. *Figura*, "in shape, and in the changeableness of skin, they are very similar to goats,"—literally, "their shape, &c., is very similar." Some understand *varietas* to refer to the change that takes place on the colour of the hair, according to the season of the year; others, to the variety of colours at any one time,—the "dappled" skin.

3. *Mutilae cornibus* (see Syntax, sect. viii., 12, p. 145),—this is incorrect, unless, as Mr. Long supposes, the person who gave Caesar the information may have seen the horns "when they had exfoliated." § *Sine nodis*, "without knots and joints." This is another great mistake, arising probably from the remarkable stiffness of limb and awkwardness of movement.

5. *Afflictae casu*, "if they have by any chance been knocked down, they cannot rise straight up, nor elevate themselves." This latter verb (*sublevaré*) seems to refer to the *gradual* mode of rising adopted by cows, horses, &c., which have joints; while *erigere* suggests a more upright and sudden starting to the feet.

6. *Applicant se ad eas*, "they lean on them, and bending only a very little, take rest."

9. *Subruunt*, "undermine all the trees at the roots, or cut them almost through, so far that the external (or general) appearance (*summa species*) of standing trees is left;" "on the whole" (*summa*) there is the appearance of standing trees. § *Summa* is perhaps put in opposition to *ab radicibus*, referring to the topmost part, as contrasted with the root.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

LINE 1. *Uri*: the *urus* is said to be the *bison*, or *auroch* (in German, *aucr-och*, or *ur-och*),—i.e., the "mountain bull," or "wild bull."

4. *Quam* agrees with the substantive nearest it. See Syntax, sect. ii., 8, p. 133. § *Studiosae*, "with great care,"—*i.e.*, "taking great precautions," on account of the animal being so dangerous; or "making the pits carefully." But perhaps it refers rather to this bison-hunting being a *studium*, a favourite and much cultivated exercise. This seems to be implied in the two following lines.

8. *Ad homines*, "to man's ways;" "they cannot, even though caught when very young (*parvuli*), be domesticated and tamed."

11. *Ab labris*, "at the rim." The horns are eagerly sought for, and used for drinking vessels at their most splendid feasts, often having a rim of silver running round the edge.

LINE 1. .
any aven
practised

3. *Min*
laws. L
up in som

7. *Pinu*
pinus stan
visiting a

8. *Noro*
noverant,
the return

pinus mu
wickedness

9. *Fossa*
and all its
or horns fo

13. *Ipsa*
taneously s
by what fo

she receive
demand an

15. *Cont*
any compu
strawberrie

larger than
18. *Jovis*
20. *Mule*
the flowers

22. *Nec n*
being re-dre

NOTES ON OVID.

I.—METAMORPHOSES.

I.—THE FOUR AGES.

LINE 1. *Suta est* : perfect passive of *sero*. § *Nullo vindice*, "without any avenger of wrong, of its own accord, without compulsory enactment, practised honesty and uprightness."

3. *Minacia verba*,—*i.e.*, words which set forth the penalties of violated laws. Laws were usually inscribed on tablets of brass, which were put up in some public place, so that all might be warned.

7. *Pinus* : the mountain pine was largely used in ship-building ; hence *pinus* stands for *navis* : "No ship had been launched for the purpose of visiting a foreign shore."

8. *Norant* : since *novi*, the perfect, is used as a present, *norant* for *noverant*, the pluperfect, is equal to an imperfect. Virgil, speaking of the return of the golden age, represents commerce as ceasing : *Nec nautica pinus mutabit merces* (Ecl. iv.) : and Horace considers it a mark of daring wickedness to tempt the sea in ships.

9. *Fossae* : another mark of supreme happiness was the absence of war and all its instruments,—no walled and fosse-begirt towns,—no trumpets or horns for rousing men to battle.

13. *Ipsa—per se dabat omnia tellus*, "even the very earth, too, spontaneously supplied productions of every kind." § *Immunis* is explained by what follows :—The earth was "free from responsibility," because she received no tillage and no seed, and men had therefore no *right* to demand any yield.

15. *Contenti*, "men satisfying themselves with food produced without any compulsion, gathered the fruit of the arbutus, and the mountain strawberries." The *arbutus* was the strawberry tree, which is much larger than the common wild strawberry (*fraga*).

18. *Jovis arbore*,—*i.e.*, the oak, which was sacred to Jupiter.

20. *Mulcabant*, "the gentle west winds fanned with their warm breezes the flowers which sprang up without seed."

22. *Nec renovatus* is equal to *et non renovatus*,—"and the field without being re-dressed." *Renovatus* may refer to the processes of cultivation

being performed anew after the winter's cold; or rather, perhaps, to the "resting" of the land for a year or more without crop. We learn from Virgil and other writers on agriculture, that it was a very common practice among Italian husbandmen to allow their fields to lie untilled occasionally, to "rest" the soil; and as the processes of tillage are referred to in *inarata* of the foregoing line, the second interpretation of *renovatus* seems more worthy of approval.

23. *Flumina*: the earth literally "flowed with milk and honey."

25. *Postquam—erat*: see Syntax, sect. vii., 1, p. 156,—“when, after Saturn was banished to gloomy Tartarus, the world was under the rule of Jupiter.”

26. Observe that the last syllable of *subiit*, though in reality short, is made long by the *arsis*, or stress of the voice, which falls on the first syllable of a dactyl or spondee.

27. *Auro* and *aere* are used adjectively for “the golden age” and “the brazen age.”

29. *Inaequales*, “of unsettled weather,” “variable.”

30. *Spatiis exegit*, “completed (or established in a regular course) the year in four seasons.”

31. Extremes of heat and of cold were then felt for the first time,—the burning, glowing heat of summer, and the freezing cold of winter.

33. *Subiere*, “men entered,” the subject being omitted.

37. *Illas*, “after these ages a brazen race succeeded, as the third in order.”

39. *Non seclerata*, “not entirely abandoned.” § *Ultima*, scil., *actus*.

40. *Venae*: this word is used of a seam or stratum of mineral, and so is applied to the age, which is represented by a new metal.

44. *Dabant*, scil., *homines*.

46. *Insultuvere*, “danced contemptuously.” § *Carinae*, “keels,” is put for *naves*.

48. *Cautus mensor*, “the wary (‘canny’) measurer” now began to assign limits to property, and to introduce the notions of *meum* and *tuum*.

50. *Poscebatur segetes*, “was asked for crops.” On the construction see Syntax, sect. v., 9, p. 137. § *Itum est*, “it was gone” by men,—*i.e.*, men penetrated.

51. *Admoverat*, “had placed near the Stygian shades,”—*i.e.*, had hid in the depths of the earth.

54. *Utroque*, “with both,”—*i.e.*, with gold for bribes, and with iron for weapons.

55. *Concutit arma*: this refers to the custom of striking the spear against the shield, for the purpose of causing terror to the enemy.

56. *Vivitur*, “it is lived” by men,—*i.e.*, men live on plunder (*ex raptis*).

58. *Illas*, “she,”—supply *imminet exitio*,—“watches eagerly (yearns) for the death.”

59. *Lurida* is applied to *aconita*, from the colour which it produced in persons who were poisoned by it.

60. *Filius*: sons even long for their father's death, so that they may receive the inheritance. § *Inquirat*, “inquires” of the diviners.

62. *Coelestum*: poetic form for *coelestium*.

LINE

by word

—*i.e.*, by

Senate,

only, we

alii. Th

5. On

p. 159.

7. For

take care

(line 3), s

11. On

12. *Al*

itself,—th

15. *Ar*

was to b

doubtless

ously wro

danger,”

17. *Div*19. *Aeo*

Aeolian (n

winds.

22. On t

Another ex

(i.e., assum

28. *Iris*

was an anc

29. *Colo*

the constru

31. *Jovis*32. *Caer*36. *Mole*

from the en

waters, and

is drawn fro

38. *Hi*,

rivers.”

41. *Intre*

courses for t

43. *Satis*,44. *Penet*

such as imag

the Penates,

chapels;” h

II.—THE DELUGE.

LINE 1. *Pars probant*: see Syntax, sect. i., 8, p. 131. "Some approve by word of mouth; others (line 2) perform their part by (tacit) assent,"

—*i.e.*, by voting merely. This has reference to the practice in the Roman Senate, whereby certain persons, who were members in virtue of office only, were not allowed to speak, but only to vote. § *Pars* is answered by *alii*. The more usual combination is *pars pars*, or *alii-alii*.

5. On the questions, *quid sit laturus*, and *paret*, see Syntax, sect. x., 2, p. 159.

7. *Fore* depends on *dicit* understood,—“for he tells them that he will take care of other matters.” On *fore curae sibi* and *est dolori omnibus* (line 3), see Syntax, sect. vi., 10, p. 140.

11. On *timuit ne* see note on Nep. Milt., vii., 13.

12. *Axis*, the imaginary axle or pole of the earth; hence the earth itself,—the world.

15. *Ardeat*: it was one of the doctrines of the Stoics, that the world was to be destroyed by fire. In mentioning this notion here, Ovid is doubtless looking forward to his story of Phaethon. § *Operosa*, “laboriously wrought,” or “ingeniously wrought.” § *Laboret*, “should be in danger,” “should suffer.”

17. *Diversa*, “an opposite punishment,”—water as opposed to fire.

19. *Aeoliis antris*, “the Aeolian caverns,”—*i.e.*, the caverns of the Aeolian (now *Lipari*) islands, which were feigned as the abode of the winds.

22. On the construction of *tectus vultum* see Syntax, sect. v., 9, p. 137. Another example occurs in line 27, *induta colores*, “clothing herself in (*i.e.*, assuming) various colours.”

28. *Iris concipit aquas*, “the rainbow sucks up the waters.” Such was an ancient idea of the use of the rainbow.

29. *Colonis deplorata*, “given over as lost by the husbandmen.” On the construction see Syntax, sect. vi., 11, p. 141.

31. *Jovis ira* is equal to *iratus Jupiter*.

32. *Caeruleus frater*, “his brother of the sea,”—*i.e.*, Neptune.

36. *Mole remota*, “the barrier being removed.” The figure is taken from the embankment or the flood gates of a stream, which dam up the waters, and prevent an excessive flow. § In the next line the metaphor is drawn from the management of horses,—“give loose rein to.”

38. *Ili*, “they,”—*i.e.*, the river gods. § *Redeunt*, “return to their rivers.”

41. *Intremuit*, “trembled to her centre, and by the motion opened courses for the waters.”

43. *Satis*, “crops.” See *satus, a, um*, in Vocabulary.

44. *Penetralia cum suis sacris*, “shrines, with their sacred contents;” such as images of the Penates, &c. The inmost part of the house, where the Penates, or household gods, were kept, was called *penetralia*, “family chapels;” hence applied to all sanctuaries.

47. *Unda*, &c., "the water rising higher (*altior*), covers its roof." § *Turres*, "lofty buildings;" not, "spires."

54. *Si fors tulit*, "if chance have so directed."

60. *Agitata robora pulsant*, "strike against and shake the oaks." The adjective *agitata* is used with an anticipatory or proleptic sense, the trees being represented as "already shaken," although the shaking is the effect of the striking.

62. *Fulminis vires*, "the force of the thunderbolt." This is a favourite mode of speaking of the boar, suggested perhaps by the *suddenness*, *directness*, and *destructiveness* of his attack. In like manner the two Scipios are called *duo fulmina belli*; and so our own Nelson is spoken of by Sir Walter Scott as "a thunderbolt of war." § *Aprò* depends on *pro-sunt*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 4, a, p. 139.

64. *Ubi detur* depends on *quæsitis*,—"having long sought for dry land, on which (*ubi*) she might alight."

66. *Immensa licentia*, "the boundless (uncontrollable) fury of the deep."

68. On *quibus*, governed by *pepercit*, see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, a, p. 139.

III.—DEUCALION AND PYRRHA.

LINE 1. *Aonios*, "the Boeotians." Aonia was a district of Boeotia; but the term Aonios is used in an extended sense. § *Oetæcis*: Mount Oeta bounded Thessaly on the south, and separated it from Phocis. Hence the phrase is used in a general sense for *Thessalicis*.

2. *In tempore*, "during all that time,"—viz., of the flood.

8. *Adorant* has as its subject, "they," including Deucalion and his wife Pyrrha, *consorte tori*.

10. On *aqui* after *amantior*, see Syntax, sect. vii., 8, p. 143. § *Illo*, "than he,"—Deucalion; *illa*, "than she,"—Pyrrha.

12. *Ut*, "when." The infinitive, *stagnare*, depends on *videt*.

18. *Tricuspide telo*, "his three-pointed (or three-pronged) weapon,"—i.e., his trident.

20. *Exstantem* and *actum* agree with *Tritona*. On the phrase *tectum humeros* see Syntax, sect. v., 9, p. 137.

23. *Illi* is governed by *sumitur*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 11, p. 141.

24. *Tortilis*, &c., "wreathed (or of a spiral form), which increases in breadth (i.e., diameter) from the lowest part of the cone."

26. *Utroque Phœbo*,—i.e., both east and west—both extremities of the sun's course.

27. *Tunc quoque*: this refers to line 33, p. 100.

34. *Diem*, meaning "period," is generally feminine, as here. § *Nudata*, "bared (of water, not of leaves)."

39. *Soror*: Pyrrha was Deucalion's cousin, not his sister.

40. *Patruelis origo*, "descent from brothers."

44. *Hæc quoque*, &c., "so far, there is not even this sufficiently certain assurance of our life,"—i.e., so far, we have not that sufficiently certain assurance of our lives which people usually have (*hæc*) on earth.

46. *Quid tibi animi foret*, "what would have been your feelings now," "what state of mind would you have now been in."

48. *Quo*
be grieving

51. *Pate*
had formed
animate th

54. *Ecc*

55. *Plac*

56. *Sorte*

responses b

57. *Par*

Cephalus, i

58. *Ut*,

59. *Liba*

stream. B

icipatory se

have offered

(taken) from

delivery from

entering a t

62. *Palle*

healthy asp

64. On *h*

68. *Mers*

the flood.

70. *Velat*

the perform

shipper from

being distra

75. Respe

tions. Hen

regard. §

with note *

76. *Lateb*

is better, h

by reason of

79. *Solter*

at fault, or,

83. *Augu*

Epimetheus,

Prometheus,

88. On *er*

90. *Mora*

assume grad

92. The o

forma homin

copto marm

93. *Marm*

ciently chisel

half-finished

48. *Quo consolante*, "with what person consoling you would you now be grieving,"—*i.e.*, who would have consoled you in your grief!

51. *Paternis artibus*, "by my father's art." Prometheus, his father, had formed men of clay, and had stolen fire from heaven wherewith to animate them.

54. *Exempla*, "specimens," "models."

55. *Placuit*, *scil.*, *iis*, "they resolved."

56. *Sortes*, "by means of the sacred oracle." Oracles occasionally gave responses by lots.

57. *Pariter*, "side by side." § *Cephisidas undas*, the waters of the Cephisus, in Phocis.

58. *Ut*, "though,"—*sic*, "yet."

59. *Libatos inde* is usually interpreted "drawn from it,"—*i.e.*, from the stream. But it is better to take *libatos* as used in a proleptic or anticipatory sense (see note on *agitata*, Ovid, ii. 60). Thus, "When they have offered in libation, and sprinkled on their clothes and head, water (taken) from it." Libation was one of the first duties of religion after a delivery from evil, and purification in running water was necessary before entering a temple.

62. *Pallebant*: this verb often means, as here, "to be of a sickly or unhealthy aspect;" and so to be "disfigured."

64. On *humū* see Syntax, sect. vii., 14, p. 144.

68. *Mersis rebus*, "to our ruined circumstances:" *mersis*, ruined by the flood.

70. *Velate caput*: this covering of the head was a usual precaution in the performance of sacred rites, the purpose being to prevent the worshipper from seeing any object of ill omen, and to keep his mind from being distracted.

75. Respect for the dead was considered one of the most sacred obligations. Hence, she "asks pardon" for disobeying the goddess in this regard. § On the government of *laedere* see Syntax, sect. vi., 4, *b* and *c*, with note *, p. 139.

76. *Latebris* may depend on *datae*, "given in the gloomy retreat." It is better, however, to make it depend on *obscura*, "difficult to understand by reason of their dark ambiguities."

79. *Sollertia nobis* (*i.e.*, *mihī fallax*, "either my skill (penetration) is at fault, or," &c.

83. *Augurio*, "interpretation," "reading of Heaven's will." § *Titania*. Epimetheus, father of Pyrrha, was son of the Titan Japetus. So also was Prometheus, father of Deucalion.

88. On *credat*, in the subjunctive, see Syntax, sect. ii., 2 (5), p. 153.

90. *Mora*, "by time." § *Mollitaque*, &c., "and being softened, to assume gradually a definite shape."

92. The order is a little intricate. Arrange thus: *Ut* (though) *quaedam forma hominis potest videri, sic* (yet) *non manifesta, sed uti (forma) de copto marmore, non satis exacta, rudibusque simillima signis.*

93. *Marmore coepto*, "a marble block, begun to be fashioned, not sufficiently chiselled out (defined), and exactly like statues in a rude (rough, half-finished) state."

96. *Corporis*, "flesh."
 98. *Vena*, the "vein" or "seam" in the stone
 102. *Durum genus*, a "hard-hearted race." So he says in another place, *Propago violenta fuit : scires e sanguine natos*.

IV.—PHAETHON.

LINE 2. *Pyropo* is a Greek word, meaning "of fiery aspect;" so that *imitante flammis* is a literal translation of the term.

4. *Argenti lumine*, "with a silvery sheen."
 6. *Caclarat* : Vulcan had carved in relief a device which represented the sea with objects in it (lines 8-14), the earth (15 and 16), and the heavens (17 and 18).
 8. *Unda habet*, "the water contains,"—*i.e.*, the sea, which forms part of the picture, is represented as containing the things specified.
 9. *Ambiguum*, "shape-changing," "varying."
 11. On *pars*, as subject to *videntur*, see Syntax, sect. i., 8, p. 131.
 12. *Mole*, "a height," a hillock, rock, or other eminence. § *Virides* : this adjective, like *caeruleos* of line 8, is applied to things connected with the sea, the colour being borrowed from that of the sea.
 13. *Facies*, "the features of all are not identical, and yet not entirely diverse; (but) just such (a likeness) as should be in the case of sisters,"—*i.e.*, a strong family likeness. § *Pisce* is put in a general sense for the plural. We might express the meaning by, "on fish-back."
 18. *Signa*, the signs of the Zodiac, which are expressed in the following Latin couplet :—

"Sunt Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo,
 Libraque, Scorpius, Arcitenens, Capre, Amphora, Pisces."

And in English—

"The Ram, the Bull, the heavenly Twins,
 The Crab, and next the Lion shines,
 The Virgin and the Scales;
 The Scorpion, Archer, and the Goat,
 The man that holds the watering-pot,
 And fish with glittering tails."

20. *Dubitati*, "his father, about whom doubt had been expressed." See Prefatory Note, p. 104.
 23. *Lumina* may mean either (1) the "glare of the sun's light," in which case *fererat* will be translated "endure;" or (2) "his eyes,"—*fererat* signifying "bring" or "bear."
 24. *In solio*, "on a throne which glittered with shining emeralds." § The *smaragdus* was a precious stone of green colour, either emerald, or jasper, or crystal.
 25. *Dies et Mensis et Annus* : this is merely a poetic fancy. It is not meant that these were real deities, receiving worship from mortals.
 26. *Horae*, "the hours," not the "seasons," which *Horae* often means. In the following lines observe the characteristic adjuncts to each of the seasons.

29. *Sc*
 the feet,
 was by n
 30. *II*
 accusativ
 31. *M*
 place.
 33. *Qu*
 is not, th
 34. *Pa*
 construct
 35. *Re*
 37. *Na*
 39. *Ob*
 in the ne
 42. *Tr*
 —"You
 on the o
 dignus w
 46. *Di*
 but per a
 —*i.e.*, th
 47. *Obs*
 in the pre
 51. *Tu*
 yours,"—
 56. *Not*
 within the
 58. *Pla*
 himself,"
 59. *Ax*
 60. *Me*
 62. *Obs*
 have we th
 modestly.
 63. *Pri*
 which.
 65. *Vid*
 seeing."
 67. *Ulti*
 and needs
 earth stand
 Ovid adopt
 (*Tethys qu*
 during the
 69. *Ne f*
 72. *Nit*
 to east, th
 in a course

29. *Sordidus calcatis uris*: the grapes were usually trodden out with the feet, and the "defilement" which necessarily arose from the process was by no means disagreeable to a Roman eye.

30. *Hirsuta capillos*, "rough as to his hair,"—another instance of the accusative of reference. See Syntax, sect. v., 9, p. 137.

31. *Medius loco*, "middle in position,"—*i.e.*, occupying the central place.

33. *Quacque*: the *que* couples this clause to the preceding sentence, and is not, therefore, part of the speech of the Sun-god.

34. *Parenti*, "not deserving to be disowned by your father." On the construction, see Syntax, sect. vi., 11, p. 141.

35. *Refert*, "replies." § *Publica*, "common."

37. *Nec*, equal to *et non*, "and if Clymene does not conceal."

39. Observe that though *Credar* is singular, the poet does not use *meis* in the next clause, but *nostris*. Such transitions are common, but faulty.

42. Translate *nec* and *et*, "on the one hand," and "on the other hand,"—"You do not, on the one hand, deserve to be disowned as my son; and, on the other hand, Clymene has declared your real origin." Observe *dignus* with the infinitive *negari*.

46. *Dis* for *dis*: dative after *juranda* (see Syntax, sect. vi., 11, p. 141); but *per* after *juro* is more usual,—“a lake by which the gods must swear,”—*i.e.*, the Stygian lake, to which the rays of the sun never penetrate.

47. Observe the rapid change from *desierat* in the pluperfect, to *rogat* in the present, adding vividness and life to the narrative.

51. *Tua*, seil., *voce*, "my expression has been proved a rash one by yours,"—*i.e.*, your request.

56. *Non est mortale*, "what you wish is not for a mortal,"—*i.e.*, is not within the power of a mortal to perform.

53. *Placcat—Licbit (ut) quisque placcat sibi*, "let every one please himself," or "judge for himself," "form his own opinion of his powers."

59. *Axe*, put for "chariot."

60. *Me excepto*, "myself excepted." § *Rector*,—*i.e.*, Jupiter.

62. Observe *quid majus* in the neuter, "what greater thing (at all) have we than Jove." § *Agat* is in the subjunctive, as expressing a fact modestly.

63. *Primo via*, "the first part of the way." § *Qua*, (a way) along which.

65. *Videre* depends on *timor*, or rather *fit timor*, "I am terrified at seeing."

67. *Ultima*, "the last part of the journey is down-hill (precipitous), and needs steady driving,—a sure bridle-hand." The old notion of the earth standing still and the sun revolving round it, is, of course, that which Ovid adopts. The sun was supposed to sink into the waters of the sea (*Tethys quae excipit me undis*) in the evening, to pass below the earth during the night, and rise from the ocean again in the morning.

69. *Ne ferar in praeceps*, "lest I be carried headlong."

72. *Nitor in adversum*: the heaven with the stars revolved from west to east, the sun from east to west; hence *Sol* says, "I struggle upwards in a course directly opposite (to that of the heavens)."

74. *Finge*, "suppose the carriage granted to you."

75. On *obvius ire polis* see Syntax, sect. vi., 7, b, p. 140. *Polis*, "the poles,"—i.e., the extremities of the axis. § *Ne* is equal to *ut non*, "so that the rapidly moving heavens should not carry you away." By *axis* some understand the "chariot," which seems to make an inferior sense.

78. *Formas ferarum*,—i.e., the signs of the Zodiac. See note on line 18, above. The ancients grouped certain stars together, and thus imagined fanciful representations of animals.

79. *Ut*, "though," "suppose that," is answered by *tamen* in next line.

80. *Adversi*, "fronting you." In the Zodiac, the Bull is depicted as presenting his horns in a direction facing the sun's course.

81. *Haemonios arcus*: this is a roundabout way of saying the "Archer." *Haemonia* is another name for Thessaly, the residence of the Centaur Chiron who was translated to heaven, and made a constellation. § The Lion is called *violenti*, either from the natural ferocity of the beast, or rather, perhaps, because when the sun was in Leo the heat was excessive.

83. *Scorpion*: when the sun was in this part of the heavens malaria and fevers were rife; hence the constellation was called after a poisonous animal. § *Aliter*, "in the other direction." The Scorpion stretches his arms to the east, the Crab to the west,—the Scorpion upwards, the Crab downwards. § *Cancerum*: when the sun reaches this part of the heavens, the Tropic of Cancer, he turns and goes in the opposite direction; hence the Crab was adopted as the sign, to denote retrograde movement. It takes a year for the sun to pass through all the signs of the Zodiac, but the poet speaks of it as the journey of a day.

84. *Nec*, "nor is it easy (*in promptu est*) for you to manage the horses, high mettled by reason of those fires," &c.

89. *Cave* frequently has *e* final short, but it is long here. § Observe the position of *-que*, which in prose is generally attached to the second of the coupled words; but the poets take great liberties.

90. *Scilicet*, "the case is this—you ask sure pledges," &c. "Well, I give sure pledges by my fears, and by a father's apprehensions prove myself a father."

98. *Deprecor*, "I deprecate (plead against) this one thing, which, under its real name, is a punishment, not an honour."

103. *Finierat*, "he (Phoebus) had finished." § *Ille*, Phaethon.

105. *Qua*, like *quoad*, "as long as," "as far as."

108. *Curvatura*, "the outer rim," composed of the "felloes."

109. *Juga*, "the whole yoke" or "harness." The jugum properly was a cross bar, the extremities of which rested on the neck of the horses, the centre being connected to the pole. § *Gemmae*, "(other) precious stones," besides the chrysolites.

110. *Reperrusso Phoebos*, "from the reflection of the sun,"—i.e., the sun's rays being reflected from the stones, and so multiplied.

113. *Plena rosarum*, "full of roses,"—i.e., of rosy light. So Homer calls *Aurora* "rosy-fingered."

115. *Lucifer*: the planet Venus is called Lucifer, or the morning star, when it precedes the sun, and Hesperus, or the evening star, when it follows him in the evening. § *Statione*, "from the guard-house," "watch-

post."
Cogit ag
similar

117.
118.

Sun-god

120.

p. 146,

123.

vibratin

§ *Patien*

127.

greater

128.

129.

Arctic,

noctial.

to be di

the zone

next line

131.

the Torr

138.

is near t

the right

rota), w

the left

139.

It is cal

pressed,

the gods

lated to

141.

counsel

143.

sun does

earth," a

option."

149.

may with

150.

possessio

ing balla

152.

thanks to

155.

post." This is a military term which we have often met in Caesar. *Cogit agmina*, "brings up the rear," "collects the stragglers," is another similar phrase. Cf. Campbell's well-known line—

"The sentinel stars set their watch in the sky."

117. *Extremæ*, "fading out of sight," "distant."

118. *Titan*: this name is often applied by Latin poets to Helius, or the Sun-god, who was son of Hyperion, and grandson of the original Titan.

120. *Præsepibus*, "from the lofty stalls." See Syntax sect. viii., 24, p. 146, and 28, p. 147. § *Addunt* (next line), "put on."

123. *Rapidæ* is applied to *flammae*, either on account of the quick, vibrating motion of flames, or because of their speedily-destructive power. § *Patientia*, "able to endure."

127. *Parce*, "be sparing of the goad, my son, and use the reins with greater vigour." A most valuable moral maxim.

128. *Properant*: the subject, "horses," is omitted.

129. *Quinque arcus*. The five circles that mark the zones are, the Arctic, the Antarctic, the Tropics (Cancer and Capricorn), and the Equinoctial. The meaning of the injunction is, that the sun's course is not to be directed parallel to the equinoctial line, and the lines which mark the zones, but is to follow the ecliptic, and go in a zig-zag direction, as the next line explains. § Observe that *nec* is equal to *et ne*.

131. *Trium zonarum*, "the three zones,"—*i.e.*, the two Temperate and the Torrid.

138. *Neu* is equal to *et ne*. § *Anguem*: the constellation of the Serpent is near the North Pole. Thus, as the sun rises in the east, the north is to the right hand, and the wheel, by going too much to the right (*dexterior rota*), would incline the chariot to the north; while by going too much to the left (*sinisterior*), it would lead to the south.

139. *Aram*, the constellation of the ALTAR, in the Southern Hemisphere. It is called *pressam*, "lowered," as the southern sky seems to us "depressed," or "sunk down." When the Titans rebelled against Heaven, the gods made a solemn league at this altar, which was thereafter translated to heaven and became a constellation. —

141. Resolve *quæ* into *et ea*, "and may she help you, I pray, and counsel better for you than you do for yourself."

143. *Nox*: NIGHT performs a journey across the heavens just as the sun does. She "reaches the goal *placæ* on the western shore of the earth," as the sun rises in the east. § *Libera moræ*, "delay is not at our option."

149. *Quæ*, &c., "allow me to give to the earth the light, which you may with safety look upon,"—*quæ* agreeing with *lumina*.

150. *Occupat* well expresses the great eagerness of the boy,— "takes possession of before any opposition can be offered." § *Levem*, "light (wanting ballast), by reason of his youthful body."

152. *Inde*, "from it,"—*i.e.*, the chariot. § *Agit grates*, "returns thanks to his father, reluctant (to receive them)."

155. *Repugula*, "barriers,"—*i.e.*, wooden beams stretched across the

race-course, the withdrawal of which was the signal for the starting of the horses.

156. *Nepotis*: Clymene, mother of Phaethon, was daughter of Tethys.

157. *Copia*, &c., "ful! choice (or scope) of the boundless universe was afforded them."

161. *Nec* (equal to *et non*) *quod*, "and not such as."

165. *Vacuus* agrees with *currus* of next line. Some editions read *vacuos*, agreeing with *saltus*. § On *onere*, in the ablative, see Syntax, sect. viii., 14, p. 145.

172. *Vetito aequore*, "the sea forbidden to them." The constellation of the *Septentriones*, or *Bear*, owing to its proximity to the North Pole, never sinks below our horizon.

174. "The SERPENT previously benumbed by cold, and not dreaded by any one." § On *ulli*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 11, p. 141.

176. *Boötes*: this constellation, from its position, as following the BEAR, is sometimes called ARCTOPHYLAX, or ARCTURUS (Bear-keeper). But as the BEAR is also called the WAGGON (Charles's Wain) with the *Septentriones* or "ploughing oxen," it gets the name of *Boötes* or the "Ox-driver."

177. *Tardus*: *Boötes* is called *slow*, because it did not set till late in the season; or, perhaps, because the stars near the North Pole do not move so fast as those farther south, owing to their having a smaller space to traverse. The *plaustra*, waggons, are also represented as another retarding cause.

181. *Per* does not signify "by means of" here, as it is usually interpreted, but "during," "in the midst of." It was fear, and not the light, that caused darkness to overspread his eyes; the light was as great before. But the wonder was, that darkness could, under any circumstances, arise during the prevalence of such light. See another argument against the common interpretation in line 123, above.

184. To *Meropis* supply *filius*, an ellipse very common in Greek.

185. *Pinus* is again put for *navis*, "like a ship driven onward by the impetuous north wind, whose helm, rendered unmanageable, the pilot has abandoned, and which he has committed to the gods and his prayers." The metaphor in *frena remisit* is taken from the management of horses.

193. *Miracula*, the constellations, signs of the Zodiac, &c. See line 78, above. § *Vario*, "spangled," "star-studded."

195. *Geminus arcus*: the claws of the Scorpion form two curves or arches. § *Concavat*, he bends his claws so as to make a hollow, winding bay, as it were.

197. In the more ancient astronomers, the Scorpion was represented as extending over the space of two constellations, half of which space was afterwards occupied by LIBRA.

199. *Curvata cuspidē*, "with his pointed tail bent," in the attitude of striking. Scorpions "have power in their tails to hurt men."

204. *Ilac*, "in that direction," answers to *qua* of preceding line.

205. *Stellis*, dative after *incursant*. See Syntax, sect. vi., 4, d, p. 139.

208. *Inferius*: the MOON'S (Diana) orbit is much nearer to the earth than the sun; but now her brother's (Apollo) horses come between her and the earth.

210. U
of the ear
211. A
215. G
217. O
and an A
219. V
Muses, th
famed for
Oegyrius.
233. Q
235. S
of the bo
240. A
241. M
widely ap
243. S
244. P
Some edit
near the E
245. A
the story
stream be
246. Th
gives orig
ders," or
247. M
name, just
Phrygia, c
251. P
253. V
255. Qu
source of t
seven mou
257. Ism
of which I
258. He
259. Th
sovereignty
261. Re
264. Cy
267. Re
280. Lie
violence of
(the weight
gods, and
283. Cr
vegetation.
286. Quo

210. *Ut quaeque*, "as each is very high,"—*i.e.*, all the highest parts of the earth.

211. *Agil rimas*, "goes into (or forms) chinks."

215. *Gentes* is here used for "countries" or "lands."

217. On the proper names in the following passage see the Vocabulary and an Atlas of Ancient Geography.

219. *Virgineus*: Helicon is so called from its being sacred to the Muses, the "Nine Virgins." § *Haemos* or *Haemus* (Balkan) was not yet famed for the story of Orpheus, son of Oeager; hence the phrase, *nondum Oeagrius*.

233. *Quoque eat*, equal to *et quo eat*, "and he knows not where to go."

235. *Sanguine vocato*, "from the blood being summoned to the surface of the body."

240. *Amymonē*, a fountain near Lerna in Argolis.

241. *Nec flumina*, "nor do those rivers which happen to have banks widely apart (*i.e.*, broad rivers) remain unscathed."

243. *Senex*: river gods are generally represented as old men.

244. *Phegiaco*, "Phegean,"—*i.e.*, passing the town of Phegia or Phegēa. Some editions read *Psophideo*, and some *Psophaico*, from Psophis, a town near the Erymanthus.

245. *Arsurus iterum*, "about to burn a second time,"—referring to the story of Homer, that Vulcan, fighting for the Greeks, set fire to the stream because it had endeavoured to devour Achilles.

246. The Maeander, in Lydia, is said to have six hundred bends. It gives origin to our verb "meander." § *Ludit*, either "sportively wanders," or "mocks," "baffles" men.

247. *Melas*, meaning "black river." There were many rivers of this name, just as we have many "Blackwaters." There was a Mygdonia in Phrygia, one in Macedonia, one in Mesopotamia, and one in Bithynia.

251. *Fluit*, "melts."

253. *Volucres*, "the birds of the river,"—*i.e.*, swans.

255. *Quod adhuc latet*, "which is to this day undiscovered." The source of the Nile is still a geographical problem. § *Ostia septem*: of the seven mouths, only two remain.

257. *Ismarios—amnes*, "the Ismarian rivers,"—*i.e.*, the rivers of Thrace, of which *Ismarus* was a mountain.

258. *Hesperios*, "of the west," of Germany, France, and Italy.

259. The Tiber, or Thybris, to which (*i.e.*, to the city Rome on it) the sovereignty of the world was granted.

261. *Regem*, &c.,—*i.e.*, Pluto and Proserpine.

264. *Cycludas*: put here for islands generally.

267. *Resupina*, "lying on their backs on the surface of the deep."

280. *Liecat*, &c., "may it be granted me, if perish I must by the violence of fire, to perish by your fire (*i.e.*, thunderbolt), and to lighten (the weight of) my calamity by the author of it,"—*i.e.*, by the king of the gods, and not a boy, inflicting the injury.

283. *Crines* means the foliage of trees, grass, and all other kinds of vegetation.

286. *Quod*, "that." Translate 285, &c., "Is this the return, is this

the thanks, that you pay me for my fertility and for my service, that I bear," &c.

288. *Fruges, alimenta*, "corn crops, milk nutriment:" "kindly fruits."

290. *Fuc me meruisse*, "suppose that I have deserved annihilation, what have the waters deserved, what has your brother (Neptune) deserved?"

293. *Quod, &c.*, "but if regard neither for your brother nor for me (*mea*) touch your heart. at least (*at*) pity heaven, your own realm. Look around you to both poles; both poles are smoking."

295. *Quos*: resolve into *et hos*, and observe that the antecedent is a singular noun, with a distributive adjective, *uterque polus*.

296. *Atlas*, a king of Mauretania, was said to have been changed into a mountain. The hills were so high as to hide their tops in the clouds; and hence the fable that "Atlas carried the world (*axem*) on his shoulders."

300. *Consule summae*, "take counsel for the safety of the universe." See *consulo* in the Vocabulary.

303. *Manibus*, the names or shades of the dead; and so here, the infernal world: "to the caverns nearer to the shades."

312. *Misit*, &c., "he hurled against the charioteer a boat, poised at his right ear." This refers to the mode of balancing the spear before discharging it.

313. *Expulit* is an example of *zeugma* (see *Nep. Them.*, i., 9),—"he deprived him of life, and hurled him from the chariot;" "struck him out of life and out of his carriage at one and the same time."

318. *Vestigia*, "traces,"—*i.e.*, fragments. § *Laceri*, "shattered."

321. *Ut interdum*, "as by times a star may seem to have fallen from a calm sky, although it has not (actually) fallen."

323. *Quam*,—*i.e.*, Phaethon. § *Procul*, "far from his fatherland,"—*viz.*, Aethiopia.

326. *Carmine*, "verse;" we rather say "verses," "inscription."

327. *Situs est*, "is buried;" from *sino*.

328. *Quem*, "which (chariot) though he did not (could not) manage (or hold to), yet he fell from (or by) a great attempt." There is a double meaning in *excidit*,—"he failed in his attempt,"—literally, "fell out of the chariot."

V.—PYRAMUS AND THISBE.

LINE 4. *Coctilibus*, "made of brick." Semiramis, wife of Ninus, surrounded the city of Babylon with a wall of brick, for in the great plain of Mesopotamia there was little stone.

5. *Primos gradus*, "the first advances" of love.

6. *Taediae*, "they would have been united by the rites of marriage." When a husband was conducting his newly-married wife to his house, bearing torches of pine-wood were carried in the procession. Hence *taedia* is often used for "marriage."

8. *Ex aequo captis*, "with affections captivated in an equal degree."

11. *Rima, quam duxerat*, "by a chink, which it had contracted."

Ducere rimam and *agere rimam* mean, "to go into chinks," "split open."

13. *Nulli*, lovers were of sect. vi., 11, instead of nulli.

15. *Tutae*, unheard by others.

18. *Anhelitus*,—*i.e.*, a

23. *Sub nocte*, own side of the

side." On *quod*

25. *Nocturni*

31. *Neve si* they roam over

36. See *Notae*

this is a very sets much more twilight is com still the light

38. *Adoper*

See *Syntax*, see the historical and *reliqui*.

41. *Oblita* accusative of *re*

42. *Deposit*

Syntax, sect. i.

47. *Sine ips*

55. *Jussi* (*u*

Milt., i., 16.

59. *Timidi*

p. 142.

62. *Accipe* plunged into h

65. *Humo*: and 14, p. 144

66. *Vitiato*

Such leaden or

69. *Caedis* i

72. *Ne falle* disappoint her

74. *Gestit* n

75. *Ut* (thou the place, and or which she n the shape of th

80. *Summun*

81. *Suos am*

82. *Indignos*

13. *Nulli*, "this defect, observed by no one through long years, you lovers were the first to discover." On *nulli*, in the dative, see Syntax, sect. vi., 11, p. 141. We should have expected the substantive *nemini*, instead of *nulli*.

15. *Tutae*, "in safety,"—*i.e.*, their expressions of love (*blanditiæ*) were unheard by others, but distinctly heard by each.

18. *Anhelitus*. "the breath of the mouth had been eagerly caught at in turn,"—*i.e.*, each tried eagerly to inhale the breath of the other.

23. *Sub noctem*, "at nightfall! they said, Farewell, and each gave to his own side of the wall (*suae parti*) kisses which did not reach to the other side." On *quisque dedere* see Syntax, sect. i., 8, p. 131.

25. *Nocturnos ignes*,—*i.e.*, "the stars."

31. *Neve sit errandum*, "and that they should not miss each other as they roam over the extensive country." *Neve* is equal to *et ut non*.

36. See Notes, Ovid, iv., 67, p. 247; and 143, p. 249. *Præcipitatur*: this is a very appropriate verb, since in places near the Equator the sun sets much more rapidly than he does in our northern regions, and the twilight is consequently much shorter. But even though this is the case, still the light seems, to the impatient lovers, to depart slowly.

38. *Adoperta vultum*: another accusative of reference or limitation. See Syntax, sect. v., 9, p. 137. § Observe in the next line that *pervenit*, the historical present, is joined to the perfect; as also, in line 45, *fugit* and *reliqui*. See note on Nep. Milt., iv., 16, at the end.

41. *Oblita* (from *oblino*), "smeared as to her frothing jaws,"—another accusative of reference, as in line 33.

42. *Depositura sitim*, "for the purpose of quenching her thirst." See Syntax, sect. ix., 3 (c), with note ‡ (d), p. 143.

47. *Sine ipsa*, "without (Thisbe) herself."

55. *Jussi (ut) venires*, "who requested you to come." See note, Nep. Milt., i., 16. The more usual phrase would be *jussi te venire*.

59. *Timidi est*, "it is the part of a coward." See Syntax, sect. vii., 4, p. 142.

62. *Accipe haustus*, "receive the draughts of my blood;" "and (so) he plunged into his bowels the sword with which he was begirt."

65. *Humo*: we should rather expect *humis*. See Syntax, sect. vii., 13 and 14, p. 144.

66. *Vitiato plumbo*, "in consequence of the lead having given way." Such leaden or clay pipes were used by the ancients for conducting water.

69. *Caedis* is equal to *sanguinis*, as often.

72. *Ne fallat* depends on *redit*,—"she returns, so that she may not disappoint her lover."

74. *Gestit narrare*, "delights in the prospect of telling him."

75. *Ut* (though) is responded to by *sic* (yet),—"and though she recognises the place, and the shape in the tree seen (*i.e.*, which she has seen before, or which she now examines), yet the colour of the fruit," &c. It was not the shape of the tree which made her doubtful, but the colour of the fruit.

80. *Summum*, "the surface of it is ruffled."

81. *Suos amores*, "her love,"—*i.e.*, her lover, her flame.

82. *Indignos*: this adjective is often equal to *immericitus*, as here,—

"undeserving." She had done nothing to "merit" such affliction. § *Plangore* means the "beating" or "striking" of one's body in grief. § *Claro*, "distinctly heard," "loud."

88. *Jacentes*, "sinking," "exhausted," "drooping."

92. *Ebur*, "the ivory (scabbard)."

93. *In unum hoc*, "for this one act I too have a hand bold (enough)."

94. *Hic* refers to *amor*.

96. *Quique*, &c., "and you, who could be torn from me, alas! by death only, shall not be able to be torn from me even by death." *Nec* is equal to *et* (even) and *non*.

99. Observe the peculiar phrase, *meus illiusque parentes*, in which *meus*, a possessive pronoun in the nominative or vocative singular, is coupled to the genitive of a demonstrative pronoun, and applied to a plural noun: "O much to be pitied parents, mine and his, do you nevertheless be entreated for this, in the words of both of us, that you do not grudge those to be laid to rest in the same tomb whom an abiding love united, whom their last hour has united."

103. *Duorum*: supply *corpora*,—"shall by-and-by cover the bodies of two."

104. *Signa*, &c., "retain the marks of death." § On *aptos luctibus* see Syntax, sect. vi., 8, a, with note †, p. 140. § The conjunctions, *que—et*, are not usually so joined.

106. *Muerone*, "the blade having been carefully placed to the lower part of her bosom, she fell on the sword, which was still warm from the (recent) wound."

110. *Quodque rogis superest*, "and what remains on the funeral pile,"—*i.e.*, the ashes. The ashes were collected and placed in urns, which were carefully preserved.

II.—THE FASTI.

I.—ROMULUS AND REMUS.

LINE 1. *Silvia*: one of the Silvian family. She was also called Rhea Silvia. She was one of the Vestal virgins, or priestesses of Vesta. § *Celestia semina*, "a heavenly offspring," referring to the legend that Romulus was the son of Mars.

2. *Patruo*, "her uncle,"—*i.e.*, Amulius, who had driven his brother Numitor, father of Rhea Silvia, from the throne.

3. *Alter ex istis*, "one of these two."

5. *Recusantes*, "reluctantly."

7. *Albula*: the old name of the Tiber, which was afterwards changed, as we are here told.

9. *Fora*: there were several forums in Rome; such as the *Forum Romanum*, *Forum Augusti*, *Forum Boarium*, *Forum Piscarium*, &c.

10. The Circus Maximus was the earliest and greatest of the arenas for

games, and it was in

13. *At*

16. *Nes*

as your fa

Some editi

18. *In t*

19. *Ope*

as a punis

20. "W

22. *Sin*

and the ar

23. Obs

often are in

they under

24. *Hi*

25. *Alv*

next line)

face of the

30. *Vie*

rescue of t

burned in t

33. *Non*

helps them

38. *Nec*

celebrating

39. *Lup*

Luperens,

Smith's or

LINE 1.

and Remus,

of preceding

2. *Gemin*

3. *Corve*

6. *Fides*

being an ob

7. *Saxa*

11. *Arat*

furrow, a w

The other p

digging of t

first-fruits,

the refilling

offering of s

12. *Sacra*

day on whic

games, races, boxing contests, shows of wild beasts, and other exhibitions. It was instituted by Tarquinius Priseus.

13. *At*: expressive of wonder and admiration, like our "Ah, but."

16. *Nescio quem*, "I should suspect that you have some deity or other as your father,"—the idea of *father* being suggested by *genus* of line 15. Some editions read *e vobis*.

18. *In tam*, &c., "at so dangerous a crisis."

19. *Ope egeret*. Rhea Silvia is said to have been thrown into the Tiber, as a punishment for her broken vow, but to have been saved by Mars.

20. "Who in one and the same day was made a mother and was bereaved."

22. *Sinu*, "the fold of his garment" on the bosom, between the breast and the arm.

23. Observe that the penult *e vagierunt* is short, as similar perfects often are in the poets. § *Sensisse putares*, "you would have supposed that they understood him."

24. *Ii*: the persons sent to throw the boys into the river.

25. *Alveus*: the boat-shaped board or trunk of a tree (called *tabella* in next line) on which the lads were placed. § *Summa unda*, "on the surface of the water."

30. *Ficus*: this famous *ficus Rv'ninalis*, planted to commemorate the rescue of the two boys, is said to have been destroyed when the city was burned in the reign of Nero, eight hundred years afterwards.

33. *Non nocuisse*, "not to have injured them is a small matter: she helps them even."

38. *Nec promissi*, equal to *et non promissi*.

39. *Lupereis*, "for the Luperci,"—*i.e.*, the priests who assisted in celebrating the *Lupercalia*, or festival of the Lycean Pan, otherwise called Lupercus, the "Wolf averter." For a full account of the Lupercalia, see Smith's or Ramsay's "Antiquities."

II.—THE BUILDING OF ROME.

LINE 1. *Frater Numitoris*,—*i.e.*, Amulius: he was slain by Romulus and Remus, by whom also Numitor was restored to his throne. See note 2 of preceding extract.

2. *Gemino duce*,—*i.e.*, Romulus and Remus.

3. *Convenit utrique*, "it is agreed upon between the two."

6. *Fides avium*, "great is the trust to be put in augury,"—*avium* being an objective genitive. See Syntax, sect. vii., 2, p. 141.

7. *Saxa Palati*, "the rocks of the thicket-elad Palatine."

11. *Aratro*: the custom was, to mark the line of the city wall by a furrow, a white cow and a white bull drawing the plough (see line 18). The other parts of the ceremony are described in the following lines,—the digging of the hole or *mundus*, into which were thrown offerings of the first-fruits, and some earth from the former abodes of the new settlers; the refilling of the hole, and the erection of an altar thereon, with the offering of sacrifice.

12. *Sacra Palis*,—*i.e.*, the festival of the Palilia on the 21st April, the day on which Rome is said to have been founded. Pales was a female

deity, guardian of flocks and of shepherds. § *Inde*, "from that point or day," "in connection with that day or event, the work is set a-going," "put in motion."

13. *Ad solidum*,—*i.e.*, till they find a hard foundation or bottom.

15. "The trench is filled up with mould, and an altar is placed on it when full" (*plena*).

16. *Fungitur*, "performs its duty." Thereafter the ploughing proceeds.

20. *Ades* is singular, applying to each deity separately. § *Vesta* is called "mother" merely as a term of respect. So "father" and "mother" are often applied to the gods.

21. *Pium*, "dutiful." § *Advertite*, scil., *enimum*,—"attend to my prayer."

22. *Vobis auspiciis*, "you being my patrons,"—*i.e.*, under your auspices or favour.

24. *Oriens occidentusque dies*,—*i.e.*, east and west.

31. *Neve* is equal to *et ne*.

35. *Rutro*: a kind of spade or hoe. § *Celer* is a proper name.

38. *Devorat*. So we use the verb "gulp."

44. *Invito*, "from me unwilling," "against my will."

45. *Unxit*. It was a very ancient custom to anoint the dead before burning. § *Fecere, quod ille*, "Faustulus, and Acca (see Vocabulary), whose hair was dishevelled, as indicative of her grief (*maestas*), did the same as he." § On *Soluta comas* see Syntax, sect. v., 9, p. 137.

47. *Nondum facti*, "not yet called Quirites,"—a name which was given after the union with the Sabines.

48. *Ultima*, "as the last part of the duty (*ultima*), the fire was applied to the funeral pile, at which the wailing had been performed (*plorato*)." §

49. The question *quis tunc*, &c., refers to what follows,—*impositura pedem*, &c.

53. *Steteris sublimis*, "stood erect." "raised yourself to your full height."

III.—UNION OF THE ROMANS AND SABINES.

LINE 1. *Referre*, with the subject *me* omitted,—“if you wish me to relate the first beginnings.”

2. *Hujus*,—*i.e.*, of the great city “of the present day,” “this city of our day.”

3. *Augusta*, “(too) confined for the well-ordered communities of after days.” Observe how *populis* is opposed to *turbae*,—"unorganised rabble."

5. *Nestri nati*, "my son" Romulus, Mars being the speaker.

12. *Male*, in the sense of *vix*, "scarcely," "hardly."

15. *Extremis gentibus*, "tribes at a distance," as opposed to the subjects of Romulus, who were close at hand.

20. *Sua sacra canes*. The part of the *Fasti* here referred to does not now exist. Instead of *sua*, we should expect *ejus*.

21. *Quos*, "those whom the same (cause of) grief affected,"—*i.e.*, the people of Crustumarium, Antemnae, and other neighbouring towns.

22. *Generis*, "our sons-in-law."

24. *Long*

25. *Dicta*

26. *Mca*

ulus.

27. *Comm*

28. *Non*

manifestatio

difference,"

33. *On re*

37. *Viros*

45. *Obser*

from the har

47. *Lauda*

clasp (embra

50. *Oebalia*

from the Spa

famed in th

kingdom and

LINE 2. *P*

siege,"—*i.e.*,

3. *Dum va*

5. *Accipit*,

king's son."

7. *Difficilis*,

"tedious."

8. *Referre*,

9. *Sociatis*

"wife."

13. *Cui nom*

town near Rom

15. *Nox sup*

16. *Impedi*

17. *Pertuler*

masters all the

19. *Nurum*.

keeper before t

before her, and

down in disorde

Roman men, bu

23. *Ad exigu*

25. *Mittenda*

28. *Esse super*

29. *Restas mel*

modo, "by-and-l

31. *Sint restuc*

135

24. *Longa mora*: some say the war lasted three years.
25. *Dictam aedem*, "the temple appointed" as the place of meeting.
26. *Mca nurus*, "my daughter-in-law,"—viz., Hersilia, wife of Romulus.
27. *Commune*, "in common."
28. *Non ultra*: the meaning is, "we cannot put off any longer the manifestation of our natural (and dutiful) affection." § *Lente*, "with indifference," or "tardily."
33. On *resolvrunt*, and *maesta*, see note on line 45 of preceding extract.
37. *Viros*, "husbands." So *femina* often means "wife."
45. Observe the *zeugma* in *cadunt*, as applied to "weapons" falling from the hands, and "passion" from the mind.
47. *Laudatas tenent*: these words are equal to two finite verbs,—“they clasp (embrace) and praise.”
50. *Oebaliae*,—i.e., Sabine. The Sabines were said to have been descended from the Spartans. Oebalus, king of Sparta, was grandfather to Helen, famed in the story of Troy; from him the name was applied to the kingdom and to the people.

IV.—LUCRETIA.

- LINE 2. *Patitur*, "is subjected to a tedious delay, by reason of the siege,"—i.e., suffers a long siege.
3. *Dum vacat*, "while there is leisure," "nothing to do."
5. *Accipit*, "receives in his tent," "entertains." § *Rege creatus*, "the king's son."
7. *Difficilis*, "difficult to capture," "stubborn." § *Pigro*, "inactive," "tedious."
8. *Referre*, &c., "to return to our homes" (*patrios deos*,—i.e., Penates).
9. *Socialis torus* is a poetic and round-about way of saying *conjug.*, "wife."
13. *Cui nomen*,—i.e., Tarquinius Collatinus, called from Collatia, a town near Rome.
15. *Nox superest*, "the night is still fresh," "is before us."
16. *Impediuntur frenis*,—i.e., are bridled.
17. *Pertulerant*: the subject is *equi*,—"the horses had carried their masters all the way to Rome."
19. *Nurum*. They find the king's daughter-in-law off her guard; no keeper before the gate, as was deemed proper; unmixed (strong) wine before her, and wreaths of flowers, which had been on her head, now fallen down in disorder on her neck. Such a scene was common enough among Roman men, but it was disgraceful for ladies to be so engaged.
23. *Ad exiguum lumen*, "by a meagre light."
25. *Mittenda est*, &c.—*lacerna*, "the military cloak must be sent."
28. *Esse super* is equal to *supersesse*.
29. *Restas melioribus*, "you are opposing those who are braver." § *Postmodo*, "by-and-by."
31. *Sint redices* (see *redux* in Vocabulary), "may they return."



Part Sixth.

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.

IN the Vocabulary the quantity of first and middle syllables is indicated in all cases in which a doubt might arise; and accordingly, as it has been deemed advisable to diminish the number of prosodial signs as much as possible, those syllables have rarely been marked which follow any one of the four great rules, viz. :—

1. When a vowel stands before two consonants (or a double consonant), it is counted *long by position*.
2. Diphthongs and contracted syllables are long.
3. One vowel before another is short.
4. Derivative and compound words follow the quantity of their primitives.

In final syllables the following brief rules will act as a guide to the student :—

1. *a* final is short in declinable words, but long in others.
2. *e* and *y* final are short.
3. *i* and *u* final are long.
4. *o* final is common,—*i. e.*, either short or long.
5. The terminations *as*, *es*, and *os* are usually long.
6. The terminations *is*, *us*, and *ys* are usually short; but *us* in the gen. sing. of the Fourth Declension is always long.
7. When a word ends in *b*, *d*, *l*, *r*, or *t*, the final syllable is generally short.
8. When a word ends in *c* or *n*, the last syllable is generally long; but words like *carmēn* have the *ēn* short.

To the foregoing rules the learner will find many exceptions, but it is hoped that few such have been left unmarked in the Vocabulary.

a.....for a
 abl..... ab
 acc..... ac
 adj..... ad
 adv..... ad
 cf..... co
 comp..... co
 conj..... co
 conjug..... co
 dat..... da
 def. et..... de
 dep..... de
 f..... fe
 freq..... fr

Ā, the first
 abbreviat
 name *Au*
ā, a preposi
 (See *ab*.)
āb, **ā**, or **ab**
on, in; (of
in or on t
to (i. e., at
 before *co*
h, and m
 rare, exce
 sionally *h*
as, aufero
abdīt-us, *a*
away, hid
abd-o, **idī**,
hide, conce
one's self b
do.)
abdūc-o, (
away, d
duco.)
ābēo, **abīvi**,
to go awa
(ab, eo.)

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a. for active.
 abl. ablativa.
 acc. accusativa.
 adj. adjectiva.
 adv. adverb.
 cf. confer (compare).
 comp. comparativa.
 conj. conjunctio.
 conjug. conjugation.
 dat. dativo.
 defect. defectiva.
 dep. deponent.
 f. feminine.
 freq. frequentative.

gen. for genitive.
 imperat. imperative.
 imperson. impersonal.
 indecl. indeclinable.
 interj. interjection.
 m. masculine.
 n. { neuter (with sub-
 stantives).
 n. { neuter (with verbs).
 part. participle.
 pass. passive.
 perf. perfect.
 pl. plural.
 prep. preposition.

pron. for pronoun.
 semi-dep. semi-deponent.
 sing. singular.
 subst. substantive.
 sup. supine.
 sup-pl. superlative.
 sync. syncope.
 v. verb.
 1 v. a. { verb active or trans-
 itive of 1st conj.
 2 v. a. { verb active or trans-
 itive of 2d conj.
 a. n. { verb neuter, or in-
 transitive.

A.

A, the first letter of the alphabet. As an abbreviation, it stands for the proper name *Aulus*.

ā, a preposition, governing the ablativa. (See ab.)

āb, **ā**, or **abs**, prep. with abl., *from, by, at, on, in*; (of time,) *after*. Phrases: *A tergo, in or on the rear*; *A dextra ripa, on or to* (i.e., *at*) *the right bank*. **A** is written before consonants; **ab**, before vowels, **i**, and many consonants; **abs** is very rare, except in compounds. **Ab** occasionally becomes **au** in composition:

as, *aufero, aufugio*; for *abfero*, &c.

abdīt-us, **a**, **um**, perf. part. of *abdo*, *put away, hidden, concealed, secret*.

abd-o, **idī**, **itum**, **ērē**, 3 v. a., *to put away, hide, conceal*: *Abdere se in silvas, to hide one's self by retiring into the woods*. (**ab**, **do**.)

abdūc-o, (**x**), **tum**, **ērē**, 3 v. a., *to lead away, draw away, remove*. (**ab**, **duco**.)

ābēo, **abivl**, or **abīl**, **abītum**, **abirē**, 4 v. n., *to go away, depart; to pass*, (of time.) (**ab**, **eo**.)

ābhorr-ēo, **ui**, —, **ērē**, 2 v. n. and **a**, *to shrink back from* (with a feeling of fear); *abhor; be averse to; to differ; be inconsistent with*. (**ab**, **horreo**.)

abī-ēs, **ētis**, **f**., *the white fir*; also, (poetic,) *anything made of the tree*,—e.g., *navis, hasta*.

abjīcīo, **abjēcī**, **abjectum**, **abjē-ēre**, 3 v. a., *to throw away, fling down; throw aside; degrade; give up*. (**ab**, **jaelo**.)

ablāt-us, **a**, **um**, perf. part. of *aufero*, *carried off, borne away*.

ablū-o, **i**, (**ā**)**tum**, **ēre**, 3 v. a., *to wash away or off, cleanse; to expiate*. (**ab**, **luo**.)

abrept-us, **a**, **um**, perf. part. of *abripio*, *carried off; torn away*, &c.

abrip-īo, **ūi**, (**rep**)**tum**, **ēre**, 3 v. a., *to carry off; drag away by force; squander*. (**ab**, **rapio**.)

abrōg-o, **āvī**, **ātum**, **ārē**, 1 v. a., *to repeal* (a law), *abrogate, annul; break off; deprive of*. (**ab**, **rogo**.)

abrump-o, **abrūpi**, **abruptum**, **abrump-ēre**, 3 v. a., *to break off; tear asunder; separate; burst*. (**ab**, **rumpo**.)

A

B

C

G

H

I

K-L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

- abrupt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *ab-rumpo*, broken off; burst; riven.
- abs**, prep. (See *ab*.)
- absens**, gen. *absentis*, part. of *absūm*, and *adj.*, absent; distant, away from.
- absisto**, *abstīti*, *abstist-ēre*, 3 v. n., to stand off; retire; abandon; leave off, desist from. (ab, *sisto*.)
- absolūt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *absolvo*, freed from, acquitted; unrestricted; finished, complete.
- absolv-o**, 1, *absolūt-um*, *absolv-ēre*, 3 v. a., to loosen, or free from; absolve, acquit; complete, finish off. (ab, *solvō*.)
- abstīn-ēo**, *īli*, (*abstentam*.) *ēre*, 2 v. n. and n., to hold off from, keep away, abstain, refrain. (*abs*, *teneo*.)
- absūm**, *abfīli*, (or *afīli*), *abesse*, v. n. Irreg., to be away from, be absent; be distant; to be wanting, as in the phrase, *Paulum abest quin, it wants little of*; *Neque abest suspicio quip, nor is there wanting a suspicion but that, &c.*—i.e., there is a (strong) suspicion that, &c. (ab, *sum*.)
- ac**, conj., and, and also; aye more; than; as. (See *atque*.)
- Acc-a**, ac, f., (*Laurentia*, or *Larentia*), *Acca*, wife of *Faustulus* and nurse of *Romulus* and *Remus*.
- accōd-o**, *accessi*, *accessum*, *accōd-ēre*, 3 v. n., to go or come near to, advance, approach; reach; attach; to be added to. (ad, *cedo*.)
- accend-o**, 1, *accensum*, *accend-ēre*, 3 v. a., to kindle, light up; inflame, incite. (Root *can-*, as in *canis*, *candeo*, *caudidus*, &c.)
- accens-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *accendo*, set on fire; inflamed, &c.
- accēpt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *accipio*, received; agreeable; beloved, favourite.
- accid-o**, 1, —, *ēre*, 3 v. n., to fall to; reach; happen, (used impersonally, it happens, &c.) (ad, *cādo*.)
- accid-o**, 1, *accisum*, *accid-ēre*, 3 v. a., to cut at, (i.e., cut almost through;) cut down; damage, weaken. (ad, *caedo*.)
- accinct-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *accingo*, begirt, equipped, prepared.
- accing-o**, *accinxī*, *accinctum*, *accing-ēre*, 3 v. a., (often intrans.) to gird on, gird one's self, begird; arm, prepare. (ad, *cingo*.)
- accipio**, *accēpi*, *acceptum*, *accip-ēre*, 3 v. a., to take to one's self; receive, accept; agree to; hear; undertake. (ad, *capio*.)
- accliv-is**, 1s, e, or us, a, um, *sloping, inclined; steep*. (ad, *clivus*, a slope.)
- accūrātē**, adv., from *accuratus*, carefully, accurately; strictly.
- accūrātīus**, adv., comp. of *accurate*, more carefully, in a more studied manner; more strictly, precisely, or decidedly.
- accūrāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *accūro*, carefully prepared, exact; elaborate.
- accurr-o**, 1, (seldom *accucurrī*), *accursum*, *accurr-ēre*, 3 v. n., to run to, hasten to, run up. (ad, *curro*.)
- accūs-o**, *āvī*, *ātum*, *āre*, 1 v. n., to lay blame on one, to blame; to accuse, indict. (ad, *causa*.)
- ācer**, (or *aeris*), *aeris*, *aere*, sharp, pointed, piercing; keen, active; passionate; bold, brave, zealous; acute, sagacious: adv. *aeriter*; comp. *aerius*; superl. *aerissime*. (Root *ac-*, as in *ācus*, *āeno*, *neies*, &c.; also in *ākī*, *ākis*, *ākros*, &c.)
- ācer**, *āceris*, n., (mostly in nom. and gen. sing.), the maple-tree.
- ācerbitas**, *acerbitāt-is*, f., *pungency, bitterness, sharpness; severity, harshness; pain; hardship*. (*acerbus*.)
- ācerb-us**, a, um, *unripe; bitter, pungent, sour; harsh, rough; oppressive; troublesome; sad*. (Root *ac-*, as in *acer*. But note the difference of quantity.)
- acerrime**, adv., most bitterly, keenly, &c. (See *aeriter* and *acer*.)
- ācī-ēs**, *ēi*, f., the point, or edge; keen-sightedness; the eye; keenness of eye; sharpness; brightness; acuteness (of intellect); the battle-*array*, an army (ready for battle). (Root *ac*. See *acer*.)
- ācōnīt-um**, 1, n., monk's-hood, wolf's-bane, *aconite*.
- acquiesco**, *acquīcvi*, *acquīctum*, *acquiescēre*, 3 v. n., to become quiet; lie down to rest; to die; to be pleased with; acquiesce in. (ad, *quiesco*.)
- ācriter**, adv., sharply, keenly; zealously; vehemently; fiercely, furiously: comp. *aerius*; superl. *aerissime*. (*ācer*.)
- ācrtūs**, adv., more keenly; more vigorously, &c. (See *acer*.)
- ācūmēn**, *acumin-1s*, n., a sharp point; a sting; sharpness (of taste); acuteness (of intellect); cunning, fraud. (*actō*.)

ācū-o, pointed
cise, 1
āc-ūs, hair-p
ācūt-us, acute,
uo.)
ād, prep, at, ne
nume
to: ac
orer.
malus
li, j, i
assinu
-as, i
i daequ
make
equal,
from a
ē de-. 1
ē ad-o, additio
more.
a ldū-o, to, or
induce
adempt
taken a
ād-ēo, r
to, app
tack;
ādēo, ac
long;
purpos
of is, c
old for
ādept-u
obtain
ādēquit
rūde for
near.
ādhaerē
ēre, 2
grow to
keep clo
ādhib-ec
or near
to; ada
to adm
adhūc, hitherto
and in
See ad
ādīgo, ad

- ācūt-o**, i, (n)tum, ēre, 3 v. n., to make pointed, to sharpen, whet; excite; exercise. (mens. Root ac-. See acies.)
- ācūs**, ūs, f., a sharp point; a needle; hair-pin, &c. (Root ac-. See acies.)
- ācūt-us**, a, um, pointed, sharp; severe; acute, sagacious. (Perf. part. of acuo.)
- ād**, prep. with acc., to, towards, against; at, near, by; about (i.e., up to, with numerals); in reference to, with regard to: ad hoc, or ad haec, besides, moreover. In compounds, the d of ad remains before vowels, and before b, d, h, j, m, v, —as, addico, &c.; but it is assimilated before c, f, g, l, n, p, r, s, t, —as, accipio, attero, &c.
- aequ-o**, ūvi, ūm, āre, 1 v. a., to make equal to, put on an equality; to equal, keep up with; level. (ad; aequo, from aequus.)
- ē **āc-**. For words beginning so, see acc.
- ād-o**, idl, itum, ēre, 3 v. a., to give in addition, put to, add; impart to; to say more. (ad, do.)
- adlūc-o**, (x)i, tum, ēre, 3 v. a., to lead to, or forward; bring forward; incite, induce, persuade. (ad, lūco.)
- adempt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of adimo, taken away, deprived.
- ād-ēo**, ivi, or ii, itum, īre, 4 v. n., to go to, approach; apply to; address; attack; undertake. (ad, eo.)
- ādēo**, adv., to that (point); so far; so long; to such a degree; to this end, or purpose; moreover; just. (ad, and part of is, ea, id, either eom, or eod = id, old form of accus.)
- ādēpt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of adipiscor, obtained, gained.
- ādēquūt-o**, ūvi, ūtum, āre, 1 v. n., to ride towards, ride up; gallop up; ride near. (ad, equito.)
- ādhaerēo**, adhaesi, adhaesum, adhaerēre, 2 v. n., to cling to, stick to, adhere; grow to or near; to be near; hang on, keep close to. (ad, haereo.)
- ādhib-eo**, ūi, itum, ēre, 2 v. a., to hold to or near; bring to, move towards; apply to; add to; to summon; to use, employ; to admit. (ad, habeo.)
- adhūc**, adv., to this (point); as yet, hitherto; in addition, moreover. (ad, and huc, said to be for hūc or hoc. See adeo.)
- ādīgo**, adēgi, adactum, ūlig-ēre, 3 v. a., to drive to, urge on, compel; bind down (to an oath). (ad, ago.)
- Adimant-us**, i, m., Adimantus, an Athenian, appointed colleague to Alcibiades. (Nep. Alc. vii.) He was taken prisoner at the battle of Aegospotami, B.C. 405.
- ādīmo**, adēmi, ademptum, (or ademtum,) adim-ēre, 3 v. a., to take away, free from, deprive of; carry off. (ad, imo.)
- ādīpiscor**, adeptus, adipisc-i, 3 v. dep., to come up to, reach; gain, get. (ad, apiscor, to gain.) The root is ap-, which means, to go to, — hence, to reach, get. (Cf. ap-tus, ap-to, &c.)
- ādīt-us**, ūs, m., a going to, approach; entrance, passage. (adco.)
- ādīcio**, adīcī, adiectum, adīc-ēre, 3 v. a., to throw to or near; to turn to, apply to; and to, join, increase. (ad, iacio.)
- adjungo**, adjunxi, adjunctum, adjung-ēre, 3 v. n., to join to, attach; apply to; yoke. (ad, jungo.)
- adjūv-o**, ūv-i, (or ūvi,) adjūtum, (or atum,) adjūv-āre, 1 v. a., to assist, help, be of service to; cherish. (ad, juvo.)
- Admēt-us**, i, m., Admetus, king of the Molossi.
- administer**, administ-r-i, m., an assistant, agent, servant. (ad, ministro.)
- administr-o**, ūvi, ūtum, āre, 1 v. a., to wait upon, assist; manage, govern; perform. (ad, ministro.)
- admirābil-is**, is, e, deserving of admiration; admirable; wonderful, strange. (admiror.)
- admir-or**, ātus, ūri, 1 v. dep., to wonder at; admire. (ad, miror.)
- admiss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of admitto, let go, free; (Equo admisso, at full gallop); committed, with facinus, seelus.
- admitto**, admī-si, admissum, admitt-ēre, 3 v. a., let in, give access to, admī; to give the reins to, — i.e., let go at will; to commit, perpetrate. (ad, mitto.)
- admōdum**, adv., (literally) up to the measure, — i.e., entirely; very; (of numbers,) at most, about, just. (ad, modus.)
- admōv-eo**, admōv-i, admōt-um, admōv-ēre, 2 v. a., to move towards; contact to; apply to. (ad, moveo.)
- ādōl-eo**, ūi, (rarely -evi,) adolūtum, ādōl-ēre, 2 v. n. and a., to smell; cause to smell; offer in sacrifice; burn; propitiate; honour; to make large, increase; magnify. (ad, oleo, to smell.)

B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y

- ādōlescens**, adōlescent-is, adj., *growing up, young*: as subst., a young man or woman. Gen. pl. oftener -ium than -um. (adolesco, to grow up.)
- ādōlescentī-a**, ae, f., *the season of youth*: Ineunte adōlescentia, in early manhood. (adolescens.)
- ādōlesco**, adōlēvi, (seidom adolui,) adlūtum, adolese-ēre, 3 v. n., *to be growing up (to maturity); to increase*. (ad, and oīeseo, to grow, from root oī-.)
- ādōpēr-io**, ui, tum, ĩre, 4 v. a., *to cover up, or over*. (ad, operio.)
- adōpērt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of adōpērtio, *covered up, enveloped*.
- ādōrīor**, adortus, ador-ĩri, 4 v. dep., *to rise up at, attempt; attack, invade; accost, address*. (ad, orior.)
- ādōr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to speak to, address; pray to, entreat; worship*. (ad, oro.)
- adort-us**, a, um, perf. part. of adorior, *having attempted, attacked, &c.*
- Adrūmēt-um**, i, n., (or Hadrumetum,) *Adrumetum*, a town in Africa, east of Carthage.
- adsc**. See asc.
- adscisco**. See ascisco.
- adsisco**. See assisco.
- adsto**. See asto.
- adstrictus**. See astrictus.
- adsum**, adfui, adesse, v. irreg., *to be present, or near; to assist, favour*. (ad, sum. See assum.)
- adunc-us**, a, um, *turned in, hooked, crooked*. (ad, uncus.)
- advēn-io**, advēn-i, adventum, advēn-ĩre, 4 v. n., *to come to; approach; arrive*. (ad, venio.)
- advent-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. freq., *to approach rapidly; arrive at*. (ad-venio.)
- advent-us**, us, m., *an approach; (hostile) advance; arrival*. (advenio.)
- adversāri-us**, a, um, *opposed to; as subst., an opponent, rival, adversary, enemy*. (adversus.)
- adversum**, adv., and prep. with acc., (same as adversus, prep.,) *towards; against*: Ventus tenet adversum, the wind blows right against.
- adversus**, adv., and prep. with acc., *against, opposite to; towards; to; at; in regard to*. (adverto.)
- advers-us**, a, um, perf. part. of adverto, *turned towards, in opposition to; hostile* to: Ex adverso, over against: Res adversae, adversity, distress.
- advert-o**, i, adversum, advert-ēre, 3 v. a., *to turn to, direct towards*. (ad, verto.)
- advōc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to call to, send for, summon*. (ad, voco.)
- advōl-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., *to fly towards, hasten to, rush forward*. (ad, voīo.)
- aed-ēs**, (or aed-is,) is, f., *a building; a temple; a house*, (usually in pl. in this sense.)
- aedifici-um**, i, n., *a building (of any kind)*. (aedifacio.)
- aedific-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to erect a building; to build, to frame*. (aedes, facio.)
- Aedū-i**, ōrum, (or Haedui,) m., *the Aedui*, —a people in Gallia Celtica, between the Loire and the Saone. Their capital was Bibracte, now Autun.
- Aegaeon**, Aegaeōn-is, m., *Aegaeon*, a sea god, son of Neptune. Also the name of the hundred-handed giant, called Briareus.
- aeger**, agr-a, agr-um, *sick, weak, diseased; sad, sorrowful*; (used figuratively of the mind,) *distempered*.
- aegerrimē**, adv., superl. of aeger, *very reluctantly; with very great difficulty*.
- Aegos Flūmen**, n., in Greek Aegospotami, (Αἰγὸς ποταμὸς), literally *Goat's River*, —a town and river in the Thracian Chersonese. The battle of Aegospotami, in which Lysander defeated the Athenians (B.C. 405), was the last of the Peloponnesian war.
- aegrē**, adv., *in a sickly way; uncomfortably; reluctantly; with difficulty, scarcely*: often used with ferre, *to take amiss, be displeased at*. (aeger.)
- Aemili-us**, i, m., *Aemilius*, a Roman family name. Lucius Paulus, a Roman consul, defeated at Cannae (B.C. 216), by Hannibal.
- āēnē-us**, (or aenēus,) a, um, (or āhēneus,) *made of bronze; of bronze colour; firm, strong, lasting*. (aes.)
- Aeōli-a**, ae, (or Aeol-is, Idis,) f., *Aeolia*, a province of Asia Minor, between the Caicus on the north, and the Hermus on the south. Also a group of islands north of Sicily, now the Lipari Islands.
- Aeōl-is**, Idis, f., see Aeolia. Also a female patronymic, *daughter (or descendant) of Aeolus*.

Aeōli-us, i, m., *Aeolus*;

aequal-i, i, m., *equable, same age*;

aequāt-t-, i, m., *made equal*;

aequē, u, m., *as*. (aequus.)

aequinoct-, i, m., *quins, n.*

aequipā-, i, m., *make equal, liken*.

acquitas, i, m., *equality*;

aequ-o, i, m., *make equal*;

—i.e., to quins.)

aequōr, i, m., *plain; to*;

aequ-um, i, n., *just; for*;

aequo, i, m., *aequo, of*;

aequ-ūs, i, m., *favour, advantage, a content*;

āer, āer-i, m., *atmosphere, aether*;

ae-ra, ae-r-i, m., *Greek for aera*. (aerari-um, to nurse; aera, rising in the Alps, the)

aes, aer-i, m., *anything, as, money*;

aestas, a-e-st-i, m., *year*. (aestus, from aestimāt, worth; aestim-o, estimate, aestū-o, i, m., *rage; be to rise in* (aestus).)

aest-ūs, i, m., *tion; the* (Sime st)

- Aeoli-us**, a, um, of or belonging to *Aeolus*; to *Aeolia*; to the *Aeolian Islands*.
- aequal-is**, is, e, equal, level, smooth, equable, uniform; on a par; of the same age, contemporary. (aequus.)
- aequāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *aequo*, made equal, level, &c.
- aequē**, adv., equally; (with *quam* or *ae*.) as. (aequus.)
- aequinocti-um**, i, n., the *equinox*. (aequus, nox.)
- aequipār-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make equal, put on a level; compare, liken. (aequus, pār-o.)
- aequitas**, aequitāt-is, f., evenness, equality; justice, equity. (aequus.)
- aequ-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., to make equal, to level; to equalize; to equal —i.e., to come up to; to compare. (aequus.)
- aequōr**, aequōr-is, n., an even surface, plain; the sea. (aequus.)
- aequ-um**, i, n., that which is equal, or just; fairness, equality; justice: Ex *aequo*, on an equality, equally.
- aequ-ūs**, a, um, level, flat; equal; favour-able, advantageous: *Aequus loeus*, advantageous position; *Aequus animus*, a contented, composed, or easy mind.
- āer**, āer-is, m., the air; (i.e., the lower atmosphere as opposed to the upper, or aether,) cloud; mist: *ae*, (aerem, and) Greek form, *aera*. Also a neuter plural, *aera*. (ἀήρ.)
- aerāri-um**, i, n., a treasury; the public purse; exchequer. (aer.)
- āerī-us**, a, um, belonging to the air; airy; rising high into the air, as *Aeriae Alpes*, the "soaring Alps." (aer.)
- aes**, aer-is, n., copper; bronze: hence anything made of copper or bronze; as, money, armour, statues, &c.
- aestas**, aestāt-is, f., summer; heat; a year. (Said to be of same stem as *ustus*, from *uro*.)
- aestimāti-o**, ōnis, f., valuation; value, worth; esteem. (aestimo.)
- aestim-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to value, estimate, reckon. (aes.)
- aestū-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., to boil; rage; be hot, inflamed; (of the sea,) to rise in billows, to "churn." (aestus.)
- aest-ūs**, ūs, m., heat; boiling; commotion; the tide, surge, or surf (of the sea.) (Same stem as *aestas*.)
- aetas**, aetāt-is, f., time of life, age; life (generally); an age, (or fixed period of time;) time. (Contracted for *aevitas*, from *aevum*.) Gen. pl. -lum, or -um.
- aetern-us**, a, um, lasting for an age; hence, everlasting, eternal. (Contracted for *aeternus*.)
- aether**, aethēr-is, m., the upper air, (see aer;) heaven; air. (αἰθήρ)
- Aethiops**, Aethiōp-is, m., an Ethiopian.
- Aethon**, Aethōn-is, m., *Aethon*, (the Glowing One,) the name of one of the horses of the Sun.
- Aetn-ē**, es, or *Aetn-a*, ac, f., Mount *Aetna*, in Sicily.
- aev-um**, i, n., a period of time; age, time of life; a generation; time (generally.)
- affabil-is**, is, e, that may be spoken to, affable; courteous. Comp. *affabilior*: superl. wanting, or at least very rare. (affari.)
- affect-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. freq., to strive after, aim at, aspire to; to try to win over, (as, e.g., states.) (afficio.)
- affect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *afficio*, affected, influenced (by external causes); furnished with, circumstanced; disposed, inclined; attacked; weakened.
- affēro**, attill, allatum, afferre, v. a. irreg., to bring or carry to; to cause, produce; report, tell. (ad, fero.)
- afficiō**, afficē, affectum, afficere, 3 v. a., to do (something) to; to affect, influence. It very often occurs with ablatives: as, *Afflicere poena*, to punish; *Afflicere malo*, to visit with misfortune. (ad, facio.)
- affinitas**, affinitāt-is, f., nearness (of residence); relationship, kindred. (affinis, from *ad, finis*.)
- affirm-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make firm or steady; to assert, allege. (ad, firmo.)
- afflict-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. freq., to dash against; toss about; harass. (affligo.)
- affligo**, afflxi, afflictum, affligere, to dash against; strike down; weaken; vex, afflict. (ad, fligo.)
- (affor.)** affātus, affāri, 1 v. dep., to speak to, address; pray to. The first singular present is not used. (ad, for.)
- affōre** and **affōrem**, the pres. inf. and imperf. subj. of an old verb, which occurs only in these two parts. Fore

is equal to futurum esse, and forem to essem; *to be present, to be at hand.* (See adstun.)

Afrīc-ā, ae, f. *Africa.*

Afrīc-ūs, n, um, *African.* Also, used as a subst., *the south west wind.*

āgēr, agr-l. m., *a field; country; the country, (as opposed to the town.)* Of the same stem is English *acre.*

agger, aggr-ēs, m., *a mound (of earth, &c.); a rampart; a dike; a pile, a heap.* (ad, gero.)

aggredīor, aggressus, aggrēd-l. 3 v. dep., *to walk towards, approach; to address; to attack; to make advances to; to attempt, or begin.* (ad, grāllor.)

aggrēg-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to add to the flock; join to, au'; collect together, assemble; attach to.* (ad, grēgo, from grex.)

aggress-us, a, um, perf. part. of aggrēdior, *having attempted, &c.*

agītāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of agito, *driven, disturbed, &c.*

āgīt-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. freq., *to move frequently or vigorously; to agitate, rouse, disturb; drive; devise; discuss; to do anything regularly; hence, Agitare vitam, to spend one's life.* (ago.)

agmen, agmēt-us, n., *anything driven; a band; a herd; an army (in line of march); an army, or company.* (quasi agimen, from ago.)

āgō, ēgl actum, āg-ere, 3 v. a., *to do, act; to drive, lead; to treat with; Agere pacem, to enjoy peace; Agere otium, to have leisure; Agere gratias, to give thanks; Agere actatem, to spend one's life; Id agitur, this is intended, or discussed; Tua res agitur, your interest is at stake.*

agrest-is, is, e, *belonging to the country, rural, rustic; boorish, rude; wild, savage; as subst., a man from the country, a rustic.* (ager.)

agricōl-a, ae, m., *a husbandman, farmer, agriculturist.* (ager, colo.)

agricultūr-a, ae, f., *agriculture, husbandry, farming.* (ager, colo.)

āio, or aio, v. defect., (for forms used see the Grammar.) *to say yes, assent to; to say; Ainut, or ut ainut, as thou say, as the saying is; Ain', or aisue, do you say so? is it possible?*

āl-ā, ae, f., *a wing, (in its literal and figurative senses;) the wing of an army;*

the auxiliaries, (as opposed to the Romans proper.)

ālācer, (or alacer,) alaceris, alacere, keen, brisk, cheerful, active, bustling. (acer. Ital. allegro.)

ālācritis, alacritāt-is, f., *keenness, liveliness, activity, briskness, dacrity, &c.* (See alacer, whence it comes.)

ālārī-ūs, a, um, *belonging to the wing (of troop); posted on the wing; auxiliaries.* (ala.)

Alb-a, ae, f., the name of several towns; especially *Alba L.*, the mother-city of Rome.

Albūl-a, ae, f., *Albula*, the ancient name of the Tiber.

alb-us, a, um, *white, pale; (of the weather,) bright, clear, dry; favourable, fortunate.*

alc-ēs, is, f., *an elk.*

Alcibiād-ēs, is, m., *Alcibiades*, a celebrated Athenian.

ālīās, adv., *elsewhere; at another time; otherwise.* (Root ali-; which occurs in a large class of words, and means (a) other, (b) some, any.)

ālīen-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to transfer to another; hence, to alienate, estrange; turn away (from allegiance, affection, &c.)* (allenus.)

ālīen-us, a, um, *belonging to another; strange, foreign; unfavourable, disadvantageous, (e.g., locus.)* Alienum aes, *debt.* (allus.)

āliment-um, i, n., *nourishment, food, support, alimēt.* (alo.)

ālīō, adv., *to another place, thing, purpose, &c.; elsewhere.* (alius.)

ālīpēs, āllpēd-is, poet. adj., *wingfooted, swift.* (ala, pes.)

ālīquam, adv., used with *dim*, phrases, and multis, *in some measure; considerably.*

ālīquamdiū, adv., *for some time; for a considerable time, or distance.* (aliquam, *dim*.)

ālīquando, adv., *at some time; sometimes; & length.* (aliquis.)

ālīquantō, and aliquantum, adv., *somewhat; to a considerable degree.*

ālīquant-us, a, um, *somewhat (great or small); a considerable quantity.* (ali-, some; and quantus.)

ālīqui, āllquā, āllquod, *some, any; in pl., several; pl. aliqui, aliquae, aliqua.* (ali-, qui.)

ālīquīs, (neut.) aliquid, (aliqua is f. of

preceding quib.)

ālīquōt, *for*

(all-, quō)

ālītēr, adv.

(allus.)

ālī-ūs, ā, i, another;

others: another te

Allōbrōg-

tribe of

Allobrox-

gian; pl.

alm-us, a,

genial; pro

āl-o, ūl, it

to nourish

Alp-es, im

slug, Alp

stem as

capped w

Alphē-os,

of Elis (I

pass unde

Sicily, Jo

Alpīc-us,

as a subst

Alpīn-us,

Alps, Alp

altē, adv.,

highly;

(altus.)

alter, altēr

but some

sometime

the other;

as in alit

terminati

referring

in English

and manu

tepos, dev

altitudo, u

(altus.)

alt-us, a,

loud; deep

alumn-us,

usually a

foster-child

alvē-us, l,

loved out,

a ship, &c

(alvus.)

alv-us, i, f.

- preceding,) *some one, any one.* (all, quis.)
- āliquōt**, indecl., *some, several, a few.* (all, quot.)
- ālitēr**, adv., *in another way, otherwise.* (allus.)
- āli-ūs, ā, ūd**, (gen. allus, dat. allī) *other, another; different: allī—allī, some—others: ullus—allo, one to one place, another to another.*
- Allōbrōg-es**, um, m., *the Allobroges, a tribe of Gallia Narbonensis.*
- Allobrox**, Allōbrōg-is, m., *an Allobrogian: pl. Allōbrōges.*
- alm-us**, u, m., *nourishing; bountiful; genial; propitious.* (For alimus, from alo.)
- āl-o**, ūl, Itum (and altum), ēre, 3 v. a., *to nourish, feed, support; cherish; promote.*
- Alp-es**, lum, f., *the Alps.* Sometimes in sing., Alp-is, is, f. Said to be of same stem as alb-us, *white*, from being capped with snow.
- Alphē-os**, (or us), i, m., *Alpheus, a river of Ellis (in Greece), which was said to pass under the sea and rise again in Sicily, joining the fountain Arctiusa.*
- Alpic-us**, u, um, *belonging to the Alps: as a subst. m., an inhabitant of the Alps.*
- Alpin-us**, a, um, *of or belonging to the Alps, Alpine.*
- altē**, adv., *on a height, on high, aloft; highly; in the depth; empty, deep.* (altus.)
- alter**, altēr-a, um, (gen. alterius usually, but sometimes alterius; dat. alteri, or sometimes altēr-o, ae, o,) *one of two; the other; a second.* The stem is al-, as in alius; and ter is a comparative termination. So likewise other words referring to pairs,—as, n-ter, nen-ter; in English, el-ther, nel-ther, whe-ther, and many others; and in Greek, πό-τερος, δει-τερ.
- altitūdo**, altitādīn-is, f., *height; depth.* (altus.)
- alt-us**, a, um, *high, tall, lofty; shrill, loud; deep, profound.* (alo.)
- alumn-us**, a, um, *nourished, reared: usually a subst., a person nursed, a foster-child.* (alo.)
- alvē-us**, i, m., *any cavity; anything hollowed out, such as a boat, tub, hold of a ship, &c.; the channel or bed of a river.* (alvus.)
- alv-us**, i, f., *the belly, paunch.*
- am-**, an inseparable particle, meaning *on both sides, about.*
- ambac-tus**, i, m., *a vassal, retainer.* Said to be a Gothic word.
- Ambarr-i**, orum, m., *the Ambarri, a Galle tribe, bordering on, and kindred to, the Aedn.*
- ambig-o**, Inf. ambig-ere, (perf. and sup. wanting,) 3 v. n., *to be in doubt, to hesitate, waver; to dispute, argue.* (ambi, ago.)
- ambigū-us**, u, um, *doubtful, unsteady, changeable, wavering; obscure.* (ambi-gō.)
- amb-ō**, ae, o, (dat. -ōbus, -ōbus,) *both* (at once.) (ἀμφω.)
- ambrosi-a**, ae, f., *ambrosia, the food of the gods.* (ἀμβροσία.)
- ambūro**, ambustus, ambustum, ambūr-ere, 3 v. u., *to burn round; scorch, singe; to consume.* (am, buro, as in comburo.)
- ambust-us**, a, um, perf. part. of amburo, *burned; scorched, singed.*
- amicē**, adv., *in a friendly manner, kindly.* (amicus.)
- āmic-ī-ri** (or ixi), tum, Ire, 4 v. a., *to wrap, sand; envelop* (with a cloak or outer covering); *veil; cover, clothe.* (am, facio.)
- āmic-i-or**, lor, ius, gen. amicōr-is, comp. of amicus, *more friendly.*
- āmiciti-a**, ae, f., *friendship.* (amicus.)
- āmic-t-ūs**, ūs, m., *an outer garment, a cloak; any garment; dress.* (amicus.)
- āmic-us**, u, um, *friendly; reliable; kind, loving.* (amo.)
- āmic-us**, i, m., *a friend, companion.* (amo.)
- āmiss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of amitto, *lost; let go.*
- āmiss-us**, us, m., *a loss.* (amitto.)
- āmitt-o**, amī-i, amiss-um, amitt-ere, 3 v. a., *to let go; lose; dismiss.* (a, mitto.)
- amn-is**, is, m., (abl. e or i,) *a stream, river.*
- ām-o**, ūvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. u., *to love, like, delight in.*
- āmor**, āmor-is, m., *love: as proper name, Cupid.* (amo.)
- amphō-r-a**, ae, f., *a vessel* (with two handles or ears); *a pitcher, jar, flagon.*
- amplect-or**, amplex-us, amplect-i, 3 v. dep., *to twine round, encircle; grasp; embrace; understand.* (am, plecto.)
- amplex-us**, a, um, perf. part. of amplector, *having embraced, &c.*

- amplex-us**, ūs, m., *an encircling, embrace.* (amplector.)
- amplitūdo**, amplitudin-is, f., *breadth; size, extent, greatness.* (amplus.)
- amplius**, adv., (comp. of amplus) *more largely, more; farther; beside, moreover; (of time,) longer.*
- ampl-us**, a, um, *spacious, wide, large, ample; abundant; distinguished; renowned.*
- Amymōn-ē**, ēs, f., *Amygone, daughter of Danaus, king of the Argives. She was changed into a fountain.*
- an**, conj., *or; or whether.* It is generally used in the second part of an interrogation, preceded by utrum or -ne. Sometimes the utrum or -ne which ought to precede is not expressed, but only implied; as, An est ullum majus malum turpitudine?
- Anart-es**, ium, m., *the Anartes, a people of Dacia.*
- Ancalit-es**, um, m. pl., *the Ancalites, a British tribe, inhabiting, most probably, parts of Berkshire and Wilts.*
- anceps**, gen. ancipit-is, adj., *having two heads; with two sides, or natures; double, on both sides; two-edged; doubtful; dangerous: abl. in -i.* (am-, caput.)
- ancōr-a**, ae, f., *an anchor: suppo.;* *refuge; hope.* (The stem is anc- or ang-, which is found in Greek, and means bent or crooked.)
- Andocid-es**, is, (or -i) m., *Andocides* of the ten Attic orators. He flourished in the later years of the Peloponnesian war—i.e., about B.C. 420, downwards.
- angu-is**, is, m. or f., *a snake, serpent; the constellation Draco; also, The Serpent.* Abl. angue, or angui. (For stem, see aneora.)
- angul-us**, i, m., *an angle, corner; nook; bay.* (See ancora for stem.)
- angust-ē**, adv., *narrowly; sparingly.* (angustus.)
- angustī-ae**, ārum, f. pl., (sing. rare,) *a narrow place, a strait, defile; difficulties.* (angustus.)
- angustius**, adv. *more narrowly; more sparingly, &c.* (ar. gustū, of which it is the compar.)
- angust-us**, a, um, *narrow, confined, strait; difficult; critical; dangerous.* (ango, to press tightly.)
- anhēlīt-us**, ūs, m., *panting, difficulty of breathing.* (anhelo, to pant.)
- ānim-a**, ae, f., *a breeze, breath; wind, the air; life, spirit, soul.* (Stem an-, as in ān-εμς.)
- ānimadvert-o**, i, (s)um, ēre, 3 v. a., *to turn one's mind to: perceive; consider; attend to; punish.* (animus, adverto.)
- ānīm-al**, animal-is, n., *a living creature, an animal.* (anima.) Abl. animalī; nom. pl. in -ia; and gen. -ium.
- ānīmōs-us**, a, um, *full of breath or wind; blowing violently, stormy; full of life, mettlesome.* (anima.)
- ānīmōs-us**, a, um, *full of courage, bold, spirited; proud; eager; passionate.* (animus.)
- ānīm-us**, i, m., *the soul, spirit, mind; passion; courage.* (See anima for stem.)
- annāl-is**, is, c, of or belonging to a year, annual. as subst., (in pl. usually,) *annals or chronicles; a journal.* (annus.)
- annōn-a**, ae, f., *a year's produce; food; grain; the price of grain: provisions.* (annus.)
- annōtīn-us**, a, um, *belonging to last year, last year's.* In "Caesar" it occurs with navibus, (E. G., v., 8,) where some interpret, "the ships used the year previous;" and others, "the provision ships." See annona. (Borned from annus, like diutinus, from diu.)
- ann-us**, i, m., *a year, season.* (Stem an-, a circle, as in annulus, a ring.)
- annu-us**, a, um, *lasting for a year; annual.* (annus.)
- anser**, ansēr-is, m. or f., *a goose.* (Gk. χίψ; Engl. gan-der.)
- antē**, prep. with acc., and adv., *in front of, before: as adv., before, previous to: Ante—quam, sooner than; before that.* (Gk. ἀντί.)
- antēā**, adv., *before (this), formerly.* (Antēā is for ante eam (rem), as in the phrase, Non mea interest, for meam rem.)
- antēcēd-o**, antecess-i, antecess-um, antecēd-ēre, 3 v. n. and a., *to go before, precede; excel, surpass.* (ante, cedo.)
- antēfēr-o**, antefēl-i, antelāt-um, anteferre, 3 v. a., *to carry before; put before, prefer, anticipate.* (ante, fero.)
- antēpōn-o**, antepōsū-i, antepōst-um, antepōn-ēre, 3 v. a., *to set before, prefer.* (ante, pono.)
- Antioch-us**, i, m., *Antiochus* (III), a king of Syria (from u.c. 223 to 187) with whom Hannibal took refuge. (See Nep. Han., claps. ii., vii., ix.)

antiqui
old sta
antiqui
(antiqui
antiqui
hence,
antr-um
cavern
Aōnī-us
belong
Apennī
mount
āpēr, āp
āpēr-lo
open, r
needed
to ligh
āpērtē,
āpērt-um
and ad
clear.
āpiscor
at, rec
compo
more
Apollo,
Jupite
proph
appār-e
into vi
pareo.
appār-o
pare, n
appell-
upon,
appell-
ēre, 3
cause t
bring t
appēt-o
for, go
attack
applic-
āre, 1
devote
apport-
locari
appropi
draw n
appuls-
rafted,
Apūli-a
southe
April-is
mensis
to be

antiquitas, antiquitāt-is, f., *antiquity, old standing, ancientness.* (antiquus.)
antiquitūs, adv., *anciently, of old.* (antiquus.)
antiqu-us, a, um, *former; old, ancient; hence, simple, honest, innocent.* (ante.)
antr-um, i, n., (a poetic word,) *a cave, cavern; hollow.* (ἀντρον.)
Āonī-us, a, um, *Aonian, (i.e., Bœotian);* belonging to the Muses.
Āpennin-us, i, m., *the Apennine range of mountains.* (From Celtic pen-, a hill.)
āpr-i, m., *a wild boar.*
āpēr-io, ul, tum, ĩre, 4 v. a., *to uncover, open, reveal, disclose.* (Said to be connected with pario, to produce, bring to light.)
āpertē, adv., *openly, plainly.* (apertus.)
āpert-us, a, um, perf. part. of aperio, and adj., *uncovered, open; unobstructed; clear. evident.*
āpiscor, aptus, apisei, 3 v. dep., *to aim at, reach after; gain, procure.* The compound, adipiscor, (which see,) is more usual.
Āpollo, Apollin-is, m., *Apollo, son of Jupiter and Latona, god of the sun, of prophecy, poetry, music, medicine, &c.*
appār-eo, ul, tum, ĩre, 2 v. n., *to come into view, appear; to be evident.* (ad, pareo.)
appār-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to prepare, make ready; provide.* (ad, paro.)
appell-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to call upon, address, speak to.* (ad, pello.)
appell-o, appul-i, appuls-um, appell-ĕre, 3 v. a., *to drive or move towards, cause to approach; (of ships,) to veer, bring to land, "make" a port.* (ad, pello.)
appēt-o, ĩvi, ĩtum, ĩre, 3 v. a., *to make for, go to, approach; aim at; grasp at; attack; long for.* (ad, peto.)
applic-o, āv- and ul, ātum and ĩtum, āre, 1 v. a., *to join, or attach to; apply; devote to.* (ad, plico.)
apport-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to carry towards, bring to.* (ad, porto.)
appropinq-u-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., *to draw near, approach.* (ad, propinquo.)
appuls-us, a, um, perf. part. of appello, *wafted, brought near to, &c.*
Āpūli-a, a, f., *Apulia, a district in southern Italy; now Puglia.*
April-is, is, m., (properly an adj., mensis being understood.) *April.* (Said to be for Aperilis, from: aperio, the

month when the earth opens up for vegetation.)

aptāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of apto, *fitted, adjusted; yoked.*

apt-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to fit, put on, adjust, prepare; equip, furnish with.* (Root ap, as in aptus.)

apt-us, a, um, *fitted, made ready; suitable for; proper.* (Root is ap-, to go to, or get, as in ap-iseor.)

āpūd, prep. with acc., *near, at, with, (of persons, place, and time;) as, Apud me, with me, at my house; Apud Ravennam, near Ravenna; Apud majores, in the time of our ancestors.*

Āqu-a, ae, f., *water; a piece of water—as, the sea, a lake, river, &c.* In the pl., *medicinal springs;* hence applied as proper name to several places,—e.g., Aquae Sextiae, Aix.

Āquil-a, ae, f., *an eagle; the standard of the Roman legion, (from the eagle which surmounted it.)* (Root ae-, sharp, swift. See aeer.)

Āquilei-a, ae, f., *Aquileia, once the capital of Venetia, at the head of the Gulf of Venetia.*

Āquil-o, ōnis, m., *the north wind; the north.* (Root ae-. See aquila.)

Āquitān-i, ōrum, m. pl., *the Aquitani, or people of Aquitania.*

Āquitān-i-a, ae, f., *Aquitania, a district of Gaul, extending from the Pyrenees northward to the Garonne, and, at a later period, even to the Loire.*

ār-a, ae, f., *a raised object, (as a heap of earth, stones, &c.;) an altar; (as proper name,) a constellation—the Altar, in the southern hemisphere.*

Ārār, Arār-is, m., *the Arar, or Saone, in France.*

ārātr-um, i, n., *a plough.* (aro.)

arbīter, arbit-r-i, m., (properly) *one who comes to a place: hence, an intruder; a spectator, witness; a hearer; an umpire, judge; manager; lord, master.* (The root is bit-, to come, or see; and ar is for ad d and r being frequently interchanged. Cf. ar is with aud-ĭe, and mer-ĭdies for med-ĭdies.)

arbitrī-um, i, n., (literally) *a being present; the decision of an umpire, judgment; will, pleasure.* I or ĩ. (arbitr.)

arbitr-or, atus, āri, 1 v. dep., *to witness, hear, to give sentence; to judge; be of opinion, think, suppose.* I or ĩ. (arbitr.)

- arbor**, arbōr-is, f., a tree: older form, arbos.
- arborē-us**, a, um, belonging to a tree. (arbor.)
- arbus-tum**, i, n., a grove of trees; a plantation; a thicket. (Contracted for arbosetum, from arbos; like salictum, for salicetum.)
- arbutē-us**, a, um, belonging to the wild strawberry, or arbutus. (arbutus.)
- Arcādī-a**, ac, f., Arcadia, the central district of the Peloponnese. The people of Arcadia were shepherds, and led a life of simplicity and innocence.
- arcess-o**, ūvi, itum, ēre, (arcesso, an inferior form used often by Sallust.) 3 v. a., to send for, call summon: accuse. (ar for ad, and cess-o, a frequentative form from clo, or cico.)
- Arct-os**, (seldom arct-us,) l, f., the Bear, i. e., the constellation of the GREAT and LITTLE BEAR; the north pole; the north.
- arctus**, a, um. See artus, a, um.
- arc-us**, us, m., a bow; the rainbow; (anything) arched or curved: hence, a zone. (Ovid.)
- Arde-a**, ac, f., Ardea, a town of the Rutuli, in Latium.
- ardē-o**, arsi, arsum, ard-ēre, 2 v. n., to burn, blaze; to be hot; to glow, sparkle, shine; to burn (with a passion or feeling, as love, anger, anxiety, &c.) (Cf. arceo.)
- ardesc-o**, arsi, ardesc-ēre, 3 v. incept., to begin to burn; to be warm, inflamed; glow, &c. (ardeo.)
- ardu-us**, a, um, steep; high; difficult, hard.
- ārēn-a**, ac, f., dry earth, mould, sand; a sandy place; a desert; the sea-shore. (arceo.)
- ār-ēo**, ūi, ēre, 2 v. n., to be dry, parched, thirsty.
- āresc-o**, ēre, 3 v. incept., to become dry, parched, &c. (arceo.)
- argente-us**, a, um, of silver, silvery: of a white or silvery colour; made of, or adorned with silver: Argente actas, the silver age. (argentum.)
- argent-um**, i, n., silver: hence of articles made of silver, as, money, plate, vessels, &c. Argentum vivum, quick-silver. (Root arg-, or in Greek, ἀργός, white.)
- Arg-i**, ōrum, m. pl., (or Arg-es, eos, n.) Argos, chief city of Argolis, in Greece.
- Argos**. See Argi.
- argū-o**, i, (ū)tum, ēre, 3 v. a., to prove, show; assert; accuse; convict; censure. (Root arg-, white, clear; so that arguo means to make clear.)
- ārid-us**, a, um, dry, withered, parched, shrivelled. (arceo.)
- Ariovist-us**, i, m., Ariovistus, king of a Germanic tribe.
- arist-a**, uc, f., the beard or ear of a head of grain; an ear of grain; hence (poetic), summer.
- arm-a**, ōrum, n. pl., tools, or implements of any kind (as for agriculture, and other occupations); the tackling of a ship; (but most commonly of) armour, arms, weapons. (Said to be connected in stem with ar-, to fit, and ars.)
- armāment-a**, ōrum, n. pl., fittings, the tackling (of a ship). (armo.)
- armāt-us**, a, um, equipped, armed, prepared: as subst., an armed man. (armo.)
- arm-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to equip with implements; arm. (arma.)
- ār-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to plough, till, cultivate.
- arrip-īo**, ūi, arrept-um, arrip-ēre, 3 v. a., to seize, snatch, grasp; to understand quickly; accuse. (ad, rapio.)
- arroganter**, adv., in a presumptuous way, proudly, arrogantly. (arrogans.)
- arroganti-a**, f., claiming to one's self; assumption (of superiority); pride, arrogance. (arrogans, from ad, rogo.)
- ars**, art-is, f., skill, art, faculty, knowledge; workmanship; means, method, way; ability; invention: hence, deceit, fraud, trick; manner of life, conduct. (Root ar-, to fit, adapt, as in Greek, ἀρ-ω) ἀρ-ατάκω, to fit, join.)
- arsūr-us**, a, um, fut. part. act. of ardeo, about to burn.
- Artaphern-es**, is, m., Artaphernes, a Persian general, defeated at Marathou by Miltiades, B.C. 490.
- Artaxerx-es**, is, m., Artaxerxes, king of Persia.
- Artemīsi-um**, i, n., Artemisium, the north coast of the island of Euboea; also a promontory there. The Grecian fleet defeated the Persians at it in B.C. 480.
- articul-us**, i, m., (diminutive of artus) a little joint; a joint; knot; knuckle; (of time,) a point, moment; a crisis, nick of time. (artus.)

artifex, an an author opposed engaged (facio.)

artifici-um, art, skill,

art-us, a, pressed to confined.

art-us, ūm, members; tubus, raris, arma

arv-um, i, land. (ar)

arx, arc-is, citadel; b

ascend-o, 3 v. n., to scendo.)

ascens-us, a place for (scendo.)

ascisc-o, 3 v. a., to associate;

Asi-a, uc, ue,

aspect-us, aspect, ap

asper, aspi

asperg-o, ēre, 3 v. bestro.

aspic-īo, a 3 v. a., to sider. (a only in e

assens-us, acclaim.

assidū-us, ance; con

(assideo,

assist-o, stand by

hence, de

assuetū-fac-i assuetū-fac-i

assuesc-o, ēre, 3 v. wont: (as habitate.

assuet-us, accustomed

artifex, artific-is, m., *an artist, artificer; an author, inventor, contriver.* It is opposed to opifex, which means *one engaged in a baser occupation.* (ars, facio.)

artifici-um, i, n., *a profession, trade; art, skill, workmanship.* (artifex.)

art-us, a, um, (or aret-us, a, um.) *pressed together; tight; narrow, close, confined.* (Perf. part. of arceo.)

art-us, um, m. pl., *a joint; the limbs, members; the body:* dat. and abl. artubus, rarely artibus. (Root ar-, as in ars, arma, &c.)

arv-um, i, n., *a field (arable); tilled land.* (arvo.)

arx, arc-is, f., *a stronghold, castle, tower, citadel; bulwark, defence.*

ascend-o, i, ascens-um, ascend-ere, 3 v. n., *to climb up, mount, ascend.* (ad, scando.)

ascens-us, ūs, m., *a climbing up, ascent; a place for ascending; an ascent, slope.* (ascendo.)

ascisc-o, ascivī, ascitum, ascise-ere, 3 v. a., *to vote for, approve; to adopt; associate; assume.* (ad, scisco.)

Āsī-a, ūe, f., *Asia.*

aspect-us, ūs, m., *a looking at; view, aspect, appearance.* (aspicio)

asper, asper-a, um, *rough; uneven; harsh, stern.*

asperg-o, aspers-i, aspers-um, asperg-ere, 3 v. a., *to scatter upon, besprinkle, besprew.* (ad, spargo.)

aspic-ĭo, aspex-i, aspect-um, aspice-ere, 3 v. a., *to look at, behold, perceive; consider.* (ad, and old form specio, used only in compounds.)

assens-us, ūs, m., *assent, approval; acclaim.* (assentior.)

assidū-us, a, um, *in constant attendance; continual, unremitting, diligent.* (assideo, to sit beside.)

assist-o, astiti, assist-ere, 3 v. u., *to stand by or near; attend, be present:* hence, *defend, assist.* (ad, sisto.)

assuēfac-ĭo, assuēfēc-i, assuēfact-um, assuēfēc-ere, 3 v. a., *to accustom, make familiar.* (assuesco, facio.)

assuesc-o, assuēv-i, assuēt-um, assuesc-ere, 3 v. u., *to be accustomed to, to be wont:* (as a transitive verb,) *to accustom, habituate.* (ad, escisco.)

assuēt-us, a, um, perf. part. of assuesco, *accustomed to, wont, usual.*

assum, afful, adesse, v. n. irreg., *to be near, present; to stand by (for licet), assist; to appear.* (ad, sum.)

asto, astiti, ast-āre, 1 v. n., *to stand near, be at hand; assist; defend.* (ad, sto.)

Astræ-a, ac, f., *Astræa, goddess of justice.*

astri-ct-us, a, um, perf. part. of astringo, *drawn tight; bound up, fastened together; hence, narrow, close.*

astri-ngo, ustrinx-i, ustrict-um, astring-ere, 3 v. a., *to draw together, tighten; bind together.* (ad, stringo.)

astr-um, i, n., *a constellation, a star; heaven* (especially in pl.) (ἀστρον.)

astu, or asty, indecl. n., (ἀστυ,) *a city, especially, the city,—viz., Athens.*

asty. See astu.

at, conj., *but; but yet; but, on the contrary; at least.*

ātēr, atr-ā, atr-um, *black, dark; gloomy, sad; unfortunate.* (Niger also means black, but not so intense—rather, dusky.)

Athēn-ae, ārum, f. pl., *Athens.*

Athēniens-is, is, ir, *Athenian.* (Athēnae.)

Āth-os, or Atho, m., gen., dat., and abl. Atho, acc. Atho, or Athon, *Mount Athos, in Macedonia, now called Monte Santo, or Hagior Oros. Athonem, Athone, &c., also used.*

Ātlās, Athant-is, m., (1) *a mountain range in the north of Africa;* (2) *a king of Mauretania;* (3) *a giant.*

atque, or ac, conj., *and; and farther; and besides; ay, more:* in comparisons, as; with contra, alius, et such words, *than.* (ad, que.)

Ātrēbas, Atrebāt-is, m., *an Atrebatian, one of the tribe Atrebates.*

Ātrēbāt-es, (or Atrebatī) um, m., *the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe between the Somme and the Scheldt. Their capital was Neuetocæ, now Arras.*

ātri-um, i, n., *a hall, court; the principal saloon in a Roman house.*

Ātri-us, i, m., *Atrius (Quintus), one of Caesar's officers.*

atrox, atroc-is, adj., *savage, heartless, cruel; fierce, bloody.* ā or ā.

attend-o, i, attent-um, attend-ere, 3 v. a., *to stretch towards; direct the mind to; give heed to, attend, consider.* (ad, te, &c.)

B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V

Attic-a, ae, f., *Attica*, one of the divisions of Greece.

Attic-us, i, m., *Atticus*, a surname given to Titus Pomponius, from his long residence in Athens, and his Attic culture. He was born in B.C. 109. He was the intimate friend of Cicero, Caesar, Pompey, Augustus, and Antony, and almost every famous man of these days.

Attic-us, a, um, *Attic*, Athenian.

attingo, atting-i, atting-um, atting-ere, 3 v. a., to touch upon; touch, handle; reach to, border on; arrive at. (ad, tango.)

attoll-o, ere, (attūli, 3 v. a. irreg., to lift up, raise, elevate. (ad, tollō.)

attribu-o, i, (d)itum, ere, 3 v. a., to assign to, apportion; join to, add; bestow; attribute, impute to. (ad, tribus.)

auctōr, auctōr-is, m. or f., properly, one who increases: hence, one who forms into shape, a creator, maker; founder; father; author, originator; authority (for information), informant. (augeo.)

auctōritas, auctōritāt-is, f.; opinion, judgment; decision; command; power, influence, authority. (auctor.)

auctumn-us, i, m., (or autumnus,) the time of increase,—i.e., the harvest time, autumn. (auctus, from augeo.)

audāci-a, ae, f., boldness, daring, courage, valour; foolhardy. (audax.)

audācissimē, adv., very, daringly, &c.: superl. adv.

audācius, adv., more, very, daringly, &c.: comp. adv. (audax.)

audacter, adv., boldly, &c. (audax.)

audax, gen. audāc-is, adj., bold, daring, courageous; spirited; presumptuous, foolhardy. (audeo.)

audēo, ausus, aud-ere, 2 v. n., to dare, venture.

aud-io, ivi, itum, ire, 4 v. a., to hear; understand; listen to; obey; grant (a prayer).

aufēro, abstūli, ablātum, auferre, 3 v. a. irreg., to carry off, take away. (ab, fero.)

aug-ēo, aux-i, auct-um, aug-ere, 2 v. a., to increase, augment; enrich; honour. Intrans., to grow, become large.

augūrī-um, i, n., augury, divination; a sign, omen. (augur.) In pl. there is a heteroclitite form, angura.

aur-a, ae, f., a breath of air, breeze, wind; the region of air; the breath of life.

Aurēli-us, i, m., *Aurelius*, a Roman name. L. Aurelius Cotta was consul in the time of Hannibal.

aurē-us, a, um, made of gold; glittering; splendid. (aurum.)

aurig-a, ae, m. or f., a driver, charioteer. (aurea, a bridle; and ago, to manage.)

aur-is, is, f., an ear; (more frequently in pl.) a pair of ears.

Aurōr-a, ae, f., *Aurora*, wife of Tithonus; the morning, the dawn; the east.

aur-um, i, n., gold.

Aurunculei-us, i, m., a Roman name. L. Aurunculeius Cotta was one of Caesar's lieutenant-generals.

auspex, auspici-is, m. or f., literally, a bird-seer; an augur, soothsayer; also, the bird seen; a leader, patron, founder. (avis and specio. See aspicio.)

austrāl-is, is, e, southern. (auster.)

aus-um, i, n., a daring deed; an attempt, undertaking. (audeo.)

aus-us, a, um, perf. part. of audeo, having, undertaking. &c.

aut, conj., or: aut—aut, either—or.

autem, conj., again; on the other hand; but; however. Autem never stands as the first word of a clause.

auxiliār-is, is, e, helping, auxiliary.

auxili-or, ātus, āri, 1 v. dep. (with dat.), to assist, help, aid. (auxilium.)

auxili-um, i, n., literally, increase (to one's means); help, assistance. (augeo.)

āvāritī-a, ae, f., greediness, avarice, covetousness. (avarus.)

āvār-us, a, um, greedy, desirous, eager, covetous. (aveo.)

Āventīn-us, i, m., Mount Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

Āventīn-us, a, um, belonging to Mount Aventine.

āvers-us, a, um, turned away; with the back toward (one); perf. part. of averto.

āvert-o, i, avers-um, avert-ere, 3 v. a., to turn away, or aside; to turn back foremost.

āvīd-us, a, um, desirous, greedy, eager. (aveo, to desire.)

āv-is, is, f., a bird, abl., ave, or avi.

āvī-us, a, um, out of the way, trackless; lonely. (a, via.)

āvuncūl-us, i, m., an uncle (by the mother's side). (avus.)

āv-us, i, m., a grandfather.

ax-is, is, m., an axle; a chariot; the axis of the earth, the world, heaven.

Bābyl-

the

Baebī-

(See

Bagae-

naba

bālaer-

cibia

barb-a-

the l

barbā-

forei

beat-um

and

Belg-a-

pl. B

Belgi-

on e

belli-cō-

war,'

(belli

belli-c-

tary,

bell-o-

war, c

bell-un-

duell

bēnē, a

&c.

melin

bēnēfi-

servic

bēnēvō-

toward

favou

bī-, (fo

two.

bīb-o,

quaff,

Bibraet-

August

tal of

Bibrōc-

people

the m

biceps,

peaks,

bīdu-un-

march

from t

(13)

B.

- Bāb̄yōnī-us**, a, um, *Babylonian*,—e.g., the Euphrates.
- Baebi-us**, i, m., *Baebius*, a Roman name. (See Nep. Hann., ch. xiii.)
- Bagae-us**, i, m., *Bagaeus*, sent by Pharnabazus (his half-brother) to kill Alcibiades. (Nep. Alc., x.)
- bālaen-a**, e, f., a *whale*.
- barb-a**, ae, f., a *beard*, (of man, or of the lower animals.)
- barbār-us**, a, um, of *strange speech*; *foreign, outlandish, strange; rude, uncivilized; savage*: es subst., c. *foreigner*.
- beat-us**, a, um, (part. of beo, to *bless*, and adj.) *blessed; happy, fortunate; wealthy*.
- Belg-a**, ae, m., a *Belgian*. Usually in pl., Belg-ae, ārum, m., *the Belgians*.
- Belgi-um**, i, n., a *part of Gallia Belgica*, on either side of the Somme. Also *Belgium*.
- bellicōs-us**, a, um, literally, "*full of war*,"—i.e., *fond of war, warlike, brave*. (bellius.)
- bellic-us**, a, um, *belonging to war, military, warlike*. (bellum.)
- bell-o**, āvi, ārum, āre, 1 v. a., to *make war, carry-on-war, to fight*. (bellum.)
- bell-um**, i, n., *war*. (The old form is duellum, from duo.)
- bēnē**, adv., *well, rightly, nobly; pleasantly, &c.* (bonus,—i.e., bonus.) Comp. melius, superl. optime.
- bēnēfici-um**, i, n., a *good deed, a kind service; benefit, kindness*. (beneficus)
- bēnēvolenti-a**, ae, f., *good disposition towards (one); kindness, friendship, favour*. (bene, volens.)
- bī-**, (found only in compound words,) *two*. The old form was dui-
- bīb-o**, i, (itum,) ēre 3 v. a., to *drink, quaff; absorb, suck up*.
- Bibract-e**, is, n., *Bibracte* (afterwards Augustodunum, now Autun), the capital of the Aedui.
- Bibrōc-i**, ōrum, m. pl., *the Bibrōci*, a people of Britain, inhabiting part of the modern Berkshire.
- biceps**, bicipit-is, adj., *having two heads, peaks, or summits*. (bi, caput.)
- bidu-um**, i, n., a *space of two days; a march of two days*. (bidu-us, a, um, from bi, dies.)
- bīenni-um**, i, n., a *period of two years* (bi, annus.)
- bifōr-is**, is, e, (also us, a, um,) *with folding doors; double-valved*. (bi, foris, a door.)
- bīn-i**, ae, a, distrib. numeral, *two each* (time, individual, &c.); *two a-piece, two by two; a pair*. Sometimes used as a cardinal number, *two*. (bi-.)
- bipartitō**, adv., *in two divisions; in two ways; in two directions*. (bipartitus, part. of bipartio, to *divide into two*; from bi, pars.)
- bīs**, num. adv., *twice; in two ways*. (Cid form, duis, or divis. Engl., *twice*.)
- Bisanth-e**, es, f., *Bisanthē*, a town of Thraee, on the Propontis, (Sea of Marmora.)
- Bithyni-a**, ae, f., *Bithynia*, a district of Asia Minor, now called Anadoli.
- Bithyn-ii** (or i), ōrum, m., *the Bithynians, or inhabitants of Bithynia*.
- Bithyn-ius** (or us), a, um, *Bithynian*.
- Bitūrig-es**, um, m., *the Bituriges*, a Celtic tribe, near the Loire. Their capital was Avaricum, now Bourges.
- blandi-or**, itus, iri, 4 v. dep., to *make one's self agreeable; to flatter, coax, cajole*. (blandus.)
- blanditi-a**, ae, f., a *caressing, fondling; flattery*. More commonly found in the pl., blanditiæ. (blandus.)
- bland-us**, a, um, of *smooth address; agreeable; flattering; caressing*.
- Blitho** (Sulpicius), *Blitho*, who wrote an account of Hannibal's exploits. Nothing farther is known of him.
- Boeōti-a**, ae, f., *Boeotia*, a district of Greece.
- Boeōti-us**, a, um, *Boeotian*. In pl. m., *the Boeotians*.
- Boi-i**, ōrum, m., *the Boii*, a Gallic tribe. (See Caes. B. G., i., 5.)
- bōnitās**, bōnitāt-is, f., *goodness* (generally); *goodness of heart, uprightness; benevolence*. (bonus.)
- bōn-um**, i, n., a *good (thing), a blessing; goods, property, wealth*,—in this sense usually pl. (bonus.)
- bōn-us**, a, um, *good* (in its most general sense); *virtuous; noble; upright; beautiful; skilled; brave; generous; honourable; large*. (bona pars, a largi

part, as we say, "A good part." Comp. *inellor, superl. optimus.*
Bōt-es, ae, m., the constellation *Boötes, or the Ox-driver.*
Bōrē-as, ae, m., *Boreas, the north wind; the north.*
Born-i, ōrum, m., *Borni, a fortress in the Chersonese.*
bōs, bōv-is, m. or f., a *bull, ox, or cow.* Gen. pl. is boum (contracted for bōv-ŕum); dat. and abl., bōbus or būbus, (for bōvibus.) (*Boüs.*)
brāchī-um, i, n., *the arm, (properly, the arm from the elbow to the hand—lacertus denoting the arm from the elbow to the shoulder; also, (generally,) the whole arm, (from the fingers to the shoulder.)* (*βραχίον*)
brēv-is, is, e, *short; small; narrow;*

brief: abl. brevi, in a short time, tempore being supplied.
Britann-i, ōrum, m. pl., *the Britons.*
Britanni-a, ae, f., *Britain.*
Britann-us, a, um, *British.* Also, an adj., *Britannic-us, a, um.*
brūm-a, ae, f., *the shortest day; the winter solstice: hence, winter.* (Contracted for brevima, —i.e., brevissima.)
buccīn-a, ae, f., a *crooked horn, or trumpet; a trumpet.* (*bucca, the cheek.*)
bust-um, i, n., *a place for burning (the dead); a funeral pyre; a tomb; monument.* (*uro, —i.e., uro. See comburo.*)
bux-us, i, f., *the box-tree; box-wood.* (*πύξος.*) Virgil uses buxum, n.
Byzanti-um, i, n., *Byzantium, afterwards Constantinople, now Stamboul.*

C.

C. This letter, as part of a proper name, stands for *Caius, (Gaius.)*
Cabūr-us, i, m., *Caburus, one of the chief men of the Allobroges.*
cācūmēn, cacumīn-is, n., *a top, peak, summit.* (Etymology doubtful.)
cādāvēr, cādāvēr-is, n., *a dead body, a corpse; carcass.*
cād-o, cēcīd-i, cās-um, cād-ĕre, 3 v. n., *to fall, fall down, or away from; to set, (as the sun, moon, &c.); to die; be killed.*
cādūc-um, i, n., or *caduce-us, i, m., a herald's wand, or staff, (it was carried by heralds suing for peace, like our "flag of truce;") the wand of Mercury.* It is properly an adj., *sceptrum, or scipio, (staff,) being understood.* (Said to be same as κηρύκειον, the Greek ρ being changed into d, as auris, audio,—which see.)
caec-us, a, um, *blind, (whether said of the eyes, of the mind, or of the moral sense.)* Sometimes it is used in a passive sense, *that cannot be seen: hence, invisible, dark, hidden; doubtful; dangerous.*
caed-es, is, f., *a cutting; killing, slaughter; murder.* The gen. pl. in -ium, but sometimes in -um. (*caedo.*)
caed-o, cēcīd-i, caesum, caed-ĕre, 3 v. a., *to cause to fall; to cut down; kill, slay; murder; beat, cudgel.* (Connected with caedo, as, in English, "fall" with "fell.")

caelāt-us, a, um, *engraven, &c.* Perf. part. of caelo.
caeles, caelit-is, or *coeles, heavenly.*
caelest-is, is, e. See *coelestis.*
cael-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to engrave (in relief); to carve, sculpture; chase, emboss; embroider; carve.* (*Caelum, a graver's chisel; which is connected with caedo, to cut, as sella is with sedco.*)
cael-um, i, n., *heaven.* See *coelum.*
caerīmōnī-a, ae, f., (spelled also *cerimonia*.) *a religious ceremony; worship; awe; veneration.* (Said to be connected with cura; but the etymology is doubtful.)
caerūle-us, a, um, *sky-coloured; dark blue; azure; dark; gloomy.* (From caelum, *the sky, the r and l being interchanged; as, Parilia for Palilia, &c.*)
caerūl-us, a, um, *poetic form of foregoing.*
Caesar, Cacsūr-is, m., *Caesar, a Roman family name of the Julian gens. The most famous of the Caesars were Julius and Augustus.*
caes-us, a, um, *perf. part. of caedo, cut, wounded, &c.*
caeterum, adv. See *cēterum.*
caeter-us, a, um. See *cēterus.*
Cāic-us, i, m., *Cāicus, a river of Mysia, in Asia Minor.*
Cei-us, i, m., *Cains, or Caius, a Roman praenomen.*

cālā
 for
 (St
 d a
 fro
 cālā
 wo
 a n
 calc
 tro
 calc
 unc
 tog
 Cālē
 the
 a n
 pro
 pri
 wo
 ing
 cāl-e
 to b
 cāles
 vea
 (cal
 cālīd
 fieri
 cālīg
 affi
 cālīd
 mos
 shre
 cālīd
 of t
 call
 and
 har
 that
 by n
 cālōr
 sion
 camp
 field
 (&c.)
 cance
 nam
 Zodi
 cand-
 white
 sion,
 Some
 tas w
 candē
 be re
 candī
 pare,

- cālāmitas**, cālāmitāt-is, f., *injury; misfortune, calamity; defeat, overthrow.* (Said to be derived from *cado*, to fall, d and l being interchanged; as, *scala* from *scando*, and *scella* from *scdeo*.)
- cālāth-us**, i, m., *a basket of wicker-work; anything of the same shape, as, a milk-pail, a wine-cup, &c.* (κάλαθος.)
- calcāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *calco*, trodden.
- calc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to tread under foot, trample on; oppress; press together.* (calx, the heel.)
- Calend-ae**, arum, f. pl., (also *Kalendae*), *the first day of a month; the Calends; a month.* (From an old verb, *calo*, to proclaim; because on that day the high priests proclaimed when the Nones would occur, and other matters relating to the affairs of the month.)
- cāl-eo**, ūi, ēre, 2 v. n., *to be hot; to glow; to be roused, inflamed (in mind).*
- cālesc-o**, ēre, 3 v. incept., *to become warm, begin to be warm, inflamed, &c.* (calco.)
- cālīd-us**, a, um, *warm, hot, glowing; fiery, rash.* (calco.)
- cālig-o**, inis, f., *a mist; darkness; gloom; affliction.*
- callīdissimē**, adv. superl., (see *callidus*), *most cunningly, skilfully, knowingly, shrewdly.*
- callīd-us**, a, um, *knowing (in the ways of the world), shrewd, skilful.* (From *calleo*, to be knowing from experience; and that from *callum*, or *callus*, *hardened skin.* The idea suggested is that of the knowledge which one gets by rubbing with the world.)
- cālor**, calōr-is, m., *heat warmth; passion, ardour.* (calco.)
- camp-us**, i, m., *a flat place, plain, level field; any level surface, (as the sea, &c.)* (French, *champ*.)
- cancer**, caner-i, m., *a crab; as proper name, the Crab, one of the signs of the Zodiac.*
- cand-ēo**, ūl, ēre, 2 v. n., *to be (snowy) white; to glitter; to glow (with heat, passion, &c.)* (The etymology is doubtful. Some connect it with *calco*, as *calamitas* with *cado*, *scala* with *scando*, &c.)
- candesc-o**, ēre, 3 v. incept., *to begin to be white; to glow, &c.*
- candid-us**, a, um, *white; clear, bright, pure, &c.* (candeo.)
- cān-eo**, ūl, ēre, 2 v. n., *to be white; hoary, gray.* (canus.)
- cānesc-o**, ēre, 3 v. incept., *to begin to be hoary, white, &c.* (caneo.)
- cān-is**, is, m. or f., *a dog, hound; as proper name, the constellation Canis, the Dog-star, or Sirius. The gen. pl. has -um, not -ium.*
- cann-a**, ac, f., *a reed, cane; a pipe made of reed: also, a small vessel.*
- Cann-ae**, ārum, f. pl., *Cannae, a city of Apulia, near which the Romans were entirely defeated by Hannibal, in B.C. 216.*
- Cannens-is**, is, e, *belonging to Cannae, of Cannae.*
- cāno**, cēcīni, cant-um, cān-ēre, 3 v. u. and a., *to sing; sound; resound; to prophesy, foretell.*
- cānōr-us**, a, um, *given to singing; melodious; sounding loud, sonorous.* (canto.)
- Canti-um**, i, n., *Cantium, —I.C., Kent, in England.*
- cant-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to sing.*
- cān-us**, a, um, *hoary; white; gray: cani, gray hairs.*
- cāpell-a**, ae, f., *a she-goat; a young goat; the name of a star.* (Fem. dimin. of *caper*, as *puella* from *puer*.)
- cāper**, capr-i, m., *a he-goat; a goat.*
- cāpess-o**, ūvi, itum, ēre, 3 v. a., *to try to catch; to catch at; try to get; attempt, aim at; pursue; undertake; manage.* (capio.)
- cāpill-us**, i, m., *a hair; a thread or fibre, (as of plants, &c.)* (caput.)
- cāpio**, cēpi, capt-um, cāp-ēre, 3 v. a., *to take; receive; gain; reach: Capre insulam, to "make" (i.e., arrive at) the island.*
- captāt-us**, a, um, *caught, seized, &c.* Perf. part. of *capto*.
- captīv-us**, a, um, *one taken: as subst., a prisoner, captive.* (capio.)
- capt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freq., *to catch at, snatch, seize.* (capio.)
- capt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *capio*, caught, seized.
- Capu-a**, ae, f., *Capua, the chief city of Campania, in Italy.*
- cāpūt**, cāpūt-is, n., *the head; top, summit; the source (of a river, &c.); the extremity, (either beginning or end); the life; capital charge, sentence, or punishment, —as, Absolvero capitis, to acquit of a capital charge.*

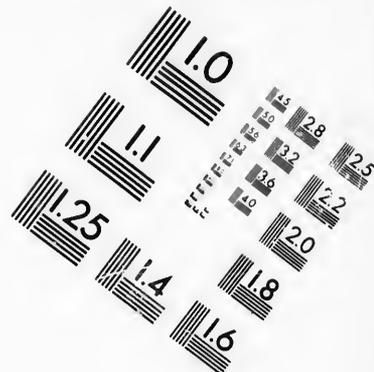
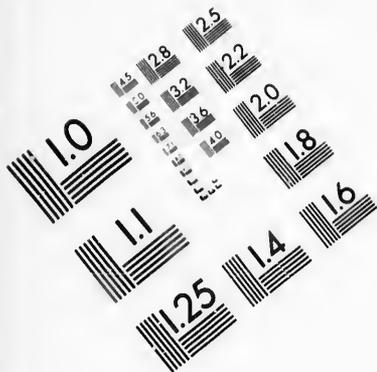
- Car**, Câr-is, m., a *Carian*: pl. Car-es, ium, the *Carians*.
- cardo**, eardîn-is, m., a *hinge*; *chief point*, or *turning-point*; one of the *poles of the earth*; one of the *cardinal points*.
- câr-eo**, ul, itum, ěre, 2 v. n., to be *without*, to *want*, (i.e., not to have;) to be *free from*; to *miss*.
- Câres**, ium, m. See Car.
- cârin-a**, ae, f., the *keel* (of a ship): hence sometimes, a *ship*. (From this we have our verb, to *careen*.)
- cârîtas**, cârîtât-is, f., *dearness*, *high price*: hence, *esteem*; *affection*, *love*. (carus.)
- carmen**, carmîn-is, n., a *song*, *poem*; *verse*.
- Carnût-es**, um, (also, i, orum,) m., the *Carnutes*, a Gallic tribe on the banks of the Loire. Among them the courts of the Druids met annually. Cenâbum, now Orleans, was their chief town.
- cârô**, eam-is, f., *flesh*.
- carp-o**, si, tum, ěrc, 3 v. a., literally, to *catch* (as between the finger and thumb:) hence, to *pluck*, *pull*; *pick*; *gather*; *cull*; *browse*, *graze upon*; to *enjoy*; *usc*. In a bad sense, to *pick at*, *carp at*; *stander*; to *wear away*; *weaken*.
- carr-us**, i, m., (also, um, i, n.,) a *wagon* or *car* (with four wheels.)
- Carthâginiens-is**, is, a, belonging to *Carthage*: as subst., a *Carthaginian*.
- Carthâgo**, Carthâgîn-is, f., *Carthage*, a famous city of Africa, long the rival of Rome. It is said to have been founded by a Phœnician colony, about B.C. 814. It was destroyed by the Romans in B.C. 146, the year in which Corinth fell, and in which Greece was subdued.
- câr-us**, a, um, *dear*, of *high price*: hence, *much loved*; *esteemed*.
- Carvîlî-us**, i, m., *Carvilius*, one of the princes of Cantium, or Kent.
- câs-a**, ae, f., a *hut*; *cottage*; *vent*.
- câsê-us**, i, m., *cheese*.
- Cass-i**, ōrum, m. pl., the *Cassi*, a British tribe, occupying part of the modern Hertfordshire.
- Cassiân-us**, a, um, *Cassian*,—i.e., of or belonging to Cassius.
- Cassi-us**, i, m., *Cassius*, (L.) a Roman consul, defeated by the Helvetii.
- Cassivellaun-us**, i, m., *Cassivellaunus*, a British chief, whose territory bordered on the Thames. He was defeated by Caesar in the second invasion of Britain.
- castell-um**, i, n., a *fort*, *stronghold*, *castle*; *defence*. (Dimin. from castrum.)
- Castic-us**, i, m., *Casticus*, one of the nobles of the Sequani.
- castr-a**, orum, n. pl., a *camp*, *encampment*: Movĕre castra, to *shift a camp*: Ponere castra, to *pitch a camp*. The pl. is more common than the sing., which follows.
- castr-um**, i, n., a *fort*, *fortress*, *castle*. (The etymology is doubtful. Some derive it from easa, a *tent*: others from eado, to *fall*; lie down to *rest*: others from eado, to *cut*,—from the cutting of the stakes with which the paling of the camp was formed. Compare rastrum, from rado.)
- câs-us**, us, m., a *falling*; *accident*, *chance*; *overthrow*, *defeat*; *disaster*. (eado.)
- Catamantaloed-es**, is, m., *Catamantaloedes*, a prince of the Sequani.
- câtĕn-a**, ae, f., a *chain*, *fetter*; *prison*; *confinement*.
- Câtîrig-es**, um, m., *Caturiges*, a tribe of Gauls, inhabiting part of the modern Dauphiné.
- Caucâs-us**, i, m., *Caucasus*, a high chain of mountains, extending from the Euxine to the Caspian.
- caud-a**, ae, f., a *tail* (of an animal.)
- caus-a**, ae, f., a *cause*, *reason*; *consideration*; *concern*, *matter*; a *pretext*, *excuse*: Mea causa, *for my sake*: a *lawsuit*, *cause*; as in the phrase, Dicere causam, to *plead one's cause*.
- caut-us**, a, um, perf. part. of caveo, and adj., *secured by law*, *safe*; *wary*, *cautious*: in a bad sense, *sly*, *cunning*.
- câv-eo**, câv-i, eaut-um, eâv-ěre, 2 v. n., to *take care*, *beware*, *guard against*.
- câv-us**, a, um, *hollow*, *hollowed*; *arched*, *vaulted*.
- Câyster**, or Câystr-us, i, m., *Cayster*, a river of Lydia, in Asia Minor, famed for its swans.
- ce**, a particle which is appended to certain pronouns and adverbs with a strongly demonstrative power: as, hi-c, or, with double form, hic-ce, *this here*. It is similar to ei in French: as, echniet.
- cĕcĭdi**, perf. part. of eado.
- cĕd-ō**, eess-i, eess-um, cĕd-ěre, 3 v. n.

- and a, to go, move, advance; turn out, come to,—(as, Prospero cedere, to turn out well, succeed;) to go away, retire; yield, give place to; give up, grant.
- cēlēber**, or celebr-is, is, c, crowded, much visited: hence, renowned, famous, celebrated.
- cēlēbr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to crowd, fill with great numbers; to frequent; to perform a solemnity, celebrate; to praise, extol, honour. (celeber.)
- cēler**, (or celer-is,) is, c, swift, quick, fleet; hasty, rash.
- Cēler**, Celer-is, m., Celer, one of the companions of Romulus.
- Cēler-es**, um, m., the Celeres, or life-guard of the Roman kings.
- cēlērītas**, celeritāt-is, f., quickness, swiftness, speed, activity. (celer.)
- cēlērīter**, adv., quickly, swiftly, speedily. (celer.)
- cēlērīus**, adv., more quickly, swiftly, &c. (celer.)
- cēlerrīmē**, adv., with the greatest speed, quickness, &c. (celer.)
- cēl-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to conceal, hide. It governs two accusatives: as, Hoc me celavit, he kept me in ignorance of this.
- cels-us**, a, um, high, lofty, exalted. (The root is cell, as found in ex-cel-o, ante-cel-o, &c.)
- Celt-ae**, ārum, m. pl., the Celts, a people which at one period extended over a great part of northern Europe. The Romans applied the name to the Gauls of central and southern France.
- Cēnimagn-i**, ōrum, m., the Cenimagni, a British tribe, occupying, most probably, parts of Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridge shires.
- cens-eo**, ui, um, (censitum, very rare,) ēre, 2 v. a., to count, calculate; register: hence, to tax; to estimate, value: hence, to think, be of opinion; to express an opinion; vote.
- cens-us**, ūs, m., a counting, reckoning; registration; an estimate; numbering of the people; property, wealth. (censeo.)
- Centēni-us**, i, m., Centenius, a Roman praetor. (See Nep. Hann., chap. iv.)
- centies**, adv., a hundred times. (centum.)
- Centrōn-es**, um, m., the Centrones, a Gallic tribe of the Alps, some distance south of the Lake of Geneva.
- centum**, indecl. num., a hundred.
- centūrio**, centūrion-is, m., a centurion, —i.e., the commander of a century, or company (centuria) of 100 men; a captain. (From centuria, and that from centum.)
- Cēphīsis**, Cēphīsid-is, adj., of or belonging to the Cephissus.
- Cēphīs-us**, i, m., Cephissus, or Cephissus, a river of Boeotia and Phocis; also, a small stream near Athens.
- Cērēāl-is**, is, c, of or belonging to Ceres; relating to corn, or bread. (Ceres.)
- cērīmōni-a**, ae, f. See caerimonia.
- cern-o**, crēvi, crētum, cern-ēre, 3 v. a., to discriminate, judge, decide; perceive, see; understand. (κρίνω.)
- certāmen**, certāmin-is, n., a contest, struggle; a fight, battle. (certo.)
- certē**, adv., certainly, surely, really, doubtless. (certus.)
- certō**, adv., surely, of a truth, certainly. (certus.)
- cert-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to contend, fight; struggle, strive. (Root cer-, to decide; as in cerno.)
- cert-us**, a, um, decided, determined; sure; settled, fixed, standard; to be relied on, trustworthy, trusty, faithful; true. (It is the old form of the perf. part. of cerno, for cretus.)
- cervix**, cervīc-is, f., the neck; back part, or nape of the neck.
- cerv-us**, i, m., a stag, deer.
- cess-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., to give over; retire from; cease, leave off; delay, loiter. (Freq. from cedo.)
- cēterum**, adv., literally, as to the rest; otherwise; besides; but; yet. (Nent of cēterus.)
- (cēter-us)**, a, um, (seldom used in the sing.; the nom. masc. not found,) the remainder, the rest: in pl., the others, all the rest. (Cf. ērepos.)
- Cētiēg-us**, i, m., Cethegus, a Roman family name of the Cornelian gens.
- ceu**, conj. or adv., as; just as if; as if; like as. (It is contracted for ei-ve, —i.e., qui-ve,—as sen is for si-ve.)
- chāōs**, n., abl. chao, indecl., (a late gen is used by the grammarians,) the great void; the confused elements before the world was made and reduced to order, when "the earth was without form, and void;" chaos. Also, as proper name, Chaos, son of Erebus and Nox.

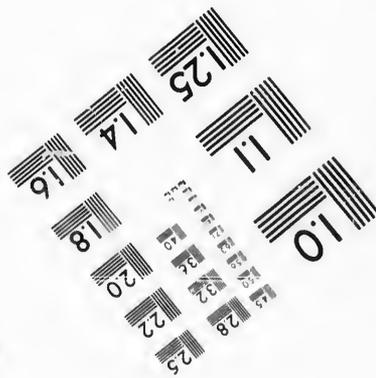
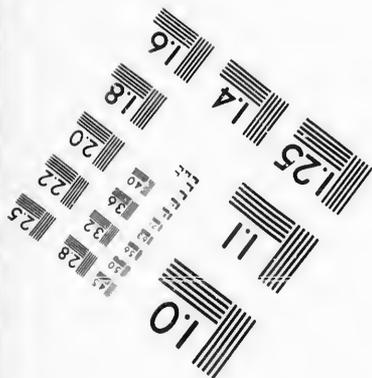
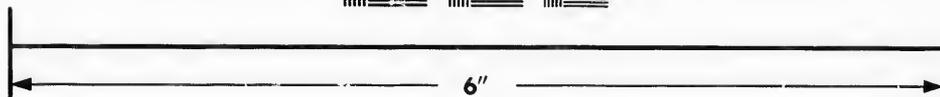
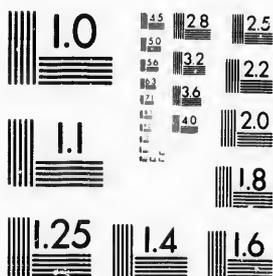
- Chersonĕs-us**, *l. f.*, (or Cherronesus,) a peninsula, or promontory; specially, the Chersonese, or Thracian peninsula on the Hellespont.
- chrÿsŏlĭth-us**, *l. f.* or *m.*, the gold stone,—i. e., the chrysolite, or topaz. (*χρυσόλιθος*.)
- cĭbāri-a**, *ŏrum*, *n. pl.*, food, victuals. *Pl. n.* of following.
- cĭbāri-us**, *a, um*, relating to food.
- cĭb-us**, *l. m.*, food, victuals; nourishment (for man or beast); fodder.
- cĭ-ĕŏ**, *cĭvi*, *cĭtum*, *cĭ-ĕre*, 2 *v. a.*, to stir up, rouse; call, summon.
- Cĭlix**, *Cĭlicie-is*, *adj.*, Cilician; of Cilicia.
- Cimberĭ-us**, *l. m.*, Cimbrius, a chief of the Suevoi.
- Cimbr-i**, *ŏrum*, *m.*, the Cimbri, a German tribe, inhabiting Jutland, (which is thence called Chersonesus Cimbrica.) They were overcome by Marſus.
- Cimŏn**, *Cimŏn-is*, *m.*, Cimŏn, the father of Miltiades; also, the son of Miltiades.
- cinct-us**, *a, um*, *perf. part.* of *cingo*, surrounded, begirt.
- Cingetŏrix**, *Cingetŏrig-is*, *m.*, Cingetŏrix, a chief of the Treviri; also, one of the princes of Cantium, or Kent.
- cingo**, *cingi*, *cinctum*, *cing-ĕre*, 3 *v. a.*, to begird, tie round; surround, encircle.
- cĭnis**, *cĭnĕr-is*, *m.*, ashes; ruins of a (burned) city.
- circā**, *prep.* or *adv.*, around; round about; round to; near to, in the neighbourhood.
- circĭn-us**, *l. m.*, a pair of compasses. (*κίρκινος*.)
- circĭter**, *adv.* and *prep.*, about, near, (of place, time, or number.) (circæ.)
- circu-eo**, same as circumeo.
- circuit-us**, *us, m.*, a going round, circumference, compass. (circen-co.)
- circum**, *prep.* and *adv.*, around, about.
- circumclūd-o**, *circumclūs-i*, *circumclūs-um*, *circumclūd-ĕre*, 3 *v. a.*, to shut in on every side, hem in, surround. (circum, claudo.)
- circumdō**, *circumdēd-i*, *circumdātum*, *circumd-ĕre*, 1 *v. a.*, to put or place round; to draw round; surround, encompass. (circum, do.)
- circumdūc-o**, *circumdūxi*, *circumdūctum*, *circumdūc-ĕre*, 3 *v. a.*, to draw round; surround; march round. (circum, dūco.)
- circumeo**, *circumivl*, (ii.) *circumĭtum*, or circuitum, *circum-ĕre*, 4 *v. n.*, to go round, march round; encompass; to compass, solicit. (circum, eo.)
- circumsisto**, *circumstĕtl*, *circumstĕr-ĕre*, 3 *v. a.*, to place or set round, to surround; stand round. (circum, sisto.)
- circumspĭcĭo**, *circumspĕxi*, *circumspĕctum*, *circumspĭc-ĕre*, 3 *v. a.*, to look about, or round, survey; ponder, consider. (circum, spĕcio, as in conspĭcio, &c.)
- circumsto**, *circumstĕtl*, *circumst-ĕre*, 1 *v. n.*, to stand around, surround, encompass; beset; besiege. (circum, sto.)
- circumvĕn-io**, (ĕi), *tim*, *ĕre*, 4 *v. a.*, to come round; go round, encompass; beset, distress; circumvent, outwit; defraud. (circum, venio.)
- circ-us**, *l. m.*, a ring, a circle; a circular place, (for races, games, &c.) a circus.
- cĭtĕri-or**, or *ns*, (comp. of *elter*, on this side,) nearer; on this side; hithermost: superl., *cĭtĭmus*.
- Cithæron**, *Cithæron-is*, *m.*, Cithæron, a range of mountains between Attica and Bœotia.
- cĭtĭssimĕ**, *adv.*, (superl. of *cito*,) most quickly; with the greatest speed.
- citrā**, *prep.* with *acc.*, and *adv.*, on this side. (citer. See cĭterior.)
- citrŏ**, *adv.*, to this side; on this side. Usually found in connection with *ultra*, to this side and to that; backwards and forwards, to and fro. (citer.)
- cĭt-us**, *a, um*, *perf. part.* of *eleo*, urged on, excited: hence, as *adj.*, quick, swift, rapid.
- civil-is**, *is, e, of* or belonging to a citizen; civil. (cĭvis.)
- cĭv-is**, *is, m. or f.*, a citizen.
- cĭvĭtas**, *cĭvĭtĭt-is*, *f.*, citizenship; the rights of citizens; the citizens as a community; a state. (cĭvis.)
- clād-es**, *is, f.*, a disaster, misfortune; overthrow, defeat; calamity.
- clam**, *adv.*, and *prep.* (with *abl.* or *acc.*), without the knowledge of; secretly, privately.
- clām-o**, *āvi*, *ātum*, *ĕre*, 1 *v. a.*, to cry aloud, shout; to call upon; declare. (From root *cal-*, or *ela*. See *calendne*.)
- clāmŏr**, *clāmŏr-is*, *m.*, a shout, call; clamour; applause. (clamo.)

- clandestin-us**, a, um, *secret, hidden, underhand, clandestine.* (clann.)
- clār-us**, a, um, *clear, bright, brilliant; distinct, loud,* (of the voice, noise, etc.) *plain, evident; well known; illustrious.*
- classiāri-us**, a, um, *belonging to a fleet:* as subst., *a sailor; a marine.* (classis.)
- class-is**, is, f., *a class or division* (of the Roman people); or, *a class* (in a general sense); *a fleet.* Abl. i or e; gen. pl. usually ium.
- Clastīdī-um**, i, n., *Clastidium*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul, near the borders of Liguria, and a few miles south of the Padus (Po). The modern town of Casteggio is supposed to represent it.
- Claudī-us**, i, m., *Claudius*, the name of two Roman gentes, which contributed many famous men to the state. (See Nep. Hann., chap. v.)
- claud-o**, claus-i, claus-um, claud-ere, 3 v. a., *to shut, close; surround, hem in; besiege; end.*
- claus-us**, a, um, perf. part. of claudo, *shut up, closed; hemmed in.*
- clēmēnti-a**, ae, f., *mildness, kind-heartedness; forbearance, mercy.* (clēmens, mild.)
- cliens**, client-is, m. or f., *a client; retainer, dependant.* Gen. pl. iam oftener than um. (clueo, *to hear, listen to.*)
- Clīni-as**, ae, m., *Clinias*, father of Alebiades.
- clīpē-us**, i, m., (sometimes um, i, n.), *a shield, round, and of brass, as opposed to the wooden oval one, called scutum,* buckler.
- Clīmēn-ē**, es, f., *Clymene*, wife of Merope, king of Aethiopia, and mother of Phaethon.
- Clīmēnēi-us**, a, um, *of or belonging to Clymene: Clymenia proles, the son of Clymene,—i.e., Phaethon.*
- Cnae-us**, i, m., *Cnaeus*, or *Gnaeus*, a Roman praenomen.
- coact-us**, a, um, perf. part. of cogo, *compelled, forced.*
- coctīl-is**, is, e, *baked; made of bricks.* (coqto.)
- coelest-is**, is, e, *belonging to the sky; celestial, heavenly:* as subst., *a god.*
- coel-um**, i, n., (or caelum), *the sky; heaven; the air, atmosphere; weather.* The pl., which is rare, is caeli, as if from caelus, the old form of the sing.
- coēm-o**, coēm-i, coemptum, coēm-ere, 3 v. a., *to buy up.* (emo.)
- coen-a**, ae, f., *dinner; supper.*
- coen-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to dine; sup; eat:* act., *to dine upon.* (coena.)
- cō-ēo**, īvi, itum, īre, 4 v. n., *irreg., to go together; come together, unite; agree; to meet* (in a hostile way), *to encounter, fight.* (eo.)
- coep-io**, coepi, coeptum, 3 v. a. and n., *to begin, commence; to undertake.*
- cōerc-ēo**, ūl, itum, ēre, 2 v. a., *to press together; confine; restrain, check.* (con, arceo.)
- coerule-us**, a, um. See caeruleus.
- cōgītātio**, cōgītātō-is, f., *thought, reflection, deliberation; opinion.* (cogito)
- cōgīt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to meditate on, think, reflect, ponder; purpose, intend.* (Contracted for eo, agtia.)
- cognātio**, cognātō-is, f., *relationship* (by birth); *kindred, relatives; connections, brotherhoods.* (cognatus.)
- cognāt-us**, a, um, *related by birth; kindred; similar:* as subst., m. and f., *a kinsman, a relative.* (con and natus, o; gnatus.)
- cognit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of cognosco, *known, recognised.*
- cognōmēn**, cognōmīn-is, n., *a surname; family name; name* (generally): thus, in *Marcus Tullius Cicero*, Cicero is the cognomen, Tullius the nomen, and Marcus the praenomen. (con, nomen.)
- cognosco**, cognōvi, cognitum, cognoscere, 3 v. a., *to inquire into; find out, ascertain; perceive, recognise.* (con, noseo.)
- cōgo**, cōēgi, cōactum, cōg-ere, 3 v. a., *to drive or lead together; assemble; collect; to force, compel.* (con, ago.)
- cōhors**, cohort-is, f., *an enclosure, courtyard; a body of soldiers, a cohort* (the tenth part of a legion): in the poets it often means *an army; a crowd, a great number; followers.* (The root is found in χόρος, hortus; also in English, garden, yard, court; German, garten; French, cour.)
- cōhortātio**, ehortation-is, f., *encouragement, exhortation.* (cohortor.)
- cōhort-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. dep., *to encourage, exhort, incite.* (con, hortor.)
- Collāti-a**, ae, f., *Collatia*, a town of the Sabines, near Rome.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

15
20
25
28
32
36
22
20
18

10

- collāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of confero, brought together, collected; compared.
- collaud-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to praise very much, extol, bepraise. (con, laudo.)
- collect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of colligo, brought together, collected.
- collēg-a**, ac, m., one chosen along with; a colleague, companion. (con, lego.)
- collig-o**, collēgi, collectum, collig-ēre, 3 v. a., to gather together, collect; assemble; to gain, acquire. (con, lego.)
- collig-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to bind together; to pin together; connect; fasten. (con, and ligo, to bind.)
- coll-is**, is, m., a hill; high ground: the pl. sometimes means a chain of mountains. Abl. sing., eolli, or colle.
- collōc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to place or put together; arrange; to set up, establish; to post (as troops, station; to settle (in marriage); to invest money (at interest.) (con, loco.)
- collōquī-um**, i, n., a conversing together; a conference; conversation; discussion. (colloquor.)
- collōqu-or**, collōcētus, collōqu-i, 3 v. dep., to talk together, converse; confer. (con, loquor.)
- coll-um**, i, n., the neck.
- cōl-o**, ūi, cultum, cōl-ēre, 3 v. a., to cultivate, till; to dwell in, inhabit; to tend, give attention to; practise; foster; to esteem; venerate; worship.
- cōlōni-a**, ae, f., a farm. "farm town:" hence, a newly settled town, colony; a band of settlers, or colonists. (colonus.)
- cōlōn-us**, i, m., a cultivator (of land), a husbandman, farmer; a settler, colonist. (colo.)
- cōlor**, cōlōr-is, m., colour, complexion; appearance.
- cōlumn-a**, ae, f., a column, pillar; support: hence, French, colonne; Ital., colonna.
- cōm-a**, ae, f., hair; a head of hair; foliage. (κόμη.)
- combūro**, combussi, combustum, combūr-ēre, 3 v. a., to burn up, consume; destroy. (See bustum. con, and buro = uro, to burn.)
- cōmēs**, cōmīt-is, m. or f., a fellow-traveler; a companion, associate, comrade. (con, and eo, to go.)
- cōmīnus**. See commīnus.
- commēat-us**, ūs, m., literally, a coming and going; a voyage; trip; hence, a passage, or leave to go to and fro; journey, leave of absence; a company of travellers, or traders: and hence, transport, carriage of goods; more particularly, provisions, supplies. (commeo;—i.e., con, meo, to come and go.)
- commēmōr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to call to mind, remember; to remind (another); to relate, tell, recount. (con, memoro.)
- commendāti-o**, ōnis, f., a commendation; recommendation; persuasiveness: as, Commendatio oris et orationis, manly grace, or persuasiveness, of his countenance and his address. (Nep. Alc.)
- commend-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to give in hand to, intrust to; to make agreeable to; to recommend; to set off, grace. (con, mando.)
- comme-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to come and go; to go backwards and forwards: to visit frequently, frequent. (con, and meo, to go.)
- commīniscor**, commentus, commīnisci, 3 v. dep., to think of; devise, contrive, invent; conceive. (Stem is min, as in mc-mini, meus, &c.)
- commīnus**, adv., hand to hand; in close contact; in close fight; near at hand. (con, manns.)
- commiss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of committo, put together, combined, &c.: Proelium commissum est, the battle was begun.
- committ-o**, commīs-i, commiss-um, committ-ēre, 3 v. a., to put or throw together; to connect, unite, join; engage.—i.e., set to fight; as, Committere proelium, or pugnam, to join battle: to intrust to; to cause (that). (con, mitto.)
- Commī-us**, i, m., Commius, one of the chiefs of the Atrcbates.
- commōdē**, adv., suitably, conveniently; advantageously; well; seasonably (commodus.)
- commōditas**, commōditāt-is, f., suitableness, fitness; advantage; utility. (commodus.)
- commōdius**, adv., comp. of commode, more suitably; with greater advantage; better.
- commōd-um**, i, n., a fit opportunity, a

- convenience; an advantage, profit, benefit.* (commodus.)
- commōd-us**, a, um, literally, *measured-with*: hence, *suitable to, convenient; advantageous; obliging; polite, agreeable.* (con, mōdus, measure.)
- commōnē-fāciō**, fēci, factum, fācēre, 3 v. a., *to remind (one) of; impress upon; warn, admonish.* (commoneo and facio.)
- commōnē-o**, ūi, Itum, ēre, 2 v. a., *to remind; warn, admonish.* (con, moneo.)
- commōt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of commoveo, *moved violently, shaken*: hence, *excited, roused; alarmed.*
- commōv-ēo**, (ō)i, commōtūm, commōv-ēre, 2 v. a., *to move violently, shake; excite, rouse; alarm.* (con, moveo.)
- commūnic-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., literally, *to give to others in common with one's self; to impart; to hold converse with; make known to, communicate to* (a person): Communicare cum aliquo, *to put into* (a joint stock) *in equal shares*, as in Caes. B. G., vi., 19, —Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoriibus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis cum dotibus communicant. (communis.)
- commūn-īo**, īr', itum, īre, 4 v. a., *to fortify on every side, intrench.* (con, munito.)
- commūn-is**, is, e, *equally shared, or serving together*: hence, *common* (to all, or to a few), *general, public.* (con and munus, or perhaps munis, from muni-a, um.)
- commūnitas**, commūnitāt-is, f., *fellowship, society; courteousness, affability.* (communis.)
- commūniter**, adv., *in common, jointly, commonly.* (communis.)
- commūtāti-o**, ōnis, f., *an entire change; a change.* (commutō.)
- commūt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to change entirely; change, alter; exchange.* (con, muto.)
- compār-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to put or bring together; match; compare; to prepare, make ready* (con, paro.)
- compell-o**, compūl-l, compūl-s-um, compell-ēre, 3 v. a., *to drive together; assemble, collect; to urge on; invite; to force, compel.* (con, pello.)
- compell-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to address, accost; to chide, upbraid.* (The root, pell-, means *speak to, or address*; as in appellare, compellare, and interpellare.)
- compēr-io**, ī, tum, īre, 4 v. a., *to find out, learn, ascertain.* (Said to be a derivative from pario; as, aperio, reperio.)
- compesc-o**, ui, ēre, 3 v. a., *to hold in check, check, restrain, confine.* (compes, a fetter.)
- complexor**, complexus, complex-i, 3 v. dep., *to fold together; clasp; in-fold, embrace.* (con, and plec-, same root as plic-, to fold.)
- compl-eo**, ēvi, ētum, ēre, 2 v. a., *to fill up, complete, finish.* (con, pleo.)
- complex-us**, a, um, perf. part. of complexor, *having embraced, clasped, &c.*
- complūr-es**, es, a, several; many, a very considerable number.
- compōn-o**, compōsū-i, compōsīt-um, compōn-ēre, 3 v. a., *to place, lay, or put together; to lay side by side; to compare; to arrange; connect, unite; compose; to settle, put an end to,—as, Componere bellum, to put an end to a war by treaty.* (con, pono.)
- comport-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to carry together, collect.* (con, porto.)
- comprēhend-o**, ī, comprēhens-um, comprēhend-ēre, 3 v. a., *to lay hold of, arrest, apprehend, seize; to include, comprise; to understand.* (prehensō.)
- comprōb-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to approve of; sanction; to prove, confirm, establish, (as by evidence.)* (con, probō.)
- con-**, an inseparable prefix, used in very many compound words. It is equivalent to the prep. cum, *with.*
- cōnāt-um**, ī, n., *an attempt, endeavour; undertaking.* (conor.)
- cōnāt-ūs**, ūs, m., *an attempting* (of something); *an effort, trial, endeavour, attempt.* (conor.)
- concāv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to hollow out, excavate*: hence, *to curve, bend*; as, Concavat brachia in arcus, (Ov.,) *he bends his arms into a circular form.*
- conced-o**, concess-i, concess-um, conced-ēre, 3 v. n. and a., *to give way to; retire from, depart, withdraw; to yield, submit to*: a., *to grant, allow, permit* (con, cedo.)
- conch-a**, ae, f., *a shell fish; a shell* (of oyster, mussel, snail, &c.): hence of

- things made of shell, or shaped like a shell; as the *trumpet* of Triton. (Ovid.)
- concid-o**, *i*, *conceis-um*, *concid-ere*, 3 v. a., to cut in pieces, hack, destroy, ruin; kill; to cut in all directions; intersect. (con, caedo.)
- concid-o**, *i*, *concid-ere*, 3 v. n., to fall down; fall down dead.—*i. e.*, be slain; to fail; be ruined. (con, caedo.)
- concili-o**, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, 1 v. a., literally, to bring together; unite; conciliate, reconcile; to gain, procure; prepare. (conclium.)
- concili-um**, *i*, n., literally, a calling together; a meeting, assembly. (See consilium. con, and root cal-, for which see *calendae*: hence it means a more public and less select assembly than *consilium*.)
- concio**. See *contio*.
- concip-io**, *concep-i*, *concept-um*, *concep-ere*, 3 v. a., to take to one's self; lay hold of, grasp; conceive; perceive; take in; aspire to. (con, capio.)
- concit-o**, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, 1 v. a., to put into violent motion; excite, rouse; provoke; to spur on; to put (a horse) to the gallop. (Freq. from *concio*.)
- conclam-o**, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, 1 v. n., to shout out together; exclaim with a loud voice, shout out; call to one's help; to claim; to hail. (con, elamo.)
- concupisc-o**, *concupiv-i*, *concupit-um*, *concupisc-ere*, 3 v. a., incept., to conceive a desire for, to long for, covet; aspire to. (con, cupio.)
- concurr-o**, *i*, *coneurs-um*, *concurr-ere*, 3 v. n., (perf. very seldom reduplicated.) to run together; to flock to the same place; to rush together (in battle,) to charge, fight. (con, curro.)
- concur-us**, *us*, m., a running together; a meeting, or assembling; a crowd, concourse; an engagement, shock of battle, fight, charge. (concurro.)
- concūt-io**, *concut-s-i*, *concut-um*, *concut-ere*, 3 v. a., to shake together; shake violently; strike together, clash; to shake to the centre: hence, to terrify, alarm, disturb. (con, quatio.)
- conditi-o**, *onis*, f., literally, a putting together, or into position: hence, a state (of being), situation, place, condition; station, rank, circumstances: hence the terms by which a state is brought about, as, the conditions of agreement, terms. (Supine of *condo*.)
- cond-o**, *Idi*, *Itum*, *ere*, 3 v. a., to put together, build; found; to compose; to lay up (in store); to hide, conceal; to bury; finish. (con, do.)
- condon-o**, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, 1 v. a., to bestow as a gift; to present; pardon. (con, dono.)
- condūc-o**, *condux-i*, *conduct-um*, *condūc-ere*, 3 v. a., to bring or lead together; to assemble, collect; to hire, lease, to contract for, to farm, (as the public taxes, &c. ;) to lead to, result in. (con, duco.)
- confect-us**, *a*, um, perf. part. of *conficio*, accomplished, finished; made out, executed: as, *Tabulae confectae literis Graecis*, accounts (records) made out in Greek characters.
- confercio**, (no perf.), *confert-um*, *confere-ere*, 4 v. a., to stuff together, press tightly; pack; crowd. (con, farcio, to stuff.)
- confēr-o**, *contul-i*, *collatum*, *conferre*, 3 v. a. irreg., to carry or bring together, collect; to unite, join: *Conferre se in*, to betake one's self to, to go: *Conferre pecuniam*, to contribute money: *Conferre arma*, to engage in conflict, to fight. Also, to bring together for the purpose of comparison, to compare; to lay the blame on, impute, ascribe, attribute: *Conferre culpam in multitudinem*, to lay the blame on the multitude. (con, fero.)
- confert-us**, *a*, um, perf. part. of *confercio*, closely packed together; crowded; in close or dense bodies.
- confestim**, adv., at once immediately, speedily. (Etymology doubtful.)
- conficio**, *confec-i*, *confect-um*, *confic-ere*, 3 v. a., to make completely, make perfect, complete; to finish, put an end to, accomplish; to make out; compose, write; to kill, destroy. (con, facio.) The passive is sometimes *conficior*, and sometimes *confio*.
- confido**, *confisus*, *confid-ere*, 3 v. n. semidep., to place reliance on, rely, trust to: *Livy* has a perf., *confidi*. (con, fido.)
- confirm-o**, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, 1 v. a., to make firm or strong, establish, strengthen; encourage, assure; assert; confirm, prove. (con, firmo.)
- confis-us**, *a*, um, perf. part. of *confido*, relying on, trusting to.

- confiteor**, confessus, confit-eri, 2 v. dep., to confess openly, avow, acknowledge; to grant; to manifest, show plainly. (con, fateor.)
- config-o**, confix-i, confict-um, config-ere, 3 v. a. and n., to dash together or against. Usually neut., to be dashed together; to encounter, fight, struggle. (con, figo.)
- confu-o**, conflux-i, (confluxum,) conflue-re, 3 v. n., to flow or run together; to crowd together, flock together (in great numbers). (con, fluo.)
- confug-io**, (fug), confug-ere, 3 v. n., to flee for refuge to, betake (one's self) to. (con, fugio.)
- confund-o**, confud-i, confus-um, confund-ere, 3 v. a., to pour together; to mingle, confound, confuse; throw into disorder; bewilder. (con, fundo.)
- conger-o**, congers-i, congest-um, conger-ere, 3 v. a., to carry together; to collect, gather. (con, gero.)
- congréd-ior**, congress-us, congréd-i, 3 v. dep., to go together; meet; to walk with; speak to, accost; to meet in a hostile manner, engage with, fight. (con, gradior.)
- congress-us**, a, um, perf. part. of congrédior, having met; engaged (in battle), &c.
- conjic-io**, conjec-i, coniect-um, conjic-ere, 3 v. a., to throw together; to hurl, fling, throw, cast; to conjecture; conclude; foretell. (con, jacio.)
- conjunctim**, adv., unitedly, jointly; in common. (conjunctus, from conjungo.)
- conjung-o**, conjunx-i, conjunct-um, conjung-ere, 3 v. a., to join or yoke together, unite, connect. (con, jungo.)
- conjurati-o**, ónis, f., a swearing together; a union formed by oath: hence, generally in a bad sense, a conspiracy, plot; a band of conspirators. (conjuro; con, and juro, to swear.)
- conjux**, conjug-is, m. or f., a yoke-fellow, mate; a spouse, a wife, a husband. (con, and jug-, root of jugum, a yoke.)
- connūbi-um**, i, n., wedlock, marriage. (con, nubo.)
- cōnor**, cōnāt-us, cōn-āri, 1 v. dep., to attempt, try, endeavour.
- conquīr-o**, conquīsiv-i, conquīsīt-um, conquīr-ere, 3 v. a., to seek out for; to gain, acquire, procure; collect. (con, quaero.)
- conquīsīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of conquīro, sought for; gained.
- consanguinē-us**, a, um, of the same blood or family; kindred: as subst., a relative, kinsman. (con and sanguis.)
- consend-o**, i, conscens-um, conscend-ere, 3 v. a. and n., to climb up, ascend, mount: and so, to embark on board ship; to mount (on horseback), &c. (con, seando.)
- conscisc-o**, consciv-i, conscit-um, conscisc-ere, 3 v. a., to vote for (a thing); to give a voice for (along with others); to decree; to agree in, unite in; to approve: hence in the phrase, *Conscivit sibi mortem*, he inflicted death on himself. (con, scisco, to vote.)
- consci-us**, a, um, knowing along with (others); cognizant of, aware of; conscious (to one's self). (con, scio.)
- conscrib-o**, conscrips-i, conscript-um, conscrib-ere, 3 v. a., to write down in a common list: hence, to enroll, enlist, levy; to compose, write. (con, scribo.)
- conscript-us**, a, um, enrolled, levied, &c.: as subst., *Conscripti Patres*; or fully, *Patres et conscripti*; a term applied to the whole Senate.
- consecr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make holy; devote, dedicate, consecrate. (con, sacro.)
- consect-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. dep., to pursue earnestly, follow eagerly; pursue; persecute. (consequor)
- consecūt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of consecutor, having followed after, pursued; come up with.
- consensi-o**, ónis, f., harmony of thought; agreement, unanimity. (consentio, to agree.)
- consens-us**, iis, m., agreement, unanimity, harmony, concord, concert. (consentio.)
- consequ-or**, consecūt-us, consequ-i, 3 v. dep., to follow along with, or after; to attend, accompany; overtake, come up with; gain, obtain; understand. (con, sequor.)
- consēr-o**, nī, tum, ēre, 3 v. a., to wreath or tie together, bind, connect, join; engage in battle hand to hand. (con, sero.)
- conserv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to keep together; maintain, preserve, save. (con, servo.)
- consider-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to examine carefully, inspect: hence, &

consider deliberately, meditate on, reflect, ponder. (Considero, from sidus, is regarded by some as a term of augury, referring to the observation and comparison of the stars. So desidere refers to the doubt and anxiety caused by a cloudy night, when the stars are not seen. Compare contemplor, from templum, the sacred spot marked out by the augurs before making their observations.)

Considī-us, *i*, *m.*, *Considius* (*P.*), one of Caesar's officers.

consid-o, *consēd-i*, *consess-um*, *consid-ēre*, 3 *v. n.*, *to sit down, settle; encamp, take up a position; halt; perch* (as a bird).

consili-um, *i*, *n.*, literally, *a sitting together*; hence, *an assembly* (more especially of chief men, judges, senators, military officers, &c.); *the deliberations of such a meeting; a decision, judgment; plan, scheme; advice, counsel; wisdom, prudence, discretion.* See concliium. (con, and root sel, or sil = sed, as in sella and sed-co. See consul, sedco, sella.)

consimil-is, *is*, *e*, *like in every particular; very like; identical.* (con, similis.)

consist-o, *consit-i*, *consit-um*, *consist-ēre*, 3 *v. n.*, (rarely *a.*) *to station one's self; to halt, stop, make a stand; to settle down* (for residence); *to stand firm; keep together*, (of a number of men); *to exist; consist in; depend on.* See Caes. B. G., vi., 21, 6; and 22, 2. (con, sisto.)

consol-or, *ātus*, *ārī*, 1 *v. dep.*, *to cheer up* (by one's presence); *conso^l confort; encourage.*

consors, *consort-is*, *adj.*, *sharing with, partaking of: as subst., a partner, mate, colleague.* (con, sors.)

conspect-us, *ūs*, *m.*, *a general view; sight, view*; hence, *presence.* (conspiclo.)

conspici-o, *conspex-i*, *conspexit-um*, *conspic-ēre*, 3 *v. a.*, *to take in at one view; to survey, look at, observe; descry, spy out, notice, behold.* (con, and root spec, as in specio.)

conspic-or, *ātus*, *ārī*, 1 *v. dep.*, *to spy, descry, see, behold.* (conspiclo.)

conspir-o, *āvī*, *ātum*, *āre*, 1 *v. a.*, *to agree, be of one mind*; also, *to conspire, plot.* (con, spiro.)

constans, *constant-is*, *adj.* and *part.*,

well-knit; steadfast, steady, unflinching. (consto.)

constat, 3 *sing.* of consto, used impersonally, *it is agreed; it is certain; it is evident.*

constern-o, *constrāv-l*, *constrāt-um*, *constern-ēre*, 3 *v. a.*, *to strew all over, bestrew; cover; to throw down; overthrow, utterly rout.* (con, sterno.)

constern-o, *āvī*, *ātum*, *āre*, 1 *v. a.*, *to confuse; terrify, startle, frighten.* (consternēre.)

constiti, *perf.* of consisto, —which see.

constitū-o, *i*, (*stitum*, *ēre*, 3 *v. a.*), *to set up, establish; to draw up, arrange* (troops); *station, post*; (of ships,) *to moor; to settle* (the abode of); *to found; construct; to settle*, —i. e., *organise, regulate; to determine; appoint, regulate.* (con, statuo.)

constitūt-us, *a*, *um*, *perf. part.* of constituo, *established, organised, regulated.*

const-o, *Iti*, *ātum*, *āre*, 1 *v. n.*, *to stand still, halt; to stand steadfast, endure, remain unchanged; to agree with, be consistent with; to be agreed upon; well authenticated, evident, certain*, (see constat); *to be made up from, consist of: to cost*, (so we say, "It stood him" so much.) (con, sto.)

consuesc-o, *consūev-l*, *consuēt-um*, *consuesc-ēre*, *v. n.* and (rarely) *a.*, *to be accustomed, be in the habit of, be wont: a., to accustom.* (consueo.)

consuetūd-o, *consuetūdīn-is*, *f.*, *custom, habit, use, wont; companionship, familiarity, intimacy.* (consuesco.)

consuēt-us, *a*, *um*, *perf. part.* of consuesco, *customary, usual, wonted.*

consul, *consul-is*, *m.*, *a consul, chief magistrate.* Etymology doubtful. It is found written, consol; hence some derive it from con and the root sol-, which appears in sol-lum, *a seat*, and, with the vowel changed, in sel-la, (see consilium,) —so that the consules were those who *sat together* (in council); others, from con and sal-īo, meaning him who *leaps* or *dances* with another, —i. e., goes forth in procession, or in high position, with another. So exsul, one who *leaps out* (of his country); praesul, one who *leaps before*; insula, *a leap into*, —applying primarily to a mass of rock fallen into the sea.

consulār-is, *is*, *e*, *of or belonging to a*

cons
been
consi
liter
take
dat.
the
intel
vice,
cons
and
consu
on p
consu
a co
solut
decre
consū
consi
or en
waste
consu
consu
body,
wind
rebel.
Cons-u
Italia
contāg
influe
tation
tingo.
contect
tego,
contēg
ēre, 3
bury.
contem
conten
slight.
contend
3 *v. a.*
strain;
ert one'
to has
struggle
tendo.)
contenti
or strai
quarrel
content-
tendo, 3
content-
tineo, c
conterm
frontier

- consul, consular*: as subst., *one who has been consul.* (consul.)
- consûl-o**, ui, tum, ěre, 3 v. n. and a., literally, *to sit together* (in council); *to take counsel, deliberate; to reflect*: with dat. of person, it means *to consult for the good of (one); have a regard to one's interests*: a., with the acc., *to ask advice, consult* (a deity, lawyer, &c.); *to consider; determine, decide on*, (with de and abl., or in and acc.) (See consul.)
- consultō**, adv., *deliberately, designedly, on purpose.* (consulo.)
- consult-um**, i, n., *a matter advised on; a consultation; a decree, decision, resolution*: Senatus consultum, (S.C.) *a decree of the Senate.* (consulo.)
- consûm-o**, consumps-i, consumpt-um, consûm-ěre, 3 v. a., *to take all together, or entirely; to eat up, devour; consume, waste, spend, destroy.* (con, sumo.)
- consurg-o**, consurrex-i, consurrect-um, consurg-ěre, 3 v. n., *to rise up in a body, or all at once; to rise* (as the wind); *arise* (out of respect to); *to rebel.* (con, surgo.)
- Cons-us**, i, m., *Consus*, an ancient Italian deity, god of counsel.
- contāgiō**, contagiōn-is, f., *contact, touch; influence exerted by contact*: hence, *contagion, pollution, contamination.* (contingo.)
- contact-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *contego, covered, concealed.*
- contĕg-o**, contex-i, cōtect-um, contĕg-ěre, 3 v. a., *to cover over, hide, conceal; bury.* (con, tego.)
- contemn-o**, contempn-i, contempt-um, contemn-ěre, 3 v. a., *to despise, disdain, slight.* (con, temno.)
- contend-o**, i, content-um, contend-ěre, 3 v. a. and n., *to stretch tight, draw out, strain; to thwart, hurt, sting*: n., *to exert one's self, strive eagerly after, pursue; to hasten* (on a journey); *to fight, struggle, contend with, dispute.* (con, tendo.)
- contentio**, contentiōn-is, f., *a stretching, or straining, an effort; a fight, struggle, quarrel, controversy.* (contendo.)
- content-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *contendo, stretched, strained, exerted.*
- content-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *contineo, checked; contented.*
- contermin-us**, a, nm, *having a common frontier or boundary; bordering on,*
- neighbouring*: as subst., *a neighbour.* (con, terminus.)
- contest-or**, ūtus, ūrl, 1 v. dep., *to call to witness; invoke, implore; to give evidence.* (con, testor.)
- contex-o**, ui, tum, ěre, 3 v. a., *to weave, entwine; construct; make by interlacing,* (as wicker-work.) (con, texo.)
- context-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *contexo, woven, interlaced, &c.*
- contigit**, perf. of *contingo, used impersonally, it fell to the lot of; it happened.* (See contingo.)
- contigū-us**, a, um, *mutually touching; bordering on, nigh to, neighbouring.* (contingo.)
- contĭnens**, contĭnēt-is, (pres. part. of *contĭneo*.) literally, *holding together*: hence, *contiguous, adjacent; continuous*, —i.e., in unbroken connection with; (of time,) *successive; connected, uninterrupted*: hence, as subst., *a mainland, continent*: adj., *having self-control; moderate, temperate.* (contineo.)
- contĭnenter**, adv., *continuously, without interruption, constantly; in succession.* (contĭnens.)
- contĭn-ĕo**, ui, contĭent-um, contĭn-ěre, 2 v. a., *to hold together; hold in, confine, bound; encircle; restrain, check.* (con, teneo.)
- contingit**, 3 sing. pres. of *contingo, used impersonally, it falls to the lot of; it happens.*
- contĭng-o**, contĭg-i, contact-um, contĭng-ěre, 3 v. a., *to touch; seize; to touch upon, border on, be near; to happen to, fall to the lot of, befall.* (con, tango.)
- contĭnu-us**, a, um, *holding together*, —i.e., *continuous, uninterrupted; successive, following.* (contineo.)
- contĭ-o**, onis, f., *a coming together; an assembly, meeting; the public assembly of the people*, (met for deliberation on any important matter:) *Prodiere in contionem, to come forward before the public assembly*, —i.e., to address a public meeting: hence, *contio* meant also a speech, or oration. (It is a shortened form of *conventio*; hence the spelling, *contio*, is to be preferred to *concio*.)
- contrā**, prep. and adv., *over against, opposite; on the other hand; in return; in reply.* (From con, as in-tra, ex-tra.)
- contrāh-o**, contrāx-i, contract-um, contrāh-ěre, 3 v. a., *to draw or bring to*

- gether; to collect, assemble; to draw tight, tighten, contract; to check, restrain; to cause, bring on, contract, (e.g., aes alienum, debt.)*
- contrāri-us**, a, um, *opposite to, being over against; contrary to. (contra.)*
- controversi-a**, ae, f., *a turning against; hence, an attack: a quarrel, dispute, controversy; law-suit. (controversus.)*
- contūmēli-a**, ae, f., *an insult, affront; disgrace; reproach; rough handling, injury, damage. (con, and tum, root of tūmco.)*
- convēn-io**, (ē)l, tum, ire, 4 v. n. and a., *to come together, assemble; to meet with; address, accost; to agree with; be suitable; be agreed on. It is often used impersonally, it is agreed upon; it is suitable; it is consistent. (con, venio.)*
- convent-us**, ūs, m., *a coming together; a meeting, assembly; especially (in "Caesar") a circuit meeting, or assize, (at which the Roman governor of a province assembled periodically the Roman residents in the province, that he might dispense justice and transact the public business generally.)*
- convers-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *converto, turned round, wheeled.*
- convert-o**, i, convers-um, convert-ere, 3 v. a. and n., *to turn round; turn toward; to change; wheel, reverse; to alter; put into confusion: u., to turn; be changed; reversed. (con, verto.)*
- convict-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *convincio, proved guilty, proved against (one).*
- convinc-o**, convīc-i, convict-um, convinc-ere, 3 v. a., *to convict, prove guilty; demonstrate. (con, vīneo.)*
- convōc-o**, ōvi, ōtum, ōre, 1 v. a., *to call together, convoke, summon; assemble. (con, voco.)*
- cōor-ior**, tus, iri, 4 v. dep., *to rise up, arise; appear; break forth. (con, orior.)*
- cōort-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *coorior, having arisen.*
- cōpi-a**, ae, f., *plenty; wealth, riches; abundance, copiousness; supply; opportunity; power, means: in pl. copiae, resources; forces, troops; also, provisions, supplies. (con, and op-, the root of opes, which is seen in in-op-ia, &c.)*
- cōpiōs-us**, a, um, *plentiful, abundant, well supplied; wealthy. (copia.)*
- cōr**, cord-is, n., *the heart: hence, the soul; the feeling, judgment: Esse cordi, to be agreeable to.*
- cōram**, adv., and prep. with *abl.*, *in the presence of, before; in person, personally; (of time,) on sight, immediately. (Said to be from con, and or-, the stem of os, or-is.)*
- Corcyr-a**, ae, f., *Corcyra, now Corfu, an island on the west coast of Greece.*
- Corcyræ-us**, a, um, *pertaining to Corcyra: as subst., m., an inhabitant of Corcyra.*
- Cornēli-us**, i, m., *Cornelius, the name of a Roman gens. (See Nep. Hann., eluys. iv., viii., and xiii.)*
- corn-u**, ūs, n., (or *corn-nm*, i, n.), *a horn; also anything shaped like a horn, or made of horny substance,—e.g., a trumpet; the bill (of a bird); a horn of the moon; a tongue of land; the end of the yard-arm (of a ship); the tip of a bow; the wing of an army, &c.; the hoof (of an animal).*
- corn-um**, i, n., *a cornel cherry, fruit of the cornel-tree.*
- corn-us**, i, (or ūs,) f., *a cornel-tree, or dogwood-tree; a spear (made of cornel-wood).*
- cōrōn-a**, ae, f., *a crown, chaplet, garland, wreath; (of things in a circular shape,) a circle or ring of men.*
- corpus**, corpōr-is, n., *a body, substance,—i.e., something perceptible; the body (of an animal); flesh; a dead body, corpse; a corporation, community. (Cf. Fr. corps, Engl. corpse.)*
- corrept-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *corripio, seized, snatched; carried off.*
- corrīg-o**, correx-i, correct-um, corrīg-ere, 3 v. a., *to make straight; put in order: hence, to regulate; heal, cure; correct, amend. (con, rego.)*
- corrīp-io**, ūi, corrept-um, corrīp-ere, 3 v. a., *to seize, lay hold of; carr. off; to attack; to rebuke, chide; to hasten. (con, rapio.)*
- corrump-o**, corrūp-i, corrupt-um, corrump-ere, 3 v. a., *to break up; to destroy, spoil, corrupt; bribe. (con, rumpo.)*
- corrupt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *corrumpo, destroyed, corrupted; bribed. &c.*
- cortex**, cortic-is, m., (sometimes *f.*) *the bark or rind (of a tree); cork.*

Cōry
Co
ch
Cott
na
Cras
fan
cras
to-
(er
crēb
me
cro
for
crēd-
intr
opin
cre,
crēm
cons
crē-o
brin
prep
crēpī
mak
crea
ter.
cresc-
incep
pear
(ere)
Crēt-a
Cauc
Crēten
subst
(Cret
crīmen
crimī
trial
tion,
(eri,
crīn-is
(Fr. c
Crīti-a
thirty
crūciā
(ernei
crūci-o
cify;
(erux.
crūdēl-
hearte
less.
crūdēli
uss;
barity.

- Cōrycis**, Corycīd-is, (or -os.) f. adj., *Corycian*,—i.e., belonging to the Corycian caves in Mount Parnassus.
- Cott-a**, ac, m., *Cotta*, a Roman family name of the gens Aurelia.
- Crass-us**, i, m., *Crassus*, a Roman family name of the gens Licinia.
- crastīn-us**, a, m., of or pertaining to to-morrow: *Crastinus dies, to-morrow.* (cras, to-morrow.)
- crēber**, crēbr-a, crēbr-um, frequent, numerous; thick, close; abounding in; crowded with. (Said to be another form of *celeber*.)
- crēd-o**, idi, itum, ēre, 3 v. a., to trust to, intrust, put faith in, believe; to be of opinion, think, suppose. (From root *cre, belief*; and do, to put, or give.)
- crēm-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to burn, consume.
- crē-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make; bring forth, produce; to elect, choose; to prepare; cause, occasion.
- crēpit-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. freq., to make a hard rattling noise, to rattle; creak; crackle; to rustle; clatter; chatter. (crepo, to creak.)
- crese-o**, crēv-i, crētum, crese-ēre, 3 v. n. incept., to begin to grow; to arise; appear; be born; to increase, thrive, grow. (creo.)
- Crēt-a**, ae, f., (or *Cret-e, es*.) *Crete*, now *Candia*.
- Crētens-is**, is, belonging to *Crete*: as subst., in pl., *Cretenses, the Cretans.* (*Creta*.)
- crīmen**, crīmīn-is, n., literally, a discerning, or discriminating: hence, a trial, judgment; and also, an accusation, charge; guilt, wickedness, crime. (crī, as in *crāvo*, and *cer-no*.)
- crīn-is**, is, m., the tail of a comet. (Fr. *crin*.)
- Crītī-as**, ae, m., *Critias*, one of the thirty tyrants of Athens.
- crūciāt-us**, ūs, m., torture, torment. (crucio.)
- crūci-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to crucify; to rack, torture; grieve, afflict. (crux.)
- crūdēl-is**, is, e, blood-thirsty; hard-hearted, harsh, cruel, unfeeling, merciless. (crūdus, raw; bloody.)
- crūdēlīt-as**, crūdēlītāt-is, f., blood-thirstiness; hard-heartedness, cruelty, barbarity. (crūdēlis.)
- crūdēlīt-er**, adv., in a cruel, hard-hearted manner; cruelly. (crūdēlis.)
- cruentāt-us**, a, um, blood-stained, &c. Perf. part. of *cruento*.
- cruent-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to render bloody, stain or besmear with blood. (cruentus.)
- cruent-us**, a, um, bloody, gory, blood-stained; blood-thirsty, cruel. (cruor.)
- crūor**, crūōr-is, m., blood, gore (from a wound; but sanguis means blood in general, in which sense the poets also use *cror*): hence, murder.
- crūs**, crūr-is, n., a leg, shin, shank.
- crux**, crūc-is, f., a cross.
- cūbil-e**, is, n., a place for lying down (to rest); a bed, couch; a den, lair. (cubo, to lie down.)
- culmen**, culmīn-is, n., the top, roof; gable (of a house); the summit. (*Culmen* is an abbreviated form of *culmen*, and the root is *col* or *cel*, as found in *cel-sus, col-lis, col-umna, &c.*)
- culp-a**, ae, f., a fault, blame; crime.
- culor**, cultōr-is, m., a tiller (of the ground), a husbandman; an inkblotter. (colo.)
- cult-us**, ūs, m., a tilling, culture; care, attention to; reverence; worship; manner of life; refinement, domestic culture; dress, equipment. (colo.)
- cum**, prep. with *abl.*, along with, at the same time with; with; in; among; to, as, *Cum magna offensioe civium, to the great displeasure of the citizens; Cum magno periculo provinciae, to the great danger of the province.* (The old form of *cum* is *com*, and this is still retained in compounds. See *con*.)
- cum**, conj. See *quoniam*.
- cunct-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. dep., (or *con-tor*.) to delay, wait, linger; hesitate.
- cunct-us**, a, um, all together, the whole, entire. Usually found in the plural. (Contracted for *conjunctus*,—i.e., *conjunctus*.)
- cūpīdīt-as**, cūpīdītāt-is, f., desire, wish; eagerness; appetite: in a bad sense, greediness, lust, passion; greediness (for money), avarice. (*cupidus*.)
- cūpīdīssimē**, adv., most greedily; most or very eagerly. (Superl. adv. from *cupidus*.)
- cūpīdīus**, adv., more eagerly, more earnestly. (Comp. adv. from *cupidus*.)
- cūpīdo**, cūpīdīn-is, f., desire; eagerness:

- der weak, weaken; discourage; thwart.*
(dēbilis, weak.)
- dēbit-um**, *i, n.*, a thing due, a debt; duty. (debeo.)
- dēbit-us**, *a, um, due, owed.* Perf. part. of debeo.
- dēcēd-o**, *decess-i, decess-um, dēcēd-ēre*, 3 v. n., to go away, depart, withdraw, retire; yield; die. (de, cedo.)
- Dēcēlō-a**, *ae, f.*, Decelea, a town and fortress in Attica.
- dēcem**, num. adj. indcel, ten.
- dēcēplex**, gen. decessipite-is, adj., ten-fold. (decein, plico, to fold.)
- dēcept-us**, *a, um, perf. part. of decipio*, deceived, outwitted.
- dēcerno-o**, *dēcērā-v-i, dēcērt-um, dēcerno-ēre*, 3 v. a. and n., to separate; distinguish, judge, decide; resolve; decree; fight. (de, cerno.)
- dēcērt-o**, *āvī, ātum, āre*, 1 v. u., to fight (it) out; struggle vehemently; decide by a pitched battle. (de, certo.)
- dēcēt**, perf. deceit, inf. deecre, Impers. verb, it becomes, it is suitable, proper.
- dēcīd-o**, *i, ēre*, 3 v. n., to fall down, fall; faint; die. (de, cādo.)
- dēcīd-o**, *i, decisum, dēcīd-ēre*, 3 v. a., to cut off or down, lop; decide, determine. (de, caedo.)
- dēcīm-ūs**, *a, um, nam. adj.*, the tenth: as proper name, Decimus.
- dēcīp-īo**, *dēcēp-i, decept-um, dēcīp-ēre*, 3 v. a., to take down, or take off,—i.e., cheat, outwit, deceive, beguile. (de, capio.)
- dēclār-o**, *āvī, ātum, āre*, 1 v. a., to make clear, or evident; proclaim; show forth, declare; demonstrate, prove. (de, cluro.)
- dēclīn-o**, *āvī, ātum, āre*, 1 v. a. and n., to bend down, or away; to slope down, incline; decline. (de, and root elin-, as in κλίμα, acclino, &c.)
- dēclīv-is**, *is, e, sloping downward, steep, down-hill.* (de, and ellvus, a slope.)
- dēclīv-us**, *a, um, same as foregoing.*
- dēcresc-o**, *dēcērv-i, dēcērtum, dēcresc-ēre*, 3 v. n., to grow downward; grow less, decrease, diminish, subside. (de, cresceo.)
- dēcēt-um**, *i, n.*, a thing determined, a resolve, decree. (decerno.)
- dēcērt-us**, *a, um, perf. part. of decerno*, decreed, resolved on, &c.
- dēcūrī-a**, *ae, f.*, a company of ten, a decuria; decade. (decem. Cf. centuria. Same say, decem and vir.)
- dēcūrīo**, *decuriō-is, m.*, the chief of ten; a decurion, a commander of a decuria (of cavalry). (decuria.)
- dēcūrr-o**, *i, or dēcēurr-i, decurs-um, dēcūrr-ēre*, 3 v. n. and a., to run down, or through; run hastily; attack; run (down) for refuge; have recourse to. (de, eurro.)
- dēcūs**, *dēcōr-is, n.*, becomingness, grace; ornament; honour, glory. (de, as in deest.)
- dēdēcūs**, *dēdēcōr-is, n.*, want of becomingness; disgrace, shame; baseness. (de, decus.)
- dēdītīcī-us**, *i, m.*, (or dedititius) one who has surrendered. (deditio.)
- dēdītīo**, *dēdītīō-is, f.*, a giving up, a surrender. (dēdo.)
- dēd-o**, *īdī, ītum, ēre*, 3 v. a., to give up, or to put down (arms); abandon to, surrender, submit; devote (one's self to). (dē and do.)
- dēdūc-o**, *dēdax-l, dēduct-um, dēdūc-ēre*, 3 v. a., to lead down, lead out, conduct; to haul down, or launch; draw on, entice, prevail on; mislead. (de, ducō.)
- dēfātīg-o**, *āvī, ātum, āre*, to weary out, fatigue, exhaust (one's self). (de, fātīgō.)
- dēfectio**, *dēfectīō-is, f.*, a failure; a disappearance, (of the sun, moon, &c.); a desertion. (deficio.)
- dēfēnd-o**, *i, dēfēns-um, dēfēnd-ēre*, 3 v. a., to dash down, or away from; ward off, avert, repel; defend, protect, guard; maintain. (de, and root fend, to dash or strike; as in offendo.)
- dēfēr-o**, *dēfēr-i, dēfēr-um, dēfēr-ēre*, 3 v. a. Irreg., to carry down, or away; bear, convey to; confer on; send over, transfer; to bring to land, drive ashore. (as of ships;) to lay before, report (to); accuse. (de, fero.)
- dēfess-us**, *a, um, perf. part. of dēfētiscor*, worn out, exhausted.
- dēfētisc-or**, *defess-us, dēfētisc-ēre*, 3 v. n. dep., to grow weary; faint; be exhausted. (de, fatiscor.)
- dēfīc-īo**, *dēfīc-i, dēfīc-um, dēfīc-ēre*, 3 v. a. and n., to make against; stand apart from; leave, abandon; revolt from; fail, fall short. (de, facio.)
- dēfīg-o**, *dēfīx-i, dēfīx-um, dēfīg-ēre*, 3 v. a., to fix down, fasten down; fix in, nuke fast. (de, figo.)

- dēfū-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *defūgo*, *made fast, fixed.*
- dēf-en**, ēvi, ētum, ēre, 2 v. a. and n., *to sleep over, bewail.* (de, fēo.)
- dēform-is**, is, e, *ill-formed, shapeless, ugly; disgusting.* (de, forma.)
- dēfrēnāt-us**, a, um, *unbridled, unchecked; (of speed,) headlong.* (de, freno, *to curb.*)
- dēfūg-io**, i, ēre, 3 v. a., (see *fūgo*.) *to flee away from; avoid, shun.* (de, fūgo.)
- dēin**, adv., short form of *dēinde*.
- dēinceps**, adv., *in succession, one after another, in turn.* It was originally an adj. Gen. *dēinceps*, (from *capo*, like *particeps*, *princeps*.) It is sometimes a dissyllable, *dēinceps*.
- dēinde**, (or *dēinde*—two syllables.) adv., *thereafter, afterwards; in the next place, then.* (de, inde.)
- dēject-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *dējelo*, *cast down, disheartened; as adj., low.*
- dēject-ūs**, ūs, m., *a throwing down; a descent, declivity, slope.* (dējelo.)
- dējici-o**, dējici, dēject-um, dējle-ēre, 3 v. a., *to throw down, cast or fling down; cast headlong; dispossess; downgrade.* (de, jacio.)
- dēlāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *dēfero*, *carried down; brought or driven ashore, (of ships;) reported.*
- dēlect-us**, a, um, *chosen, selected; as subst. pl., picked men.* (dēlīgo.)
- dēloct-ūs**, ūs, m., *a choosing, selection; hence, a recruiting, levying; a levy.* (dēlīgo.)
- dēl-eo**, ēvi, ētum, ēre, 2 v. a., (perf. part. sometimes *dēlīns*.) *to blot out, efface; to destroy, ruin, overthrow.*
- dēlibēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to weigh well, think over carefully, deliberate; take counsel, consult (especially an oracle.)* (de, and *libro*, *to weigh, balance.*)
- dēlict-um**, i, n., *a short-coming, sin of omission; a fault, crime.* (From perf. part. of *dēlinquo*.)
- dēlīg-o**, dēlīg-i, dēlect-um, dēlīg-ēre, 3 v. a., *to pick out, choose, select; gather.* (de, lēgo.)
- dēlīg-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to bind down, fasten, tie, make fast.* (de, līg-o.)
- dēlīt-eo**, ēre, 2 v. n., *to lie hid, lurk.* (See next word.)
- dēlītesc-o**, dēlītū-i, dēlītesc-ēre, 3 v. n. incept., *to lie hid, lurk; to hide one's self, skulk.* (de, lateo.)
- Delph-i**, orum, m., *Delphi*, now *Castri*, a town in Phocis, (Greece,) famed for the temple and oracle of Apollo.
- delphin**, *delphin-is* m., *a dolphin; also a constellation, the Dolphin; acc. delphina, abl. c: pl. nom. es, acc. as, gen. um.* (δελφίνω.)
- delphin-us**, i, m., *a dolphin.*
- dēlūbr-um**, i, n., *a shrine, temple, sacred place.* (Etymology doubtful. Said to contain the stem of *lu-o*, *to wash, purify.*)
- dēmess-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *dēmcto*.
- dēmēt-o**, dēmessū-i, dēmess-um, dēmēt-ēre, 3 v. a., *to cut down, reap, mow; cut off.* (de, meto, *to reap.*)
- Demetri-us**, i, m., *Demetrius*, called *Phalereus*, an Athenian, who ruled Athens for Cassander, king of Macedonia, for ten years.
- dēmigr-ātic**, dēmigrātōn-is, f., *a change of residence, migration, emigration.* (dēmigro.)
- dēmigr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., *to change residence; remove from, emigrate.* (de, migro.)
- dēmīnū-o**, i, (ū)tum, ēre, 3 v. a., *to take away from (so as to lessen), to lessen, make smaller, diminish.* (de, mīnuo, from *mīnus*.)
- dēmīss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *dēmītto*, generally used as an adj., *cast down; hanging down; low-lying, (appplied to places;) sunken; dispirited; humble; descended from.*
- dēmītt-o**, dēmītt-i, dēmīss-um, dēmītt-ēre, 3 v. a., *to hind down, send down (into a lower part;) drop, let sink.* (de, mītto.)
- dēmōnstr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to point out, indicate; state clearly, describe; prove.* (de, monstr-o.)
- dēmum**, adv., *at length, at last.* It is very often preceded by *nunc, tum*, *jam*, &c.: as, *Tum demum, then at length, or then indeed*—Cacs. B. G., i., 17. (Seems to contain the same root as *denique, donec, tandem*, &c.)
- dēnēg-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to say No; deny; refuse, decline, reject.* (de, neg-o.)
- dēn-i**, ae, a, distrib. num., *ten each; by tens.* (De-ni, for dec-ni [dec-em], like *bi-ni, ter-ni*, &c.)
- dēnique**, adv., *at length, at last, in fine, lastly; and then; thereupon.* (See dēmum.)
- dēns**, dent-is, m., *a tooth; hence, anv-*

- thing shaped like a tooth, as, *the fluke* (of an anchor); *the tooth* (of a saw); *point*. (Gr. ὀδούς, ὀδόντος; Fr. dent, &c.)
- dens-us**, a, um, *closely packed together, dense* (opposed to *rarus*), *close, thick*.
- dēpell-o**, dēpūl-i, dēpuls-um, dēpell-ēre, 3 v. a. *to drive down or away; cast down; expel; prevent* (from doing), *deter, dissuade*. (de, pello.)
- dēpēr-ō**, īl, īre, 4 v. n., *to go to ruin; perish, be lost*. (de, pereō.)
- dēping-o**, dēpīnz-l, dēpict-um, dēpīnz-ēre, 3 v. a., *to represent by painting, paint, depict; to describe* (in words). (de, pingo.)
- dēplōrāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *deploro*. *wept over, bewailed, deplored; given over as lost*.
- dēplōr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to weep over, lament bitterly; give over as lost*. (ploro.)
- dēpōn-o**, dēpōn-i, dēpōsit-um, dēpōn-ēre, 3 v. a., *to lay down; put aside, lay aside; deposit; intrust to; lay down,—i. e., give up, resign*. (pono.)
- dēpōpūl-t-us**, a, um, perf. part. of following, but used as perf. part. of *depopulo*, *plundered, ravaged*.
- dēpōpūl-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., *to ravage, lay waste, plunder, spoil; destroy*. (de, populor.)
- dēport-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to carry down or away; to banish*. (de, porto.)
- dēprēcātor**, dēprēcātor-is, m., *an intercessor, one who pleads for another* (to avert some evil from him.) (deprecor.)
- dēprēc-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., *to pray* (for the purpose of averting); *to entreat earnestly, beg*. (de, precor.)
- dēprēhend-o**, ī, deprehens-um, deprehend-ēre, 3 v. a., *to pounce upon, seize upon, arrest, catch; discover, find out; also, to comprehend, perceive*. (de,prehendo.)
- dēprendo**, contracted for deprehendo.
- dēpugn-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., *to fight out, struggle earnestly; bring to an end* (by fighting). (de, pugno.)
- dēpuls-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *depello*, *driven away from; baffled*.
- dērōg-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *literally, to repeal part of a law; hence, to take away from, detract, diminish*. (de, rogo.)
- dēscend-o**, ī, descens-um, descend-ēre, 3 v. n., *literally, to climb down; hence, to come or go down, descend, sink; to condescend to*. (de, scando.)
- dēscisc-o**, desciv-l, or īl, desceltum, descisc-ēre, 3 v. n., *to withdraw, leave; revolt*. (de, scisco.)
- dēscrib-o**, dēscrips-l, dēscript-um, dēscrib-ēre, 3 v. a., *to write down, copy out; sketch; explain; describe; mark off, divide allot*. (de, seribo.)
- dēsēr-o**, īl, tum, ēre, 3 v. a., *literally, to put down; hence, to leave, abandon, desert; fail*. (de, sero.)
- dēsertor**, dēsertōr-is, m., *one who leaves or abandons, a deserter, fugitive*. (desero.)
- dēsert-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *desero*, *abandoned, deserted, lonely; (of places,) waste, desert*.
- dēsīder-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to long for, yearn after, wish; hence, to feel the want of, miss; in pass., to be lost, or amissing*.—as, Nullus navis desideraretur, *no ship was amissing*. (See considero.)
- dēsīd-i-a**, ae, f., *a sitting (idly) down; hence, remissness, sloth, idleness, want of energy, indolence*. (desideo, and that from dē, sedeo.)
- dēsīgn-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to mark out, define, describe; regulate, arrange, appoint*. (dē, signo.)
- dēsīl-lo**, īl, desult-um, dēsīl-īre, 4 v. n., *to leap down; descend; disembark*. (de, sallo.)
- dēsīn-o**, dēsīvl, or desīl, dēsīt-um, dēsīn-ēre, 3 v. a. and n., *literally, to put down; hence, to leave alone, leave off, abandon; put an end to; cease, stop*. (de, sino.)
- dēsīst-o**, destīt-i, dēsīt-um, dēsīst-ēre, 3 v. a. and n., *to cause to stand down, set down; hence, n., to stand aloof; leave off, desist, give over*. (de, sisto.)
- dēsōlāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *desolo*, *left alone, abandoned, forsaken; waste*.
- dēsōl-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to leave alone, abandon, desert*. (de, and sōlo, from solus, alone.)
- dēsēr-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to be deprived of hope, to be hopeless; to give up, despair*. (de, spero.)
- dēspic-io**, despex-l, dēspect-um, dēspic-ēre, 3 v. n. and a., *to look down on, disdain, despise*. (Stem spec-, as in con-spīc-io, spec-to, spec-ies, &c.)

- dēstitū-o**, i, (n)um, ēre, 3 v. a., to set down: hence, to leave forsake, abandon; desist from. (de, statno.)
- dēstric-tus**, a, um, perf. part. of dēstringo, drawn forth; (of a sword, &c.) unsheathed.
- dēstring-o**, dēstrinx-i, dēstric-tum, dēstring-ēre, 3 v. a., to strip off (as, e.g., leaves from a twig;) to rub down; pull out, unsheathe. (de, stringo.)
- dēsūm**, dēsūi, dēesse, v. n. irreg., to be away, be absent, or amissing; to fail in one's duty; desert. (de, sum.)
- desūper**, adv., from above. (de, super. Fr. dessus.)
- dētēri-or**, or, us, gen. dētēriōr-is, (comp. of old adj., deterus, from de,) lower, inferior; worse; poorer.
- dētērr-ēo**, ui, Itum, ēre, 2 v. a., to frighten away from; deter, prevent; ward off. (de, terreo.)
- dētrāh-o**, dētrax-i, dētract-um, dētrāh-ēre, 3 v. a., to draw down or off; take down or away; diminish, detract. (de, traho.)
- dētriment-um**, i, n., a rubbing off: hence, damage, loss, detriment; defeat. (detero.)
- Deucālīon**, Deucālīōn-is, m., Deucalion, son of Prometheus, and husband of Pyrrha.
- dē-us**, i, m., a god, a deity. In the sing. the voc. is almost always deus; and in the pl. the forms dei, dii, and di occur for the nom.; and deis, diis, and dis for the dat. and abl. (θεός; Fr. dieu.)
- dēvēh-o**, dēvēx-i, dēvēct-um, dēvēh-ēre, 3 v. a., to carry down or away; take away, convey. (de, veho.)
- dēvinc-iō**, devinx-i, devinct-um, dēvinc-ēre, 4 v. a., to bind down, tie, fasten; bind together; confine, restrict; put under an obligation; overcome. (de, vincio.)
- dēvinc-o**, dēvinc-i, dēvinc-tum, dēvinc-ēre, 3 v. a., to subdue entirely, conquer, overcome. (de, vinco.)
- dēvōr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to gulp down, devour, swallow greedily; engulf; absorb. (de, voro.)
- dēvōtiō**, dēvōtiōn-is, f., a devoting, setting apart, or consecrating: hence, cursing, execration—i.e., devoting to the infernal gods; a curse. (devoco.)
- dēvōv-ēo**, devōv-i, dēvōt-um, dēvōv-ēre, 2 v. a., to vow; devote, set apart; de-
- dicare; curse, execrate. See devotio. (de, voveo.)
- dexter**, dextēr-a, dextēr-um, usually syncopated into dextra and dextrum, on the right side, right: hence, (from the mode of taking auguries,) favourable, lucky, propitious; suitable; also, skilful, handy, dexterous. Comp. dexterior; superl. dextimus. (δεξιός.)
- dextēr-a**, or dextr-a, ae, f., (i.e., manus,) the right hand: hence the phrase, A dextra, on the right.
- Diān-a**, ae, f., Diana, daughter of Jupiter and Latona; goddess of hunting and of woods. She ruled the night, under the name of Luna. In the lower regions she was known as Hecate. (I or L.)
- dicio**. See ditio.
- dīc-o**, dix-i, dict-um, dīc-ēre, 3 v. a., to point out: hence, to say, tell, declare, relate, describe; name, nominate, appoint. (Cf. δεικ-νυμι, dig-itus, in-dicare; Fr. dire.)
- dīc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to dedicate devote, consecrate; make over to; appropriate. (Etymology doubtful.)
- dictātor**, dictatōr-is, m., a dictator,—i.e., an extraordinary magistrate possessing supreme power. (dicto, freq. from dico.)
- dictio**, dictiōn-is, f., literally, a saying or speaking: hence, a pleading or defending; a speech. (dico.)
- dict-um**, i, n., a saying, word; command. (dico.)
- didici**, perf. ind. of disco, —which see.
- dies**, diēi, m. or f. in sing., in pl. m., a day (in all senses); day-light; time (generally); a period of time.
- differ-o**, distāl-i, dilāt-um, differ-re, v. a. and n. irreg., to carry in different directions: hence, to scatter, spread abroad, publish; put asunder; put off, protract: n., be different, differ. (di, fero.)
- difficil-is**, is, e, (comp. difficilior, superl. difficillimus), difficult, troublesome; hard to manage, obstinate; hard to please. (dis, facilis.)
- difficultas**, difficultāt-is, f., difficulty; hardship, distress. (difficil is the old form of difficilis.)
- diffid-o**, diffisus (sum), diffid-ēre, 3 v. n. semi-dep., to have no faith in, be distrustful of; despair. (dis, fido.)

- diffūg-io**, diffūg-i, diffūg-ēre, 3 v. n., *to flee in different directions; to disperse, scatter.* (dis, fugio.)
- diffund-o**, diffūd-l, diffūs-um, diffund-ēre, 3 v. a., *to pour forth; scatter, spread abroad.* (dis, fundo.)
- dignitas**, dignitāt-is, f., *worthiness, worth, merit; dignity; grandeur; rank; excellence; splendour.* (dignus.)
- dign-us**, a, um, *worthy; suitable, becoming.* (Stem die, as in die-o, dignus, &c.)
- diligens**, diligēt-is, part. pres. of diligo, and adj., *working (one's work); diligent, attentive.*
- diligenter**, adv., *earnestly, diligently, assiduously; carefully.* (diligens.)
- diligenti-a**, ae, f., *earnestness, diligence, attentiveness; carefulness.* (diligens.)
- diligentius**, adv., compar. of diligenter, *more earnestly, &c.*
- dilig-o**, dilēx-l, dilēct-um, dilig-ēre, 3 v. a., *literally, to choose apart from others: hence, to esteem highly, value; love.* (dis, lego.)
- dīmīc-o**, āvi (or nl), ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *literally, to brandish armour (or make armour glitter by brandishing) on both sides: hence, to fight, contend, struggle.* (dis, mīco.)
- dīmīdi-um**, i, n., *the half.* (dīmīdus.)
- dīmīdi-us**, a, um, *literally, by or through the middle: hence, half.* (dis, medius.)
- dīmītt-o**, dīmīs-l, dīmīss-um, dīmītt-ēre, 3 v. a., *to send in different directions: hence, to dismiss, send away; let go, release; abandon, give up.* (dis, mitto.)
- Dindŷm-a**, orum, n. pl., (or Dindym-us, i, m.) *Mount Dindymus, in Mysia.*
- Dirc-e**, es, f., *Dirce, a fountain in Boeotia.*
- direct-us**, a, um, perf. part. of dirigo, *made straight, straight; level; steep, &c.*
- dirig-o**, dirēx-l, dirēct-um, dirig-ēre, 3 v. a., *to make straight, put in a straight line, (as, e.g., troops in battle); to direct, set in order, guide.* (dis, rego.)
- dirīm-o**, dirēm-l, dirēpt-um, dirīm-ēre, 3 v. a., *to take asunder, separate, divide; put an end to; stop, interrupt.* (dir for dis, and emo. See adimo, promo, &c.)
- dirīp-lo**, ui, dirēpt-um, dirīp-ēre, 3 v. a., *to tear asunder, or in pieces; to ravage, plunder, lay waste; carry off.* (dis, rapio.)
- dis**, an inseparable partiele, more usually in the shorter form di. It means, (1) before verbs, *asunder, apart, in pieces, separate*; (2) the opposite of the simple verb, —as, *Displeceo, to displease*; (3) before adjectives, *difference, or negation: as, Dissonus, discordant* (in sound); *Dissimilis, unlike, or not like.*
- dis**, contracted for diis, dat. and abl. pl. of deus.
- dis**, n. dite, gen. dit-is, adj., for dives, *rich: comp. ditior; sup. rl. ditissimus.*
- discēd-o**, discēss-l, discēss-um, discēd-ēre, 3 v. n., *to go asunder, separate; go away, leave, depart.* (dis, eedo.)
- discern-o**, discērēv-l, discērēt-um, discērēre, 3 v. a., *to separate, divide; to distinguish (between); decide, judge.* (dis, cerno.)
- disciplīn-a**, ae, f., *learning, training, teaching: hence, knowledge, science; discipline; military tactics; custom, habit.* (Full form is discipulina, from discipulus.)
- disc-o**, didīc-i, disc-ēre, 3 v. a., *to learn (by study); become acquainted with.* (Original form, die-sco, from root die. See doe-co.)
- discrimen**, dīserīmīn-ls, n., *that which separates; a difference, distinction: hence, an interval, division, separation; a crisis, turning-point.* (dis and eri; same root as cer, in cerno, erimen, κρίνω, &c.)
- disert-us**, a, um, *fluent (in speech), eloquent: hence, accomplished, elegant.* (Etymology doubtful. Some say from dissero, but di- is short: others, from dis- and the stem of ars, the a being changed to e, as in in-ers, in-ert-ls; —variously skilled, or accomplished, would, in that case, be the primary meaning.)
- disiect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of disjelo, *scattered.*
- disjic-io**, disjēc-l, disjēct-um, disjēct-ēre, 3 v. a., *to throw in different directions; scatter, disperse; break in pieces, destroy.* (dis, jūcio.)
- dispāl-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. n. dep., *to wander about, straggle, roam.* (dis, and palor, *to wander.*)
- dispār**, gen. dispār-is, adj., (see par,) *unequal, unlike, different.*
- disperg-o**, dispērs-l, dispērs-um, dis-

- perg-ĕre, 3 v. a., to scatter about, fling here and there, ~ disperse, distribute; separate. (dis, spargo.)
- dispers-us**, a, um, perf. part. of dispergo, scattered, &c.
- displic-eo**, ūl, itum, ĕre, 2 v. n., to displease, be offensive to. (dis, placeo.)
- dispōn-o**, dispōsū-i, dispōsit-um, dispōn-ĕre, 3 v. a., to set or station in different places, (c.g., praesidia), distribute; set in order, arrange. (dis, pono.)
- dispūt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to examine; reckon; discuss. (dis, puto.)
- dissensio**, dissensio-nis, f., difference of opinion; disagreement, discord. (dissentio.)
- dissentio**, dissens-i, dissens-um, dissent-ĕre, 4 v. n., to think differently; disagree; dissent from. (dis, sentio.)
- dissid-eo**, dissid-ē-i, dissid-ēss-um, dissid-ĕre, 2 v. n., to sit apart: hence, to be at enmity; disagree, be unlike, differ from. (dis, sedeo.)
- dissil-io**, ūl, ĩre, 4 v. n., to burst asunder or open; split. (dis, solio.)
- dissimil-is**, is, e, unlike, dissimilar. (See similis for comp. and superl.)
- dissimilitūd-o**, dissimilitūdī-nis, f., want of resemblance, unlikeness, difference. (dissimilis.)
- dissimul-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to pretend what is not the case, dissemble; hide, conceal. (dis, simulo.)
- dissolūt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of dissolvō, used as a simple adj., loose; remiss, careless; licentious, dissolute.
- dissolv-o**, i, dissolūt-um, dissolv-ĕre, 3 v. a., to unloose, separate; break up; destroy. (dis, solvo.)
- dissuād-eo**, dissuās-i, dissuās-um, dissuād-ĕre, 2 v. a., to advise against, dissuade. (dis, suadeo.)
- dist-o**, āre, 1 v. n., to stand apart, be separate; be distant; differ. (dis, sto.)
- distribū-o**, i, (n)itum, ĕre, 3 v. a., to distribute, divide, apportion, assign. (dis, tribuo.)
- district-us**, a, um, perf. part. of distringo, distracted (by many occupations); busily occupied, engaged.
- distring-o**, distrinx-i, district-um, distring-ĕre, 3 v. a., literally, to press tightly in different parts; draw in different directions; occupy, engage; hinder. (dis, stringo.)
- dītio**, dītio-nis, f., (sometimes written dicitio) sovereignty, authority, power, rule, dominion. Used in gen., dat., acc., and abl. sing.
- dītissim-us**, a, um, superl. of dis, for dives,—which see.
- dīt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make rich, enrich. (dis, dit-is.)
- dīū**, adv., a long time. (Old abl. of dies, literally, by day.)
- diurn-us**, a, um, belonging to a day, daily; by day. (dies. Cf. Fr. jour.)
- dīūtissimē**, adv., superl. of diu, for a very long time.
- dīūtius**, adv., longer. Compar. of diu.
- dīūturni-or**, or, us, compar. of diurnus, of longer duration, more lengthened.
- dīūturnit-as**, diūturnitāt-is, f., length of time, long duration. (diurnus.)
- dīūturn-us**, a, um, of long duration, lasting. (diu.)
- divell-o**, i, divuls-um, divĕll-ĕre, 3 v. a., to pull asunder, tear, rend, separate. (dis, velio.)
- divers-us**, a, um, perf. part. of diverto, turned in different ways; opposite; separate, apart, by themselves; different, unlike; made of contrasts.
- dīvēs**, gen. divit-is, adj., (see dis, dite, gen. dit-is,) rich: also, valuable, splendid. The nom. and acc. pl. n. are not found. Compar. divitior (shortened form, ditior), and superl. divitissimus (shortened form, ditissimus). Thought to contain the same root as div-us, dens.)
- Divico**, Divicō-nis, m., Divico, a Helvetian chief.
- divid-o**, divis-i, divīs-um, divid-ĕre, 3 v. a., to separate (into parts), divide; distribute, assign (to each of a number); to keep (two things) separate; form a boundary; divide. (dis, and the root vid, which appears in vidn-us, bereft of, and in vid-co, to separate between, distinguish, see.)
- dīvin-us**, a, um, belonging to a deity, divine. (divus.)
- divis-us**, a, um, perf. part. of divido, divided, separated, &c.
- Divitiac-us**, i, m., Divitiacus, chief of the Aedui at the time of the Gallic war. His brother was Dumnorix.
- dīviti-ae**, arum, f. pl., riches, wealth. (dives.)
- dīv-us**, a, um, divine: usually as a

- subst., a deity, god. (Same root as dens.)
- dō**, dēd-i, dāt-nm, d-āre, 1 v. a.: First, to put, or place,—as in the phrase, Dare in fugam. Secondly, to give, bestow, grant, afford; offer. (Gr. δό-, stem of δίδωμι. Cf do-num.)
- dōc-eo**, ui, tum, ēre, 2 v. a., to teach, instruct, inform; tell, relate. (Root doc, or die, as in die-o; so that the primary meaning is, to point out.)
- doctor**, doctōr-is, m., one who teaches, a teacher, instructor. (doceo.)
- dōcūment-um**, i, n., a lesson, example, warning; a proof, specimen. (doceo.)
- dōl-ēo**, ul, itum, ēre, 2 v. n. and a., to feel pain, ache; to grieve for, lament, bewail.
- dōlor**, dōlōr-is, m., pain; grief, sorrow.
- dōl-us**, i, m., an artifice; guile, deceit, fraud, treachery. (δόλος.)
- domestic-us**, a, um, belonging to the house or family; domestic, household; private; hence, of one's country, national; native; internal (as of war:) as subst., in the pl., the member of a household (whether of the family proper, or of slaves). (domus.)
- dōmi**, gen. of domus, but used as an adv., at home; in one's own country; at peace, (as opposed to belli or militiæ.)
- dōmicili-um**, i, n., a house, domicile, abode, residence. (domus.)
- dōmīn-a**, ae, f., an owner; a mistress (of a household); a lady. (Hence, Ital. donna, and other similar words in Spanish, French, and English.)
- dōminātio**, dominātiōn-is, f., power (imparted by ownership), authority, rule; sovereignty; tyranny. (dominus.)
- dōmīn-us**, i, m., the master of a house; owner, possessor; master, lord, ruler. (domus.)
- dōmīt-us**, a, um, perf part. of domo, subdued, &c.
- dōm-o**, ul, itum, āre, 1 v. a., to tame, subdue, conquer, overcome. (Cf. δαμάω.)
- dōm-us**, us, and i, f., a house, home; a family; native country. (δῶμος. Fr. dome.)
- dōnēc**, conj., as long as; while; until. Old form, donieum. (Probably same stem as den-ique.)
- dōn-o**, āvi, ātnm, āre, 1 v. a., to present as a gift, bestow, grant, confer. (don-um.)
- dōn-um**, i, n., a gift, present. (do Cf. δῶρον.)
- Dōris**, Dorīd-is, f., Doris, a daughter of Oceanus, wife of Nerens, and the mother of fifty sea-nymphs.
- dōs**, dōt-is, f., a marriage portion, dowry: a gift, endowment. (do. Cf. δόσις.)
- Druid-es**, um, m., (or Druid-ae, arum,) the Druids, priests of the Gauls and Britons.
- Dūb-is**, is, m., the Dubis, a river of Gaul, now called Doubs.
- dūbitātio**, dubitātiōn-is, f., uncertainty, wavering, hesitation, doubt. (dubito.)
- dūbit-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., to be in uncertainty, to hesitate, waver, doubt. (dubitus.)
- dūbi-um**, i, n. of dubius, sometimes used substantively: as, Esse in dubio, to be in doubt; Sine dubio, without doubt.
- dūbi-us**, a, um, wavering, fluctuating; doubtful, uncertain; irresolute, undecided; dangerous; critical. (dno.)
- dūcent-i**, ae, a, two hundred. (duo, centum.)
- dūc-o**, dux-i, duct-um, dūc-ēre, 3 v. a., to lead, conduct, guide; draw; construct (e.g., Murum et fossam, a wall and a ditch); lead on, entice; reckon, consider, think; protract, &c.: Ducere uxorem, to marry a wife.
- dulc-is**, is, e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable, charming; dear.
- dum**, conj., whilst; so long as; until; provided that.
- Dumnorix**, Dumnōrig-is, m., Dumnorix, an Aeduan chief.
- dū-ō**, ae, o, num. adj., two.
- dūdēcim**, num. adj., indecl., twelve. (duo, decem.)
- duplex**, gen. duplēt-is, adj., twofold, double. (duo, and plec, or plie, root of plico, to fold.)
- duplic-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make twofold, to double, add as many again. (duplex.)
- dūrī-ti-a**, ae, f., hardness; hardship; austerity (in living.) (durus.)
- dūrī-ti-es**, ēi, f., hardness, &c. (See duritia.)
- dūr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., to make hard, harden; make hardy, injure: n., to be hard; be hardened or injured to; last, endure. (durus.)

B

4

I

K-L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

dūr-us, a, um, *hard; harsh, rude, stern, unfeeling; troublesome; hard to bear.*
Dur-us, l, m., *Durus.* (Q. *Laberius*), a Roman tribune.

dux, dūc-is, m. or f., *a leader, guide; commander* (of troops). Same stem as in *dūco*, but the quantity differs.

E.

e, prep. with abl., *out of; from; since; after.* e is used only before consonants, *ex* before vowels. The more common form, even before consonants, is *ex*,—which see.

ēbur, ēbūr-is, n., *ivory; anything made of ivory*, (as a statue, a pipe, a scabbard.)

ecce, interj., *lo! behold! see here!*

ecqui, *ecquae*, or *ecqua*, *ecquid*, interrog. pron., *any; if any.*

ecquis, *ecquid*, interrog. pron., *anything? does any one? who?* (ce, from *ecce*, and *quis*.)

ēdisc-o, ēdidic-i, ēdisc-ēre, 3 v. a., *to learn thoroughly, learn by heart.* (e, *diseo*.)

ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, ēd-ere, 3 v. a., *to eat, consume.* Pres. contracted, *edis* into *ēs*, *edit* into *ēst*, &c.

ēd-o, ēdi, itum, ēre, 3 v. a., *to give forth, emit; publish, proclaim; bring forth, bear, produce.* (e, *do*.)

ēdūc-o, *eduxi*, *eductum*, ēdūc-ēre, 3 v. a., *to lead forth or out; to march out* (troops). (e, *dūco*.)

ēdūc-o, ēvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to bring out* (the qualities, bodily or mental): hence, *to bring up* (a child), *train, educate; nurture.* (*educere*.)

effect-us, a, um, perf. part. of *efficio*, *worked out, completed, finished.*

effemīn-o, ēvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to make a woman of, effeminate; enervate.* (e, *femina*.)

effēro, extūli, ēlatum, efferre, 3 v. a. irreg., *to bring out, carry forth; carry out for burial; bury; divulge, publish; raise; extol.* (e, *fero*.)

efficio, effeci, effectum, effic-ēre, 3 v. a., *to work out, execute, accomplish; cause, bring about; take care that: Efficere classem, to equip a fleet.* (e, *facio*.)

effi-o, ēvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to blow or breathe forth: Efflare animam, to expire, die.*

effod-io, effodi, effossum, effod-ēre, 3 v. u., *to dig up or out.* (e, *foodio*.)

effūg-io, effūg-i, effūg-itum, effūg-ere, 3 v. n. and a., *to flee away from, escape, elude.* (e, *figio*.)

effulg-eo, effulsi, effulg-ēre, 2 v. n., *to shine forth, glean, glitter.* (e, *fulgeo*.)
effund-o, effudi, effusum, effund-ēre, 3 v. a., *to pour forth or out; shed, discharge; bring forth, produce; lavish, squander: in a collective sense, to pour or gush forth* (as a river.)

effūs-us, a, um, perf. part. of *effundo*, *poured forth; spread abroad: hence, wide, extensive: (of hair,) dishevelled.*

ēg-eo, ni, ēre, 2 v. a. and n., *to be in need, be destitute of, be poor, be without; want* (in the sense of *wish for*).

ēgestas, ēgestat-is, f., *need, poverty, want, destitution.* (*egeo*.)

ēgo, mel, 1 pers. pron., *I: pl. nos, we.*

ēgrēdi-or, *egressus*, ēgrēd-i, 3 v. n. and a. dep., *to go forth or out: march out, (of troops;) disembark* (from a ship); *go beyond, leave, pass bounds, exceed; go up, climb, ascend.* (e, *gradior*.)

ēgrēgiē, adv., *in an eminent manner; notably, conspicuously; exceedingly.* (*egregia*.)

ēgrēgi-us, a, um, *out of the* (common) *herd; extraordinary, conspicuous, notable; excellent.* (e, *grex*.)

ēgress-us, a, um, perf. part. of *egredior*, *having gone out, &c.*

ēgress-us, ūs, m., *a going out, departure; disembarkation, landing.* (*egredior*.)

ējācūl-or, ātus, āri, 1 v. dep., *to shoot out; hurl out.* (e, *jaucior*.)

ējēctāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of *ejecto*, *flung out; thrown up.*

ējēct-o, ēvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freq., *to fling out or up; hurl up; belch forth.* (*ejicio*.)

ējēct-us, a, um, perf. part. of *ejicio*, *thrown out.*

ējicio, ējeci, ēject-um, ējē-ēre, 3 v. a., *to throw or cast out, expel; banish.* (e, *jaicio*.)

ēlābor, elapsus, elābi, 3 v. n. dep., *to escape from, avoid.* (e, *labor*.)

ēlaps-us, a, um, perf. part. of elabor.
ēlāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of efferō, *carried out; buried, &c.*
ēlēgans, gen. elegant-is, adj., *fastidious; luxurious; choice, tasteful, elegant.* (Said to be another form of eligens, from eligo, *to choose out.*)
ēlément-a, orum, n. pl., *elements, first principles; beginnings.*
ēlément-um, i, n., *an element.* Sing. of preceding, which is more common. (Etymology doubtful.)
ēlēphant-us, i, m., *an elephant.*
ēlēphās, ēlēphant-is, m., *an elephant; ivory.*
ēlig-o, ēlig-i, ēlectum, ēlig-ēre, 3 v. a., *to pick out, choose, select.* (e, lego.)
Ēlis, Ēlīd-is, (or os.) f., *Ēlis*, a district of the Peloponnese: acc. Elin, or Ellidem.
ēlōquenti-a, ac, f., *the art of speaking; eloquence.* (cloquor.)
ēmend-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to free from faults; improve; correct, amend.* (mendum, *a fault*)
ēmīc-o, ui, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., *to spring out or forth; rush; dart forth, or forward.* (e, mīco, *to move quickly.*)
ēmigr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., *to remove from, depart; emigrate.* (e, migro.)
ēmīn-us, adv., *at a distance; from afar.* (e, manus. It is opposed to comminus,—which see.)
ēmītt-o, ēmis-i, ēmiss-um, ēmitt-ēre, 3 v. a., *to send forth or out, despatch; let fall.* (e, mitto.)
ēm-o, ēm-i, empt-um, ēm-ēre, 3 v. a., *to buy, purchase; gain over.* (The original meaning is, *to take or receive.*)
ēn, interj., *lo! behold! see!*
ēnim, conj., (used to introduce a reason or proof.) *the reason is, for, for instance; (to strengthen an assertion,) indeed, to be sure, certainly.*
ēnimvēro, adv., *in very truth, indeed, undoubtedly.* (enim, vero.)
ēnit-or, ēnis-us, or enix-us, ēnit-i, 2. v. n. and a. dep., *to struggle out or upwards; climb, ascend; exert one's self; struggle, strive:* a., *bring forth, bear.* (e, nitōr.)
ens-is, is, m., *a sword.*
ēnūmēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to count out or up, reckon; relate, tell.* (e, numero.)

ēnunti-o, āvi, ātum, āre, (or enuncio,) 1 v. a., *to tell publicly, disclose, declare, announce.* (e, nuntio.)
ēō, īvi, or īi, itum, īre, 4 v. n. irreg., *to go.* (of all kinds of motion; as, *to walk, ride, drive, sail, &c.*) The stem of eo is i, which becomes e before the vowels a, o, and u: as, eam (not iam), eo (not io), eunt (not iunt). In the passive voice it is used impersonally: as, Itur, *it is gone.*—i.e., *men go; itum est, &c.* Infin. pass., īri: as in amatum īri, lectum īri, &c.
ēō, adv., (old abl. or dat. [for cōi] of is, ea, id.) *in this (place or thing); to this, thither; to this degree, to such a pitch; on this account, therefore.* It often stands as the correlative of quo, thus: quo -eo, *by how much—by so much; or, in what proportion—in that proportion,* (i.e., *in proportion as;*) or, *the more—the more.*
ēōdem, adv., (old abl. or dat. of idem,) *in the same (place, thing, way, manner, &c.); to the same (place, &c.); to the same position, point, or degree.* (See note, Caes. B. C., l. 14, 12.) Some take eodem for eodnem, an old form of the accus. of idem.
Ēō-us, i, m., *Ēōus*, one of the horses of the Sun-god; also, the *Morning Star:* as an adj., cō-us, a, um, *belonging to the morning; eastern.*
Ēphēs-us, i, f., *Ephesus*, a great city of Ionia, celebrated for its extensive commerce, and for a magnificent temple of Diana.
ēphōr-us, i, m., *an ephor, or chief magistrate* (at Sparta).
Ephyr-ē, ēs, or Ephyr-a, ae, f., *Ephyre*, another name for Corinth.
Ēpimēth-eus, ei, m., *Epimetheus*, son of Japetus, and father of Pyrrha.
Ēpimēth-is, Idis, f., *patronymic daughter of Epimetheus.*—i.e., Pyrrha.
ēpistol-a, ae, f., *an epistle, letter.* (ἐπιστολή.)
ēpūl-ae, ārum, f., *the heterocelte pl. of the following.*
ēpūl-um, i, n., pl. epulae, f., *a banquet, feast; sumptuous meal.*
ēquēs, ēquit-is, m., *a horseman, rider; a horse-soldier.* In the sing., eques, as a collective noun, means occasionally, *a body of cavalry, or the body of (Roman) knights or equites: the pl., equites, is*

B
H
I
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
Y

- very often used of the *Roman knights*. (eques.)
- ēquester**, or *equestr-is*, is, e, *belonging to a horseman, to cavalry, or to the knights; equestrian*. (eques.)
- ēquidem**, adv., *indeed, truly; of course*. It is usually joined to nouns of the first person. (ego, quidem; or, according to some, e intensive, and quidem.)
- ēquitāt-us**, ūs, m., literally, *a riding*; hence, *a body of horse-soldiers, cavalry*. (equito, to ride.)
- ēqu-us**, i, m., *a horse*.
- Ērätosthēn-es**, is, m., *Eratosthenes* (of Cyrene), famed as an astronomer, geographer, historian, grammarian, philosopher, and poet. He was placed over the celebrated library of Alexandria by Ptolemy Euergetes. Born B.C. 276; died 196.
- ērept-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *eriplo*, *snatched away, carried off; rescued, &c.*
- Ēretri-a**, ae, f., *Eretria*, chief city of the island Euboea (Negropont.)
- ergā**, prep. with acc., (turned) *towards; opposite to, against; with reference to*. (Said to be for *verga*, from *vergo*, — which see.)
- ergō**, adv., (sometimes *ergō*), *on account of, (with genitive;)* therefore, *accordingly, hence, (in argument)*.
- Ēridān-us**, i, m., *Eridanus*—i.e., the Po — a famous river of Italy.
- ērīg-o**, ērex-i, ērectum, ērīg-ēre, 3 v. a., *to set straight up, erect; raise, build; raise one's self, rise*. (e, rego.)
- ērīp-io**, ul, erept-um, ērīp-ēre, ? v. a., *to snatch away from, pluck from; nence, deliver, rescue, free*. (e, rapio.)
- err-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to wander, roam; to wander from the way, stray; mistake, err*.
- error**, erōr-is, m., *a wandering; a mistake, error; uncertainty*. (erro.)
- ērūd-io**, ivl, or il, itum, īre, 4 v. a., literally, *to bring out of a rough state*; hence, *to bring out (the faculties); teach, educate, polish*. (rudis.)
- ērūdīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *erudio*, *educated, taught, &c.*
- ērumpo**, ērūp-i, erupt-um, ērump-ēre, 3 v. a. and n., *to burst forth; cause to burst; n., to break out; sally forth*. (e, rumpo.)
- ēruptio**, eruptiōn-is, f., *a bursting forth; a sally*. (e, rumpo.)
- Ērymanth-us**, i, m., *Erymanthus*, the name of a mountain in Arcadia, and also of a river rising in the mountain.
- Ēryx**, Erȳe-is, m., *Eryx*, a mountain on the west coast of Sicily, celebrated for a temple of Venus.
- ēscend-o**, i, escens-um, escend-ēre, 3 v. n. and a., *to climb up or out of; to mount, ascend; embark*. (e, seando.)
- essēdāri-us**, i, m., *a fighter in a war-chariot*. (essedum.) See note on Cacs. B. G., iv. 24, 2, p. 224.
- essēd-um**, i, n., (very rarely *essēd-a*, ae.) *a war-chariot* (with two wheels.) It was used by the Gauls and Britons. The pl. form, *essed-a, orum*, is more commonly found than the sing.
- ēt**, conj., *and; and moreover*: et—et, both—and. After *similis, par, idem, &c.*, it is to be translated, *as, than*.
- ētiam**, conj. and adv., *and also, besides, moreover; even; nay, even; (of time,) as yet; still*: Etiam atque etiam, *again and again*. (et, jam.)
- ētiamnum**, conj. and adv., *even now, even till now, yet, still; moreover*.
- ētiamnunc**, same as preceding.
- Etrūrī-a**, ae, f., *Etruria*, a province of Italy; now Tuscany.
- etsi**, conj., *even if, although, even though*. (et, si.)
- Euboe-a**, ae, f., *Euboea*, now Negropont, an island on the east of Greece.
- Eumēn-es**, is, m., *Eumenes*, king of Pergamos (B.C. 197-159), son and successor of Attalus I. Also another Eumenes, one of the generals of Alexander the Great, and governor of Cappadocia and other provinces of Asia Minor, died B.C. 316.
- Eumolpid-ae**, ārum, m., *the Eumolpidae*, (i.e., descendants of Eumolpus, who introduced the Eleusinian mysteries into Attica,) a family of priests at Athens.
- Euphrāt-es**, is, m., *Euphrates*, a famous river of Syria.
- Eurōp-a**, ae, (also *Europ-e*, es,) f., *Europe*. Also, the daughter of King Agenor, and sister of Cadmus, the Phoenician.
- Eurōt-as**, ae, m., *Eurotas*, a river of Laconia; now Vasillipotaino.

Eu
Eu
n
a
v
ēvā
i
p
v
ēvē
s
to
fo
ēvel
er
(e
ēvēr
ou
ēven
iss
ēvit
av
ēvōc
for
ēvōl-
rus
ex, p
and
ant
(of
die,
Sine
an
at,
a co
a pa
usu,
conf
ex s
beca
of (i
exact
done
polis
exadv
prep
exāgi
drive
rouse
exāmi
weigh
a bal
exāni

Eur-us, i, m., *Eurus*,—i.e., the south-east wind; the east.

Eurybiad-es, is, m., *Eurybiades*, commander of the Laedemonian forees at the battle of Salamis.

Ēvād-o, evās-l, evās-um, ēvād-ĕre, 3 v. n. and a., to go forth or up; escape. (e, vado.)

Ēvānesc-o, ēvānūl, ēvānese-ĕre, 3 v. n. lucept., to vanish from sight, disappear. (vanesco, to pass away; from vanus.)

Ēvĕh-o, evex-i, evcet-um, ēvĕh-ĕre, 3 v. s., to carry out or up; raise, exalt; extol: in a reflective sense, to ride or sail forth. (e, vcho.)

Ēvell-o, i, (or evuls.), evuis-um, ēvell-ĕre, 3 v. a., to pluck out or off; tear out. (e, vello.)

Ēvĕn-io, (ē)l, tum, ĩre, 4 v. n., to come out; come to pass, happen. (e, venio.)

Ēvent-us, ūs, m., an event, occurrence; issue; fate, lot. (evenio.)

Ēvīt-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to shun, avoid. (e, vito.)

Ēvōc-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to call forth, summon. (e, voco.)

Ēvōl-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., to fly forth; rush forth, sally. (e, volo.)

EX, prep. with abi., (used before vowels and consonants; e only before consonants.) out of, from; off; from out of; (of time,) from, since, after, (Diem ex die, day after day;) immediately after. Since it indicates the place from which an action originates, it comes to mean at, in, on: as, Ex equis colloqui, to hold a conference on horseback; Ex acquo, on a par; Ex improviso, on a sudden; Ex usu, of advantage. It also means, in conformity with: as, Ex literis Caesaris, ex senatus consulto. Also, by reason, because of: as, Ex aere alieno, because of (in consequence of) debt.

exact-us, a, um, perf. part. of exigo, done thoroughly, finished, completed; polished; exact, accurate.

exadversum, or exadversus, adv. and prep., over against, opposite.

exāgit-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freq., to drive out often, or vigorously; stir up, rouse; harass, torment. (ex, agito.)

exāmin-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to weigh; adjust. (Examen, the tongue of a balance.)

Āxānim-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to

deprive of life, kill, put to death; exhaust; terrify. (exanimis, from ex, anlua.)

exaud-io, ĩvl, ĩtum, ĩre, 4 v. a., to hear distinctly; attend to, regard. (ex, audio.)

excĕd-o, exeessi, excessum, excĕd-ĕre, 3 v. n. and a., to go out or away, depart; retire, withdraw: a., go beyond, exceed; transgress. (ex, cedo.)

excellens, excellent-is, part. of excello, and adj., raised up; high; surpassing, distinguished, excellent.

excell-o, ui, (excelsum,) excell-ĕre, 3 v. a. and n., to raise above, exalt: n., raise one's self, rise; be eminent, surpass. (No simple verb cello, but cf. antecello, percello.)

excels-us, a, um, perf. part. of excello, high, lofty, towering.

except-us, a, um, perf. part. of excipio, taken out of, excepted, &c.

excĭd-o, i, ĕre, 3 v. n., to fall out, or down, or from; to slip out (unawares); to fall in; perish. (ex, cado.)

exc-lo, ĩvl, or ĩi, ĩtum, or ĩtum, ĩre, 4 v. a., to bring forth; call forth, summon; excite; cause. (ex, cieo, or cio.)

excĭp-io, excĕpi, exceptum, excĭp-ĕre, 3 v. a., to take out or away (from others); except; take up in succession; capture; receive; await, (Caes. B. G., i., 52, 9;) attend, listen to. (ex, copio.)

excĭt-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freq., to rouse up, excite; kindle or stir up; call out (hastily or earnestly.) (exclo.)

exclūd-o, exclūs-l, exclūs-um, exclūd-ĕre, 3 v. a., to shut out, exclude; drive out; remove. (ex, claudio.)

excōgit-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to think out, or thoroughly; ponder, consider carefully, reflect, meditate: hence, devise, invent. (ex, cogito.)

excruc-io, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to torment, torture. (ex, cruelo.)

excursio, excursiō-is, f., a running out, a sally; attack, inroad; expedition; foray. (excuro.)

excūs-o, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to relieve from an accusation; excuse; offer an apology for, plead an excuse. (ex, causa. So accuso, from ad, causa, to lay blame on one, accuse.)

exempl-um, i, n., a specimen, sample; model, type; copy; instance. (Etymology doubtful. Some think the

E
F
G
H
I
J
K-L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y

- word comes from *exino*; and others, from *ex* and the adj. *amplus*, a thing "taken out" of many, or from "out of a large supply.")
- EXEO**, *exivi*, or *exii*, *exitum*, *exire*, 4 v. n. irreg., to go out or forth, depart, leave; (of time,) pass, expire. (ex, eo.)
- EXERC-EO**, *ni*, *Itum*, *ere*, 2 v. a., to exercise, practise, train, drill; harass; use, employ. (ex, and *arceo*, implying restraint and compulsion; or, according to others, the stem is to be traced to the Greek *ἐργον*, work.)
- EXERCITATIO**, *exercitatio*-is, f., exercise, practice; skill. (*exercito*.)
- EXERCIT-US**, *us*, m., literally, exercise: hence, figuratively, a body of men on drill; an army, a host. (*exerceo*.)
- EXHAUR-IO**, *exhaus-i*, *exhaust-um*, *exhaust-ire*, 4 v. a., to draw out; empty, drain, exhaust. (ex, *hauro*.)
- EXHAUST-US**, *a*, *um*, perf. part. of *exhausto*.
- EXHERED-O**, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, 1 v. a., to disinherit. (ex, *heres*, an heir.)
- EXHORR-EO**, *ere*, 2 v. n., to be horrified; be terrified, be frightened. (ex, *horreo*.)
- EXHORRESCO-O**, *exhorr-ni*, *exhorrese-ere*, 3 v. n. and ∞. incept., to tremble; slunder; be terrified: a., dread; tremble-at. (ex, *horresco*.)
- EXIG-O**, *exegi*, *exact-um*, *exig-ere*, 3 v. a., to drive or lead out; banish; exact, demand, require; conclude, finish, complete. (ex, *ago*.)
- EXIGUITAS**, *exiguitas*-is, f., smallness, scantiness, shortness. (*exiguus*.)
- EXIGU-US**, *a*, *um*, small, scanty, short, tiny; delicate (in frame.) (From *exigo*, like *contiguus* from *contingo*; or from *egen*.)
- EXISTIMATIO**, *existimatio*-is, f., a judging, judgment, opinion; reputation; esteem, repute; honour. (*existimo*.)
- EXISTIM-O**, *avi*, *atum*, *are*, 1 v. a., to judge, consider, suppose; esteem. (ex, *estimo*.)
- EXISTO**. See *exsisto*.
- EXITI-UM**, *i*, n., destruction, ruin; mischief; death. (*exeo*.)
- EXIT-US**, *us*, m., a going out, departure; outlet, passage; issue, event; death. (*exeo*.)
- EXORT-IOR**, *exort-us*, *exor-iri*, 3 and 4 v. n. dep., to rise out of; arise; spring up; appear. (ex, and *orior*,—which see.)
- EXPALLESCE-O**, *expall-ni*, *expallesc-ere*, 3 v. n. dep., to become very pale; to dread. (ex, *pallesco*.)
- EXPATIOR**. See *expatrior*.
- EXPECTATIO**. See *expectatio*.
- EXPECTO**. See *expecto*.
- EXPED-IO**, *ivi*, *Itum*, *ire*, 4 v. a., literally, to disentangle the feet: hence, to free, extricate, release; prepare, arrange; unravel, unfold; explain. (ex, *pes*.)
- EXPEDIT**, 3 sing. pres. indie. of *expedio*, used impersonally, it is useful, advantageous, expeditious.
- EXPEDITIO**, *expeditio*-is, f., a (military) excursion, foray, inroad; enterprise; campaign. (*expedio*.)
- EXPEDIT-US**, *a*, *um*, perf. part. of *expedio*, also adj., released, set free; free of encumbrance, (as of baggage;) lightly clothed, or armed: hence, active, nimble: as subst., in pl., light armed troops.
- EXPELL-O**, *expul-i*, *expuls-um*, *expell-ere*, 3 v. a., to drive out or away, expel, banish. (ex, *pellō*.)
- EXPERIENS**, gen. *experient-is*, pres. part. of *experior*: also as an adj., experienced, well-versed: hence, active, industrious.
- EXPERIOR**, *expertus*, *expēr-iri*, 4 v. a. dep., to try, prove, put to the test; attempt. (The root is *per*, or *peri*, as found in *peritus*, *periculum*, &c.)
- EXPLIC-O**, *avi*, or *ui*, *atum*, or *Itum*, *are*, 1 v. a., to unfold, unravel, spread out; set in order, arrange; explain, give an account of, (as in *Nep. Hann.*, xlii. 16.): (of an army,) to form in line. (ex, *plico*.)
- EXPLORATOR**, *explorator-is*, m., one who examines or explores; a spy, scout. (*exploro*.)
- EXPLOR-O**, *avi*, *atum*, *are* 1 v. a., to search out; examine into, investigate; spy out; reconnoitre; make proof of, put to the test. (ex, and *ploro*, which literally means, to cry aloud.)
- EXPON-O**, *expōs-ni*, *expōst-um*, *expon-ere*, 3 v. a., to set out, draw out in order; put ashore (as men from a ship), land; exhibit, explain. (ex, *pono*.)
- EXPOS-O**, *expōpōs-e-i*, *expos-ere*, 3 v. a., to beg earnestly, entreat, implore; demand (a person) to be given up (for

fāber,
(work
penter
for fab
Fabi-
name.
fabric-
fabric
fashion
build.

punishment), -as in Nep. Them., viii., 18. (ex, posco.)
expōsīt-us, a, um, perf. part. of *expono*, *exposed*; also *adj.*, *open, accessible, free*.
exprīm-o, *express-i, express-um, exprīm-ēre*, 3 v. n., *to press out; express; imitate; describe*. (ex, premo.)
expugn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to take by assault, storm; capture; subdue, conquer*. (ex, pugno.)
exquir-o, exquisīvi, exquisitum, *exquir-ēre*, 3 v. n., *to search out; inquire into, ask after, investigate*. (ex, quaero.)
exquisīt-us, a, um, perf. part. of *exquiro*, *sought out; choice, select, excellent*.
exsēqui-ae, arum, f. pl., *literally, the following a corpse to the place of burial; hence, funeral obsequies; a funeral*. (exsequor.)
exsequor, exsēcutus, exsequi, 3 v. a. dep., *to follow out to the end, follow up, prosecute, perform, finish; follow after, pursue*. (ex, sequor.)
exsēr-o, ni, tum, ēre, 3 v. a., *to thrust forth, put out*. (ex, sero.)
exist-o, existit, existit-um, exist-ēre, 3 v. n., *to step forth, stand out; protrude; appear; arise*. (ex, sisto.)
exspāti-or, ātus, āri, 1 v. n. dep., *to deviate from the course; extend, spread out; diverge; roam at will*. (ex, spatior.)
expectatio, expectātiōn-is, f, *a looking out for, awaiting, expecting; expectation*. (ex, specto.)
expect-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to look out for, await, expect; hope for*. (ex, specto.)
extinct-us, a, um, perf. part. of *extinguo*.

extinguo, extinxī, extinctum, *extingu-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to put or blot out; extinguish, quench; destroy; abolish; put to death, kill*. (ex, thinguo.)
exto, extāre, 1 v. n., *to stand out, or above; overtop; project; appear, be extant, exist*. (ex, sto.)
extract-us, a, um, perf. part. of *extruo*.
extru-o, xi, ctum, ēre, 3 v. a., *to pile up, build, raise, construct*. (ex, struo.)
exsul, (or *exul*) *exsul-is*, m. or f., *one driven from his country; an exile*. (On the etymology, see consul.)
exter, or *extēr-us*, a, um, *on the outside, external; foreign, strange*: comp. *extērior*; superl. *extērius*, or *extimū*. (ex.)
extēri-or, or, us, comp. of *exter*.
extimesc-o, extimul, extimesc-ēre, 3 v. n. and a., *to be afraid of, dread*. (ex, and the obsolete timesco.)
extrā, prep. and adv., *outside of, beyond, without; except*: adv., *on the outside of, without*. (exterus. Said to be contracted for *extera*, scil. *arte*.)
extrāh-o, extraxi, extractum, *extrāh-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to draw forth, drag out, extract; protract, put off; waste, spend*. (ex, traho.)
extrem-us, a, um, superl. of *exter*, (which see,) *outermost, utmost, most remote or distant, last*: *Extremum oppidum*, a frontier town: *Extremum anno*, in the end of the year.
exul. See *exsul*.
exūr-o, exussi, exust-um, *exūr-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to burn up, consume, destroy; dry up, parch*. (ex, uro.)
exust-us, a, um, perf. part. of *exuro*, *burned up*.

F.

fāber, fabr-i, m., *an artist or mechanic (working in iron, stone, &c.); a carpenter, smith*: gen. pl. usually *fabrum*, for *fabrorum*. (facio.)
Fabi-us, i, m., *Fabius*, a Roman gentile name.
fabric-or, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., (or *fabric-o*, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a.,) *to fashion, frame, construct, make; forge; build*. (fabrica, a work-shop.)

fāci-es, ēi, f., *make, form, figure, shape; appearance; face, features, countenance*. (facio.)
fācīlē, adv., *easily, readily, without difficulty*. (facilis.)
fācīl-is, is, e, *easy to be done; easy; ready; quick; (of temper, easy of access, affable, good-natured)*. (facio.)
fācīlius, adv., (n. comp. of *facilis*), *more easily, more readily*.

B
 H
 I
 J
 K
 L
 M
 N
 O
 P
 Q
 R
 S
 T
 U
 V
 W
 X
 Y

facillimē, adv., from *facillimus*, superl. of *facilis*, most easily, very easily.

facinus, *facinōs-is*, n., a thing done, a deed, act: often in a bad sense, an evil deed, crime, enormity. (*facio*.)

facio, *fēci*, factum, *fac-ēre*, 3 v. a., to do; make; act, perform; produce; bring to pass; render: pass. of *facio* is *fio*, factus, fieri.

factio, *factiōn-is*, f., a doing; making; an organisation of men for accomplishing something: hence, a party, faction, class. (*facio*.)

factum, i, n., a thing done, a deed, action. (*facio*.)

factus, e, um, perf. part. of *facio*.

facultas, *facultāt-is*, f., power, ability, means; opportunity; abundance, store: in pl., riches, property. (*facilis*, an old form of which is *facul*; seen also in *difficultas*.)

fāg-us, i, (or *us*), f., a beech-tree.

Falerinus, a, um, *Falerian*,—i.e., belonging to the *Falerii*, in the north of Campania: *Falerinus ager*, the territory of the *Falerii*.

fallax, gen. *fallācis*, adj., deceitful, treacherous. (*fallo*.)

fallo, *fēfelli*, factum, *fall-ēre*, 3 v. a., literally, to cause to fall: hence, to deceive, mislead, beguile, cheat; to escape notice, be hidden from: *Fallere fidem*, to break one's word. (Cf. Greek *σ-φάλλω*; Germ. *fallen*; and our *fall*.)

falsō, adv., falsely, erroneously.

falsus, a, um, perf. part. of *fallo*: also adj., false, treacherous, deceptive, spurious, pretended.

fām-a, ae, f., a saying, report, rumour, public report; reputation, fame, honour. (for, *fari*.)

fām-es, is, f., hunger, famine; greediness.

fāmilli-a, ae, f., the body of slaves attached to a house; a household establishment, domestics, a family estate; a family; a sect, or brotherhood. (*famulus*, a man-servant.)

fāmilliār-is, is, e, belonging to slaves, to servants, to a household, or family; familiar, intimate: *Res familiaris*, family property, patrimony. (*familia*.)

fāmil-a, ac, f., a female slave or servant. (*famulus*, which is said to be from *facio*.)

fās, indecl. n., divine law; that which is

right, or lawful. (Etymology doubtful. Some say from *fari*, that which is spoken: others, from an obsolete stem, *fas*, to bind, which occurs in *fascla*, a bandage; *fascis*, a bundle or packet of things bound together.)

fastigi-um, i, n., a slope: hence, the sloping part of a house,—viz., the gable, roof; the top, extremity, highest point; dignity, rank. (*fastigo*, to slope.)

fāteor, *fassus*, *fāt-ēri*, 2 v. a. ācp., to confess, own, acknowledge. (*fari*.)

fātūdic-us, a, um, fate-foretelling, prophetic. (*fatum*, dico.)

fāt-um, i, n., that which is spoken; a prophecy: hence, fate, destiny, lot. (*fari*.)

fāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of *fari*, having spoken.

fauc-es, ium, f. pl., (abl. sing., *fauce*—poetic,) the gullet: hence, a narrow pass, a defile.

Faustul-us, i, m., *Faustus*, the shepherd who reared *Romulus* and *Remus*.

faut-or, *ōris*, m., a favourer, patron, countenancer. (contracted for *favior*, from *favco*.)

fāv-ēo, *fāv-i*, factum, *fāv-ēre*, 2 v. n., to be favourable to, favour, befriend; applaud.

fāvill-a, ae, f., hot ashes; burning embers; live coal.

fēlicitas, *fēlicitāt-is*, f., fertility, productivity; happiness; good luck, success. (*fēlix*.)

fēliciter, adv., abundantly; prosperously; favourably; happily; luckily. (*fēlix*.)

fēlix, gen. *fēlic-is*, adj., fertile, fruitful; of good omen, favourable; happy; fortunate, successful, lucky. (The root is *fe*,—from old verb *feo*, to produce,—found in *fe-cundus*, *fe-mina*, *fe-tus*, *fe-nus*; and, with variation of vowel, in *fui* and *fic*.)

fēmin-a, ae, f., a female (whether of the human species or the lower animals); a woman. (Root *fe*, as in *fēlix*.)

fēmine us, a, um, belonging to a woman, womanly, feminine; womanish, effeminate. (*femina*.)

fēnestr-a, ac, f., an opening to admit light, a window; aperture. (From Greek root *φωv*, as in *φάvω*, to give light; or from stem of *ven-tus*, like our wind *ow*.)

- fēnus**, fēnōr-is, n., *the produce of anything; specially, the interest of money, usury.* (Root fe, ns in felix.)
- fēr-a**, ac, f., *a wild beast, a wild animal.* (Fem. of ferns.)
- fēr-ax**, gen. fēr-āc-is, adj., *bearing fruit; fruitful, fertile.* (fero.)
- fēre**, adv., *almost, nearly, about; for the most part; usually.*
- fēretr-um**, l, n., *that on which something is carried; a litter; a bier.* (fero.)
- fēr-lo**, ire, 4 v. 2., *to strike, beat, knock; wound; slay.*
- fēr-o**, tāll, lātum, ferre, 3 v. a. irreg., *to carry, bring, bear; suffer, bear with; bring forth, produce.* (In the comedians especially, there is a reduplicated form of the perfect and its derived tenses,—tetull, tetullissem, &c. Tull and tetuli are forms of tollō; latum is said to be for tlatum, like τλάω l. Creek.)
- fēr-ox**, gen. fēr-ōe-is, adj., *wild; bold, daring; spirited; haughty, insolent; savage, fierce, blood-thirsty.* (ferus.)
- ferre-us**, a, um, *made of iron; iron, harsh, severe.* (ferrum.)
- ferr-um**, i, n., *iron; the sword.*
- fertil-is**, is, e, *bearing fruit, fertile, productive; rich.* (fero.)
- fertilitās**, fertilitāt-is, f., *productiveness, fertility, richness of soil.* (fertilis.)
- fēr-us**, a, um, *wild; rude, uncivilized; savage, ferocious, cruel, merciless.*
- fervens**, gen. ferrent-is, part. of ferveo, and adj., *boiling; hot, glowing; burning; impetuous.*
- ferveo**, ferbul, ferv-ēre, 2 v. n., (or ferv-o, i, ēre, 3.) *to boil; glow, be hot; rage, rave.*
- fervor**, fervōr-is, m., *violent heat; warmth, glow; passion, rage.* (ferveo.)
- fess-us**, a, um, *wearied, tired, worn out, exhausted.* (Used as part. of fatiscor, specially in the compounds,—as defatiscor, defessus.)
- fest-um**, i, n., *a holiday; a feast, festival.* (festus.)
- fest-us**, a, um, *relating to holidays; festive, solemn, holy.*
- fēt-us**, a, um, *pregnant, brooding, fruitful; one that has brought forth.* (Root fe, as in felix.)
- fēt-us**, ūs, m., *a bringing forth, bearing; young, progeny, brood, offspring; produce.* (fe, as in felix.)
- fictil-is**, is, e, *made of something plastic, (as clay); shaper, formed; made of clay: as subst., n., earthenware.*
- fīc-us**, i, and ūs, f., *a fig-tree; a fig.*
- fīdēl-is**, is, e, *faithful, trustworthy, sincere, constant; sure, safe.* (fides.)
- fīd-es**, ēl, f., *trust (in one), confidence, faith, belief; faithfulness, honesty; a promise.* (fido.)
- fīd-o**, fīsus, fīd-ēre, 3 v. n., semi-dep., *to trust, confide in.* (Same stem as fīdō.)
- fīdūci-a**, ae, f., *trust, confidence, reliance; self-reliance, boldness, courage.* (fido.)
- fīd-us**, a, um, *trust-worthy, faithful, to be relied on; sure, safe.* (fido.)
- fīgo**, fīxi, fīxum, fīg-ēre, 3 v. a., *to fasten, fix; establish; transfer, pierce.*
- fīgūr-a**, ae, f., *a shape, figure, form; species; nature.* (fig, root of fingo.)
- fīli-a**, ae, f., *a daughter; dat. and abl. pl., filiabus, or filiis.* (filius.)
- fīli-us**, l, m., *a son; a child; voc. sing., fili.* (Perhaps same-root as fe, of felix, fīo, ful.)
- fīlum**, i, n., *a thread; the thread of life; a cord; the fillet of wool (on the cap of a flamen, or priest.)*
- fīndo**, fīdi, fīssum, fīnd-ēre, 3 v. a., *to split, cleave, divide, separate.* (The simple stem is fīd, the n being inserted to strengthen the form of the Present. Cf. our bit and bite.)
- fīngo**, fīngi, fīctum, fīng-ēre, 3 v. a., *to mould, fashion, shape, form (from something plastic—us, e.g., clay); adorn, dress; feign; imagine, devise: Fingo datos currus, suppose the chariot given to you. (The root is fīg, or fīc, as in fīgura, fīctus, fīctilis, &c.)*
- fīn-īo**, ūvi, or ūl, itum, ire, 4 v. a., *to confine within bounds, enclose, limit, define, fix, determine; end, finish.* (fīnis.)
- fīn-is**, is, m., *sometimes f., a boundary, land-mark, limit, border; end: in pl., territory.*
- fīnitim-us**, a, um, *bordering on, neighbouring, near: as subst., a neighbour.* (fīnis.)
- fīo**, factus, fīēri, pass. of facio, *to be made; to become.*
- fīrmitās**, fīrmitāt-is, f., *firmness, strength; durability; endurance, constancy.* (fīrm-us.)
- fīrmiter**, adv., *firmly, solidly; with steadiness.* (fīrmus.)

- firm-us**, a, um, strong; durable; steady, not easily shaken.
- fiss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *fundo*, split, cleave.
- fistül-a**, ac, f., a pipe, tube; a hollow stalk, a reed, cane; a shepherd's pipe.
- Flacc-us**, i, m., *Flaccus*, a Roman cognomen.
- flāgit-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to demand earnestly; entreat; urge. (The root is *flag*, as in *flagro*.)
- flagr-o**, āvi, ātum, āro, 1 v. n., to blaze, burn, be on fire; to glow with passion; desire eagerly. (The root appears in *flamma*—i.e., *flag ma*—*fulgeo*, φλέγω.)
- flām-en**, inis, n., a blast.
- flāmen**, tāmin-is, m., the priest of some particular deity; e.g., the *flamen Dialis*, priest of *Jupiter*. (For *flamen*, and thence from *flum*,—which see.)
- Flāminin-us**, i, m., *Fleminius* (*L. Quinctius*). (Nep. *Hann.*, xii.)
- Flāmin-i-us**, i, m., *Flaminius*, a Roman gentile name. (Cicero, —Nep. *Hann.*, iv., 9.)
- flamm-a**, ac, f., a blazing fire; a blaze, flame: hence, figuratively, passion, ardour, love; anything producing light,—as, a star, a torch, a light (*flamma* is for *flagme*. See *flagro*.)
- flammifer**, flammifer-a, um, bearing flames; flaming, fiery. (*flamma*, *fero*.)
- flāv-us**, a, um, gold-coloured, golden; yellow *flax*. (Connected with *fulvus*.)
- flect-o**, flexi, flexum, flect-ere, 3 v. a., to bend, curve; twist, turn round.
- fl-eo**, ēvi, ētum, ēre, 2 v. n. and a., to weep, mourn, lament: a., to weep for, bewail.
- flēt-us**, ūs, m., a weeping, wailing, lamentation. (*fleo*.)
- flex-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *flecto*, bent, curved, &c.
- flōr-eo**, ūi, ēre, 2 v. n., to flower, blossom, bloom; be in a flourishing condition; be eminent. (*flōs*.)
- flōresc-o**, ēre, 3 v. n. inep., to begin to bloom; to come into flower. (*flōreo*.)
- flōs**, flōr-is, m., a flower, blossom, bloom: hence, the flower of—i.e., the best of—(anything.)
- fluct-us**, ūs, m., a flowing, flood; a wave, billow. (*fluo*.)
- flūmen**, flūmin-is, n., running water, a stream, river. (*fluo*.)
- flūmine-us**, a, um, belonging to a river; frequenting rivers. (*flumen*.)
- flu-o**, xi, xum, (old form, *fluctum*.) ēre, 3 v. n., to flow, run (like water); become fluid.—(Flint *ignibus aurum*, the gold becomes fluid by the great heat;) to pour; flow on; pass by, (as time.)
- flūvi-us**, i, m., a river, stream, running water. (*fluo*.)
- fōc-us**, i, m., a fire-place, hearth: hence used of a funeral pile, an altar, &c. (Etymology doubtful.)
- fōd-ic-o**, fōd-i, fass-um, fōd-ere, 3 v. a., to dig, delve; pierce, stab.
- foedērāt-us**, a, um, allied, confederate. (*foedus*, a league.)
- foed-us**, a, um, foul, disgusting, filthy, abominable; unsightly.
- foedus**, foedēr-is, n., a league, treaty, compact.
- foenus**, foendr-is, n. See *fēnus*.
- fons**, font-is, m., a source, spring, fountain: hence, first cause, origin.
- for**, fāsus, fārī, v. a. and n. dep. and defect., to speak, say. (See *famū*.)
- fōrāmen**, fōrāmin-is, n., a bored hole; a hole, aperture, opening, chink. (*foro*, to bore.)
- fōre**, and *fōrem*, used as fut. inf. and imperf. subj. of *sum*, for *futurum esse*, and *essem*.
- fōrens-is**, is, e, belonging to the forum, or market-place,—i.e., to public life; to the law courts. (*forum*.)
- fōr-is**, is, f., a door, gate; usually in the pl., *fores*.
- form-a**, ac, f., form, figure, shape; beauty. (Said by some to be from the Greek *μορφή*, by a transposition of the letters; but Pott connects it with *fer-o*,—as *facies* with *facio*, and *habitus* with *habeo*. So *e* is changed into *o* in such words as *voster*, for *vester*; *vortex*, for *vertex*, &c.)
- formāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *formo*.
- formidābil-is**, is, e, causing dread; terrible, dreaded, formidable. (*formido*.)
- formīdo**, formidin-is, f., dread, terror, fear; a bugbear.
- form-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to give shape to, fashion, form. (*forma*.)
- formōs-us**, a, um, well-shaped, beautiful, handsome. (*forma*.)
- formax**, fornāe-is, f., a furnace, oven. (Root *fer*, to be hot,—as in *fer-veo*; *fur-nus*, an oven, &c.)

- fors**, fort-is, f., *chance, lot, luck*: often used adverbially in the nom., *by chance*.
- forsitān**, adv., *perhaps, perchance*. (fors, sit, an.)
- fortē**, adv., *by chance, accidentally; perhaps*. (fors.)
- fort-is**, is, o, *endurant, strong; brave, valiant, courageous*. (fero, to bear. See forma.)
- fortiter**, adv., *duably, strongly; bravely, valiantly, boldly*. (fortis.) Comp. fortius; superl. fortissimo.
- fortitudo**, fortitadin-is, f., *endurance, strength, power; bravery, courage*. (fortis.)
- fortius**, adv., *with greater strength; more bravely; more vigorously*. See fortiter. (fortis.)
- fortūtō**, adv., *by chance, accidentally*. (sometimes long, but usually short. (fortuitus, accidental.)
- fortū-a**, ae, f., *fortune, chance, luck, fate; the goddess of fortune; the gifts of Fortune,—as, property, wealth, estate*. (fors)
- fō-um**, i, n., *a public place, market, forum, exchange, court of justice*. (Same root as foris, a door; forns, abroad: hence it literally means, a place outside, a fore-court.)
- foss-a** ae, f., *a ditch, trench, fosse*: Ducere fossam, to run (i.e., dig) a ditch. (From perf. part. of fodio.)
- fōve-a**, ae, f., *a small pit, pitfall*. (Said to be for fodera, from fodio.)
- fract-us**, a, um, perf. part. of frango, *broken; crushed, bruised: hence, weak, faint, powerless*.
- fraen-um**, i, n. See frenum.
- frāg-a**, ōrum, n. pl., *strawberries*. (See frangum.)
- frāgor**, frāgōr-is, m., *a breaking in pieces, crash; a crashing noise, din*. (frag, root of frango.)
- frāg-um**, i, n., *a strawberry plant; a strawberry*: usually in pl., fraga.
- frang-o**, frēg-i, fruet-um, frang ōre, 3 v. a., *to break in pieces, smash; crush, subdue; dishearten*. (root frag, as in fragor, &c.)
- frāter**, frat-ris, m., *a brother; a fellow, partner*.
- frātern-us**, a, um, *brotherly, fraternal, kind* (frater.)
- fraus**, fraud-is, f., *deceit, treachery, fraud; a cheating, or outwitting*: gen. pl., um, or ium.
- Frēgell-ae**, ārum, f., *Frēgellae, a town of the Volsci, in Latium, on the Liris*.
- frēm-o**, ōi, ōrum, ōre, 3 v. n. and n., *to roar, growl; murmur; rage, clamour*.
- frēn-i**, ōrum, m. See frenna.
- frēn-um**, i, n., (in pl. fren-a, ōrum, n., or fren-i, ōrum, m.) *a bridle, bit, curb*.
- frēquens**, gen. frequent-is, adj., *frequent; crowded; in great number*.
- frēt-um**, i, n., (also frēt-us, us,) *a strait, channel, frith, sound; the sea*.
- frēt-us**, a, um, *relying on, trusting to*. It generally governs the abl., but occasionally the dat.
- frīgus**, frīgōr-is, n., *cold, coldness, chill; frost; winter*. (Same root as riguo, to be stiff.)
- frons**, frond-is, f., *foliage; a leafy branch, a bough*.
- frons**, front-is, f., *the forehead, brow; front*.
- fruct-us**, us, m., *literally, enjoyment: hence, the means of enjoyment; produce; profit, interest; fruit, income*. (fruo.)
- frug-es**, um. See frux.
- frumentāri-us**, a, um, *belonging to corn; abounding in corn; corn-producing; relating to the supply of provisions*. (frumentum.)
- frument-or**, ōtus, ōri, 1 v. n. dep., *to go in search of corn, to forage*. (frumentum.)
- frument-um**, i, n., *corn, grain*. (For frugmentum, from fruges.)
- fruo**, fruētus, and fructus, frui, 3 v. a. dep., *to feed one's self with: hence, to enjoy, delight in; use*. (The root is frug, as in frug-es.)
- frustrā**, adv., *in a state of deceit; in error: hence, without effect, (i.e., deceiving one's expectations;) fruitlessly, in vain, to no purpose*. (Said to be connected with frans and fraudo.)
- frustr-or**, ōtus, ōri, 1 v. a. dep., *to deceive; disappoint; baffle; cheat; frustrate*. (frustra.)
- frūt-ex**, frūtic-is, m., *a shrub, bush; shrubby*.
- frux**, frūg-is, f., (more common in the pl., fruges.) *anything enjoyable for eating: hence, the fruits of the earth, produce, crops; fruit,—i.e., advantage, benefit, success*. (fruo.)
- fūg-a**, ae, f., *a fleeing, flight; avoidance of (something); aversion; exile, banishment*. (φυγή.)

H
I
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
Y

fūg-io, fūg-i, fūglt-um, fūg-ēre, 3 v. n. and a., to take to flight, flee, run away; avoid, shun. (φύγι.)
fūgltiv-us, a, um, fleeing away, fugitive: as subst., a runaway (slave, soldier, &c.), deserter. (fugio.)
fūg-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to put to flight, drive away, rout. (fuga.)
fulg-ēo, fulsi, fulg-ēre, 2 v. n. to lighten; shine, glitter.
fulmen, fulmīn-is, n., lightning; a thunderbolt. (For fulgimen, from fulgeo.)
fulv-us, a, um, deep yellow; gold-colored; tawny. (See flavus.)
fūm-o, āre, 1 v. n., to give forth smoke; to smoke, steam, reek. (fumus.)
fūm-us, i, m., smoke, vapour.
funct-us, a, um, perf. part. of fungor, having performed.
fund-a, ae, f., a sling.
fundāmen, fundāmin-is, n., a foundation. It is a poetic word for fundamentum, and is usually found in the pl. (fundo, to found.)
fundāment-um, i, n., a foundation, basis, ground-work. (fundo, to found.)
fundo, fūdi, fūsum, fund-ēre, 3 v. a., to pour out or forth; spill; melt, fuse, dissolve; sprinkle; rout, put to flight,

defeat; bring forth, produce in abundance.
fund-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to lay the bottom or foundation of, found; fasten, establish, secure. (fundus, a bottom, or basis.)
fūnēre-us, a, um, (poetic for funebrius) belonging to a funeral, funereal; deadly, fatal; disastrous. (funus.)
fūnest-us, a, um, death-causing, deadly; dangerous; calamitous. (funus.)
fungor, fūctus, fung-i, 3 v. a. dep., to perform, execute, discharge. It governs the abl., and sometimes the acc.
fūn-is, is, m., a rope, cord, line.
fūnus, fūnēr-is, n., a burial, funeral; death; murder: the poets often use it for a dead body.
Furi-us, i, m., Furius, a Roman gentile name. (See Nep. Hann., vii. 22.)
fūrōr, furōr-is, m., fury, madness; rage, passion.
furt-um, i, n., stealing; a theft, robbery; a secret device. (fur.)
fūs-us, a, um, perf. part. of fundo, poured forth; spread abroad; routed.
fūtūr-us, a, um, fut. part. of sum, about to be.

G.

G. as an abbreviation for *Gaius* (or *Caius*).
Gābinī-us, i, m., Gabinus, a Roman gentile name. Aulus Gabinus, consul in B.C. 58.
Gai-us, i, Gaius, or Caius.
gāle-a, ae, f., a helmet.
Gall-i, ōrum, m., the Gauls.
Galli-a, ae, f., Gaul. (See note on Caes. B. G., i. 1, p. 201.)
Gallīc-us, a, um, belonging to the Gauls, Gallic.
gallīn-a, ae, f., a hen. (gallus.)
Gall-us, i, m., a Gaul: in pl., Galli.
Gang-es, is, m., the Ganges, a river of India.
Garumn-a, ae, m., the Garumna—now the Garonne—a river of France.
gaud-eo, gāvis-us, gaud-ēre, 2 v. n. and a. semi-dep., to rejoice, be glad, delight in; grieve.
gēlīd-us, a, um, cold as ice; icy, cold. (gelu.)

gēmell-us, a, um, twin, born together; double: as subst., a twin.
gēmināt-us, a, um, perf. part. of gemino, doubled.
Gēmīn-i, orum, m., the Twins, a constellation; one of the signs of the Zodiac.
gēmīn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to double; match, pair. (geminus.)
gēmīn-us, a, um, born at the same time as another and of the same mother, twin; double, twofold. (See Geminus.)
Gēmīn-us, i, m., Geminus (Cn. Servilius). (Nep. Hann., iv. 15.)
gemm-a, ae, f., a bud; the eye of a plant; a precious stone, gem.
gēm-o, ni, itum, ēre, 3 v. n. and a., to groan, sigh; creak, make a harsh or grating noise: a., to sigh over, bewail (a thing).
gēn-a, ae, f., (usually in the pl., gen-ae, ārum,) a cheek.

- gēner**, gener-ī, m., a son-in-law. (Root gen, as in gigno, gen-ūi.)
- gēnerātim**, adv., by kinds, classes, tribes, nations. (genus.)
- gēnērōs-us**, a, um, of high birth, of good family, or stock: hence, noble, eminent; magnanimous, generous; ingenious. (genus.)
- Gēnēv-a**, ac, f., Geneva, a town of the Allobroges, near the territory of the Helvetii.
- gēnitor**, gēntūr-is, m., a parent, a father, a creator; an author, producer. (The root gen, as in gigno, genui.)
- gēnit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of gigno, born, sprung (by birth).
- gens**, gent-īs, f., a stock or race (of people coming from a common ancestor); a clan, (i.e., a number of families bound together by a common name, and by certain sacred rites); a tribe, nation, people. (gen, root of gigno, gen-ūi.)
- gēnu**, gēn-ūs, n., a knee; a joint or knot (of a plant). (Cf. γόνυ, and our *kneec*.)
- gēnus**, gēnēr-is, n., birth, descent; race, tribe, stock, family; kind, sort, class; (poetic) descendant, offspring, child. (Root gen, as in gigno, gen-ūi.)
- Germān-i**, ōrum, m., the Germans.
- Germān-i-a**, ac, f., Germany.
- gēr-o**, gess-ī, gest-um, gēr-ēre, 3 v. a., to wear, carry, bear; have; to bring forth, produce; carry on (war, &c.); maintain; manage, administer, govern: Gerere morem alleui, to gratify one's humour; comply with one's request: Res gestae, exploits, achievements.
- gest-a**, ōrum, n. pl., exploits, deeds. (gestus, a, um.)
- gest-īo**, īvi, or īi, ūtum, īre, 4 v. n., to use (violent) gestures (expressive of joy); to exult in, delight, take pleasure in. (From gest-us, us, carriage; post-urc;—and that from gero.)
- gest-us**, a, um, perf. part. of gero, borne, carried, performed.
- gign-o**, gēnni, gēntum, gign-ēre, 3 v. a., to beget, bear, bring forth, produce; take rise, spring. (Root gen, as in gen-us, &c. The stem is gen(o), which, by reduplication, becomes gign(o); and that, by syncope, gigno.)
- glāciāl-is**, īs, e, belonging to ice, icy; frosty; ice-bound. (glacies.)
- glāci-es**, ēi, f., ice.
- glādi-us**, ī, m., a sword; hence, figuratively, murder.
- glans**, glaud-īs, f., any kernel fruit,—as, an acorn, walnut, chestnut, &c.; a bullet of lead or clay (used in war).
- glōri-a**, ac, f., glory, fame, renown; hence, thirst of glory, ambition; pride, boasting.
- glōri-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. and n. dep., to glory in, pride one's self on, boast. (gloria.)
- glōriōsius**, adv., comp. of adv. gloriose, more gloriously; more boastfully, more vauntingly, more proudly.
- glōriōs-us**, a, um, full of glory, glorious; renowned; vain-glorious, proud, vaunting, boasting, braggart. (gloria.)
- Gortyn-a**, ac, f., or Gortyn-ē, ēs, f., Gortyna, a city of Crete.
- Gortyni-us**, a, um, Gortynian, belonging to Gortyna: as subst. pl., Gortynii, the people of Gortyna.
- Gracch-us**, ī, m., Gracchus, a Roman family name in the gens Sempronia.
- grācil-is**, īs, e, slender, thin, slight, meagre; weak.
- grādi-or**, gressus, grādi, 3 v. n. dep., to take steps; to step, walk, advance. (grad-us.)
- grād-us**, ūs, m., a step, pace; a position, posture; ground (taken by a combatant); degree, step (of rank); step, (i.e., of a stair, ladder, &c.)
- Graec-i**, ōrum, m., the Greeks.
- Graec-i-a**, ac, f., Greece.
- Graec-us**, a, um, Greek, Grecian, belonging to Greeks.
- Grai-i**, ōrum, m.,—for Graeci, and usually poetic,—the Greeks.
- Graiōcēl-i**, ōrum, m. pl., the Graiocieli, a Galle tribe in the valley of Mount Cenis.
- Grai-us**, a, um, belonging to the Greeks; Greek, or Graian, (applied to one of the ranges of the Alps.)
- grāmen**, grāmīn-īs, n., grass; turf; a plant, herb. (Some etymologists connect this word with the Sanscrit, gras, to devour; others, with the stem of ereseo; and others with gen, the root of gigno, n being changed into r.)
- grand-is**, īs, e, full-grown; large, great; abundant; advanced in years, (often in this sense with natu or aevu.) old.
- grāt-es**, t pl., (only found in the nom. and acc., very rarely in the abl.)

G
L
I
J
K-L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V

- thanks, thanksgiving, gratitude:* Agere grates, or gratias, to return thanks. (gratus.)
- grāti-a**, ae, f., favour good graces: friendly disposition; esteem, regard, honour; love; loveliness, grace; courtesy; kindness; obligation; influence; authority; thanks, gratitude, return (for kindness). (gratus.)
- grātiā**, abl. sing. of the preceding, in favour of, for the sake of; for the purpose of.
- grātūlātiō**, gratulatiō-is, f., an expression of joy; congratulation; joy. (gratulor.)
- grātūl-or**, ūtus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., to express joy; congratulate; rejoice. (gratus.)
- grāt-us**, a, um, literally, causing joy: hence, kind; beloved, dear; agreeable, acceptable to; favourite; grateful, thankful.
- grāvāt-us**, a, um, porf. part. of gravo, laden, oppressed.
- grāvīd-us**, a, um, loaded, heavy; pregnant, full of. (gravis.)
- grāv-is**, is, e, heavy, weighty, burdensome; loaded, burdened; important, great; worthy; grave, sedate; difficult; oppressive, troublesome; afflictive; severe, acute; unhealthy, unwholesome, sickly. (Hence Ital. greve, Fr. grave, and our grief.)
- grāvissimē**, adv., superl. adv. of gravior, most heavily, most seriously, &c. (See gravior.)
- grāvītas**, grāvītat-is, f., weight, heaviness; severity, violence, vehemence; weight of character, dignity; gravity, sedateness. (gravis.)
- grāvīter**, adv., weightily, heavily; deeply; vehemently; exceedingly, very much; gravely, seriously, with dignity. Comp. grāvius; superl. grāvissimē. (gravis.)
- grāvius**, adv., compar. of gravior, more heavily, more deeply, &c., (see gravior:); Gravius ferre, to take much, or more, amiss.
- grāv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make heavy, weigh down, oppress, load; vex, annoy. (gravis.)
- grēmi-um**, i, n., the lap, bosom.
- grēx**, grēg-is, m., a flock, herd, swarm, band, company.
- Grēni-um**, i, n., Grynium, —Fort Grynium, in Phrygia. (See Nep. Ale., ix. 10.) Another form is Grynia.
- gubernātor**, gūbernātōr-is, m., one that steers, a pilot, helmsman; a ruler, governor. (gubernō.)
- gubern-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to act as helmsman, to pilot, steer; to rule, govern.
- gurg-ēs**, Itis, m., a whirlpool, eddy; seething water; abyss: used by the poets for the sea; the water.
- gust-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to taste, take a little of; to eat; enjoy. (From gustus, tasting. Cf. γεύω, Ital. gusto, Fr. goût.)

H.

- hābēn-a**, ae, f., literally, that by which one holds in (something): hence, a thong, a rein, bridle; management. (habeo.)
- hāb-eo**, ul, itum, ēre, 2 v. a. and n., to have, hold, keep, possess; consider, esteem, judge, regard; believe; Habere pro hoste, to regard (treat) as an enemy; Habere gratias, to entertain gratitude, feel grateful; Habere orationem, to deliver a speech; Habere fidem, to feel confidence in.
- habit-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., literally, to have frequently, or constantly; hence, to possess; to inhabit, occupy (as residence), live in, abide. (habeo.)
- hāc**, adv., by or along this way, or this place; on this side. (hic.)
- Hadrūmēt-um**, i, n., (or Adrumetum,) Hadrumetum, a town of Africa Proper, south-east of Carthage.
- Haedu-i**, orum. See Aedul.
- Haemōni-us**, a, um, belonging to Haemonia, —i.e., Thessaly. (See Ovid, p. 106, line 81, with note.)
- Haem-os**, i, (or us, i.) m., Haemus, a range of mountains in Thrace, now called Balkan.
- haer-eo**, haes-i, haes-um, haer-ēre, 2 v.

- n., to stick to, cleave to, adhere, remain firm.
- Haliart-us**, i, f., *Haliartus*, a city of Boeotia.
- Halicarnasi-us**, a, um, of or belonging to *Halicarnasus*, a town in Caria.
- Hamilcar**, *Hamilcār-is*, m., (or *Amllecur*), *Hamilcar (Barca)*, father of Hannibal.
- Hannibal**, *Hannibāl-is*, m., (or *Annibal*), *Hannibal*, son of *Hamilcar*.
- Harūd-es**, um, m., the *Harudes*, a German tribe, living between the Rhine, the Mayne, and the Danube, in parts of the modern Wurtemberg and Baden.
- Hasdrūbal**, *Hasdrūbāl-is*, m., *Hasdrubal*, son-in-law of *Hamilcar* (*Nep. Hann.*, ill. 2), the founder of Saguntum. Another *Hasdrubal*, brother of *Hannibal* (*Nep. Hann.*, ill. 9), who perished with his army in the battle near the river *Metaurus*, in the Second Punic War.
- hast-a**, ac, f., a spear, lance, javelin.
- haud**, (or *haut*), adv., no; not at all, by no means.
- haur-io**, *haus-i*, *haust-um*, *haur-ire*, 4 v. a., to draw up; draw out; drink; drain, empty; spill, shed; also, to take in (in any way).—as, to breathe, inhale; perceive, see; hear.
- haust-us**, ūs, m., a drawing up or out; a drink, draught. (*haurio*)
- Hebr-us**, i, m., the *Hebrus*, a river of Thrace,—now the *Maritza*.
- Hēlicon**, *Hēlicōn-is*, m., *Helicon*, a mountain in *Boeotia*, sacred to *Apollo* and the *Muses*.
- Hellespont-us**, i, m., the *Hellespont*,—now the *Dardanelles*.
- Helvētī-i**, ōrum, m., the *Helvetii*, a people of *Gallia Lugduncensis*, part of the modern *Switzerland*.
- Helvētī-us**, a, um, *Helvetian*, belonging to the *Helvetii*.
- hēmēōdrōm-us**, i, m., literally, a day-runner,—i.e., one who runs all day; a courier. (*See Nep. Mil.*, iv. 14, note.)
- herb-a**, ac, f., a blade or stalk of grass; grass, herbage; an herb; a plant.
- herbōs-us**, a, um, full of grass, grassy. (*herba*.)
- Hercūl-es**, is, or i, m., *Hercules*, the great mythic hero of antiquity, son of *Jupiter* and *Alcmena*. (*See note on Nep. Hann.*, ill. 14.)
- Hercyni-a**, ae, properly the f. of *Hercyni-us*, a, um, with *silva* accompanying it, the *Hercynian Forest*, extending from the *Black Forest* (in *Baden*) to the *Harz Mountains*. (*See Caes. B. G.*, vi., chap. xxv., p. 92, with notes.)
- hērēditās**, *hereditāt-is*, f., *heirship*; an inheritance, *patrimony*. (*heres*.)
- Herm-a**, ac, (or *Herm-es*, ac.) m., a *Hermes-pillar*, (i.e., a pillar with a bust of *Mercury* surmounting it;) *Mercury*. (*See Nep. Alc.*, ill. 5, with note.)
- Hespēri-us**, a, um, westerly, towards the west. (*Hesperus*.)
- Hespēr-us**, i, (or os, i) m., the evening star, *Hesperus*; the west. (*Ἑσπερος*.)
- heu**, interj., ah! oh! alas! Usually as an interjection of grief, but sometimes of admiration or surprise.
- hibern-a**, ōrum, n. pl., winter quarters: castra is understood. It is the n. pl. of *hibernus*.
- Hiberni-a**, ac, f., *Ireland*.
- hibern-us**, a, um, wintry, cold; stormy. (*Cf. Fr. hiver*.)
- hic**, haec, hoc, (i or i) demonstr. pron., this, (referring to something near the speaker at the time:) *Hic—ille*, the latter—the former: hoc, on this account; by this means.
- hic**, adv., here, in t. l.'s place; hereupon.
- hiēm-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., to pass the winter, to winter, remain in winter quarters. (*hiems*.)
- hiems**, *hiēm-is*, f., winter, stormy season; a storm, tempest; shower.
- hinc**, adv., from this point, from this side, here; hereafter; on this; after this; hereupon; from this cause, hence. (*hic*.)
- hinnit-us**, ūs, m., a neighing. (*hinnio*.)
- Hippōnic-us**, i, m., *Hipponicus*, an Athenian, father-in-law of *Alcibiades*.
- hirsūt-us**, a, um, rough, hairy, shaggy, bristly, hirsute. (*hirtus*, rough, hairy.)
- Hispāni-a**, ae, f., *Spain*.
- Hister**, *Hīstīr*, m., the *Hister*, or *Danube*. Also written *Ister*.
- Histiāe-us**, i, m., *Histiæus*, tyrant of *Miletus*. He was left, with others, to guard the bridge of boats over the *Danube*, during the invasion of *Scythia* by *Darius*, in b.c. 513.
- histōri-a**, ac, f., a narrative of events, history, record, tale, story. (*ἱστορία*. *Cf. Fr. histoire*, *Ital. storia*, and our story.)

B

H

I

J
K
L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

- histōric-us**, *i*, *m.*, (properly the *m.* of historic-us, *a*, *um*), a *writer of history, a historian.* (historia.)
- hōdie**, *adv.*, on *this day, to-day; now-a-days, at the present time.* (Contracted for hoc die.)
- hōmo**, *homin-is*, *m.* or *f.*, a *human being* (whether *man, woman, or child*); *man, mankind; an individual.* (Hence Fr. *homme*, and *on.*)
- hōnest-us**, *a*, *um*, in *honour, honoured; respectable; honourable, noble; worthy, virtuous, honest.* (honor.)
- hōnor**, or *hōnos*, *hōnōr-is*, *m.*, *public honour, dignity, office; honour, esteem, respect; beauty, grace; a mark of honour; reward, recompense.* (Said to be connected with *onus, a burden.*)
- hōr-a**, *ae*, *f.*, an *hour; time, season.* (ώρα.)
- horr-eo**, *ēre*, 2 *v.* *n.* and *a.*, to *stand on end, bristle, be rough; shake, or shiver; shudder; be terrified: a., to shudder at, dread.*
- horresco**, *horri-ūi*, *horresco-ēre*, 3 *v.* *n.* and *a.* *incept.*, to *begin to stand on end, to bristle, be rough; shudder: a., to tremble at, dread.* (horreo.)
- horrid-us**, *a*, *um*, standing on *end, bristly, rough, shaggy; of wild appearance, rude; horror-producing, terrible, horrible.* (horreo.)
- hortāmen**, *hortāmīn-is*, *n.*, an *exhortation, encouragement, incitement.* (hortor.)
- hort-or**, *ātus*, *ārī*, 1 *v.* *a.* *dep.*, to *encourage, exhort, cheer, incite, urge on, impel.*
- hospēs**, *hospit-is*, *m.*, a *visitor, guest; host; stranger, foreigner.* (Connected with *hostis.*)
- hospiti-um**, *i*, *n.*, *hospitality; a right of hospitality; a place to receive guests, guest-chamber; lodging; an inn, hotel.* (hospes.)
- hosti-a**, *ac*, *f.*, a *sacrifice, victim.* (From an old verb, *hostio, to strike.*)
- host-is**, *is*, *m.* or *f.*, a *stranger, foreigner: hence, an enemy.* (Pott traces the word to the Sanscrit *ghas, to eat; and pet, same as peto, to seek; so that the literal meaning is, one who seeks food.*)
- hūc**, *adv.*, to *this place, hither; to this degree, so far.* (hic.)
- hūmānitas**, *hūmānītāt-is*, *f.*, *human nature, humanity, (i.e., the aggregate of qualities belonging to mankind as a race:)* hence, *the duties of man to man; kindly feeling; philanthropy; kindness; politeness, refinement, elegant manners; gentlemanly feeling; liberal education.* (humanus.)
- hūmān-us**, *a*, *um*, belonging to *man, human; humane; philanthropic; kind; gentlemanly, refined, polished, well educated.* (homo.)
- hūmēr-us**, *i*, *m.*, the *upper bone of the arm; the upper part of the arm, (poetic for lacertus,—see brachium): the shoulder: also, a ridge; back or middle part.*
- hūmī**, *adv.*, on *the earth; down, on, or to the ground.* (I.unius)
- hūmīd-us**, *a*, *um*, *moist, damp, wet, watery.* (humeco, to be moist.)
- hūmīl-is**, *is*, *e*, *low, lowly; small; unpretending; humble, obscure; base, degraded, mean.* (humus.)
- hūmor**, *humōr-is*, *m.*, *moisture; any liquid, (such as water, wine, milk, &c.)*
- hūm-us**, *i*, *f.*, the *ground, soil, earth.*

I.

- ibi**, *adv.*, in *that place, there; then, there-upon.* (Said to be from *is, bi* being the old termination of the dat., as in *tibi, sibi.*)
- ibidem**, *adv.*, in *the same place, just there.* (*ibi*, and suffix *dem*, which is seen in *tandem, idem, &c.*)
- ic-o**, *i*, *tum*, *ēre*, 3 *v.* *a.*, to *strike, hit, smite; wound: Icere foedus, to make a treaty or league.* So we say, "to strike a bargain."
- ict-us**, *it-s*, *m.*, a *blow, stroke; stab, wound.* (ico.)
- ict-us**, *a*, *um*, *perf. part. of ico.*
- Id-e**, *cs*, or *Id-a*, *ae*, *f.*, *Mount Ida, in Phrygia, near Troy.* There was another *Mount Ida*, in *Crete*, where *Jupiter* was nursed, and defended from the wrath of *Saturn.*
- idem**, *eādem*, *idem*, the *same; he (she or it) likewise.* (*is*, and suffix *dem.*)
- Idēo**, *adv.*, on *that account, for that rea-*

son, therefore. (Id, eo, literally, this for that.)

Idōnē-us, a, um, *fit for, suitable, adapted to, capable, sufficient*. It is compared by magis and maxime.

Id-ūs, uum, f., *the ides* (of a month),—i. e., the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the others. (From old Etruscan word, iduare, to divide.)

Igitur, adv., *then, thereupon; therefore; accordingly*. (Etymology doubtful.)

ignār-us, a, um, *not knowing, unacquainted with, ignorant of, unaware; inexperienced*: in pass. sense, *not known*. (In, not; and gnarus, *knowing*, from root gna, or gno, as in (g)nosco,—which see.)

ignifer, ignifēr-a, um, *fire-bearing, fiery*. (ignis, fero.)

ign-is, is, m., *fire; brightness, splendour; heat, passion*.

ignōr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. e. and n., *not to know, to be ignorant of*. (ignarus.)

ignosc-o, ignōv-i, ignōt-um, ignosc-ere, 3 v. a., *not to search into; hence, to overlook; pardon, forgive, excuse*. (in, and (g)nosco,—which see.)

ignōt-us, a, um, *unknown; hence, of low birth, ignoble*: in an active sense, *not knowing, unacquainted with*. (in, and (g)notus.)

Ilex, ilic-is, f., *the holm oak, the evergreen oak*.

ili-a, um, n. pl., *the flanks, loins; the entrails, bowels*.

Ili-a, ae, f., *Iliā*, another name for Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.

illācrim-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., (also illacrimor, dep.), *to weep at or for, bewail, lament*. (in, lacrimo.)

illāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of infero, *brought on, inflicted, &c.*

ille, illa, illud, demonstr. pron., *that* (person or thing); *that yonder*, (of something removed from the speaker in place or time); *that famous, or well-known*.

illie, adv., *in that place, there*. (ille.)

illinc, adv., *from that place, or quarter, thence*. (ille.)

illūd-o, illūs-i, illūs-um, illūd-ere, 3 v. n. and a., *to sport with, amuse one's self with; make sport of, mock, jeer*

at; destroy, ruin; abuse; baffle. (in, ludo.)

illustr-is, is, e, literally, *very much illumined, or in the light; lighted up; hence, clear, bright; evident, conspicuous; famous, celebrated*. (in, and lustro, to illumine; from luceo.)

illustr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to set in the light; illumine, enlighten; make clear, explain; render famous*. (Illustris.)

illūs-us, a, um, perf. part. of illudo, *mocked, baffled*.

īmāgo, imāgin-is, f., *an imitation, copy, likeness, image; idea, thought, conception; appearance; shadow*. (The same root is seen in im-ltor.)

imber, imbr-is, m., *a shower; rain; storm; a rain cloud*.

īmīt-or, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., *to make like, copy, imitate*. (Root i., as in imago.)

immān-is, is, e, *monstrous, enormous, huge, vast, unwieldy; savage, ferocious, merciless*. (Etymology doubtful.)

immens-us, a, um, *unmeasured; hence, immeasurable, boundless; immense, vast*. (in, and mensus, perf. part. of metior.)

immīn-eo, ēre, 2 v. n., *to bend over* (in a threatening way); *im-end, threaten; be eager for, be intent on; be at hand; be imminent*. (in, and mineo, to jut out, from root of minae.)

immitt-o, immūs-i, immūss-um, immitt-ere, 3 v. a., *to send in or to a place; to introduce; let loose; discharge at; throw into; with se, to sting one's self; leap into; rush forward*. (in, mitto.)

immōderāt-us, a, um, *without measure, not limited, unrestrained, unlicensed; excessive, boundless*. (in, and moderatus.)

immōdesti-a, ae, f., *the passing of bounds; want of self-control; excess, intemperance*. (Immodestus.)

immōl-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., literally, *to sprinkle with the sacrificial meal* (as preparatory to sacrifice); hence, *to offer, sacrifice, immolate, slay*. (in, and mola, *sacrificial cake*.)

immortāl-is, is, e, *not subject to death, immortal, imperishable, eternal*. (in, mortalis.)

immūn-is, is, e, *without office or duty; free from service; exempt from obliga-*

I
H
K L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
Y

- tion; free, clear of; taking no part in.* (in, and munus, or rather munia.)
- immūnitas, immūnitāt-is, f., exemption from public service or taxes; immunity, freedom from obligations.** (Immūnls.)
- impēdiment-um, l, n., that which impedes, an impediment, hindrance:** In pl., impedimenta, the baggage (of an army).
- impēd-io, fvl, or il, itum, ire, 4 v. n., to entangle the feet, ensnare; hold fast; check, impede, hinder; trouble, perplex.** (in, and pes, pedis.)
- impēdit-us, a, um, pcrf. part. of Impedio, also adj., entangled; hindered, embarrassed, encumbered.**
- impello, impūli, impulsum, Impell-ēre, 3 v. a., to drive onward, against, at, or in; to impel, incite, urge on; persuade, induce.** (in, pello.)
- impēd-eo, ēre, 2 v. n., to hang over, overhang; be near, be imminent; threaten.** (in, pendeo.)
- impērātor, Impērātōr-is, m., a military commander, general, chief, head, lord.** (Impero.)
- impērāt-um, i, n., a thing ordered, a command, charge, injunction.** (Impero.)
- impērīt-us, a, um, inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant of.** (in, peritus.)
- impēri-um, i, n., power intrusted to one; command; military command; sovereignty, dominion, empire; an order, command; authority.** (Impero.)
- impēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., literally, to put upon: hence, to give orders for, enjoin, command, order; have the command of; govern, rule over.** (Said to be from in and paro; like comparo, to put together; and separo, to put asunder.)
- impetr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to accomplish, bring to pass; procure, obtain** (by request.) (in, patro.)
- impēt-us, ūs, m., literally, a going against, or aiming at: hence, an attack, onset, assault; rush; impetuosity, violence, force, vigour.** (impeto, to go against, or aim at; from in and peto.)
- impi-us, a, um, devoid of natural affection; un dutiful; irreverent, ungodly, impious, wicked, abandoned.** (in, plus.)
- impl-ēo, ēvi, ētum, ēre, 2 v. a., to fill up, fill; satisfy, (as with food); complete, accomplish, fulfil.** (in, pleo.)
- implōr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to entreat, implore.** (in, ploro.)
- impōn-o, impōsui, impōsūt-um, impōn-ēre, 3 v. a., to place upon, or over; set over; lay on; assign to; enjoin; impose.** (in, pono.)
- import-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to bring or carry into, import; introduce; cause, occasion.** (in, porto.)
- impōsīt-us, a, um, perf. part. of impono.**
- impraesentiārum, adv., at present, for the present.** The more usual form is in praesentia,—on which see note, Nep. Milt., vii. 23.
- imprimis, adv., among the foremost: hence, in the first place, chiefly, principally.** It is often written separately, in, primis.)
- imprōb-us, a, um, not approved of; not of right measure: hence, not upright, not good, bad, wicked, dishonest; excessive, enormous; insatiable, voracious.** (in, probus.)
- imprōvis-um, i, n., a thing unforeseen: most usually in the abl., and with a prep.,—de or ex improviso, or simply improviso, unexpectedly, suddenly.**
- imprōvis-us, a, um, unforeseen, unexpected.** (in, and provisus, from provideo.)
- imprūdēns, gen. imprudent-is, adj., not foreseeing, not expecting, unware.** (in, and prudens, contracted for providens.)
- imprūdentē, adv., unawares, ignorantly; without judgment, inconsiderately.** (imprudens.)
- imprudenti-a, ae, f., want of forethought, thoughtlessness; want of knowledge, ignorance; inconsiderateness, rashness.** (Imprudens.)
- impūnē, adv., without punishment, with impunity; safely, securely.** (From impunis, and that from in and poena.)
- impūnitas, impūnitāt-is, f., freedom from punishment, impunity; security, safety.** (Impunis, and that from in and poena.)
- im-us, a, um, inmost, deepest, lowest, last.** (Contracted for inimus, superl. of in; or from infimus, superl. of inferus.)
- in, an inseparable prefix, meaning not, corresponding to the Greek ἀν-, and to the English in- or un-; as, inutilis,**

useless. Before b and p it becomes im: as, Imberbis, Impar. Before l, m, r, it is assimilated: as, illustris, immitis, irrideo.

in, prep. with abl. and acc.: 1. With abl., *in, on, over, at, among, near*; (of time) *in, at, during*. 2. With acc., denoting motion towards, *into, to, towards*; (of time) *into, till, for, towards*. (Old form endu, or indu. Cf. Gk. ἐν, and our *in*.)

inaequal-is, is, c, *uneven, unequal; unlike; changeable, variable; inconsistent, fickle*. (In, aequalis.)

inān-is, is, c, *empty, void; vain, useless, unprofitable*.

inārat-us, a, um, *unploughed, untilled*. (In, aratus, part. of arō.)

incālesc-o, incālu-i, incālesc-ēre, 3 v. n. *incept; to become warm, grow hot; to glow; kindle*. (In, calesco.)

incendi-um, i, n., *a burning, fire, conflagration; burning heat*: hence, *heat of passion, vehemence*. (Incendo.)

incend-o, i, incens-um, incend-ēre, 3 v. a., *to set fire to, kindle, inflame; rouse, excite, enrage; encourage; make bright, illumine*. (Root can, as in candeo. See accendo.)

incens-us, a, um, perf. part. of incendo, *set on fire; enraged, &c.*

incept-um, i, n., *a thing begun, or undertaken; an enterprise, undertaking; attempt*. (incipio.)

incert-us, a, um, *not settled, or fixed; uncertain, not to be relied on; undecided, doubtful, hesitating, not resolved on, not "sure about."* (in, certus.)

incid-o, i, incās-um, incid-ēre, 3 v. n., *to fall or light upon; fall into; to fall in with (unexpectedly); to attack, assault; to come into one's mind, occur to; to fall out, happen, occur*. (in, cado.)

incid-o, i, incisum, incid-ēre, 3 v. a., *to cut into, or through; cut open; lop; prune; cut off, put an end to; carve, engrave upon*. (in, caedo.)

incip-io, incēp-i, incept-um, incēp-ēre, 3 v. a. and n., *to take up; lay hold on, seize; take in hand, begin*: n., *to begin to be, commence*. (in, capio.)

incit-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to put in rapid motion; urge forward, spur on, hasten on; rouse; excite, rouse, stimulate, incite*. (In, cito.)

inclin-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n.,

to bend in, or towards, bend down, or aside; alter, change: with reflex. pron. se, *to fall back, give way*, (said of an army): n., *to bend down, incline; sink, set*. (Root cli, or clln, as in κλίω, cllvus, acclino, declino, &c.)

inclūd-o, inclūs-i, inclūs-um, inciūd-ēre, 3 v. a., *to shut in, confine, enclose; insert; engraft; obstruct, hinder, restrain*. (In, claudio.)

inclūs-us, a, um, perf. part. of includo, *shut up, &c.*

incognit-us, a, um, *not examined, not tried; unknown*. (In, cognitus.)

incōl-a, ac, m. or f., *an inhabitant; native; sojourner*. (Incolo.)

incōl-o, ul, incult-um, incōl-ēre, 3 v. a. and n.: a., *to dwell in, inhabit*; n., *to dwell in*. (In, colo.)

incōlūm-is, is, e, *unpaired, entire, whole; unhurt, uninjured; safe, secure*. (Etymology doubtful. Some connect the word with the stem of cado, and calamitas.)

incommōd-um, i, n., *inconvenience; disadvantage; defeat; disaster*. (Incommodus, inconvenient.)

incrēdibil-is, is, e, *not able to be believed, incredible; extraordinary, amazing*. (In, credibilis.)

incrēp-o, ul, (or āvi.) Itum, (or ātum.) āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to make a noise; rattle; strike against; chide, reprove*. (In, crepo.)

incūb-o, ui, (or āvi.) Itum, (or ātum.) āre, 1 v. n., *to lie or lean upon; watch anxiously; brood over; dwell in or on; fall on*. (In, cubo, to lie down.)

incult-us, a, um, *uncultivated, untilled; unpolished, rude, uncivilized, unrefined*. (In, cultus, from colo.)

incumb-o, incūbui, incūbūt-um, Incumb-ēre, 3 v. n., *to lay one's self on; lean on, recline on; prostrate one's self on*. (In, cubo.)

incūnābil-a, ōrum, n. pl., *swaddling clothes; a cradle*: hence, *birth-place; early abode; cradle*. (In, cunabula, a cradle.)

incurr-o, i, (or incurri.) incursum, incur-ēre, 3 v. a., *to run at, or against, or up; attack, assail*. (In, curro.)

incursio, incursiōn-is, f., *a running at, or against; a hostile attack, assault; invasion, incursion; irruption*. (Incurro.)

incurs-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freed. to

I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y

- run at, or against; strike against; assault; run among.* (Inenro.)
- incūs-o**, āvi, &c., 1 v. a., *to accuse, arraign, blame.*
- inde**, adv., *from that place, thence; from that circumstance, therefore; from that time, thereafter; henceforth.* (Is.)
- indēject-us**, u, um, *not thrown down, left standing.* (N, dejectus.)
- indīci-um**, i, n., *information, notice; discovery; formal evidence (before a court), deposition; a mark, token, evidence.* (Index, a pointer,—i. e., one that shows. See dico.)
- indīc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to point out, show; declare, reveal; give formal evidence (before a court); state, mention.* (Index, one that points out. See dico.)
- indīc-o**, indīc-i, Indiet-um, Indīc-ēre, 3 v. a., *to declare openly, proclaim, publish, announce.* (In, dico.)
- indīg-eo**, nī, ēre, 2 v. n., *to be in want of, need, require; long for.* (In, egeo.)
- indīgn-us**, a, um, *unworthy, undeserving; unbecoming, shameful; severe, harsh; unmerited, not deserving.* (In, dignus.)
- indōlesc-o**, indōiui, Indōlesc-ēre, 3 v. n. and a. incept., *to begin to feel pain, or sorrow; grieve at, regret, be troubled at.* (In, doleo.)
- indūc-o**, induxi, induct-um, Indūc-ēre, 3 v. a., *to lead or bring into a place, convey; draw over, spread over, cover; induce, prevail on, persuade; take into one's head, conceive.* (In, duco.)
- induct-us**, a, um, perf. part. of Induco, *brought in, introduced; induced; also adj., brought in (from abroad), foreign, strange.*
- indulg-eo**, indulc-i, indult-um, Indulg-ēre, 2 v. n., *to be kind or indulgent to; indulge, favour; yield to, concede, allow, grant.* (Etymology doubtful.)
- indū-o**, i, (n)itum, ēre, 3 v. a., *to put on, cover with, clothe, invest with; impart; assume.* (In, and du, to put. Cf. dōw, dōvus.)
- industri-a**, ae, f., *diligence, industry, assiduity.* (Industrius, diligent.)
- indūt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of Induo, *clothed, &c.*
- ineo**, inivi, or inii, Inītum, Inīre, 4 v. a. and n. irreg., *to go into, enter; begin, undertake; contrive; make: Talem Inlīt rationem, contrived the following de-*
- vice: n., to make a beginning, begin,—as in Nep. Them., l. l. (In, eo.)*
- inerm-is**, is, e, and us, a, um, *without weapons, unarmed, defenceless.* (In, arma.)
- infāmi-a**, ae, f., *ill fame, evil report; disgrace, infamy.* (Infamis, of ill report.)
- infām-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to bring into ill repute, brand with infamy; accuse, charge.* (Infamis, of ill report; and that from in, fama.)
- infect-us**, a, um, *unwrought, unmade, unfinished.* (In, factus.)
- infelix**, gen. infēlic-is, adj., *unfruitful; unfortunate; unhappy; unlucky, disastrous.* (In, felix.)
- infer**. See inferns.
- inferior**, gen. Inferiōr-is, compar. of Inferus, *lower; inferior (In quality); (of time,) later, subsequent.*
- infērius**, n. compar., *from inferior.*
- inferius**, adv., *lower.* Compar. of Infra.
- infern-us**, a, um, *situated beneath; lower; under-ground; belonging to the infernal regions, infernal.* (Strengthened form of infērus.)
- infēr-o**, Inīll, Inīātum, Inferre, 3 v. a. irreg., *to bring or carry into, in, upon, or against; to throw or put into, in, upon, or against; to bring upon, cause, produce, inflict: Inferre signa In hostes, to advance to the attack, charge; Inferre arma, or bellum, to wage war: Inferre se, to advance, go.* (In, fero.)
- infēr-us**, a, um, *being beneath, lower, underneath; under-ground; belonging to the nether world: hence, infer-i, ūm (for ūrum) the gods of the lower world.* Compar. inferior; superi. Infimus, or Imus. (See infra.)
- inficiandus**. See Inſtitandus.
- infic-io**, Inſec-i, Inſect-um, Inſic-ēre, 3 v. n., *to mix with; dip into; dye, stain, tinge; corrupt.* (In, facio.)
- inficior**. See Inſittor.
- inſinit-us**, a, um, *without bounds or limits, boundless; vast; infinite; very numerous.* (In, and finitus, from finio.)
- infirm-us**, a, um, *not strong, weak, feeble; without firmness of mind, faint-hearted, timid; wavering, inconstant, sickle.* (In, firmus.)
- inſitiand-us**, a, um, gerundive of Inſittor.
- inſiti-or**, ārus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., *to deny,*

disown; to decline to fulfil a promise.
(inflictae, denial; and that from in and fatcor.)

inflāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of inflō, and
adj., *blown up, inflated, puffed up;*
haughty, proud.

inflect-o, inflexi, inflexum, inflect-ēre,
3 v. a., *to bend, curve; change, alter.*
(in, flecto.)

infl-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to blow or*
breathe into, or on; to play on a wind
instrument, (e.g., buccina); to inflate,
cause to swell, puff up.

inflū-o, xl, xum, ēre, 3 v. n., *to flow or*
run into; pour into; rush in great
numbers, (said of invaders); press into.
(in, fluo.)

infṛā, adv., and prep. with acc.: 1. Adv.,
below, beneath; inferior in value or
esteem: 2. Prep., *below, under.* (The
root inf, which appears in inf-ra, inf-
eriot, inf-imus, inf-erius, is a length-
ened form of in; just as sup-ra, sup-
erius, &c., are from sub.)

infund-o, infūd-i, infūs-um, infund-ēre,
3 v. a., *to pour in, into, or upon;*
infuse; pour out; spread. (in, fundo)

ingēni-um, l, n., *natural quality, in-*
born talent; nature, disposition, temper,
character; talents, ability, genius. (in,
and gen, root of gigno, gen-ul.)

ingens, gen. ingent-is, adj., *monstrous;*
great, immense, vast, huge; strong,
powerful; great, distinguished. (Said
to be compounded of in, not, and gen,
root of gigno; so that the primary
meaning is, *not born*,—i.e., *not natural,*
monstrous.)

ingrāti-a, ae, f., *want of gratitude, in-*
gratitude, thanklessness. (in, gratia.)

ingrātis, contracted for ingratiis, abl.
pl. of ingratiā, *without one's thanks;*
against one's will, unwillingly, reluc-
tantly.

ingrāt-us, a, um, *disagreeable, unpleas-*
ant; unthankful, ungrateful. (in, grat-
us.)

ingrēdi-or, ingressus, ingrēd-i, 3 v. n.
and a. dep., *to go into, enter; proceed,*
advance; enter on, begin, engage in;
imitate, follow. (in, gradior.)

inhib-eo, ui, itum, ēre, 2 v. a., *to hold*
in, restrain, check, hinder, prevent. (in,
habeo.)

inimicitī-a, ae, f., *enmity, hostility.*
(inimicus.)

inimic-us, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile;*
hurtful: as a subst., *an enemy.* (in,
amicus.)

iniqu-us, a, um, *not even, or level;*
hence, disadvantageous, unfavourable.
(in, acquus.)

inīti-um, l, n., *a going in; an entrance*
upon, beginning. (inco.)

injicio, injēel, inject-um, injic-ēre, 3 v.
a., *to throw or cast in, or into; throw or*
put on, or over; inspire; infuse. (in,
jacio.)

injūri-a, ae, f., *an act of injustice, a*
wrong, injury; harshness, rigour. (in-
jurius, wrongful; and that from in,
jus.)

injuss-us, ūs, m., *absence of command,*
without order: Suo injussu, *without his*
order. (in, jussus.)

injustē, adv., *unjustly, wrongfully, un-*
fairly. (injustus.)

innascor, innātus, innasci, 3 v. n. dep.,
to be born in; grow up in; arise, orig-
inate. (in, nascor.)

innāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of Innascor,
inborn, innate, natural, native.

innocēns, gen. innocent-is, adj., *harm-*
less, inoffensive, innocuous; also, free
from guilt, innocent. (in, nocens.)

innocenti-a, ae, f., *harmlessness; inno-*
cence, freedom from guilt, uprightness,
integrity. (innocens.)

innocu-us, a, um, *not injurious, or*
hurtful; harmless, inoffensive; also,
unhurt, unscathed, uninjured. (in,
nocuus.)

innoxi-us, a, um, *harmless, innoxious;*
innocent, blameless; unharmed, unhurt.
(in, and noxius, from noxa.)

inōpi-a, ae, f., *want of necessities, scar-*
city, need, indigence, poverty. (inops.)

inōpinans, gen. inopinant-is, adj., *not*
expecting, off guard, unaware. (in,
opinor.)

inops, gen. inōp-is, adj., *without re-*
sources, destitute, poor, needy; helpless.
(in, opes.)

inp- For words so beginning, see imp-
inquam, or inquo, 3 v. dep., (for parts
used see a Grammar, or "First Latin
Reader," p. 96.) *I say.* It does not be-
gin a clause, but must be placed after
one or more words of the speaker. It
is employed when the identical words
used by a person are reported, like our
says he, says I, &c. (Cf. quot.)

I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
X
Y

- inquir-o**, **inquisiv-i**, **inquisit-um**, **inquir-ere**, 3 v. a., to seek after, or into; search for; examine, inquire. (In, quero.)
- insciens**, gen. **inscient-is**, adj., not knowing, unaware. (In, sciens.)
- insci-us**, a, um, not knowing, ignorant. (In, scio.)
- inscrib-o**, **inscrips-i**, **inscript-um**, **inscrib-ere**, 3 v. a., to write on, inscribe, put an inscription on; engrave. (In, scribo.)
- insēqu-or**, **insēcūt-us**, **insēqu-i**, 3 v. a. dep., to follow after, pursue, press hard after; harass; ensue. (In, sequor.)
- insēr-o**, **insēru-i**, **insert-um**, **insēr-ere**, 3 v. a., to put or plant in; introduce; insert, thrust in; engraft. (In, sero.)
- insert-us**, a, um, perf. part. of **insero**, thrust or put in, &c.
- inserv-io**, **ivi**, or **ii**, **num**, **ire**, 4 v. n. and a., to be a slave to; be devoted or attached to; pay court to; pay great attention to (a person or thing); attend, take care of, watch. (In, servio.)
- insīdi-ae**, **arum**, f. pl., an ambush, ambuscade; a plot, device, treachery, snares, deceit. (Insideo.)
- insīdi-or**, **ātus**, **āri**, 1 v. n. and a. dep., to lie in wait for; lay snares for; entrap. (Insidiare.)
- insign-e**, is, n., a mark, token, badge; ensign, flag, signal. (Insignis.)
- insign-is**, is, e, distinguished by a mark, marked; notable, striking, conspicuous; extraordinary, eminent, famous. (In, signum.)
- insil-ir** **ui**, **insult-um**, **insil-ire**, 4 v. n., to leap into, or upon; spring upon, or at; bound up on. (In salio.)
- insinu-o**, **āvi**, **ātum**, **āre**, 1 v. a., to introduce in a winding manner: hence, to insert gently; to wind or work one's way into; insinuate, penetrate gradually. (In, and sinuo, from sinus.)
- insist-o**, **institi**, **insist-ere**, 3 v. n. and a., to stand on; be seated on: hence, to stop, halt: with dat., to pursue: with viam, iter, &c., to enter upon; adopt; follow; urge. (In, sisto.)
- insolenter**, adv., contrary to custom, unusually: hence, immoderately, excessively; haughtily, proudly. (Insolens.)
- inspir-o**, **āvi**, **ātum**, **āre**, 1 v. a., to blow or breathe into, (as, e.g., a wind instrument:) hence, to inspire; infuse; incite. (In, spiro.)
- instābil-is**, is, e, that does not stand fast, unstable, unsteady, wavering; without good footing. (In, stabilis, from sto.)
- instans**, gen. **instant-is**, pres. part. of **insto**, standing upon, or at; pressing; present (of time): Do instantibus, about matters in hand.
- instar**, n. indecl., image, likeness; manner; figure: used adverbially, after the manner of, like, equal to. (The root seems to be that of sto; and the word is therefore similar to our *in-stead*.)
- institu-o**, **i**, (**ii**)**tum**, **ere**, 3 v. a., to set up, erect; found; construct, build, (e.g., naves;) establish; train, educate; draw up in line, (as an army,) arrange; begin; resolve, determine. (In, statuo.)
- institut-um**, **i**, n., an arrangement; established order, or custom; plan, mode of life; institution, ordinance; purpose, design, intention: *Suo instituto, according to his purpose or plan.* (Instituo.)
- insto**, **institi**, **instāre**, 1 v. n. and a., to stand in, or on; draw near, approach; threaten; urge, press on; harass; attack; pursue; be earnest on, insist eagerly. (In, sto.)
- instruct-us**, a, um, perf. part. of **instruo**: also adj., prepared, furnished with, equipped; taught, instructed.
- instru-o**, **xi**, **etum**, **ere**, 3 v. a., to pile up in order; build, construct: hence, to draw up (troops) in order, array; prepare, provide. (In, struo.)
- insūfact-us**, a, um, accustomed to, inured to, trained. (From antiqua **insueo**, and **factus**.)
- insūl-a**, ae, f., an island. (On the etymology, see **consul**.)
- insult-o**, **āvi**, **ātum**, **āre**, 1 v. n. and a. freq., to leap on; dance on; trample on: hence, to treat with disrespect, act insolently towards, insult, abuse, mock. (Insilio.)
- inum**, **inful**, **inesse**, v. n. irreg., to be in, or upon; be contained in; dwell, abide in. (In, sum.)
- intact-us**, a, um, untouched, unhit; free from; untried. (In, and **tactus**, from **tango**.)
- intēger**, **integr-a**, **integr-um**, untouched, whole, entire: hence, unharmed, unscathed; sound, healthy; fresh, vigorous; blameless, spotless, pure, virtuous. (In, and tag, root of **tango**.)

- intellig-o**, intellex-i, intellect-um, intellig-ere, 3 v. a., literally, to choose between; select by judgment: hence, to understand, comprehend, perceive; distinguish; be well skilled in. (inter, lego.)
- intemperans**, gen. intemperant-is, adj., not capable of self-control; without moderation, intemperate, rash. (in, tempero.)
- intemperanti-a**, ae, f., want of self-control; want of moderation; extravagance, intemperance; haughtiness, insolence. (intemperans.)
- intend-o**, i, intentum, and intensum, intend-ere, 3 v. a., to stretch out, towards, or against; aim at; direct one's course, or thoughts to; make for; apply to; purpose; endeavour. (in, tendo.)
- intent-us**, a, um, perf. part. of intendo: also adj., bent; stretched, strained; earnest, eager for, intent on.
- inter**, prep. with acc., between; among, in the midst of; during, whilst.
- interced-o**, intercessi, intercessum, interced-ere, 3 v. n., to go or come between; lie between, intervene; pass (as e.g., time); occur, happen; exist between, (Caes. B. G., v. 11, 19;) oppose, hinder, obstruct, interrupt. (inter, cedo.)
- interclūd-o**, interclūs-i, interclūs-um, interclūd-ere, 3 v. a., to block up; cut off; hinder, prevent; separate (a person from anything,—e.g., A re frumentaria, from the supply of corn.) (inter, claudo.)
- interclūs-us**, a, um, perf. part. of intercludo, shut out, cut off, &c.
- interdīco**, interdixi, interdicit-um, Interdic-ere, 3 v. a., literally, to say between, (i.e., to interpose a command between a person and his hope, or purpose:) hence, to forbid, prohibit, interdict, disallow; prevent. (inter, dica.)
- interdiu**, adv., during the day; by day. (inter, dies.)
- interdum**, adv., sometimes, now and then. (inter, dum.)
- intērcā**, adv., in the meantime, in the interim, meanwhile. (For inter eam, scil. partem, or diem.)
- intēreo**, interii, interitum, interire, 4 v. n., to be lost, perish; go to ruin; die. (inter, eo.)
- interfect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of interficio, slain, &c.
- interficio**, interfecit, interfectum, interfic-ere, 3 v. a., to destroy; consume; kill, slay, put to death. (inter, facio.)
- intērim**, adv., in the meantime. (Said to be for inter eum.)
- intērimo**, interēmi, interemptum, interim-ere, 3 v. a., to take from the midst of, (i.e., diminish:) hence, to destroy; kill, slay. (inter, and emo, to take. So perhmo.)
- intēri-or**, or, us, gen. intēriōr-is, comp. of obsolete interus, (see intra,) further in; inner; more remote; as applied to a country, the inland part. The superl. is intimus.
- intērit-us**, us, m., ruin, destruction; death. (intereo.)
- intermiss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of intermitto, having been left off, given up; interrupted.
- intermitt-o**, intermis-i, intermiss-um, intermitt-ere, 3 v. a. and n., literally, to let go between: hence, to interrupt; cease for a time,—(Vento intermisso, the wind having lulled;) leave off; neglect, let pass; leave a space,—as, Quia flumen intermittit, where the river leaves a space,—i.e., ceases to flow, is interrupted. (inter, mitto.)
- internēcio**, internēciōn-is, f., (or interniclo,) a mutual slaughter: hence, a general slaughter, massacre; utter defeat; annihilation. (internecio.)
- internunti-us**, i, m., a go-between; mediator; messenger; medium of communication. (inter, nuntius.)
- interpōn-o**, interpōsi-i, interpōsit-um, interpōn-ere, 3 v. a., to place, or set, or put between; intermix; interpose: Interponere fidem, to pledge one's word: Interponere causam, to allege as a reason: (of time,) to intervene,—as, Nocte interposita, night having intervened. (inter, pono.)
- interpōsit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of interpono, having intervened, &c.
- interp̄rēs**, interpret-is, m. or f., one who acts between two parties, a go-between, a common agent; negotiator; broker; an expounder (of language, signs, &c.) between two, an interpreter, explainer. Thus Mercury was called Interpretes divinum; and the augurs, Interpretes Jovis, expounders of the will of Heaven. (Etymology doubtful. Some connect the root pret with pret-lum.)

KTL
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
Y

- interprēt-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., to explain, expound, interpret. (interpres.)
- intersēs-o**, ui, tum, ēre, 3 v. a., to put between, interpose; allege. (inter, sero.)
- intersum**, interfui, interesse, v. n. irreg., to be between, or among; be present; assist at; attend; be apart; differ; be different: interest and other parts are used impersonally, with the meaning, to concern, to be of advantage, of importance. (See Synt., sect. vii., 8, c, with note f, p. 143.)
- intervall-um**, i, n., literally, the space between lines of piling: hence, an intervening space, interval (of place, or of time). (inter, vallum.)
- intim-us**, u, um, superi. of obsoletio interius, (see infra,) farthest in, inmost; most remote; familiar, intimate. (See interior.)
- intōn-o**, ni, (or āvi,) āre, 1 v. n. and a., to thunder; make a loud noise; roar: a., to thunder forth, or at. (in, tono.)
- intrā**, adv., on the inside, within: comp. interius; superi. intime: prep. with acc., within; (of motion,) into, within; (of time,) within, during, for; (of number,) within,—i.e., under. (From in, inter; or, according to others, for intera, scilicet parte,—the abl. of the obsolete interus.)
- intrēm-o**, ni, ēre, 3 v. n., to tremble inwardly, or to the centre: hence, to tremble exceedingly; s. ke, qucke. (in, tremo.)
- intr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to go into, enter; penetrate, pierce. (intro, adv., within.)
- intrō-ĉ**, intro-ivi, and ii, intro-itum, intro-ire, 4 v. n., to go in, enter. (intro, eo.)
- intrōit-us**, ūs, m., a going in, entering, entrance, passage, mouth, approach. (introeo.)
- introisum**, or introrsus, adv., towards the inside, inwards; into; inwardly, within. (Contracted for intro, versum.)
- intū-ēor**, itus, ēri, 2 v. a. dep., to look at, or on, or towards; observe closely, examine; consider; regard with respect, look up to. (in, tueor.)
- intūmesc-o**, intūmui, intūmesc-ēre, 3 v. n. incept., to begin to swell, swell up, rise; increase; be puffed up. (in, tumesco.)
- intus**, adv., on the inside, within; inwardly; to the inside. (in. Cf. ἐντός.)
- inūsitat-us**, a, um, not customary, or usual; uncommon, unusual, extraordinary. (in, not, and usitatus, much used.)
- intūtil-is**, is, e, useless; unprofitable; not fit for; injurious. (in, utils.)
- invād-o**, invāsi, invās-um, invād-ēre, 3 v. n. and a., to go into, enter; penetrate: hence, rush upon, attack, assault; invade; seize upon, take hold of. (in, vado.)
- invēn-io**, (E)l, tum, ire, 4 v. a., to come upon, find, meet with, discover; learn; invent, devise, plan. (in, venio.)
- inventor**, inventor-is, m., one who finds out, or discovers; an inventor, contriver; discoverer. (invenio.)
- invent-us**, a, um, perf. part. of invenio, found out, discovered.
- invict-us**, a, um, unconquered: hence, invincible. (in, victus.)
- invīd-eo**, (D)l, invīa-um, invīd-ēre, 2 v. a., to look at (with a malicious or spiteful intent): hence, to envy; grudge; hinder, prevent. (in, video.)
- invīd-i-a**, ac, f, envy; grudge; jealousy; odium; unpopularity. (invidus.)
- invīd-us**, a, um, envious; grudging; churlish. (invidico.)
- invit-us**, a, um, against one's inclination; unwilling, reluctant. (The root vi of invitus is said to belong to voi-o, being contracted as vis is for volis.)
- involv-o**, i, invōiūt-um, involv-ēre, 3 v. a., to roll to, or upon; roll round, envelop, involve; entangle. (in, volvo.)
- Iōnes**, um, m., the Ionians, or inhabitants of Ionia.
- Iōni-a**, ac, f, Ionia, a district on the west coast of Asia Minor.
- ipse**, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius, dat. ipsi, adjunctive pronoun, self; very; identical. It may be joined to any of the personal pronouns,—ego ipse, tu ipse, &c. When it stands alone, it is generally of the third person; but the verb easily decides the person: as, Ipse veni, I myself came. (It is compounded of is and the suffix pse, the same as pte; and thus, in old writers, we find eam-pse, ea-pse, and such forms.)
- ir-a**, ac, f, anger, wrath, passion, rage; bitterness.
- irācund-us**, a, um, prone to anger, irascible, passionate; angry. (ira.)
- irascor**, irātus, irasc-i, 3 v. n. dep., to become angry, be angry; be enraged. (ira.)

Irāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of *irascor*, *angry*; *enraged*.

Iris, Irīd-is, f., *Iris*, goddess of the rainbow, and messenger of the gods.

irrid-ēo, Irīsi, Irīsum, Irīd-ēre, 2 v. n. and a., *to laugh at, jeer*: a., *to mock, ridicule*. (In, rideo.)

irridicūle, adv., *without humour, without wit*. (Irridiculus; and that from In, not, and ridleulus.)

irritāment-um, i, n., *a provocative, incentive, incitement*. (Irrito, to provoke.)

irrit-us, a, um, *not ratified; invalid, of no effect, vain, useless, ineffectual; baffled*. (In, not, and ratus, ratified.)

irror-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to moisten with dew, bedew; besprinkle*. (In, and roro, from ros, roris, dew.)

irrupp-o, irrūp-i, irrūpt-um, irrūpt-ēre, 3 v. a., *to burst or break into; rush in, or forward; disturb; interrupt*. (In, rumpo.)

is, ea, id, as an adj., *this, or that*: as a pers. pronoun, *he, she, it*; very rarely of any person but the third:—like falls, *such, such like*.

Ismāri-us, a, um, *Ismarian*,—i. e., Thracian. (From the following.)

Ismār-us, (or os,) i, m., pl. Ismar a, orum, n., *Ismarus*, a mountain and a town in Thraee.

Ismān-os, (or us,) i, m., *Ismenus*, a river of Boeotia.

iste, Ista, Istud, gen. Istius, dat. Isti, demonst. pron. of second pers., *that of yours; that near you; that there; such*. (Is, tu)

Ister, Istri, m., *the Danube*. (See Ister.)

Ita, adv., *in this or in that manner; thus; as follows; so, accordingly; to such a degree, or point; very*. (Is.)

Itālī-a, ae, f., *Italy*.

Itaque, adv. and conj., *and so, and thus; therefore; hence; accordingly*. Ita, que.)

Item, adv., *in this manner; in the same manner; just so; likewise, also*. (Is.)

Itēr, Itēr-is, n., *a going; walk; way; journey, march, expedition; a course, custom, method*. (From itum, supine of eo.)

Itērum, adv., *a second time; again*. (Is.)

J.

jāc-ēo, ul, Itum, ēre, 2 v. n., literally, *to be thrown down*: hence, *to lie; lie sick; lie dead; be situated; lie loose*, (Jaecentia lora,—Ov. :) *lie prostrate, (victa jaecet pietas); lie neglected*.

jāc-iō, jēcl, jactum, jāc-ēre, 3 v. a., *to throw, cast, hurl, fling; send forth, emit; lay (in order); construct, build, (Jaecere fundamenta;) throw out; mention*.

jact-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freq., *to throw, cast, or hurl frequently, or with vigour; scatter; toss about; swing; discuss; examine; mention; boast; extol*. (Jacio.)

jactūr-a, ae, f., *a throwing away; loss, damage*. (Jacto.)

jact-us, fis, m., *a throwing, hurling; a cast, throw*. (Jacio.)

jācūl-or, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., *to throw the javelin; hurl, cast; aim at, shoot at, attack*. (Jaculum, a javelin.)

jam, adv., *at this time; at that time; now; then; already; at length; immediately*. (Is.)

jānu-a, ae, f., *a door, gate, entrance; approach*.

jējūni-um, i, n., *a fasting, fast; famine; hunger*. (Jejunus, fasting.)

jūb-a, ae, f., *the mane (of a horse, &c.)*

jūb-ēo, jussi, jussum, jūb-ēre, 2 v. a., *to order, bid, tell, command; express a wish; decree; ratify*.

jūdex, jūdte-is, m. or f., *a judge, arbitrator, umpire*. (Jus, dico.)

jūdicī-um, i, n., *a judicial trial; court of justice; sentence, judgment; trial; discernment, discretion*. (Judex.)

jūdic-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to act as judge; investigate; try; determine, judge, decide; reckon; be of opinion; regard*. (Judex.)

jūg-er-um, i, n., *an acre*, (a piece of ground 240 feet long, by 120 broad,—i. e., about five-eighths of an English acre;) *juger*. There is a plural form of the third Declension (Jugeribus, &c.), from old nom. Juger.

jūg-um, i, n., *a yoke (for oxen); a collar; a yoke (as a badge of submission);*



K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
X
Y

- a yoke, or pair; a ridge of mountains.
- jūment-um**, i, n., a beast of burden, or of draught,—as, a horse, mule, ass, &c.; but not-oxen. (Contracted for jugumentum, and that from jug, the root of jungo.)
- junct-us**, a, um, perf. part. of jungo, connected, united, joined, &c.
- jungo**, junxi, junctum, jung-ēre, 3 v. a., to yoke, harness; bind-together, tie, unite; marry. (The root is jug, which is strengthened in the Present by the insertion of n,—as in frango, tango. Cf. Jug-um, eon-jux; Σύζωγ.)
- Jūno**, Jānōn-is, f., Juno, daughter of Saturn and wife of Jupiter.
- Jūpiter**, (or Juplter.) Jōv-is, m., Jupiter, son of Saturn, and husband of his sister Jūno.
- Jūr-a**, ae, f., Jura, a chain of mountains, west of modern Switzerland.
- jūr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., to swear, take an oath; (with Inter se,) conspire: a., to swear (something), or to swear by somebody; vow; promise. (jus, jūr-is.)
- jūs**, jūr-is, n., law; equity, right (as fixed by public custom,—see lex); legal authority, power; a court of justice; the law of nature, natural justice; privilege, prerogative.
- jūs-jūrand-um**, jūrisj'rand-i, n., an oath, vow. (jus, ju. v.)
- juss-um**, i, n., an order, command; commission. (jubeo.)
- juss-us**, us, m., a command, order. (jubeo.)
- justifi-a**, ae, f., justice; sense of justice; moderation, mildness. (Justus.)
- just-us**, a, um, just, equitable, fair; upright; rightful, lawful, proper; perfect, complete. (jus.)
- jūven-c-us**, a, um, young: as a subst., juvene-us, i, m., a young bullock; juvene-a, ae, f., a young cow, heifer. (juvenis.)
- jūvenīl-is**, is, e, youthful, young. (juvenis.)
- jūven-is**, is, as an adj., young, youthful: as a subst., m. or f., a young person (whether man or woman), a youth. The comp. is junior, contracted for juvenlor. (Cf. Ital. giovane, or giovine; Fr. jeune.)
- jūventūs**, jūventūt-is, f., the season of youth, (say from the twentieth to the fortieth year): as a collective noun, the youth (young people) of a country. (juvenis.)
- jūv-o**, jūv-i, jūt-um, jūv-āre, 1 v. a. and n., to help, assist, benefit; give pleasure, gratify, delight: used impersonally, with the infin., juvat, it delights (me, thee, him, &c.)
- juxtā**, adv., and prep. with acc., near to, hard by, beside; in like manner, equally, alike: as prep., near to, hard by, next to, (immediately) after. (Said to be from jug, the root of jungo; and sta, the root of sto; so that it would be written jug-sta.)

K.

- K.**, as an abbreviation, stands for *Kaeso* (or *Caeso*)
- Kälend-ae**, arum, f., the Kalends, or first day of a month. (See Calendae.)

L.

- L.**, as an abbreviation, stands for *Lucius*, a common Roman name.
- Lāb-ō**, Lāb-ōn-is, m., Labeo (*Quintius Fabius*), a cognomen of some Roman families. The word means big-tipped. (See Nep. Hann., xiii. 3 and 4, with notes.)
- Lāb-ēri-us**, i, m., Laberius, the name of a Roman gens. (See Durus.)
- Lāb-īen-us**, i, m., Labienus, one of Caesar's generals. He afterwards went over to Pompey's side.
- lāb-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., to totter; give way; sink; fall to pieces, go to ruin; waver, hesitate.
- lābor**, lapsus, lābi, 3 v. n. dep., to glide, slide, slip; fall down; go to ruin; move gently, or gradually.
- lābor**, lāb-ōr-is, m., labour, toil, pains, trouble, fatigue, hardship.

- lābōriōs-us**, a, nm, *laborious, toilsome, difficult.* (labor.)
- lābōr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., *to labour, exert one's self, strive, toil; take pains for; be anxious; be in distress, be afflicted; be hard pressed: sometimes in an active sense, to prepare carefully, elaborate.* (labor.)
- labr-um**, l, n., *a lip; brim, edge, margin.* (labium, or labia, a lip.)
- lac**, laet-is, n., *milk.* (Cf. γάλα, γάλακτος.)
- Lācēdaemon**, Lācēdaemōn-is, f., *Lacedemon, or Sparta, a principal city of the Peloponnesus.*
- Lācēdaemōni-us**, a, um, *Lacedemonian, or Spartan; belonging to, or connected with Lacedemon: as subst., a Lacedemonian: in pl., the Lacedemonians.*
- lācer**, lācēr-a, lācēr-um, *torn, lacerated, mangled, mutilated.*
- lācern-a**, ae, f., *an over-cloak, worn by the Romans over the toga in cold or wet weather.*
- lācēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to tear, lacerate, mangle; ruin, destroy.* (lacer.)
- lācert-us**, l, m., *the upper arm, (i.e., from the elbow to the shoulder;) the arm (in a general sense.)* (See brachium.)
- lācess-o**, ivi, itum, ēre, 3 v. a., *to provoke, exasperate, irritate; incite, urge, excite; call out, challenge.* (From the obsolete verb laelo, which is found in allicio, elicito, &c.; and cesso, a frequentative form from cio, or cieo. See also arcesso.)
- Lāco**, Lācōn-is, m., *a Laconian, or inhabitant of Laconia,—i.e., Lacedemonian, Spartan.*
- lācrīm-a**, ae, f., *a tear; a gum drop, or tear.* It is also written laeryma, lacruma, and lachryma. Old form, lacrima. (Cf. δάκρυ.)
- lācrīm-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., also laerim-or, ātus, āri, dep., *to weep, shed tears: a., to weep for, lament, bewail.* (lacrima.)
- lācrīmōs-us**, a, um, *full of tears, tearful, weeping: in an active sense, causing tears, mournful.* (lacrima.)
- lāc-us**, ūs, m., *a hollow; basin; tub; wine-vat: hence, a lake, pond, pool; cistern, reservoir.* Used by the poets for water, or a river.
- laedo**, laesi, laesum, laed ēre, 3 v. a., *to strike, dash against; injure, hurt, damage; trouble, annoy.*
- laetīti-a**, ae, f., *joy, delight, gladness, rejoicing, mirth, cheerfulness.* (laetus.)
- laet-us**, a, um, *joyful, glad, cheerful, happy; pleasant, agreeable; favourable, fortunate; fertile, rich.*
- laev-us**, a, um, *on the left (side), left; awkward, stupid, foolish; unfortunate, unfavourable, inauspicious; also sometimes, in speaking of omens, lucky, propitious.*
- Lāmāch-us**, l, m., *Lamachus, one of the generals in the Athenian expedition to Sicily.* (See Nep. Alc, ill. 4.)
- Lampsāc-us**, l, (or os, i, f.), *Lampsacus, a town in Mysia, near the Hellespont.* Also written Lampsac-um, i, n.
- lān-a**, ae, f., *wool.*
- lāniāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of lanio, *torn into morsels, &c.*
- lāni-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to tear into morsels; tear, lacerate, mangle.*
- lāpīde-us**, a, um, *of stone; stony, full of stones.* (lapis.)
- lāpis**, lapīd-is, m., *a stone.*
- largior**, largitus, larg-iri, 4 v. a. dep., *to give plentifully, bestow liberally, lavish; give largesses; bribe; grant, confer.* (largus, copious.)
- largīter**, adv., *largely, richly: Largiter posse, to be very powerful.* (largus.)
- largitio**, largitiōn-is, f., *liberal giving, profusion; prodigality; bribery, corruption.* (largior.)
- lassāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of lassus, *wearied, exhausted.*
- lass-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., *to make faint; fatigue, weary, tire, exhaust; n., to give way, fail through fatigue, sink.* (lassus, wearied.)
- lātē**, adv., *widely, far and wide, extensively.* (latus.)
- lātebr-a**, ae, f., *a lurking-place, retreat, secret retirement.* (lateo.)
- lāt-eo**, ul, ēre, 2 v. n., *to lie hid, lurk, be concealed from, escape notice, be unknown.* (Cf. λάθ-, root of λαθάνω.)
- lātissīmō**, superl. adv. of late, *most extensively, very widely.*
- lātītūdo**, lātītūdīn-is, f., *breadth; size, magnitude, extent.* (latus.)
- lātius**, adv., *more widely, or broadly: more extensively.* Comp. of late.
- Latobrig-i**, ōrum, m. pl., *the Latobrigi,*

KYL
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
X
Y

- a Gallic tribe, bordering on the Helvetii.
- latro**, latrōn-is, m., a *hired servant, a mercenary*; especially a *mercenary soldier*: hence, a *highwayman, free-booter, robber*.
- latrōcīni-um**, i, n., *military service* (of a mercenary); *highway robbery*; *piracy*; *roguey, knavery*. (latrōcīnior, *to rob*; from latro.)
- lāt-us**, a, um, *broad, wide, extensive, spacious*. Crescere in latum, *to increase in width*. (Cf. πλατύς; Germ. *platt*; Engl. *flat*.)
- lātus**, latēr-is, n., *the side or flank* (of men or animals); *the side or flank* (of anything,—as, an army, a ship, &c.)
- laud-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to praise, extol, eulogise*. (laus.)
- laurē-us**, a, um, *of bay or laurel*: as a subst., laurē-a, ac, f., *a bay or laurel tree*: *Laurea corona, a laurel wreath*.
- laur-us**, i, or ūs, f., *a bay-tree, laurel-tree*.
- laus**, laud-is, f., *praise, commendation*; *esteem, honour*; *glory, fame*.
- lāvo**, lāvī, and lāvāvi, lautum, lāvātum, and lōtum, lāv-ēre, and lāv-āre, 1 and 3 v. a., *to wash, bathe*; *moisten, wet*.
- le-a**, ac, f., *a lioness*. (Poetic for le-aena.)
- leae-n-a**, ac, f., *a lioness*. (leo.)
- lectic-a**, ac, f., *a litter, sedan*; *ber*. (lectus, *a couch*; from leg-o, *to lay or strew*.)
- lēgātio**, lēgātīōn-is, f., *the office of an ambassador*; *an embassy, mission*. (lēgo, *to send an ambas.*.)
- lēgāt-us**, i, m., *one deputed*; *an ambassador*; *deputy-lieutenant*; *lieutenant-general*. (lēgo.)
- lēgio**, lēgīōn-is, f., *literally, a selecting*: hence, *a body of men selected*; *a legion* (of soldiers); *troops, soldiers*; *an army*. (lēgo.)
- lēgionāri-us**, a, um, *of or belonging to a legion*. *legionary*. (legio.)
- lēg-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to send as an ambassador*; *choose as deputy or lieutenant*; *depute*; *bequeath*.
- lēg-o**, lēg-i, lect-um, lēg-ēre, 3 v. a., *to lay*; *put in order, arrange*; *pick, gather, choose, select*; *observe*; *read, recite*; *go through, or along*; *cruise past*. (The root leg is the same as that of λέγω, and means primarily, *to lay*.)
- Lēmān-us**, i, m., (or Lēmānus, *Lake Lemān*, or the *Lake of Geneva*.)
- Lemni-us**, a, um, *of or belonging to Lemnos*: in pl., as subst., Lemmil, *the Lemnians, or people of Lemnos*.
- Lemn-os**, i, (or Lemn-us, i,) f., *Lemnos*, an island in the Aegean Sea,—now called *Stalimene*.
- lēn-is**, is, e, *soft, gentle, mild*; *smooth*; *easy*.
- lēnitas**, lēnitāt-is, f., *gentleness, softness, mildness*; *smoothness*. (lenio.)
- lēnitūdo**, lēnitūdīn-is, f., *gentleness, softness*; *smoothness*. (lenis.)
- lēnius**, adv., comp. neut. of lenis, *more gently*; *more smoothly*.
- lentē**, adv., *slowly*; *gently*; *pliantly*; *calmly*. (lentus.)
- lent-us**, a, um, *tough*; *pliant, flexible*; *tenacious*; *sluggish, slow*; *lasting, long-continued*. (Said to be contracted for lenitus, from lenio, *to soften*.)
- leo**, leōn-is, m., *a lion*.
- Leōnīd-as**, ac, m., *Leonidas*, a Spartan king, who fell at the battle of Thermopylae.
- lēpus**, lēpōr-is, m., *a hare*.
- lēt-um**, i, n., *death*; *destruction*.
- Leuc-i**, orum, m., *the Leuci*, a people of Gaul.
- lēv-is**, is, e, *smooth* (as opposed to asper, *rough*), *polished*. (Cf. λεῖος.)
- lēv-is**, is, e, *light*; *slight, gentle*.
- lēvīt-as**, ātis, f., *lightness*.
- lēv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to make smooth, polish*. (lēvis.)
- lēv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to make light, lighten*; *lift up, raise*; *take away, remove*; *alleviate*; *release*; *lessen*. (levis.)
- lex**, lēg-is, f., *a law, rule, precept*; *mode, manner*: *Sine lege, without control*.
- libāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of libo,—*which see*.
- libenter**, adv., *willingly, gladly, with pleasure*. (libens.)
- liber**, libēr-a, um, *free, exempt from*; *unrestricted, unlimited*.
- liber**, libr-l, m., *properly, the inner bark of a tree*: hence, *a book, treatise*; also, *a book*, as the subdivision of a work.
- libērāl-is**, is, e, *belonging to freedom, or to freemen*: hence, *honourable, noble*; *generous, liberal*. (liber.)
- libērālīt-as**, libērālītāt-is, f., *nobleness*;

- kindness, generosity, liberality. (liberalis.)
- liberaliter**, adv., nobly; generously, liberally.
- liberē**, adv., freely, openly, frankly; generously. (liber.)
- libēr-i**, ōrum, m. pl., children, descendants. (liber.)
- libērius**, adv., more freely, &c.: neut. comp. of liber, — which see.
- libēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make or set free, release, emancipate, discharge. (liber.)
- liberrimē**, adv., from superl. of liber, most freely, most frankly.
- libertas**, libertāt-is, f., freedom, liberty, permission. (liber.)
- libet**, (or lubet,) an Impers. verb, it pleases: Libet mihi, I please, I am inclined, I like.
- libidinōs-us**, a, nm, full of desire, or lust; lustful, sensual, licentious. (libido.)
- libido**, libidin-is, (or lubido, &c.) f., pleasure; desire, eager inclination, passion, wantonness, lust. (libet.)
- lib-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to take a little of, sip from, taste of; touch lightly; sprinkle; offer as a libation; pour out.
- libr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to weigh, balance, poise. (libra, a balance.)
- Liby-ē**, ēs, and Liby-a, ae, f., Libya, a district in Africa.
- licenti-a**, ae, f., freedom, liberty, license; licentiousness. (licet.)
- lic-eo**, ul, itum, ēre, 2 v. n. and a., to be for sale: a., to fix a price.
- lic-eor**, itus, ēri, 2 v. dep., to bid (at an auction); to value.
- licet**, licuit, &c., 2 v. n. Impers., it is lawful, it is allowed, it is permitted.
- ligne-us**, a, um, made of wood, wooden. (lignum.)
- lign-um**, i, n., wood.
- lig-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to tie, bind, fasten.
- Ligūr-es**, um, m., the Ligurians, an Italian people, occupying the district now represented in great part by Piedmont, Genoa, and Lucca.
- Ligus**, and Ligur, Ligūr-is, adj., Ligurian: as subst., a Ligurian.
- limen**, limin-is, n., a lintel (of a door); a threshold: hence a door, entrance; house; a beginning. (Said to be from the same root as ligō, to fasten together, since the lintel connects and steadies the two door-posts.)
- limē**, limit-is, m., a cross-path: hence, a division between two fields; a boundary, limit; a path, road, way.
- lim-us**, i, m., slime, mud, dirt.
- Lingōn-es**, um, m., the Lingones, a Gallic tribe.
- lingu-a**, ae, f., the tongue: hence, speech, language. (Cf. Fr. langue.)
- linqu-o**, liqu-i, (lictum), linqu-ere, 3 v. a., to leave, depart from, forsake, abandon.
- linter**, linter-is, f., (rarely m.), a boat, skiff.
- liquid-us**, a, um, flowing, fluid, liquid, clear, limpid; clear, evident. (liqueo, to melt.)
- liquor**, liquor-is, m., fluidity; a fluid, liquid. (liqueo, to melt.)
- liquor**, liqui, 3 v. n. dep., to become fluid, dissolve, melt.
- lis**, lit-is, f., a strife, dispute, quarrel; law-suit; the point of dispute.
- Lisc-us**, i, m., Liscus, one of the chiefs of the Aedui.
- liter-a**, ae, (or littera,) f., a letter (of the alphabet): in the pl. literae, an epistle, letter; literature.
- litus**, littōr-is, (or littus, littor-is), n., the sea-shore, beach, coast, strand; bank (of a river).
- litu-us**, i, m., a trumpet, clarion; also, a curved stick (carried by the augurs).
- lōcūplēs**, gen. lōcūplēt-is, adj., rich, wealthy, well stored. (Etymology do ubtful.)
- lōcūplēt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make rich, enrich. (locuples.)
- lōc-us**, i, m., in pl. loci, or loca, a place, position, spot, district; a topic, subject.
- longē**, adv., long, in length; far off, at a distance, afar: Longe lateque, far and wide. (longus.)
- longinqu-us**, a, um, long, extensive, far reaching; distant, remote. (longus.)
- longissimē**, adv., from superl. of longus, very far; farthest.
- longitūdo**, longitūdīn-is, f., length. (longus.)
- longius**, adv., neut. comp. of longus, farther, more distant.
- long-us**, a, um, long, tall; far off, remote.
- Long-us**, i, m., Longus, a Roman name.
- lōqu-or**, locūtus, loqu-i, 3 v. n. and a.

- dep., to speak, talk, say: a., to speak out, tell.
- lör-um**, l, n., *σ* thong, bridle, rein; whip, lash.
- Lūcān-i**, ōrum, m. pl., the Lucanians, a people of southern Italy.
- lūcco**, luxi, lūc-ēre, 2 v. n., to be light; to shine, glitter. (Root lue, as in lux.)
- Lūcifer**, Lūctifer-l, m., *Lucifer*,—i.e., the light-bringer, the morning star, the planet Venus. The word is properly the masc. of the adj. *lucifer*, *lucifer-a*, um.
- Lūci-us**, l, m., *Lucius*, a Roman praenomen.
- Lūcrētī-a**, ae, f., *Lucretia*, wife of Collatinus, and daughter of Sp. Lucretius Tricipitinus.
- luct-us**, ūs, m., *grief, sorrow, lamentation*. (lugeo, to lament.)
- lūc-us**, i, m., a wood, grove, thicket.
- lūd-o**, lūs, lūsūm, lūd-ēre, 3 v. a. and n., to play, sport; amuse one's self with; ridicule; deceive; baffle; mock. (ludus.)
- lūd-us**, i, m., a play, game, sport; jest, joke: in pl., public games.
- Lugotor-ix**, lgis, m., *Lugotorix*, a British chief.
- lūmen**, lūmīn-is, n., *light; a lamp, torch; brightness, splendour*: poetic for
- a day, life, &c. (Said to be for *luemen*, from *luceo*.)
- lūn-a**, ae, f., the moon.
- lu-o**, l, ēre, 3 v. a., to pay, atone for, expiate: *Luere poenas, to suffer punishment*. (Cf. λῶω.)
- lūp-a**, ae, f., a she-wolf. (lupus.)
- Lūperc-us**, l, m., *Lupercus*,—i.e., the Wolf-avorter, the Roman name for Lyaean Pan. (lupus, arceo.)
- lūp-us**, i, m., a wolf.
- lūrīd-us**, a, um, *sallow, ghastly, lurid*: in an active sense, *making fallow; deadly*.
- lux**, lūc-is, f., *light, day-light*: poetic, a day, life, &c.
- luxūrī-a**, ae, or es, ū, f., *luxury, extravagance, high living*. (luxus, excess, luxury.)
- luxūrīōsē**, adv., *immoderately, excessively; wantonly; luxuriously, extravagantly*. (luxuriosus.)
- luxūrīōs-us**, a, um, *excessive, extravagant; luxuriant*. (luxus, excess.)
- Lycorm-as**, ae, m., *Lycornas*, a river of Ae. Ila.
- Lyc-us**, l, m., *Lycus*, father of Thrasymbulus. (See Nep. Ale., v. 16.)
- Lysander**, Lysandri, m., *Lysander*, a Spartan general.

M.

- M.**, an abbreviation for the Roman praenomen, *Marcus*.
- mādēfaciō**, madēfici, madefaci-um, madēfac-ēre, 3 v. a., to make wet, moisten. (mādeo, to be wet; and facio.)
- mādēfact-us**, a, um, *moistened, wet, bedewed*, part. of *madefacio*, or *madefio*.
- mād-ēo**, ēre, 2 v. n., to be wet; to drip or flow with.
- mādesc-o**, mādul, mādesc-ēre, 3 v. n., to grow moist, wet, &c. (mādeo.)
- mādīd-us**, a, um, *wet, moist, soft, soaked, dripping*. (mādeo, to be wet.)
- Maeandr-os**, i, (or us, l) or *Maeander*, *Maeandri*, m., the *Maeander*, a river of Ionia and Phrygia, in Asia Minor.
- Maeōni-us**, a, um, *Maeonian*,—i.e., Lydian. Maeonia was a district of Lydia.
- maest-us**, a, um, *sad, sorrowful, melancholy; causing or betraying sadness*;
- expressive of grief*. Perf. part. of *maerco*, to grieve.
- Magetobri-a**, ae, f., *Magetobria*, a town in Gaul, the position of which is not ascertained. (Caes. B. G., i. 31, 19.)
- māgis**, adv., in a greater degree, more; rather. (Cf. Fr. *mais*, and—from *jamis*—*jamais*.)
- māgīster**, māgīstr-l, m., a *master, head, chief, director, leader; teacher, instructor, tutor*. (Root *mag*, as in *magnus*, *magis*, &c. Cf. Ital. *maestro*; Fr. *maitre*.)
- māgīstr-a**, ae, f., a *mistress; sovereign; guide, leader, &c.* (See *magister*.)
- māgīstrāt-us**, ūs, m., the *office of a magistrate; a civil office, or magistracy; a magistrate*. (*magister*.)
- magnānim-us**, a, um, of *great mind, noble-minded, magnanimous*. (*magnus*, *animus*.)

- Magnēsi-a**, ac, f., *Magnesia*, a city of Caria, near the Maeander, in the west of Asia Minor.
- magnific-us**, a, um, *great, noble, distinguished; splendid, sumptuous, magnificent; showy*: comp. magnificentior. (Magnus, and ficus, from factio.)
- magnitūdo**, magnitūdīn-is, f., *greatness, size, magnitude*: with animi, it means *sublimity, dignity, greatness* (of soul). (magnus.)
- magnōpērē**, adv., *very much; greatly; exceedingly*. (magno, opere.)
- magn-us**, a, um, *great, large; important; weighty*: (of time,) *long*: comp. major; superl. maximus.
- Māgo**, Māgōn-is, m., *Mago*, brother of Hannibal.
- mājor**, mījor, mājus, comp. of magnus, with superl. maximus, *greater, larger; more important, &c.*: in pl., as a subst., *majores, ancestors*.
- mālē**, adv., comp. pejus, superl. pessime, *badly; wrongly; wickedly; unfortunately*. (malus.)
- mālēdic-us**, a, um, *reviling, abusive*: comp. maledicentior, superl. maledicentissimus. (male, dico.)
- mālēfici-um**, i, n., *an evil deed, bad action; doing injury*. (maleficus.)
- mālitiōsē**, adv., *with evil intent, maliciously; treacherously; spitefully*. (maltiosus.)
- māl-o**, ui, malle, v. a. Irreg., *to wish rather, choose in preference, prefer*. (magis, v. c.)
- māl-um**, i, n., *an evil, calamity, misfortune; damage, injury, hurt*. (mālus.)
- māl-um**, i, n., *an apple*. (Cf. μήλον.)
- māl-us**, a, um, comp. pejor, superl. pessimus, *bad; wretched, miserable; wrong, evil, wicked; unfavourable, unlucky*.
- māl-us**, i, f., *an apple-tree; the mast of a ship* (masc.)
- mandāt-um**, i, n., *a commission, order, charge*. (mando.)
- mand-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to put in hand, give in charge, commission, entrust, commit; enjoin*. (manus, do.)
- Mandubrati-us**, i, m., *Mandubratius*, a British prince.
- mānē**, neut. indecl., *the morning*: as adv., *in the morning*.
- mān-eo**, si, sum, ēre, 2 v. n., *to remain, stay, abide; continue, last, endure, remain uninjured; wait for, await*.
- mān-es**, ium, m., *departed spirits, manes; the shades, the lower world*.
- mānifest-us**, a, um, *clear, evident, apparent, manifest; convicted of; proved clearly guilty*.
- Manli-us**, i, m., the name of a Roman gens.
- mansuē-fācio**, fēci, factum, fāc-ēre, 3 v. a., *to make tame; pacify; tame*. (mansu-cesco and facio; and mansuesco from manus susceo, *to accustom to the hand*, —i.e., tame.)
- mansuētūdo**, mansuētūdīn-is, f., *tame-ness; gentleness, mildness; clemency, mercy*. (mansuetus.)
- mān-us**, us, f., *a hand, the fist; bravery; violence; struggle; power, might*.
- Mārāthōn**, Mārāthōn-is, m., *Marathon*, a plain in Attica.
- Mārāthōni-us**, a, um, *belonging to Marathon*.
- Marcell-us**, i, m., *Marcellus*, a Roman family name: M. Claudius Marcellus, (see Nep. Hann., v. 15.)
- Marcōmann-i**, ōrum, m., *the Marcomanni*, a warlike tribe of the Suevi. (Caes. B. G., l. 51.)
- mār-e**, is, n., *the sea*.
- māritim-us**, a, um, *belonging to the sea, maritime; situated on the sea*. (mare.)
- mārit-us**, a, um, *belonging to marriage, matrimonial*: hence, as a subst., *a married man, a husband*. (mas.)
- Māri-us**, i, m., *Marius*, (C.) uncle of Julius Caesar.
- marmor**, marmōr-is, n., *marble; a statue of marble*: used by the poets for *the marble surface of the sea*.
- Mars**, Mart-is, m., *Mars*, god of war, father of Romulus and Remus.
- mās**, mār-is, m., *a male*.
- matār-a**, ae, or matār-is, is, or matēr-is, is, f., *a Celtic pike or javelin*. (See note on Caes. B. G. l. 26, 9.)
- matēr**, matr-is, f., *a mother; source, origin*. (μήτηρ.)
- matēr-fāmilias**, or mater familias, or mater familiae, *the mother of a family, a matron*. When familia is joined with mater, pater, &c., it usually adopts the old form of the gen., familias, but familiae is often found likewise, and the pl. matresfamiliarum.
- matēri-a**, ae, or es, ei, f., *material, timber*.

- mātern-us**, a, um, *belonging to a mother, motherly.* (mater.)
- mātrīmōni-um**, l, n., *marriage, matrimony.* (mater.)
- Matrōn-a**, ae, f., *the Marne, a river of Gaul.*
- mātūrius**, adv., *sooner, earlier; more speedily.* (matrus.)
- mātūr-us**, a, um, *ripe, mature; fit; seasonable; early; speedy; superl. maturinus, but more usually maturissimus.*
- Māvors**, Mavort-is, m., (old form for Mars,) *Mars, the god of war.*
- maximē**, adv., *in a very great degree; most of all, chiefly, most especially.* (maximus.)
- maxim-us**, a, um, *superl. of magnus, the greatest, largest, chief, &c.* (See magnus.)
- mēcum**, (i. e., enm me.) *with me.*
- mēd-eor**, ēri, 2 v. n. dep., *usually with dat., to heal, cure; amend; relieve.*
- mēdicāmen**, mēdicānti-is, n., *a remedy; medicament, drug; paint, ointment.* (medicor, to heal.)
- mēdiocritē** adv., *in a moderate degree, moderately; tolerably: Non mediocriter, in no slight degree.*
- mēditerrānē-us**, a, um, *surrounded by land; inland, remote from the sea.* (medus, terra.)
- mēdi-us**, a, um, (that which is) *in the middle, central, middle; middling, ordinary, moderate.*
- mēl**, mell-is, n., *honey.* (Gr. μέλι.)
- Mēlās**, Melān-is, or Mel-ae, m., *the river Melas.* (See note 247, p. 251.)
- mēlior**, mēlior, mēlius, comp. of bonus, *better, &c.* See bonus. (Cf. Fr. meilleur.)
- mēlius**, adv., *better; rather: nent. of melior.*
- membr-um**, l, n., *a member, limb; part, division.*
- mēmīn-i**, isse, v. n. defect., *to remember, recollect; thin: of.* (The root men reduplicated.)
- mēmōr**, gen. mēmōr-is, adj., *remembering, mindful; careful.* (mem for root men. See meminī.)
- mēmōri-a**, ae, f., *calling to mind, remembering; recollection, memory.* (memor.)
- mēmōr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to call to one's mind, remind (one) of; relate, tell, mention.* (memor.)
- Mēnāpi-i**, ōrum, m. pl., *the Menapii, a Gallie tribe, living between the Maese and the Scheldt.*
- mens**, ment-is, f., *literally, the power of remembering; hence, the intellect, understanding, judgment, reasoning faculty, mind; heart, disposition; courage.* (The root is men, as in meminī.)
- mens-a**, ae, f., *a table.*
- mens-is**, is, m., *a month.*
- mentor**, mēnsōr-is, m., *one who measures, a measurer.* (From perf. part. of metlor.)
- mensūr-a**, ae, f., *a measuring; measure, standard: also, quantity; capacity; size.* (metlor.)
- mentio**, mentiōn-is, f., *a calling to mind; a mentioning of anything, mention.* (Root men, as in meminī.)
- mercātor**, mercātōr-is, m., *a trader, merchant, dealer.* (mercor, to trade.)
- mercātūr-a**, ae, f., *trade, traffic, commerce; goods, merchandise.* (mercor, to trade.)
- Mercūri-us**, l, m., *Mercury, messenger of the gods.*
- mēr-eo**, ui, Itum, ēre, 2 v. a. and n., and mēr-cor, itus, ēri, dep., *to earn, gain; get; deserve, merit: n., to deserve, merit, (usually followed by de with the ablative.)*
- merg-o**, mers-i, mers-um, merg-ēre, 3 v. a., *to dip, dip in, immerse, plunge; drown; overwhelm.*
- mēriān-us**, a, um, *of mid-day, or noon: hence, southern, southerly.* (meridies.)
- mēridi-es**, ēi, m., *mid-day, noon; the south.* (merus dies,—i. e., unmixed, pure day.)
- mērīto**, adv., *deservedly; justly.* (Abl. of meritum.)
- mērīt-um**, l, n., *a thing earned: hence, desert, due, (whether good or ill); a good service, kindness, benefit.* (merco.)
- mērīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of merco, *deserving, (usually with bene, optime, and such adverbs,) deserving well: in a passive sense, deserved, merited, due.*
- Mērop-s**, is, m., *Merops, husband of Clymene.* (See Phaethon.)
- mers-us**, a, um, perf. part. of mergo,

- sunk, submerged: hence, overwhelmed; distressed; ruined, wrecked.*
- mēr-um**, i, n., *pure wine,—i.e., wine un-mixed with water.*
- mēr-us**, a, um, *pure, unmixed, unadulterated; mere, nothing but, only.*
- Messāl-a**, ac, m., *Messala, the name of a Roman family of the gens Valeria.*
- mēt-a**, ac, f., a *tu: ing-post; goal; end, extremity, boundary. (metlor.)*
- mētall-um**, i, n., *a metal: hence, of anything taken out of the earth,—as marble, &c.; a mine. (μέταλλον.)*
- mēt-ior**, mens-us, (rarely metitus.)
- mēt-iri**, 4 v. a. dep., *to measure, measure out, apportion; distribute. (Etymology doubtful.)*
- Mēti-us**, i, n., *Mētius, one of the partisans of Ariovistus.*
- mēt-o**, messu-i, mess-um, mēt-ēre, 3 v. a., *to reap, mow, crop.*
- mētū-o**, i, (ū)tum, ēre, 3 v. a. and n., *to fear, be afraid of, dread: n., to fear, stand in awe, be in dread. (metus.)*
- mēt-us**, us, m., *fear, dread, apprehension.*
- me-us**, a, um, *my, or mine.* The voc. masc. is usually *mi.* (me.)
- mīc-o**, ul, āre, 1 v. n., *to move quickly in a quivering manner; to vibrate; dart backwards and forwards: hence, to flash, gleam, sparkle.*
- mīle**. See *mille.*
- mīlēs**, mīlit-is, m., *a soldier; especially, a foot-soldier: as a collective noun, soldiery.*
- Mīlēs-i-us**, a, um, *Milesian,—i.e., of or from Miletus.*
- Mīlēt-us**, i, f., *Miletus, the chief town of Ionia, in Asia Minor.*
- mīlītār-is**, is, e, *belonging to soldiers, or to war, warlike, military: Militare signa, standards. (miles.)*
- mīlītī-a**, ac, f., *military service, warfare, war: hence, soldiery. (miles.)*
- mille**, num. adj. indecl., *a thousand: pl. millia, thousands,—hence, of indefinite numbers, innumera.*
- milli-a**, um, n. pl., *thousands.* (See preceding word.)
- Miltiād-es**, is, m., *Miltiades, son of Cimon.*
- Mimās**, Mimant-is, m., *Mimas, a mountain and promontory in Ionia, opposite the island of Chios.*
- mīnax**, gen. mīnāc-i., *projecting; over-*
- hauling; threatening. (minor, to threaten.)*
- Mīnerv-a**, ac, f., *Minerva, goddess of wisdom, arts, &c.*
- mīnīmē**, adv., *in the least degree; by no means, not at all. (minimus.)*
- mīnīm-us**, a, um, *superl. of parvus, the smallest, the least. (See parvus.)*
- mīnister**, mīnīstra, mīnīstrum, *literally, one less, or inferior to: hence, serving, attending on, ministering: as subst. m., minister, a servant, attendant; helper, aid; accomplice, abettor. (minus.)*
- mīnistr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to attend, wait on, serve; take care of, manage, direct. (minister.)*
- mīnītans**, gen. mīnītant-is, pres. part. of *minitor, threatening.*
- mīnīt-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., *to threaten, menace. (minor.)*
- mīn-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a., *to project; overhang; threaten. (minare, thrusts.)*
- mīnor**, mīnor, mīnus, *comp. of parvus, smaller, less. (See parvus.)*
- Mīnūci-us**, i, m., *Minucius, name of a Roman gens. (See Nep. Hann., v. 12, and viii. 2.)*
- mīnu-o**, i, (ū)tum, ēre, 3 v. a. and n., *to make less, lessen; weaken: n., to become less; (of the tide,) to ebb. (minus.)*
- mīnus**, (see parvus, and minor,) *less: also adv., less.*
- mīrābil-is**, is, e, *wonderful, strange, extraordinary; excessive. (miror.)*
- mīrācūl-um**, i, n., *a wonderful thing, marvel; portent. (Neut. of miraculus.)*
- mīrācūl-us**, a, um, *wonderful, strange, extraordinary. (miror.)*
- mīr-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. and n. dep., *to wonder or marvel at; be astonished at; admire.*
- mīr-us**, a, um, *wonderful, astonishing, extraordinary.*
- mīsc-ēo**, ni, mīstum, or mīxtum, mīsc-ēre, 2 v. a., *to mix, mingle; unite; blend; throw into confusion, disarrange; embroil (mostly poetic.)*
- mīser**, mīser-a, mīser-um, *to be pitied; wretched; unfortunate; miserable.*
- mīserābil-is**, is, e, *worthy of pity, pitiable, lamentable, wretched. (miseror.)*
- mīserand-us**, a, um, (miseror,) *pitiable.*
- mīser-ēo**, ul, ituni, ēre, 2 v. n., *to pity, compassionate: used impersonally, miseret, it pities; miseruit, &c. (miser.)*

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

Y

- mīser-eor**, itus, ēri, 2 v. n. dep., to pity, have compassion on.
- mīserīcōrdi-a**, ae, f., tender-heartedness, compassion, pity. (misericors, compassionate)
- mīser-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., to feel pity for, commiserate; lament, deplore. (miser.)
- miss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of mitto, sent, &c.
- mīt-is**, is, e, mīld, gentle, soft, kindly, mellow.
- mitt-o**, mīsl, missum, mitt-ēre, 3 v. a., to let go; make to go, send, despatch; throw, hurl; let loose, release, dismiss.
- mōbilitas**, mōbilitāt-is, f., movableness; rapid movement; fickleness. (inobilis, movable.)
- mōdērāmen**, mōdērāmēn-is, n., that by which one manages, (e.g., a rudder:) hence, management, control, direction. (moderor.)
- mōdēr**, r, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., to let things to: hence, to restrain, control, moderate; curb, check. (modus.)
- mōdesti-a**, ae, f., control of one's desires; freedom from excess; moderation, sobriety. (modestus, moderate.)
- mōdō**, adv., literally, by a limit: hence, only, but; (of time,) just now; lately: Modo—modo, at one time—at another time.
- mōd-us**, i, m., measure, limit, restriction; way, manner.
- mōen-e**, is, n., a city wall: usually found in the pl., moenia. (moenio,—i.e., munio.)
- mōeni-a**, um, n. pl., walls, fortifications. (moenio,—i.e., munio.)
- mōest-us**, a, um, sad, sorrowful, mournful. (See macustus.)
- mōl-es**, is, f., a huge mass; a mound; dam; pier, mole; labour, difficulty; burden, load; distress.
- mōliment-um**, i, n., great exertion, effort. (mōlor.)
- mōl-ior**, itus, īri, 4 v. n. and a., to get into motion; exert one's self; endeavour, struggle, strive: a., to set in motion (with labour and difficulty); heave, throw, cast; throw up, build, erect; design; undertake; prepare; perform, accomplish. (mōles.)
- mōlit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of mōlo, ground, crush.
- mōli-io**, i, vi, itum, īre, 4 v. a., to make soft, soften; make easy; render effeminate; mitigate; tame, subdue. (mōlis.)
- mōll-is**, is, e, soft, mild, tender; pliant, supple; weak, timid; gentle; smooth; (of hills,) easy of ascent. (Some derive it from mōbills, but this is very doubtful.)
- mōl-o**, ul, Itum, ērc, 3 v. a., to grind (in a mill), crush. (mola, a mill.)
- Mōloss-us**, a, um, Molossian: as subst., m., Moloss, the Molossians,—i.e., the people of Molossis, in Epirus.
- mōment-um**, i, n., literally, a balancing motion, balance: hence, an alteration of movement, and that which causes an alteration,—e.g., a particle, part, point: (of time,) a short space, moment: hence also, impulse; weight; motive power; importance. (Contracted for movimentum, and that from movēo.)
- Mōn-a**, ae, f., Mona, or the Isle of Man. (See p. 230, note 9, chap. xiii.)
- mōn-eo**, ul, Itum, ēre, 2 v. a., literally, to make one think: hence, to remind; admonish, advise, warn; inform, teach. (The root is men, as in memini,—which see.)
- mōnīt-um**, i, n., an admonition, warning; prophecy, prediction. (moneo.)
- mōnīt-us**, ūs, m., warning, admonition; indication (from heaven, by omens, oracles, &c.) (moneo.)
- mons**, mont-is, m., a mountain, high hill.
- monstr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to point out, show, indicate; tell, declare. (monstrum.)
- monstr-um**, i, n., literally, that which points out, or tells: hence, an omen, sign from heaven, portent; an appalling sight; prodigy; monster. (moneo.)
- mōntān-us**, a, um, belonging to a mountain; mountain (as an adj.) (mons.)
- mōnūment-um**, i, n., that which keeps (something) in mind: hence, a memorial; monument; record. (moneo.)
- mōr-a**, ae, f., a delay, hindrance.
- morb-us**, i, m., a disease, malady, sickness; distress, affliction. (The root is perhaps the same as that of morior.)
- Mōrīn-i**, ōrum, m., the Morini, a Gallic tribe, who lived near the Strait of Dover.
- mōr-ior**, mortu-us. (fat. part. moritur-

- us, mōr-i, 3 v. n. dep., to die; fade away, wither, vanish. (Same root as mors, and μορ-τός. Fr. mourir.)
- mōr-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. n. and a. dep., to wait, delay, loiter, stay, remain: a., to delay, retard, hinder. (mora.)
- mors**, mort-is, f., death. (See morior.)
- mors**, -is, ūs, m., a biting; a bite; a hold, catch (as of an anchor); a malicious attack. (From perf. part. of mordeo, to bite.)
- mortāl-is**, is, e, subject to death, mortal, perishable; belonging to or fitted to man, human: as subst., a human being, man. (mors.)
- mortu-us**, a, um, perf. part. of morior, and adj., dead; decayed, withered.
- mōr-um**, i, n., a mulberry,—i.e., the fruit; a blackberry. (morus.)
- mōr-us**, i, ē, a mulberry tree.
- mōr-us**, a, um, black; dark-coloured.
- mōs**, mōi-is, m., manner, custom, way, fashion; conduct, behaviour: in pl., character; morals; kind, nature, quality: Gerere morem alicui, to gratify one's humour.
- mōt-us**, ūs, m., a moving, motion, movement; (of the mind,) emotion, passion. (From perf. part. of moveo.)
- mōv-ēo**, mōv-i, mōt-um, mōv-ēre, 2 v. a. and n., to move, set in motion, remove; drive out, eject; excite; cause, influence.
- mox**, adv. soon; immediately; by-and-by, after a little; just now; a little ago.
- mūcro**, mūcrōn-is, m., a sharp point or edge; a sword, blade; knife.
- mulc-ēo**, mulsi, mulsum, mule-ēre, 2 v. a., to stroke; touch gently; soothe; soften; make smooth; calm.
- Mulciber**, Muleibēr-is, or i, m., Muleiber (i.e., the fire-tamer), a surname of Vulcan; also, fire. (mulceo.)
- mulc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to beat, maltreat, injure.
- mult-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. See mult-o, āvi, &c.
- mūliebr-is**, is, e, belonging to woman, womanly; womanish, weak, unmanly, effeminate. (mulier.)
- mūlier**, mūliēr-is, f., a woman; a wife.
- multitūdo**, multitūdīn-is, f., a multitude, great number, a crowd; the multitude, populace. (mnitus.)
- mult-o**, (or muleto,) āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to punish: Multare pecunia, to fine. (multa, a punishment, or fine.)
- multō**, adv., (abl. sing. neut. of multus,) by much; much; by far: Non multo post, not long afterwards.
- multum**, adv., much, very much; greatly; often; far. (Aec. sing. neut. of multus.)
- mult-us**, a, um, much; great: in pl., many; frequent. Comp. pius; superl. plurimus.
- mund-us**, i, m., neatness; ornaments; dress; the order of the universe; the world; (poetic,) the people of the world; a hole (dug in the centre of a newly founded town).—see note II, p. 255. (mund-us, a, um, orderly.)
- mūn-io**, ivi, or li, itum, īre, 4 v. n. and a., to raise a wall, fortify, secure, guard, protect: Munire itinera, to make roads. (Anciently written moenio, and connected with moenia, as punio with poena.)
- mūnitio**, mūnitōn-is, f., a fortifying, fortification; works; bulwarks, rampart. (munio.)
- mūnit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of munio, fortified, defended.
- mūnus**, mūnēr-is, n., an office, charge, duty, service.
- mūrex**, mūre-is, m., the purple fish, murex; hence, a purple dye; any shell-fish, (as in Ov. L., lii. 20, p. 101.)
- murmur**, murmur-is, n., a murmuring, murmur; indistinct noise, humming; roaring; rushing; rumbling.
- mūr-us**, i, m., a wall; mound; defence, bulwark.
- musc-us**, i, m., moss.
- mūtābil-is**, is, e, changeable, varying, fickle. (muto.)
- mūtīl-us**, a, um, mutilated, mangled; broken.
- mūt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., to change, alter; exchange; to colour, dye: n., to change.
- mūtu-us**, a, um, borrowed; lent; exchanged. (muto.)
- Mycāl-ē**, ēs, f., Mycale, a town and promontory of Ionia, in Asia Minor.
- Mygdōni-us**, a, um, Mygdonian, belonging to Mygdonia. (See note 247, p. 251.)
- mysteri-um**, i, n., a mystery, secret thing: in pl., mysteries, certain religious ceremonies, to which none but those initiated were admitted.
- Myūs**, Myunt-is, f., Myus, a town of Ionia, in Asia Minor. (Μυοῦς.)

N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V

N.

- nact-us**, a, um, perf. part. of nanciscor, *having obtained.*
- Nāias**, Nāiād-is, f., also Nāis, Nāid-is, or os, f., *a water nymph, Naiad; nymph* (generally.)
- nam**, conj., *for; for example.*
- Nammei-us**, l, m., *Nammeius*, one of the nobles of the Helvetii.
- namque**, conj., *for indeed, for truly; for.* (nami, que.)
- nanciscor**, nactus, or nanctus, nanciscor-1, 3 v. a. dep., *to obtain, get; find; secure.*
- nanct-us**, a, um, perf. part. of nanciscor, *having obtained.*
- nār-is**, is, f., *a nostril*: pl. nar-es, hūn, *the nostrils, or nose.* (Said to be the same stem as nasus.)
- narr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to make known, tell, relate, set forth, explain.* (Said to be connected with gnarus, *knowing.*)
- nasc-or**, nātus, (or gnatus,) nase-1, 3 v. n. dep., *to be born; spring up; arise.* (The root of nascor, or gnascor, is gna, which is the same as gen in gen-ūl, perf. of gigno.)
- Nasu-a**, ae, m., *Nasua*, one of the chiefs of the Suevoi.
- nāt-a**, ae, f., *a daughter.* It is the fem. of nat-us, a, um.
- nātāl-is**, is, e, *belonging to birth, natal*: as subst., m., *dies being understood, a birth-day.* (natus.)
- nātio**, nātiō-is, f., *literally, birth, being born*: hence, *a race of men; brood; nation, people, tribe.* (natus.)
- nāt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. u. freq., *to swim, float; fluctuate.* (no.)
- nātu**, abl. of nat-us, us, which is used only in the abl., *by birth.*
- nātūr-a**, ae, f., *natural or blood relationship; natural quality; nature.*
- nāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of nascor, *having been born, &c.*
- nāt-us**, l, m., *a son*: nase. of nat-us, a, um.
- navfrāgi-ur** x shipwreck; failure; ruin, des. n. (For navifragium, from navis and frango.)
- naut-a**, ae, m., *a sailor, mariner, seaman.* (Contracted for navita.)
- nautic-us**, a, um, *belonging to ships or sailors, nautical.*
- nāvāl-is**, is, e, *belonging to ships, naval.* (navis.)
- nāvīcūl-a**, ae, f., *a small ship, boat, skiff.* (Dim. from navis.)
- nāvīgātio**, nāvīgātīō-is, f., *a sailing, voyage, trip.* (navigo.)
- nāvīgi-um**, l, n., *a sailing, voyage*: hence, *a vessel, ship.* (navigo.)
- nāvīg-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. u. and a., *to sail, navigate*: a., *to sail over, traverse by sailing.* (navis, ago.)
- nāv-is**, is, f., (acc. em or im; abl. e or i.) *a ship*: Navis longa, *a ship of war.* Navis oneraria, *a ship of burden, a transport.* (Cf. vaūs.)
- nāvīt-a**, ae, m., *a sailor, seaman, mariner.* (navis.)
- Nax-os**, (or us,) l, f., *Naxos*, one of the Cyclades group of islands, in the Aegean Sea; now Naxia.
- nē**, adv. and conj., *no, not*: often joined with quidem, in the sense *not even.* It is very often used with imperatives and subjunctives, in prohibitions and in wishes. In clauses denoting a purpose, it may be resolved into ut non, *that—not, lest.* For ne and ut after verbs of *fearing*, see notes to Nep. Milt., vii. 13
- nē**, an interrogative adv., *whether.* It does not stand alone, but is appended to the most important word of the question: as, Visne, *do you wish?*
- nēbūl-a**, ae, f., *mist, vapour, smoke, cloud.* (Connected with nubes.)
- nēc**, conj., *neither, nor.* (See neque.)
- necessāriō**, adv., *by or of necessity, necessarily, unavoidably.* (necessarius.)
- necessāri-us**, a, um, *necessary, unavoidable*: connected by blood, related, kindred: as subst., *a relative, kinsman; friend; client.* (necessus.)
- nēcesse**, an indecl. adj., n., *necessary, unavoidable, inevitable.* (The root is supposed to be nec-, *to bind, as in neeto.*)
- necessitas**, necessitāt-is, f., *necessity, unavoidableness; destiny, fate; need, want*: also, like necessitudo, *relationship, connection*: in pl. it sometimes means *necessary things, wants; necessary outlay.* (necessus.)
- nequē** adv., *or not.* It is generally pre-

- ceded, in a foregoing clause, by *ne* or *utrum*.
- nēc-o**, āvl, (or nī.) ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to put to death, kill, slay*. (The same root is found in *nex*, *nec-is*, *death*; *per-nicles*, *destruction*; *nec-co*, *to hurt*; and *vek-pōs*, *a corpse*.)
- nectar**, nectār-is, n., *nectar*, the drink of the gods; hence, *anything sweet and pleasant*. (*vékrap*.)
- nēfās**, indecl. subst. n., *what is contrary to divine law, a sin, impiety, unholy act, abomination*. (ne, fas.)
- neglect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *negligo*, *neglected, disregarded, despised, slighted, overlooked*.
- negligenter**, adv., *in a careless manner, negligently, heedlessly*. (*negligens*, part. of *negligo*.)
- neglig-o**, neglex-i, neglect-um, neglig-ere, 3 v. a., (written also *neglego*, and *necligo*) *literally, not to gather up*; hence, *to despise, slight, disregard, neglect, pass over, overlook*. (nec, lēgo.)
- nēg-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to say No, deny*. (ne, aio.)
- nēgōti-um**, l, n., *literally, want of leisure*; hence, *busy employment, business, occupation; affair*. (nec, otium.)
- Nēmēt-es**, um, or Nēmētes, or Nemet-ae, arum, m., *the Nemetes*, a Gallie or (perhaps) German tribe on the banks of the Rhine.
- nēmo**, nēmīn-is, m. or f., *no man, no one, nobody*. (ne hemo, old form of homo.)
- nēmōrōs-us**, a, um, *full of groves or woods, woody, bushy*. (nemus.)
- nēo**, nēvl, nētum, n-ēre, 2 v. a., *to spin; weave, intertwine*. (Same root as *necto*.)
- Neocl-es**, is, or i, m., *Neocles*, father of Themistocles.
- Neontieh-os**, n., *Neontichos*, a fortress in Thrace. (*Neovteīchos*.)
- nēpōs**, nēpōt-is, m., *a grandson; nephew; descendant; a spendthrift, prodgal*. (Cf. German *neffe*, and English *nephew*.)
- Nēpōs**, Nēpōt-is, m., *Nepos* (*Cornelius*). See Prefatory Note to Extracts from *Nepos*.
- Neptūn-us**, i, m., *Neptune*, god of the sea, brother of Jupiter, and husband of Amphitrite.
- nēquāquam**, adv., *by no means, not at all*.
- nēque**, or *nēe* conj., *equal to et non, and not, also not*: when repeated, *neque—neque, neither—nor*. (ne, que.)
- nēqu-eo**, ivl, or li, itum, īre, 4 v. n., *not to be able, be unable*. (ne, queo.)
- nēquiequam**, adv., (or *nequidquam*.) *in vain, to no purpose, fruitlessly; without reason*.
- Nērē-is**, idls, or Idos, (or Nērēis,) f., *Nereis*, a daughter of Nereus, a sea nymph; Nereid.
- Nereus**, Nērēi, and Nērēos, m., *Nereus*, a sea god, son of Oceanus and Tethys, and 1 island of Doris.
- nerv-us**, l, m., *a sinec, tendon, nerve; vigour, force*.
- nesc-io**, ivl, or li, itum, īre, 4 v. a., *not to know, be ignorant*. (ne, scio.)
- nesci-us**, a, um, *not knowing, ignorant*. (nescio.)
- neu**, adv., *the same as neve, and equal to et ut non, and that not; and lest*.
- neuter**, neutr-a, neutr-um, *neither* (af two). The gen. is *neutrius*, and dat. *neutri*; but sometimes the common forms are used. (ne, nter.)
- nēve**, same as *neu*, and equal to *et ut non, and that not; and lest*. (ne, ve.)
- nex**, nēc-is, f., *death* (by violence), *murder, slaughter*. (On the root see *neco*.)
- nī**, adv. and conj., *not; that not; unless*. (Anciently written *nei*, and considered the same as *ne*.)
- Nīcī-as**, ac, m., *Nicias*, an Athenian; one of the colleagues of Alcibiades in command of the Sicilian expedition.
- Nīger**, Nīgr-i, m., *Nīger*, a Roman cognomen.
- nīger**, nīgra, nīgrum, *black; swarthy, dark; sad, mournful*.
- nīhil**, subst. indecl. n., *nothing*. Shortened for *nihilum*, and still farther shortened into *nīl*.
- nīhilōminus**, adv., *less by nothing, nevertheless, no less; notwithstanding*. (*nīhilo, minus*.)
- nīhil-um**, i, n., *nothing*. (ne, and *hīl-um, a trifle*.)
- nīl**, contracted for *nīhīl, nothing*.
- Nīl-us**, i, m., *the river Nile*.
- nimb-us**, i, m., *a shower* (of rain); *rain-cloud; cloud*.
- nīmīs**, adv., *too much, too, beyond measure*.
- nīmīum**, adv., *too much*; neut. of *nīmīus*.
- nīmī-us**, a, um, *beyond measure, too much, too great, excessive*. (*nīmīs*.)

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

- Nin-us**, i, m., *Ninus*, a king of Assyria, and husband of Semiramis.
- nĩsĩ**, conj., *if not; unless*: after negatives, *save, except, only*. (ni, or ne, and si.)
- nĩtĩd-us**, a, um, *shining, bright, polished, clear, glittering; sleek, polished, refined, neat*. (nitco.)
- nĩtor**, nĩtĩr-is, m., *brightness, splendour, lustre; sleekness; eleg. inc.* (nitco.)
- nĩtor**, nĩsus, or nĩxus, nĩt-ĩ, 3 v. n. dep., *to lean on; to exert one's self, endeavour, strive; press forward, advance*.
- nĩves**, f, pl. of nix, *snows; grey hairs, "the sneezes of age."*
- nĩve-us**, a, um, *snowy, white as snow; clear*. (nix, nivis.)
- nix**, niv-is, f., *snow; whiteness; white hair*. (Cf. νίψω, and ningo, *to snow*.)
- no**, nũvĩ, n-ũre, i v. n., *to swim, float; sail; fly*.
- nĩbil-is**, is, e, (something) *that can be known; hence, well known, famous, celebrated; of high birth, noble; excellent, of high character*. (The root is no, or gno, as in (g)nosco.)
- nĩbĩlĩtas**, nĩbĩlĩt-ĩs, f., *celebrity, fame, renown; high birth, nobility; hence, the body of the nobles, the nobility; excellence of character; high spirit, nobleness*. (nobilis.)
- nĩc-co**, ni, ĩnm, ĩre, 2 v. n., *to do injury to, harm, hurt*. (Perhaps same root as neco,—which see.)
- noctu**, only in the abl., (from obsolete form, noctus.) *by night, in the nighttime*. (nox.)
- nocturn-us**, a, um, *belonging to the night, nocturnal*. (nox.)
- nĩd-us**, i, m., *a knot, tie, fastening; knob; joint; a bond, obligation; a knotty point, difficulty*.
- nĩl-o**, ni, nolle, . n. Irreg., *to be unwilling; to wish not*. (ne or non, and void.)
- nĩmen**, nĩmĩn-is, n., *that by which one is known, a name; hence, an obligation, bond, promise; fame, renown, reputation; a race, or nation,—as, Romanum nomen*. (Root (g)no, of (g)nosco.)
- nĩmĩn-ĩtĩm**, adv., *by name; expressly*. (nominio.)
- nĩmĩn-o**, nĩvĩ, ĩtum, ĩre, 1 v. a., *to address by name; name, nominate; appoint*. (nomen.)
- nĩn**, adv., *not; not at all, by no means*. (Said to be contracted for ne oenun, or ne nimum, *not one*.)
- nĩndum**, adv., *not yet*.
- nĩnnĩ**, adv., *not*: in direct questions it expects the answer to be affirmative, —*Yes*; in indirect questions, *if not, whether not*. (non, ne.)
- nĩnonnull-us**, a, um, *some, several*. (non, nullus.)
- nĩnonnunquam**, adv., *sometimes*. (non, nunquam.)
- nĩn-us**, a, um, num. adj., *ninth*. (Contracted for novenus, from novem.)
- Nĩrei-a** ac, f., *Noreia*, a town in Noricum.
- Nĩric-um**, i, n., *Noricum*, a country between the Danube and the Alps, corresponding to the modern divisions of Styria, Carinthia, Upper and Lower Austria, with parts of Carinthia, Bavaria, and Tyrol.
- Nĩric-us**, n, um, *Norican, belonging to Noricum*.
- nĩs**, gen. nostrum, or nostri, *we*: pl. of ego.
- nĩsco**, nĩvi, nĩtum, nĩse-ĩre, 3 v. a. Incep., *to get a knowledge of, become acquainted with, know; learn; examine; consider*. (Old form, gnosco, gnovi, &c. The root gno, or gna, is found in eo-gno-seo, i-gno-seo, i-gno-ro, gnarus, γι-γνώ-σκω, and our know.)
- nĩster**, nostra, nostrum, *our, ours, belonging to us*. (nos.)
- nĩtĩti-a**, ac, f., *knowledge, acquaintance; notion*. (notus.)
- nĩt-o**, nĩvi, ĩtum, ĩre, 1 v. a., *to distinguish by a mark; mark, denote, signify*. (notus, a mark; from root of no-seo.)
- nĩt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of nosco, *known; well known, notorious*.
- nĩt-us**, (or os,) i, m., *the south wind; wind*. (vĩros.)
- nĩvem**, eard. num., *nine*.
- nĩverc-a**, ac, f., *a step-mother*. (Perhaps from novus.)
- nĩvi**, perf. of nosco, *I know*.
- nĩvĩtas**, nĩvĩt-ĩt-ĩs, f., *newness, novelty*. (nĩvus.)
- nĩv-us**, a, um, *new, fresh; recent; strange, singular; novel*.
- nox**, noct-is, f., *night; a night; darkness (poetic) a sleep; dream; death*.
- nox-a**, ac, f., *hurt, harm, injury; hence, a crime; fault, offence*. (noc-co.)
- nĩb-es**, is, f., *a cloud; a covering, veil;*

a swarm, great multitude; pælle, darkness, cloudiness; appearance of evil.

nūbifer, nūbifer-a, nūbifer-um, cloud-bearing, cloud-capped. (nubes, fero.)

nūbil-um, i, n., a cloudy sky; cloudy weather: In pl., nubilia, the clouds. (nubes.)

nūbil-us, a, um, cloudy, lowering, gloomy. (nubes.)

nūb-o, nupsi, nuptura, nūb-ère, 3 v. n., to cover, veil: hence, from the custom of veiling the bride at marriage, to marry; be married, (said of the woman.) It governs the dative. (The root is nub, as in nubēs.)

nūd-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., to make bare or naked, strip; dep. of; expose. (nudus.)

nūd-us, a, um, naked, bare, uncovered, stripped of, deprived of; exposed, open.

null-us, a, um, not any, none; no; gen. nullius, dat. nulli: as subst., no one; like nemo. (ne, ullus.)

num, adv. Interrog., whether or no? It expects the answer, No. In direct questions it is usually not translated by any separate word: as, Num putas, do you think?

nūmen, nūmīn-is, n., a nodding; a nod: hence, will, especially divine will,—and so, the will and power of the gods; a divinity, a god or goddess. (nuo, to nod.)

nūmēr-us, i, m., number; a (certain) number; c great number; reckoning, value, estimation; rank, place.

Nūmīd-a, æ, m., a Numidian; one from Numidia, in Africa.

Nūmītor, Nūmītor-is, m., Numinator, king of Alba, and grandfather of Romulus.

numm-us, i, m., money. (See nummus.)

numq-ue, adv., or numquam, never.

nūm-us, i, m., a piece of money, a coin; money; a Roman coin called a sestertius.

nunc, adv., now, at present, just now: Nunc—nunc, at one time—at another time.

numquam, or numquam, adv., never, at no time.

nunti-a, æ, f., a female messenger; fem. of nunti-us, a, um.

nunti-o, āvi, ātum, āre, (or nuncio,) 1 v. a., to act as messenger; tell, report, declare, inform. (nuntius.)

nunti-us, a, um, (or nuncius), literally, newly come: hence, as subst., a news-bearer, messenger, courier; also, a message; news, tidings; order, command. (Contracted for novi ventus.)

nūper, adv., lately, recently; newly. (For novifer, from novus.)

nupt-a, æ, fem. of nuptus, a married woman.

nupt-us, a, um, perf. part. of nubo, married.

nūr-us, ūs, f., a daughter-in-law; also, the wife of a grandson or descendant; a young woman.

nusquam, adv., in no place, nowhere; to no place; in nothing; on no occasion. (ne, usquam.)

nūtr-lo, ūvi, and li, itum, ūre, 4 v. a., to suckle, feed, nourish; bring up, nurse, cherish, support.

nūtrix, nūtrīc-is, f., a wet-nurse; nurse, nourisher. (nutrio.)

nūt-us, ūs, m., a nodding, nod; expression of wish; command; will; beck. (nuo.)

nymph-a, æ, (or e, es), f., a nymph, demi-goddess.

O.

Ō, an interjection, O! oh! ah!

ōb, prep. with acc., original meaning is towards: hence, at, about; before; on account of, in consideration of, for; against, over.

ōbaerāt-us, a, um, sunk in debt, indebted to: as subst., a debtor.

obdūc-o, obdux-i, obduet-um, obduc-ère, 3 v. a., to lead or draw over, cover, close, envelop. (ob, duco.)

ōbēd-io, ūvi, itum, ūre, 4 v. n., to obey, be subject to. (ob, audio.)

ōbeo, obvi, or obili, obitum, obire, 4 v. n. and a., to go or come to, or against, or round; meet; die, fall, perish. (ob, eo.)

ōbit-us, ūs, m., a going to, approach; setting (of the stars, &c.): hence, downfall, ruin, destruction, death. (obeo.)

objic-lo, objeci, objectum, objic-ère, 3 v.

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

X Y Z

- a., to throw before or in the way of; offer, present; expose to. (ob, jacio.)
- oblīn-o**, oblīv-l, (or oblinl.) oblit-um, oblin-ēre, 3 v. a., to daub, smear over, besmear; defile. (ob, lino.)
- obliqu-us**, a, um, slanting, sloping, oblique; not straight or direct; indirect. (ob, and liquis, oblique.)
- oblīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of obliviscor, forgetful of.
- oblīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of obliolo, smeared over, besmeared.
- oblivisc-or**, oblit-us, oblivisc-l, 3 v. a. dep., to forget, be unmindful of. (Etymology doubtful.)
- obōr-ior**, tus, iri, 4 v. n. dep., to arise; spring forth; gush forth; appear. (ob, orior.)
- obort-as**, a, um, perf. part. of oborior, having arisen, gushed forth, &c.
- obrū-c**, i, (ū)tum, ēre, 3 v. a., literally, to fall or rush over, or upon; hence, to cover; overwhelm; bury. (ob, ruo.)
- obscur-us**, a, um, dark, gloomy; shady; obscure, indistinct, doubtful; secret, not known.
- obsecr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to beseech, entreat, implore. (ob, sacro.)
- observ-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to watch, mark carefully, observe, attend to; guard, keep. (ob, servo.)
- obsēs**, obsid-ls, m. or f., literally, one blockaded, or confined to a place; hence, a hostage, a surety, bail. (obsideo.)
- obsid-eo**, obsid-l, obsess-um, obsid-ēre, 2 v. n. and a., to sit at or opposite; remain at; hence, besiege, blockade, invest. (ob, sedeo.)
- obsidio**, obsidiōn-ls, f., a siege, blockade, investment. (obsideo.)
- obsid-o**, obsēdi, obsessum, obsid-ēre, 3 v. a., to invest, besiege, blockade. (ob, sedeo.)
- obsign-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to seal up; seal; sign and seal (as a witness). (ob, signo.)
- obstāt-o**, obstāt-l, obstit-um, obstāt-ēre, 3 v. n., to set or plant one's self before or against; hence, to oppose, withstand, resist. (ob, sisto.)
- obsolēt-us**, a, um, old, old-fashioned; out of use, obsolete; worn out; of little value. (obsolesco, to grow out of use.)
- obsōni-um**, i, n., (or opsonium,) what is eaten with bread; viands; fish. (ὀψ-ώνιον.)
- obsto**, obstiti, obstitum, obstāre, 1 v. n., to stand against, withstand, oppose, resist; thwart; obstruct. (ob, sto.)
- obstrict-us**, a, um, perf. part. of obstringo, bound, under obligation to, obliged.
- obstring-o**, obstrinx-l, obstrict-um, obstring-ēre, 3 v. a., to bind to; bind, fetter; lay under obligation. (ob, stringo.)
- obstupesc-o**, obstūp-l, obstūpesc-ēre, 3 v. n. incept., to become senseless; be stupefied; be benumbed; be astonished, amazed, dumbfounded. (ob, stupesco.)
- obsum**, obfui, or offui, obesse, v. n. irreg., to be against, or opposed to; to stand in the way of, hinder, obstruct; hurt. (ob, sum.)
- obtempēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to conform to, comply with, obey. (ob, tempero.)
- obtestātio**, obtestātiōn-ls, f., an adjuring; calling (God) to witness; entreaty, supplication. (obtestor.)
- obtin-eo**, ui, obtentum, obtin-ēre, 2 v. a. and n., to hold by; hence, to have, possess, keep; obtain, gain; n., to hold one's ground; continue, last. (ob, teneo.)
- obtrectati-o**, onis, f., detraction, disparagement.
- obviam**, adv., literally, in the way, or opposed to the way; hence, towards, against, fronting; to meet; to oppose. (ob, viam.)
- obvi-us**, a, um, literally, in the way; hence, meeting; so as to meet; meeting in a hostile manner; exposed to; also, easy; at hand; obvious. (ob, via.)
- occāsio**, occasiōn-ls, f., literally, a falling out, or happening; hence, an accidental opportunity, occasion, suitable time. (Sup. of occido.)
- occās-us**, ūs, m., a going down, setting (of the sun, moon, &c.); hence, the west; also, downfall, ruin; death. (From perf. part. of occido.)
- occid-o**, i, occās-um, occid-ēre, 3 v. n., to fall down, fall; set, (as the sun, &c.); be ruined; die. (ob, cado.)
- occid-o**, i, occis-um, occid-ēre, 3 v. a., to strike down; kill, slay. (ob, cado.)
- occidu-us**, a, um, falling; going down, setting; hence, western. (occido.)
- occis-us**, a, um, perf. part. of occido, slain, &c.

occūl-o, ūi, tum, ěre, 3 v. a., *to cover, hide, conceal.* (Cf. eel-o, clam, &c.)

occult-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freq., *to hide, conceal.* (occulu.)

occult-us, a, um, perf. part. of *occulo*, *hidden, concealed, secret.*

occūpātio, occūpātiōn-is, f., *a taking possession of, seizing: hence, business, employment, occupation.* (occupo.)

occūp-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *literally, to take possession of before or in opposition to (another): hence, to anticipate; take the start of, be the first to do (a thing): also, to seize, possess one's self of; occupy.* (ob, capio.)

occurr-o, occurri, (rarely, occurri,) occurs-um, occur-ěre, 3 v. n., *to run towards or against; meet, fall in with; run up to; rush upon, attack; to present itself, appear; occur.* (ob, eundo.)

Oceān-us, i, m., *the ocean.* (Ὠκεανός.)

Ocēl-um, i, n., *Ocelum*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

ocior, cĕior, cĕcius, comp. adj., *swifter, fleetest, more speedy.* (Cf. ἰσχύς.)

ocingent-i, ae, a, num. adj., *eight hundred.* (octo, centum.)

octo, card. num., *eight.*

octōdēcim, card. num., *eighteen.* (octo, decem.)

octōginta, card. num., *eighty.* (octo.)

ocūl-us, i, m., *an eye.* (Cf. Fr. œil.)

ōdi, ōdisse, v. defect., (perf. of obsolete od-ŭo, ivl, &c.) *to hate; dislike; be displeased at.*

ōdiōs-us, a, um, *hateful, odious; annoying.* (odium.)

ōdi-um, i, n., *hatred; settled grudge, enmity; offence.* (od, root of old pres., ōdio. See odi.)

Oeāgri-us, a, um, *Oeagrian*,—i.e., Thracian; *belonging or relating to Orpheus*, whose father was Oeager.

Oeāgr-us, i, m., *Oeagrus*, or *Oeager*, king of Thrace, and father of Orpheus.

Oebāli-us, a, um, *Oebalian*,—i.e., *belonging to Oebalus; Spartan.*

Oet-ĕ, ěs, or a, ae, f., *Oeta*, a chain of mountains in Thessaly.

Oetae-us, a, um, *belonging to Mount Oeta.*

offend-o, i, offens-um, offend-ěre, 3 v. a., *literally, to hit or strike against: hence, to blunder, make a mistake; shock; offend, displease.* (The root is fend, as in defendo.)

offensio, offensiōn-is, f., *a striking against: hence, a stumbling-block; offence, displeasure.* (offendo.)

offens-us, a, um, *offended, vexed, displeased.* (offendo.)

offici-um, i, n., *a thing done for one: hence, a kindness, favour, service; duty, part, office.* (For opificium.)

ōlim, adv., *at a time remote from the present: hence, formerly, long ago: also, in time to come, hereafter, by-and-by.* (Connected with ollus, old form of ille.)

Ōlympi-a, ae, f., *Olympia*, in Elis, where the famous Olympian games were held.

Ōlymp-us, i, (or os, i,) m., *Olympus*, a celebrated mountain on the borders of Thessaly, in Greece,—supposed to be the residence of the gods: hence, *Heaven.*

ōmen, ōmin-is, n., *a sign* (indicative of the future), *omen, token.*

ōmitt-o, omĭsi, omĭss-um, omĭtt-ěre, 3 v. a., *to let go; let fall; abandon; lose; neglect, pass over, disregard.* (ob, mitto.)

omnĭno, adv., *in all, altogether, wholly, entirely.* (omnis.)

omnĭpōtens, gen. omnĭpōtēn-is, adj., *all-powerful, almighty.* (omnis, potens.)

omn-is, is, e, all, every.

ōnĕrāri-us, a, um, *belonging to burden or carriage; transport: with navis, a transport, ship of burden.* (onus.)

ōnus, ōnĕr-is, n., *a burden, load.*

ōnust-us, a, um, *loaded, burdened, freighted.* (onus.)

ōpāc-us, a, um, *shady; dark, obscure.*

ōpĕr-a, ae, f., *work, labour, toil, pains: in pl. sometimes, workmen.* (opus.)

ōpĕr-io, ūi, tum, ěre, 4 v. a., *to cover, hide, conceal.* (Said to be connected with parlo, as aperio, reperio, &c.)

ōpĕrōs-us, a, um, *literally, full of labour: hence, painstaking, active, industrious; laborious; difficult; elaborate.* (opera.)

ōpĭnio, ōpĭniōn-is, f., *an opinion, supposition, imagination, belief; good opinion; expectation; good reputation; report.* (opinor.)

ōpis. See ops.

ōportet, oportet, oportĕre, 2 v. impera., *it is necessary, it must be; it behoves; it is reasonable.* (opus, n. indecl.)

P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y

- oppēr-ior**, itus, or tus, īrl, 4 v. a. and n. dep., *to wait, wait for, await.*
- oppidān-us**, a, um, *belonging to a town:* as subst. pl., oppidani, *the townspeople.* (oppidium.)
- oppid-um**, i, n., *a town; a fortified stronghold,* (as in Caes. B. G., v. 21.)
- oppōn-o**, oppōsu-l, oppōsit-um, oppōn-ere, 3 v. a., *to set or place before or opposite; oppose, face; speak against, object.* (ob, pono.)
- opportūnē**, in fit season, *opportunately, seasonably, at the "nick of time."* (opportunus.)
- opportūn-us**, a, um, *literally, opposite or before the harbour:* hence, *favourably placed; fit, suitable, convenient, advantageous:* also, *exposed, liable to.* (ob, portus.)
- oppōsit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of oppono, *placed opposite; exposed.*
- oppress-us**, a, um, perf. part. of opprimo, *pressed down, oppressed; overwhelmed, &c.*
- opprim-o**, oppress-i, oppress-um, opprim-ere, 3 v. a., *to press down, upon, or against; oppress; overthrow; sink; overthrow, subdue, crush.* (ob, premo.)
- oppugnātor**, oppugnātor-is, m., *an attacker, assaulter, besieger.* (oppugno.)
- oppugn-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to fight against, attack, assault, besiege.* (ob, pugno.)
- (ops), ōp-is, f., *ability, power, strength; property, wealth, means, resources; help, assistance.* The noun. sing. is not found, and the dat. very rarely. The pl., opes, is most used.
- opsōni-um**, i, n., (or obsonium,) *anything eaten to bread,* (as fish, fruit, vegetables;) *viands.* (ὀψώνιον.)
- optāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of opto, *wished for, desired, longed for; acceptable, grateful.*
- optīmas**, optimāt-is, m. or f., (or optimas,) *one who sides with the best:* hence, *a partisan of the aristocracy, an aristocrat:* usually in the pl., optimates, um, or ium, *the aristocracy, nobles, chief men.* (optimus.)
- optīm-us**, a, um, superl. of bonus, *the best, &c.* (See bonus.)
- opt-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to choose, select:* hence, *to wish, desire, long for.*
- ōpus**, ōp-er is, n., *work, labour; a military work,* (e.g., a fortress, rampart, or
- such like;) *a work,* (i.e., a piece of workmanship of any kind, a book, &c.); *pains, labour; difficulty.*
- ōpus**, n. indecl., *need, necessity.* It is usually found with parts of sum: as, Opus est, *there is need:* Opus sunt, *are necessary.*
- ōr-a**, ae, f., *a border, edge, limit, boundary; sea-coast; district, region, country.* (os, oris.)
- ōrācl-um**, i, n., contracted for ōrācūlum.
- ōrācūl-um**, i, n., *a divine response* (in answer to prayer); *an oracle, prophecy:* also, *the place where such responses were given,—a shrine, oracle.* (oro.)
- ōrātio**, ōrātiō-is, f., *a speaking, speech, language; an oration, harangue.* (oro.)
- ōrātor**, ōrātor-is, m., *a speaker, pleader, orator; ambassador; spokesman* (of an embassy). (oro.)
- orb-is**, is, m., *a circle:* hence, anything circular,—as, *a ring, disk, hoop; a globe; the world.* In this last sense, terrae or terrarum is often added.
- orb-us**, a, um, *bereaved, deprived of; devoid of, destitute of; fatherless, motherless; childless:* as subst., m., orbis, and f., orbu, *an orphan.*
- Orcynti-a**, ae, f. See Hierocynia.
- ordior**, orsus, ord-iri, 4 v. n. dep., *to put in order; begin, commence, undertake.*
- ordo**, ordin-is, m., *a straight row; a line or rank,* (as of soldiery;) *a century of men,* (Caes. B. G., i. 40;) *method, arrangement, order.*
- Orgētorix**, Orgētorīg-is, m., *Orgytorix*, one of the chiefs of the Helvetii.
- ōriens**, gen. orient-is, pres. part. of orior, *rising:* hence, as subst., *the east.*
- ōrīgo**, ōrīgīn-is, f., *the beginning, source, origin; descent.* (orior.)
- ōrīor**, ortus, ōr-iri, 4 v. n. dep., *to rise, appear, come forth,* (as the heavenly bodies, &c.;) *spring up, rise,* (as a river;) *be born, or descended from; proceed, start from.* (Cf. ōp-riui.)
- ornāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of orno, *equipped, provided with; ornamented, adorned, &c.*
- ornāt-us**, ūs, m., *equipping, providing, especially military equipment; dress, apparel; ornament, decoration.* (orno.)
- orn-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to equip, fit out, provide, prepare; adorn, set off; honour, praise.*
- ōr-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to speak:*

a piece of
book, &c.);

ity. It is
sum: as,
s sunt, are

mit, bound-
n, country.

ōrācūlum.
esponse (in
prophecy:
responses

ng, speech,
gue. (oro.)
r, pleader,
ian (of an

anything
hoop; a
ast sense,
added.

ed of; de-
s, mother-
orbus, and

a.
ep., to put
undertake.
t row; a
a century
method,

Orgetorix,
etil.

part of
, the east.
ng, source,

p., to rise,
heavenly
ise, (as a
ed from;
vpa.)

of orno,
enamented,

providing,
ot; dress,
n. (ornō.)
to equip,
rn, set off;

to speak:

hence, to plead, argue; pray, beg, be-
sech. (os, or-is.)
Oront-ēs, is, or l, or ae, m., *Orontes*, a
river of Syria.
ors-us, a, um, perf. part. of ordlor, hav-
ing begun, sprung, &c.
ort-us, a, um, perf. part. of orlor, having
arisen, &c.
ort-us, ūs, m., a rising, (specially of the
sun, moon, &c.): hence, the east: also,
birth, descent. (orior.)
ōs, ōr-is, n., the mouth, language, speech,
dialect: the face, features, countenance;
a mouth, opening.

ōs, oss-is, n., a bone.
oscūl-um, i, n., dimin. of os, a little
mouth; sweet mouth; a kiss. (os, oris.)
Oss-a, ae, f., *Mount Ossa*, in Thessaly.
ostend-o, i, osten-sim, or tum, ostend-
ēre, 3 v. a., literally, to stretch out, or
towards; show, display, exhibit; point
out; declare; prove. (ob, tendō.)
osti-um, i, n., a door, entrance. (ōs.)
Othry-s, Othry-ōs, m., *Othrys*, a moun-
tain range in Thessaly.
ōti-um, i, n., leisure, free time, inactivity,
idleness; ease, rest, repose.
ōv-is, is, f., a sheep. (Cf. ovis.)

P.

P., an abbreviation for the Roman prae-
nomen *Publius*.
pābulātio, pābulātiō-is, f., a providing
of fodder, foraging. (pabulor.)
pābulātor, pābulātōr-is, m., a forager.
(pabulor.)
pābul-or, ātus, ārl, 1 v. a. dep., to seek
fodder, forage. (pabulum.)
pābul-um, i, n., food, nutriment; fod-
der. (pa, root of pascō.)
pācāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of paco, re-
duced to peace, subdued: as adj., peace-
ful, calm, quiet.
pācisc-or, pactus, pācisc-i, 3 v. n. and
a., to make firm, fix, settle: hence, to
make a bargain, agree. (pac, or pag,
root of pango.)
pāc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to reduce to
peace, make peaceful, quiet, pacify, sub-
due. (pax.)
pact-um, i, n., an agreement, bargain,
covenant, compact. (Ncut. of the fol-
lowing.)
pact-us, a, um, perf. part. of pactiscor,
fixed, settled, agreed on, &c.
Pacty-ē, ēs, f., *Pactye*, a town of Thrace,
on the Propontis.
Pād-us, i, m., the *Padus*, or *Po*, the
principal river of Italy. It rises in
Mons Vesulus (Monte Viso).
paenē, adv., (or peue,) almost, nearly.
paenitet. See poenitet.
pāg-us, i, m., a village; district, canton,
province. (Some connect the root with
that of pascō, so that it would mean a
common pasture; others with pag, stem
of pango, a district bound together by
certain ties.)

pālam, adv., or prep. with abl., openly,
publicly: as a prep., before, in the pre-
sence of. (Said to contain the same
root as pando, d and l being inter-
changed, as in lacrima, dacrīma—
scando, scala—mando, mala, &c.)
Pālāti-um, i, n., *Palatium*, one of the
seven hills of Rome, on which was the
palace of Augustus: hence, a palace.
Pāl-es, is, f., *Pales*, a female deity,
guardian of flocks and of shepherds.
Her festival was the *Palilia*.
pall-eo, ui, ēre, 2 v. n., to be pale, or un-
healthy; to be disfigured; to change
colour.
pallesc-o, pallui, pallesc-ēre, 3 v. n., to
become pale. (palleo.)
pallid-us, a, um, pale, pallid, wan.
(pallio.)
palm-a, ae, f., the palm of the hand; the
hand; the blade of an oar; a palm
tree; a palm branch: hence, the reward
of victory; victory; honour; glory.
pāl-us, i, m., a stake, pale; prop.
pālūs, pālūd-is, f., a marsh, fen, swamp;
lake.
Pamphȳli-a, ae, f., *Pamphylia*, a prov-
ince of Asia Minor.
Pamphȳli-us, a, um, *Pamphylitan*: in
pl., subst., the people of Pamphylia.
pand-o, i, pansum and passum, pand-
ēre, 3 v. a., to spread out, extend; un-
fold, open wide, throw open; explain,
make clear; publish. (The root is pad,
connected with which are palam and
pateo.)
pān-is, is, m., bread, a loaf. (Perhaps
same root as pascō.)

P
Q
R
S
T
U
V

- pār**, gen. pār-is, adj., equal; a match for; equal in rank, age, &c.; a pair.
- pārāt-us**, a, um, peif. part. of paro, prepared, ready.
- parc-o**, pēpere-i, or parsi, parcitum and parsum, parc-ēre, 3 v. n., to use sparingly, be sparing, spare; abstain from, forbear; be kind to; leave off, let alone. (parcens.)
- parc-us**, a, um, sparing, frugal, thrifty; moderate, unfrequent; scanty, little.
- pārens**, gen. parent-is, pres. part. of pareo, obedient.
- pārens**, pārent-is, m. or f., (gen. pl. um, or lum,) a parent, father or mother; progenitor, ancestor; inventor, author, founder. (pario.)
- pār-eo**, ui, itum, ēre, 2 v. n., to come forth, appear; be present; be near; hence, to attend or wait upon; obey, comply with, submit to, be subject to. (Connected with pario.)
- pāri-es**, ētis, m., a wall.
- pārio**, pēpēr-i, paritum and partum, pār-ēre, 3 v. a., to bring forth, bear, produce; bring about; devise; obtain, get; accomplish.
- pārifer**, adv., equally, in like manner; at the same time, together; side by side. (par.)
- Pāri-i**, ōrum, m., the Parians, or inhabitants of the island of Paros.
- Pāri-us**, a, um, belonging or relating to Paros.
- Parnass-us**, i, (or os, i; or Parnasus,) m., Parnassus, a double-peaked mountain in Phocis, famed for the Delphic oracle and the Castalian spring.
- pār-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., literally, to place in order: hence, to make ready, prepare, provide, equip; design, arrange; procure, get, obtain. (Cf. comparo, im-pero, and se-paro.)
- Par-os**, i, f. See Parus.
- pars**, part-is, f., a part, portion; piece, share; direction; place, region; party, faction.
- parsimōni-a**, ac, f., (or parcimonia,) parsimony; thrift, frugality. (parco.)
- partim**, adv., partly, in part; chiefly. (It is an old acc. of pars.)
- part-us**, ūs, m., a bearing, bringing forth, birth; that brought forth, the young. (pario.)
- pārūm**, adv., too little, not enough; not very; little.
- Pār-us**, i, (or os, i,) f., Paros, an island in the Aegean Sea; one of the Cyclades.
- parvūl-us**, a, um, very small, very little; very young. (parvus.)
- parv-us**, a, um, comp. minor, superl. minimus, small, little, petty.
- pasco**, pāvi, pastum, pasc-ēre, 3 v. a. and n., to drive forth to pasture; to feed, nourish, support; feed, graze. (Root pa, as in pa-nis, pa-bulum, &c.)
- passim**, adv., in a scattered manner, in all directions, here and there, everywhere, at random. (passus, from pando.)
- pass-us**, a, um, perf. part. of pando: also adj., outspread, extended; loose, dislevelled.
- pass-us**, a, um, perf. part. of patior, having suffered, &c.
- pass-us**, ūs, m., literally, the stride of the legs in walking: hence, a step, pace; footstep; trace. (pando.)
- pastor**, pastōr-is, m., a herdsman, shepherd. (pascō.)
- pātēfacio**, pātēfēcī, pātēfactum, pātēfac-ēre, 3 v. a., to set or throw open, open wide; disclose, bring to light, uncover. (pateo, facio.)
- pāt-eo**, ui, ēre, 2 v. n., to lie or be open, be exposed; stretch out, extend; be clear; well known.
- pāter**, patr-is, m., a father, sire; ancestor. (Cf. Greek πατήρ, Germ. vater, Ital. padre, Fr. père, and Eng. father.)
- pāterfamilias**, (or pater familias—familias being the old form of the gen. of familia,) and paterfamiliae, m., the father of a family; head of a household. See materfamilias.
- pātern-us**, a, um, belonging or relating to a father, paternal, fatherly; 'belonging to one's native land. (pater.)
- pātiens**, gen. patient-is, part. of patior, and adj., bearing, supporting; enduring, patient.
- pātienti-a**, ac, f., the ability or quality of bearing or suffering; patience, endurance; forbearance; indulgence. (patiens.)
- pātiōr**, passus, pāt-i, 3 v. a. dep., to bear, undergo, suffer, submit to, endure, support; allow, permit. (Cf. Gr. ἐπαθ-ov and πάθ-ος.)
- pātri-a**, ac, f., one's native country. (pater.)
- pātri-us**, a, um, belonging or relating to

- a father, fatherly; hereditary; native; belonging to one's country. (pater.)
- pātrūēl-is**, is, e, descended from a father's brother; nearly related; of one's cousin; kindred: as subst., a cousin. (patruus.)
- pātru-us**, l, m., a father's brother, uncle (by the father's side, as opposed to avunculus, uncle by the mother's side.)
- pātūl-us**, a, um, open; spread out, extended, broad, spreading. (pateo.)
- paucitas**, paucitāt-is, f., a small number; fewness, scarcity, paucity. (paucus.)
- pauc-us**, a, um, (usually in the pl., pauc-i, ae, a,) little, few: Pauci, a few (persons): Pauca, a few things; briefly.
- paulatim**, (or paulatim.) adv., by little and little, by degrees, gradually. (paulus, little.)
- paulisper**, (or paulisper.) adv., for a little while, for a short time. (paulus.)
- paulo**, adv., (abl. neut. of paulus,) by a little; a little: as, Paulo ante, a little before: Paulo major, a little greater.
- paulum**, adv., (acc. neut. of paulus,) a little, somewhat.
- paul-us**, a, um, little, small.
- Paul-us**, i, m., Paulus, (or Paul,) a Roman praenomen.
- pauper**, gen. paupēr-is, adj., poor; not wealthy; needy; scanty, small, meagre. (Cf. Fr. pauvre, and Engl. poor.)
- pāv-eo**, pāv-i, pāv-ēre, 2 v. n. and a., to be in fear or dread; fear, tremble: a., be afraid of, dread, fear.
- pāvīd-us**, a, um, in dread, fearful, terrified, alarmed; timid; causing fear, terrible, fearful, dreadful. (pavco.)
- pāvor**, pāvōr-is, m., fear, dread.
- pax**, pāc-is, f., peace, state of peace, quietness; favour, grace. (The root is pac, or pag, as in pac-iscor and pango.)
- pecco-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., to miss, go wrong, err, sin, offend. (Cf. Fr. pécher.)
- pectus**, pectōr-is, n., the breast: hence, the heart, feelings; courage, bravery; the soul, spirit.
- peccūni-a**, ae, f., money, property, wealth, riches. (pecus.)
- peccus**, peccōr-is, n., cattle, a herd or flock (as opposed to peccus, pecculis).
- peccus**, peccūd-is, f., a single head of cattle; a sheep; a beast, a brute, animal. In pl. peccudes, cattle, flocks. (pecu, or peccus, peccoris.)
- pedēs**, pedīt-is, m., one that goes on foot: hence, a foot soldier: as a collective noun, infantry. (pes, pedis.)
- pedester**, (or pedestris,) pedestri-is, e, on foot, pedestrian: with exercitus or copiae, infantry. (pes, pedis.)
- pedītāt-us**, ūs, m., foot soldiery, infantry. (pedes.)
- pejor**, pejor, pejus, comp. of malus, worse, inferior, &c.
- pejus**, neut. of preceding, used as adv., worse.
- pelāg-us**, l, n., the sea, the main. (πέλαγος.)
- pell-is**, is, f., a skin, hide; tent: Sub pellibus hiemare, to winter under tents. (Cf. Gr. πέλλα: Eng. pell,—i.e., skin: Germ. fell, skin; and pelz, fur.)
- pell-o**, pēpūl-i, puls-um, pell-ēre, 3 v. a., to push; strike; drive out, expel; banish.
- Pēlōponnēsī-us**, a, um, Peloponnesian, belonging to the Peloponnese.
- Pēlōponnēs-us**, l, f., the Peloponnese, or Morea, the southern part of Greece.
- Pēnāt-es**, lum, m., the Penates, or tutelary gods of households; and also of states: hence, a house, abode. (The root is pen, which occurs in pen-us, the store of provisions laid up in the interior of a house; in pen-itus, pen-etrā, pen-etro, &c., all having reference to the inner part of the dwelling.)
- pend-eo**, pēpend-i, pend-ēre, 2 v. n., to hang, be suspended; float; hover; hang down, depend on. (pendo.)
- pend-o**, pēpend-l, pens-um, pend-ēre, 3 v. a. and n., to cause to hang down, suspend: hence, to weigh, or weigh out: and so, to pay, render; esteem, value; to ponder (i.e., weigh in the mind), think, consider: n., to weigh, or have weight.
- pene**, adv. See paene, almost.
- Pēnē-os**, (or us,) l, m., the Pēnūs, a celebrated river of Thessaly, flowing through the vale of Tempe.
- pēnēs**, prep. with accus., in the power of, or in possession of.
- penetrā**, or penetrā-c, is, n., usually in the pl., penetrālia, the interior, or innermost part, of a building; an inner room; sanctuary, or chapel; generally, a secret place. It is the neut. of penetrālis.
- pēnētrā-is**, is, e, piercing, penetrating; internal, innermost. (penetro.)
- pēnētr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre 1 v. a. and n.,

- to put into; make one's way into, penetrate. (Root pen, as in Penates.)
- penitus**, adv., inwardly, internally; into the inmost part; thoroughly, entirely, wholly. There is also an adj., penit-us, a, um, inner. (Root pen, as in Penates.)
- penn-a**, ac, f., a feather, quill: in pl., a wing. (The old form seems to have been pcsna, or petna; with which compare Gr. πτέρομα, to fly.)
- pens-um**, i, n., something weighed out (as, e.g., wool for spinning): hence, a task, piece of work; duty, office. (pendo.)
- pepūl-i**, perf. ind. act. of pello, —which see.
- per**, prep. with acc., through, throughout; over; along; (of time,) during; (of the instrument or means,) through, by, by means of; on account of, for the sake of: Per te, as far as concerns you; by your leave. In composition it means, (1) through; as, pervenio; (2) greatly, very much; as, pertinco, perpauci; (3) loss, or destruction; as, pereco, perdo.
- pērāgo**, pērēgi, peractum, pērāg-ēre, 3 v. a., to do thoroughly, go through with, execute, perform, accomplish, complete. (per, ago.)
- percip-io**, percēp-i, percept-um, percip-ēre, 3 v. a., to take entirely to one's self: hence, to make one's own, assume; yet, obtain: hence, also, to perceive, comprehend; master, understand. (per, capio.)
- percontātio**, percontātiōn-is, f., (or percontatio,) an asking, inquiry; sifting; a question. (percontor.)
- percont-or**, ātus, āri, (or percontor.) 1 v. a. and n. dep., to question strictly, inquire into, investigate. (per, contor.)
- percurr-o**, percūcūri, or percurr-i, percursum, percurr-ēre, 3 v. a. and n., to run or hasten through, traverse; to run over or mention rapidly (in speaking); to scan, view rapidly: n., to run; as, Percurrere per temonem, to run along the pole. (per, curro.)
- percūtio**, percūssi, percussum, percūt-ēre, 3 v. a., to strike through and through; slay, kill; stab; smite, hit, strike; shock, affect deeply. (per, quatio.)
- perdisco**, perdidici, perdisc-ēre, 3 v. a., to learn thoroughly, learn by heart. (per, disco.)
- perd-o**, idi, itum, ēre, 3 v. a., literally, to put through or away: hence, to de-
- stroy, ruin; squander, spend carelessly; lose; throw away. (per, do.)
- perdūco**, perduxi, perductum, perdūc-ēre, 3 v. a., to lead through or over; continue, prolong; to conduct into the presence of a person, bring to; run (e.g., run a wall); induce, persuade; convince. (per, duco.)
- pēgrin-us**, a, um, from foreign parts, strange, foreign: as subst., a foreigner, stranger. (From peregr, one on a journey; and that from per and ager. Cf. Ital. pellegrino, Fr. pèlerin, and Eng. pilgrim.)
- pēr-eo**, i, (or ivi,) itum, ire, 4 v. n., to go or run through: hence, to be lost, disappear; be destroyed; perish, die. (per, eo.)
- perēquit-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., to ride through; ride about in all directions. (per, equito.)
- pērexigu-us**, a, um, very small, very little. (per, exiguus.)
- perfācīle**, adv., very easily. (per, facīe.)
- perfācīl-is**, is, e, very easy. (per, facīl-is.)
- perfect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of perficio, finished, complete, perfect; excellent.
- perfero**, pertūll, perlātum, perferre, 3 v. a. irreg., to bear or carry through; to carry, convey; report (e.g., news); accomplish, complete; bear up, endure, suffer. (per, fero.)
- perficio**, perfēci, perfectum, perfcēre, 3 v. a., to do thoroughly, accomplish, perform; make perfect; bring about, cause. (per, facio.)
- perfringo**, perfrēgi, perfractum, perfring-ēre, 3 v. a., to break through; dash in pieces; burst through, make one's way through. (per, frango.)
- perfūg-a**, ac, m., one who escapes: hence, a deserter. (perfrugio.)
- perfūg-io**, (ū)l, ēre, 3 v. n., to flee all the way through,—i.e., to escape; desert (to the enemy). (per, fugio.)
- perfunct-us**, a, um, perf. part. of perfunctor, having performed, accomplished, finished.
- perfund-o**, perfūd-i, perfusum, perfund-ēre, 3 v. a., to pour over; besprinkle, bedew; drench, bathe, steep. (per, fundo.)
- perfung-or**, perfunct us, perfung-i, 3 v. a. dep., (usually governing the abl., but occasionally the acc.,) to do tho-

- roughly, perform, fulfil, discharge; go through, endure. (per, fungor.)
- Pergämën-us**, a, um, belonging to Pergamus: hence, as subst., m. pl., Pergameni, the people of Pergamus.
- Pergäm-us**, i, f., or Pergäm-um, i, n., Pergamus, or Pergamum, a city of Mysia. The kingdom of Pergamus at one time included a large part of Asia Minor.
- perg-o**, perrexi, perrectum, perg-ère, 3 v. a. and n., literally, to make straight throughout: hence, to go straight on, proceed with; undertake; prosecute: n., to go on, proceed. (pro, rego.)
- Pêricl-es**, is, or i, m., Pericles, a great Athenian statesman, who flourished from about B. C. 450 to 429.
- pêricül-um**, i, n., (or periculum,) a trial, experiment, first attempt: hence, danger, risk, peril. (The root is perī, as in peritus, ex-peri-or, &c. Cf. Fr. péril, and Engl. peril.)
- pêrim-o**, perēm-i, peremptum, (or peremtum,) pêrim-ère, 3 v. a., to take away altogether, annihilate, destroy; kill, slay. (per, emo.)
- pêrit-us**, a, um, tried, experienced, skilled; expert. (The root is perī, as in periculum, experior, &c.)
- perlāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of perfero, borne to; reported, &c.
- permân-eo**, si, sum, ère, 2 v. n., to continue to stay, stay on: hence, to endure, persevere; last; remain. (per, maneo.)
- permâtüresc-o**, permâtürui, permâtüresc-ère, 3 v. n. incept., to become quite ripe, ripen fully. (per, matureseo.)
- permiss-us**, ūs, m., leave, permission. (permitto.)
- permitt-o**, permisi, permissum, permitt-ère, 3 v. a., to let go through; let loose: hence, to allow, permit, suffer; hand over, entrust. (per, mitto.)
- permôt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of permovo, excited; alarmed, terrified.
- permöiv-eo**, (öiv)i, (ö)itum, ère, 2 v. a., to move to the centre, or thoroughly: hence, to stir up, excite, arouse; alarm, terrify; induce, urge to. (per, moveo.)
- pernici-es**, ei, f., destruction; disaster; ruin; death. (perneco, to slay outright.)
- perpauc-us**, a, um, usually in pl. perpauc-i, ae, a, very little, very few. (per, paucus.)
- perpëtuo**, adv., for ever, perpetually, uninterruptedly. (perpetuus.)
- perpëtü-us**, a, um, continuing throughout, uninterrupted, constant: In perpetuum, for ever. (per, peto.)
- perrump-o**, perrüp-i, perrump-um, perrump-ère, 3 v. n. and a., to break or burst through, force a way through. (per, rumpo.)
- Pers-a**, ae, m., a Persian: pl., Pers-ae, arum, m., the Persians.
- persëquor**, persëcütus and persëquütus, persëqu-i, 3 v. a. dep., to follow on, or after, pursue, chase; overtake, come up with; strive after, seek to obtain; perform, accomplish; prosecute; harass; avenge. (per, sequor.)
- Pers-es**, ae, m., a Persian: as an adj., Persian.
- persëvër-o**, ävi, ätum, äre, 1 v. n. and a., to continue steadily, persevere in, persist in; proceed. (perseverus, very strict.)
- Persi-a**, ac, f., Persia.
- Persis**, Persid-is, f., Persia.
- Persic-us**, a, um, Persian.
- persolv-o**, i, persölüt-um, persolv-ère, 3 v. a., to unloose completely: hence, to free; unravel, solve; pay; give, render. (per, solvo.)
- perspect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of perspicio, clearly seen, evident; well known.
- perspic-io**, perspexi, perspect-um, perspic-ère, 3 v. a., to look through or at; examine carefully; perceive, observe, ascertain. (per, and speo, root of specio, to look at.)
- persuäd-eo**, persuäs-i, persuäs-um, persuäd-ère, 2 v. a., to convince by talking, persuade, prevail on, induce. (per, suadeo.)
- perterr-eo**, ui, itum, ère, 2 v. a., to frighten thoroughly, alarm. (per, terreo.)
- pertimesc-o**, pertimui, pertimesc-ère, 3 v. n. and a., to become much frightened, fear greatly. (per, timesco.)
- pertinäci-a**, ae, f., obstinacy, pertinacity. (pertinax, obstinate.)
- pertin-eo**, ui, ère, 2 v. n., literally, to hold through, or throughout: hence, to continue, extend through; reach; lead to, tend to, have the effect of; belong to, relate to, concern. (per, teneo.)
- perturbätio**, perturbätion-is, f., confusion, disturbance; perturbation (of mind), disquiet; alarm. (perturbo.)

- perturb-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to throw into disorder, confuse; disturb; confound; alarm, frighten. (per, turbo.)
- pervēh-o**, pervēxi, pervēct-um, pervēh-ere, 3 v. a., to carry through; bring, convey to; (of ships,) to waft: reflective, to pass through, traverse; ride; sail, &c. (per, vcho.)
- pervēn-io**, (ē)l, tum, ĩre, 4 v. n., to come (all the way) through; arrive at, reach, attain to. (per, venio.)
- pervigil-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., to remain awake all night; spend the night watch. (per, vigilo.)
- pēs**, pēd-is, m., a foot: In military language, Pedem referre, to retreat; Pedem conferre, to close in fight. (Cf. ποὺς, ποδ-ός; Goth. fōtus, Germ. fuss, Engl. foot.)
- pēt-o**, ĩvi, or ĩl, ĩtum, ĩre, 3 v. a., to make for, go towards; fly to; reach towards; go to (for the purpose of getting); seek, ask, beg, sue for; make for or at (in a hostile sense), attack, assail.
- Phāēthon**, Phāēthont-is, m., Phaethon, (i.e., the Shining One,) son of Helios and Clymene. (Φαέθων.)
- phālanx**, phalang-is, f., a band of soldiers; a close array, a host. See note on Caes. B. G., l. 24, 10. (φάλαγξ.)
- Phālēr-eus**, ēi and ēos, m., a Phalerian; i.e., one from Phalerum.—e.g., Demetrius Phalereus. Generally pronounced as three syllables. (See Nep. Milt., vl. 12.) Also, of the harbour of Phalerum: as, Phalereus portus.
- Phālēr-ic-us**, a, um, Phalerian, belonging to Phalerum.
- Phālēr-um**, l. n., Phalerum, one of the harbours of Athens. (Φαληρόν.)
- Pharnabāz-us**, l. m., Pharnabazus, a Persian satrap or governor.
- Phās-is**, Idis, or Idos, m., the Phasis, a river of Colchis, in Asia Minor.
- Phēgiāc-us**, a, um, Phagian,—belonging to Phagia, a town on the Erymanthus, in Arcadia.
- Phidipp-us**, l. m., Phidippus.
- Philipp-us**, l. m., Philip; especially Philip V., king of Macedonia from B.C. 220 to 179. Demetrius of Pharos induced him to make an alliance with Hannibal, after the battle of Cannae.
- Philocl-es**, is, or l. m., Philocles, an Athenian commander. (See Nep. Alc., viii. 2.)
- Phlēg-on**, ontis, m., Phlegon, (i.e., the Burning One,) one of the four horses of the Sun. (Φλέγων.)
- phōc-a**, uc, f., a seal, sea-calf, sea-dog.
- Phōc-is**, idis, f., Phocis, a district of Greece.
- Phoeb-us**, l. m., Phoebus, (i.e., the Radiant One,) an appellation of Apollo as the Sun-god; the sun.
- Phoenice-us**, a, um, (or Poeniceus.) See Punicus.
- Phrygi-a**, ae, f., Phrygia, a district of Asia Minor.
- pice-us**, a, um, of pitch, pitchy; black as pitch. (pix, piceis, pitch.)
- piētas**, piētāt-is, f., dutiful conduct towards the gods, or towards parents; piety; natural affection; duty; love; loyalty, patriotism. (plus.)
- pig-eo**, ul, or pigittum est, ĩre, 2 v. n., (usually impersonal, piget, piguit, &c.) it annoys, vexes, grieves; causes reluctance or remorse.
- piger**, pigra, pigrum, reluctant, unwilling, loth; indolent, slow, inactive, lazy, dull. (pigco.)
- piget**, it annoys, &c. (See pigco.)
- pign-us**, ōris, or ĩris, n., a security, pledge, pa; wager, stake. (From root pag, or pac, as in paciscor, &c.)
- pil-a**, ae, f., a pillar.
- pil-a**, ae, f., a ball, globe.
- pil-um**, l. n., a dart, or heavy javelin; spear, lance.
- Pind-us**, or os, l. m., Pindus, a range of mountains west of Thessaly, in Greece.
- pin-us**, ūs, or l. f., a pine, pine tree: hence, anything made of pine,—as, a ship; a torch.
- Pirae-us**, l. m., Piraeus, one of the harbours of Athens, joined to the city by a long wall. (See note on Nep. Them., vi. 3.)
- Pirēnis**, Pirēnid-is, f. adj., belonging to Pirene, a fountain on the citadel of Corinth or Ephyre.
- Pisander**, Pisandr-i, m., Pisander, an Athenian.
- pisc-is**, is, m., a fish: in pl. Pisces, a constellation—Pisces, or the Fishes.
- Pisistrāt-us**, l. m., Pisistratus, who made himself sole ruler of Athens, B.C. 560.
- Pis-o**, ōnis, m., Piso, a Roman family name of the Calpurnian gens. L. Calpurnius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law.
- pi-us**, a, um, (comp. magis pius; superl.

(i.e., the
ur horses
sea-dog.
District of
(i.e., the
of Apollo
oneicous.)
District of
; black as
conduct to-
parents;
duty; love;
e, 2 v. n.,
guit, &c.)
uses reluc-
nt, unwill-
ative, lazy,
geo.)
a security,
(From
tor, &c.)
y javelin;
a range of
in Greece.
pine tree;
line,—as, a
of the har-
the city by
ep. Them.,
elonging to
citadel of
ander, an
Pisces, a
Fishes.
whom the
B.C. 566.
au family
s. L. Cal-
r-in law.
us; superl.

maxime plus, rarely plissimus in good Latin,) possessing a feeling of duty; hence. *pious, conscientious, righteous; dutiful* (to parents, &c.); *affectionate, tender; loyal, patriotic.*
plác-o, o, ūi, ūtum, āre, 2 v. u., to please, be pleasing or agreeable to; satisfy: often used impersonally, it pleases; seems right; is thought; is resolved on; is decreed.
plácíd-us, a, um, gentle, mild, peaceful, serene, placid. (placéo.)
plác-o, ō, ūi, ūtum, āre, 1 v. a., to appease, quiet, soothe, calm, assuage.
plang-o, planxi, planctum, plang-ōre, 3 v. a., to strike, beat; especially, to beat the breast (in token of grief); to wail, lament. (The root is plag, which occurs in plāga, a blow; in the Greek πλῆγή, and Engl. plague.)
plangor, plangōr-is, m., a beating or striking; lamentation, wailing. (plang-o.)
plāniti-es, ēi, f., a plain or level surface; a plain. (plānus.)
plān-us, a, um, level, smooth, even, flat, plane; evident, clear, plain: as subst., plan-um, i, n., a level surface.
Plātaeens-is, is, e, belonging to Plataea.—e.g., civitas: in pl. Plataeenses, the Plataeans.
plaustr-um, i, n., (or plostrum,) a wagon, wain, cart: the constellation, Charles's Wain, or Great Bear. (Said to be from plaudō, to make a noise, creak.)
plēb-es, is, or ei, f., same as plebs, the people.
plēbs, plēb-is, f., the plebs, plebeians (as opposed to the patricians), commonalty, common people, populace, mob, lower classes.
plect-o, plex-i, or ul, plex-um, plect-ēre, 3 v. a., to twine, twist, plait, interweave. (Root plect, akin to plāga, a snare, net; plic-o, du-plex, &c.)
plect-o, ēre, 3 v. a., to punish; blame.
plēn-us, a, um, full, filled with; loaded with; abounding in, plentiful; complete. (Root ple, as in pleo.)
plērīque, plērāque, plērāque, pl. of plerisque,—which see.
plērūmque, adv., for the most part, commonly. (Neut. of plerisque.)
plērūsq̄ue, plērāq̄ue, plērūmq̄ue, (usually in the pl.,) a very great part, the

greater part, most: in pl. plerique, the most, the majority. (plerus, a very great part, and que. So quisque, from quis and que.)
plōrāt-us, ūs, m., wailing, lamentation. (ploro.)
plōrāt-us, a, um, perf. part of ploro, wailed, lamented over.
plōr-o, ō, ūi, ūtum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., to cry aloud: hence, to wail, lament, weep: a., to weep over, lament.
plumb-um, i, n., lead: Plumbum album, tin.
plūr-es, es, a, or ia, more, a greater number. (Plur. of plus.)
plūrimum, adv., very much, most: Plurimum posse, to be very powerful.
plūrīm-us, a, um, superl. of multus, very much or many: in pl. the majority, most (persons or things).
plūs, gen. plūr-is, (in the sing. only the neut. is used, but in pl. It is a regular adj., plures, plures, plura, or pluria,) more, comp. of multus,—which see.
plūs, adv., more: Plus quam, more than.
plūsquam, adv., more than.
pōcūl-um, i, n., a drinking vessel, cup, goblet. (Root po, to drink. Cf. potus.)
Poecil-e, ēs, f., Poecile, a famous portico or picture gallery at Athens. (ποικίλη, scil. στοά.)
poen-a, ae, f., compensation (for injury), satisfaction; vengeance; punishment, penalty. (ποινή. The root is the same as in pun-io, im-pun-is. Cf. moeritū and munio.)
poenit-ēs, ul, ēre, 2 v. a. and n., to cause (one) to repent; to be sorry, repent: usually impersonal, poenitet, poenituit, &c., it repents (me, thee, &c.), makes sorry; makes dissatisfied. (Said to be connected with poena, pun-io, &c. Cf. Fr. repentir, and Engl. re-pent.)
poenitet. See poeniteo.
Poen-i, orum, m., the Carthaginians. (See Poenus.)
Poen-us, a, um, Phoenician, Carthaginian (because Carthage was a Phoenician colony): the m. sing., Poenus, used substantively for Hannibal. (See Poeni.)
pollīc-ior, itus, ēri, 2 v. a. dep., to offer one's self; proffer; promise, engage. (pro, liccor.)
pollīcīt-us, a, um, perf. part. of pollicor, having promised.

Q
A
S
T
U
V
X
Y

- pōl-us**, *i*, *m.*, *the end of an axis; a pole; the pole of the heavens; the pole-star; the heavens.*
- Pōlybi-us**, *i*, *m.*, *Polybius*, a famous Greek historian, a native of Megalopolis, in Arcadia; born B.C. 204, died B.C. 122. He was an intimate friend of Scipio Africanus Minor.
- pōm-um**, *i*, *n.*, *fruit* (of any kind of tree,—as apples, cherries, nuts, &c.)
- pōm-us**, *i*, *f.*, *a fruit tree.*
- pondus**, *pondēr-is*, *n.*, *a weight* (used in a scale): hence, *weight, heaviness, burden.*
- pōn-o**, *pōsui*, *pōsīt-um*, *pōn-ēre*, *3 v. a.*, *to put, place; post* (as troops); *set, lay; appoint, set over; found, build, erect; propose as a prize, set up* (for competition); *wager, stake; lay aside, lay down; lay in the grave, bury.*
- pons**, *pont-is*, *m.*, *a bridge.*
- pont-us**, *i*, *m.*, *the deep, the sea.*
- Pont-us**, *i*, *m.*, *Pontus*, a district of Asia Minor: also, *the Black Sea.*
- pōpūlar-is**, *is*, *e.*, *belonging to the people; intended for the people, popular*: as *subst.*, *popularis*, *a fellow-countryman; a partisan, favourer*: in *pl.*, *Populares*, *the party of the people, the Liberal party.*
- pōpūlātiō**, *pōpūlātiōn-is*, *f.*, *a laying waste, ravaging, plundering, devastation, destruction.* (*popnior.*)
- pōpūliscīt-um**, *i*, *n.*, *a decree of the people.* (*populus*, and *scitum*, from *selseo.*)
- pōpūl-o**, *āvī*, &c. See *popular.*
- pōpūl-or**, *ātus*, *ārī*, *1 v. a. dep.*, *to lay waste, ravage, devastate, plunder; destroy, ruin.* (Said to come from *populus*, *to send a multitude of people over a country, so us to consume its produce.*)
- pōpūl-us**, *i*, *m.*, *a people, community, nation; a host, multitude.* The term is used in different senses, as applied to the community of Rome: 1. *The patricians*, in opposition to the *plebs*. 2. *The patricians and plebs united.* 3. *All classes of the citizens except the Patricii.*
- pōpūl-us**, *i*, *f.*, *a poplar tree.*
- porrig-o**, *porrexi*, *porreectum*, *porrig-ēre*, *3 v. a.*, *to make straight in advance, or forward*: hence, *to stretch forward, put forth, reach out, extend; present, offer; prolong.* (*pro, rego.*)
- port-a**, *ao*, *f.*, *a gate; entrance, passage.*
- portic-us**, *ūs*, *f.*, *a porch, portico, piazza, colonnade; covered walk.* (*porta.*)
- port-o**, *āvī*, *ātum*, *āre*, *1 v. a.*, *to carry, bear, convey, bring.*
- portōri-um**, *i*, *n.*, *a tax* (on goods exported or imported), *toll, custom, impost.* (*portus.*)
- port-us**, *ūs*, *m.*, *an entrance; harbour, port, haven.* (Same root as *porta.*)
- posc-o**, *pōposel*, *posc-ēro*, *3 v. a.*, *to ask urgently; demand; request, beg.*
- pōsīt-us**, *a*, *um*, *perf. part.* of *pono*, *placed, set; laid aside, &c.*
- possessio**, *possessio-nis*, *f.*, *a possessing, possession; a thing possessed, property; a possession, estate; effects.* (*possideo.*)
- possid-ēo**, *possēd-i*, *possess-um*, *possid-ēre*, *2 v. a.*, *to be master of, possess, have.* (*pot*, root of *potis*, and *sedeo*; *iike possum* for *pot-sum.*)
- possid-o**, *possēd-i*, *possess-um*, *possid-ēre*, *3 v. a.*, *to take possession of; occupy.* (*pot*, root of *potis*, and *sido.*)
- possum**, *pōtūi*, *posse*, *v. n. irreg.*, *to be able, have power; have influence; prevail*: *Possum, potes, &c., I can, thou canst, &c.* (*pot*, root of *potis*, *able*, and *sum.*)
- post**, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, *behind, back; (of time,) after, afterwards*: *prep.*, *behind; next to; after; since.*
- postēā**, *adv.*, *after this or that; here-after, afterwards*: with *quam*—*posteaquam*, or *posteaquam*—*after that.* (Said to be for *post eam*, as *antea* for *ante eam.* See *antea.*)
- postēāquam**, *adv.*, *after that.* (*postēā, quam.*)
- postēr-i**, *ōrum*, *m.*, *after generations, posterity.* (See *posterus.*)
- postēri-or**, *or*, *us*, *gen.* *postēriōr-is*, *comp.* of *posterus*, *next* (in order of place or time); *later; inferior, &c.*
- postēr-us**, *a*, *um*, (or *poster*.) *comp.* *posterior*, *superl.* *postērīmus*, or *postērīus*, *coming after, following, next, future*: in *m. pl.*, *postēri*, *future men, posterity, descendants.* (*post.*)
- postmōdo**, *adv.*, *afterwards, after a little, by and-by.* (*post, modo.*)
- postquam**, or *post quam*, *conj.*, *after that; as soon as; when.*
- postērmo**, *adv.*, *at last; lastly, finally.* (*postērīmus.*)

- postrām-us**, a, um, superl. of *posterus*, *hindmost, last*. (See *postumus*.)
- postriidiē**, adv., *the day following, or after; the next day*. Contracted for *posteri die*, like *die crastini* (old abl.) for *crastino die*.
- postulāt-um**, i, n., a demand, request. (postulo.)
- postul-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to demand, require; request, ask. (posco.)
- postūm-us**, a, um, superl. of *posterus*, (see *postriimus*), *the last: especially, the last born, youngest, postumus*.
- pōtens**, gen. *pōtent-is*, adj., (properly the part. of *possum*), *able, powerful, mighty, strong*.
- pōtenti-a**, ac, f., *ability, power, might, force; authority, influence, rule; efficacy*. (potens.)
- pōtestas**, *pōtestāt-is*, f., *ability, power, faculty; legal right, authority; magisterial or political power, office, dominion*. (possum.)
- pōt-ior**, itus, Iri, 4 v. n. dep., (the poets often use some of its parts as of the third conj.,— 2.g., *potitur, potimur*.) to become master of, get possession of, obtain, acquire. It governs the abl., and also the gen.; rarely the acc. (potis.)
- pōti-or**, or, us, gen. *potiōr-is*, comp. of *potis*, *more able, more powerful; better, preferable*.
- pōt-is**, is, e, able; possible; mighty: comp. *potior*; superl. *potissimus*.
- pōtissimē**, adv., (or *pōtissimē*), and *pōtissimum*, adv., *chiefly, especially, principally, above all, most of all*. (potissimus.)
- pōtissimum**, adv. See *potissimē*.
- pōtīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *potior*, *having gained*.
- pōtius**, adv., *rather, preferably, more*: neut. of *potior*.
- pōt-us**, a, um, one that has drunk, *drunken*. (The root is *po*, as in *πῶμα, μέπω-κα, pō-culum, pō-to, pō-tor*, &c.)
- prae**, adv. and prep., *before, in front of*: prep. with abl., *before, in front of; compared with; because of, by reason of, on account of, through*. (Another form of *pro*.)
- praeb-eo**, ni, itum, ēre, 2 v. a., literally, to hold in front: hence, to offer, present, afford, supply, furnish: *Præbere se*, to show or prone one's self. (Contracted for *præhibeo*, from *prae* and *habeo*.)
- praecāv-eo**, praecāvi, praecant-um, praecāv-ēre, 2 v. a. and n., to guard against, try to avert or prevent: n., to take care or precaution, to be on one's guard, beware. (prae, caveo.)
- praecēd-o**, praecess-i, praecess-um, praecēd-ēre, 3 v. a. and n., to go before, precede; outstrip, excel, surpass. (prae, cedo.)
- praecip-s**, gen. *praecipit-is*, adj., *head-furthest, headlong; precipitate; rapid; violent*: *Præceps tempus*, a dangerous or critical time. (prae, eapnt.)
- praecip-um**, i, n., a precept, rule; command, injunction, order. (praecipio.)
- praecip-u-s**, a, um, perf. part. of *praecipio*, *received beforehand, &c*.
- praecip-i-o**, praecip-i, praecip-um, praecip-ēre, 3 v. a., to take or receive beforehand; anticipate; give instructions to, order; advise; enjoin. (prae, capio.)
- praecipit-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to throw headlong, precipitate: with *se*, in a reflect. sense, to hurry down, sink or set hastily (said of the sun, &c.): n., to hasten or rush down, go to ruin speedily. (praecip-s.)
- praecipuē**, adv., *chiefly, especially, principally, more than others*. (praecipuus.)
- praecipu-us**, a, um, taken before others: hence, *choice, especial, peculiar, excellent, distinguished, extraordinary*. (praecipio.)
- praecūd-o**, praecūs-i, praecūs-um, praecūd-ēre, 3 v. a., to shut in front, or before one: hence, to close, shut to; to forbid access; prevent, hinder. (prae, cludo.)
- praed-a**, ae, f., *booty, spoil, plunder; prey, game*.
- praedic-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to proclaim in public, declare, affirm, assert, allege, say.
- praedic-o**, praedixi, praedictum, praedic-ēre, 3 v. a., to say or tell beforehand, foretell, predict; give notice of, warn; advise. (prae, dico.)
- praedo**, praedōn-is, m., a plunderer, robber: *Maritimus praedo*, a sea robber, pirate. (praeda.)
- praed-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. n. and a. dep., to plunder, pillage, spoil, rob, pilfer. (praeda.)
- praefect-us**, i, m., one set over, an overseer; president; chief, commander. (Masc. of perf. part. of *praeficio*.)

Q
R
S
T
U
V
X+Y

- praefēr-o**, praetūl-l, praclāt-um, praefēr-re, v. a. Irreg., *to bear or carry before, or in front; to set before, offer, present; to esteem before, prefer.* (prae, fero.)
- praefic-i-o**, praeficēl, praefectum, praefic-ēre, 3 v. a., *to make head of, or over; hence, to set over, appoint to the command of.* (prae, facio.)
- praefig-o**, praefix-l, praefix-um, praefig-ēre, 3 v. a., *to fix or fasten in front of; to fix on the edge or extremity of* (Caes. B. G., v. 18); *to tip, head, or point with.* (prae, figo.)
- praefix-us**, a, um, perf. part. of praefigo, *fastened or set up on the extremity or edge of; tipped, pointed, headed.*
- praelāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of praefero, *borne in front of; offered; preferred, &c.*
- praeli-um**, l, n., *a battle.* (See proelium.)
- praemiss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of praemitto, *sent before, despatched, sent forward.*
- praemitt-o**, praemiss-l, praemiss-um, praemitt-ēre, 3 v. a., *to send forward or before, despatch.* (prae, mitto.)
- praemi-um**, l, n., literally, *what is taken first: hence, profit (from booty); prerogative; advantage; reward, prize.* (prae, and emo, *to take; as in demo, sumo, &c.*)
- praenōmēn**, praenōmīn-ls, n., *the first name (distinguishing the individual, as opposed to the name of the gens and that of the family): thus, in Marcus Tullius Cicero, Marcus is the praenomen, Tullius the gentile name, and Cicero the family name.* (prae, nomen.)
- praeopt-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to wish in preference, choose rather, prefer; wish exceedingly.* (prae, opto.)
- praepār-o**, āvl, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to make ready beforehand, prepare; equip, fit out.* (prae, paro.)
- praepōn-o**, praepōsn-l, praepōsīt-um, praepōn-ēre, 3 v. a., *to set before, set over, appoint to the command of; prefer.* (prae, pono.)
- praesāg-us**, a, um, *wise beforehand; foretelling, foreboding, prophetic.* (prae, and scīus, *knowing.*)
- praescrib-o**, praescrips-l, praescript-um, praescrib-ēre, 3 v. a., *to write before; write down; prescribe, order, command, dictate.* (prae, scribo.)
- praesens**, gen. praesent-ls, part. of praesum, and ad], *being present, at hand, in person; (of time,) instant, present.* In pl., praesentl-a, um, n., *present circumstances.*
- praesenti-a**, ae, f., *being before or at hand, presence: In praesentia, for the present, in the meantime.* See note on Nep. Milt., vii. 23. (praesens.)
- praesēp-o**, ls, n., *a place guarded by a fence, an enclosure; stall; stable; fold, pen; manger, crib.* Other forms are, praesep-es, ls, f.; praesep-ls, ls, f.; praesepi-a, ae, f.; and praesepi-um, l, n. (prae, sepes.)
- praesertim**, adv., *especially, particularly.* (prae, and sero, *to put or place.*)
- praesidi-um**, l, n., *a sitting before: hence, defence, protection, help; guard, garrison; a military post, fort, station, garrison.* (praeses, praesidis, *protecting; from prae, sideo.*)
- praestans**, gen. praestant-ls, part. of praesto, *standing forth conspicuously: hence, pre-eminent, surpassing, excellent, distinguished, extraordinary.*
- praesto**, praestitl, praestitum and praestitum, praest-āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to stand before or in front of: hence, to stand forth conspicuously, surpass, excel, outstrip; perform, accomplish; keep, preserve; show, exhibit; prove: Praestare se, to show or prove one's self Used impersonally, praestat, it is better.* (prae, sto.)
- praesum**, praesui, praesesse v. n. Irreg., *to be before: hence, to be set or put over, appointed to the charge of, command; preside, be chief.* (prae, sum.)
- praeter**, adv. and prep., *except, unless: with quam in comparisons, praeterquam, before, above, more than: prep. with acc., past, beyond, before; besides, in addition to.* (prae.)
- praeterea**, adv., *beyond this, besides; hereafter; henceforth.* (praeter, eum. See antea.)
- praetēr-ēo**, fvl, or ll, itum, ēre, 4 v. n. and a., *to pass by, outstrip; leave out, omit to mention; surpass, excel.* (praeter, and eo.)
- praetērīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of praetereo, *past by, gone: in n. pl. praeterita, the past, by-gones.*
- praeterquam**, or praeter quam, adv., *besides what, beyond, besides: except.*

- praetor**, praetōr-is, m., *one who is before or first; a leader, chief, president; general, commander; a praetor, (or magistrate of justice) at Rome.* (prae.)
- praetōri-us**, a, um, *belonging to the general or praetor, praetorian: Praetoria cohors, the body-guard of the generalissimo.* The neut., praetorium, *general's tent.* (praetor.)
- praetūr-a**, ae, f., *the office of praetor, praetorship.* (praetor.)
- prāt-um**, i, n., *a meadow, field, plain.*
- prēc-es**, um, f. See prex.
- prēc-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. n. and a. dep., *to pray, beseech, entreat, supplicate.* (prex.)
- prēhend-o**, (or prendo,) i, prehens-um, *prēhend-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to seize, take hold of, grasp; catch unexpectedly, surprise.* (prae. and hend, or hand, same as Eng. hand.)
- prēm-o**, press-i, press-um, prēm-ēre, 3 v. a., *to press, press close together; press hard on, pursue closely; press down, depress, lower; check, keep down.*
- prendo**, contracted for prēhendō.
- prētios-us**, a, um, *of great value or price, valuable, precious.* (pretium.)
- prēti-um**, i, n., *price, worth, value; money; wages, reward.*
- prex**, prēc-is, f., (nom. and gen. sing. obsolete,) *usually in the pl., prēces, a prayer, entreaty, request; imprecation.*
- pridiē**, adv., *on the day before, the day before.* (prae or pro, and dies.)
- primō**, adv., *at first, firstly, at the beginning, in the first place.* (primus.)
- prim-um**, i, adv., *first, in the first place: with ut, ubi, &c., as soon as; for the first time.* (primus.)
- prim-us**, a, um, *first, foremost, chief, most eminent.* (prae, or pro.)
- princeps**, gen. princip-is, adj., *first in time or order; chief, most eminent: as subst., ruler, prince, sovereign.* (primus, capio.)
- principāt-us**, us, m., *the first place, pre-eminence; chief rank or power, supremacy, sovereignty, dominion, rule.* (princeps.)
- prior**, prior, prius, gen. priōr-is, *former, previous, prior; front, fore; better, more excellent.* (Comp. of the stem pr, as in pro, prae, &c.)
- pristin-us**, a, um, *former, early, primitive, previous.* (Root of pr-ae, pr-o, &c.)
- prius**, adv., *before, sooner, formerly: with* quam, *before that;—often in one word, priusquam.* (neut. of prior.)
- priusquam**, conj., *before that, before.*
- privātum**, adv., *in a private capacity (i.e., apart from state office); as a private individual, in private, privately; separately.* (privatus.)
- privāt-us**, a, um, *not connected with the state; belonging to an individual, private, peculiar, one's own.* (Part. part. of privo.)
- privign-us**, i, m., *a step-son.* (From privus, for privigenus, *separate, private*, and gen, root of gigno.)
- priv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to separate; deprive of, bereave; free, deliver from.* (privus, *separate, private.*)
- prō**, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; for, in favour of, on behalf of, in defence of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to; in consideration of; according to; in virtue of.* In composition with other words, pro means, (1) *in front, forward, forth, toward*; as, pro-sto, pro-curro, pro-trahō, pro-fugio, pro-jicio; (2) *before, previously*; as, pro-vidéo, pro-dico; (3) *for, in defence of*; as, pro-sum, pro-pugno; (4) *for, instead of*; as, pro-curo, pro-consul. The stem is found in Gk. πρό, Lat. prae, Eng. for and fore. The vowel and the liquid sometimes change places, so that we find per-rigo, and not pro-rigo; pol-liceor (sit. change into l), and not plo-liceor.)
- prōb-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to try, test, prove; approve of; show to be good or feasible; demonstrate, give proof of, display, manifest.* (probus.)
- prōb-us**, a, um, *able to stand the test; good; excellent; upright, honest, virtuous, honourable.*
- prōcēd-o**, prōcēss-i, proces-s-um, prōcēd-ēre, 3 v. n., *to go forward, proceed, advance, march onward, come forth, issue; succeed, go on prosperously; (of time,) pass.* (pro, cedo.)
- Procill-us**, i, m., *Procillus, (C. Valerius) a man of consequence in the province of Gaul.* (See Caes. B. G., l. 19 and 47.)
- prōcul**, adv., *at a distance, far off, remote; from afar.*
- prōcumb-o**, procūbul, procūbitum, *procumb-ēre*, 3 v. n., *to lean forward; fall forward; sink down; prostrate one's self; fall.* (pro, cumbo.)

- prœūr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to manage for another, take care of, administer. (pro, eūro.)
- procurr-o**, procurr-i and proeūrri, procurrum, procurr-ēre, 3 v. n., to run forward, rush forth; (of places,) to run or jut out, extend, project. (pro, eūro.)
- prōd-eo**, prōd-ii, prōd-ītum, prōd-īre, 4 v. n., to go forth; come forth or out; appear; go forward, advance. (pro, eo.)
- prōdītio**, prōdītīōn-is, f., literally, a putting forth: hence, a making publicly known, a disclosure; betraying; treason; treachery. (prodo.)
- prōdītōr**, prōdītōr-is, m., a betrayer, traitor. (prodo.)
- prōd-o**, īdī, ītum, ēre, 3 v. a., to put or bring forth, exhibit, show; make known, publish, declare, disclose; betray; forsake, abandon; surrender; hand down, transmit. (pro, do.)
- prōdūc-o**, prōdūxi, prōdūc-tum, prōdūc-ēre, 3 v. a., to lead or bring forth; advance, promote; lengthen out, prolong, protract; put off. (pro, duco.)
- proeli-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. n. dep., to join in battle, engage, fight, struggle. (proelium.)
- proeli-um**, ī, n., a battle, combat, fight, contest.
- profectio**, profectīōn-is, f., a setting out, departure, start. (proficiscor.)
- profect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of proficiscor, having started, departed, set out.
- prōfēr-o**, prōtūl-i, prolāt-um, prōfer-re, v. a. irreg., to bring or carry forth; produce, put forth, bring forward; publish, make known; discover, reveal. (pro, fero.)
- profess-us**, a, um, perf. part. of profiteor, having declared, confessed, professed.
- prōfic-īo**, proficēi, profectum, proficē-ēre, 3 v. a., to make way, advance; improve, make progress; avail, be serviceable to, benefit, profit. (pro, facio.)
- prōficisc-or**, profectus, proficisc-i, 3 v. n. dep., literally, to make or put one's self forward: hence, to set out, depart, start; travel; begin, originate, arise. (pro, facio.)
- prōfiteor**, professus, prōfīt-ēri, 2 v. a. dep., to confess openly, declare, avow, acknowledge, profess; promise, offer freely. (pro, fateor.)
- prōfig-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to dash down; overthrow, ruin, destroy; drive in headlong flight, put to rout. (pro, figo.)
- prōfūg-īo**, (ā)l, ēre, 3 v. n. and a., to flee forward or in front of: hence, to flee from, run away, escape. (pro, fugio.)
- prōfund-us**, a, um, literally, having the bottom (or lowest depth) far away: hence, deep, profound; (and so, ilke altus, which means either deep or high,) high, elevated. (pro, and fundus, the bottom.)
- prōgēni-es**, ēi, f., descent, race, family, offspring, posterity, progeny. (pro, and gen, root of gigno.)
- prōgnāt-us**, a, um, born from, sprung from, descended: as subst., a descendant. (pro, naseor.)
- prōgrēd-ior**, prōgress-us, prōgrēd-i, 3 v. n. dep., to go forward, advance, proceed. (pro, gradior.)
- prōhib-eo**, ūi, ītum, ēre, 2 v. a., to keep at a distance, ward off; hinder, prevent, forbid. (pro, habeo.)
- prōindē**, adv., literally, forth from this: hence, therefore, accordingly; just so, just as, in like manner, equally. (pro, inde.)
- prōjicio**, prōjēc-i, prōjectum, prōjēc-ēre, 3 v. a., to throw or thrust forward or forth; fling down; (with se,) prostrate one's self; throw away; give up, yield. (pr, jacio.)
- prōl-es**, is, f., literally, what grows forth: hence, offspring, progeny, descendants, posterity. (pro, and ol, root of oleo; as in an-oleo, &c.)
- Prōmēthid-ēs**, ae, m., a son or descendant of Prometheus,--e.g., Deucalion.
- prōmiss-um**, ī, n., a promise, engagement. (promitto.)
- prōmiss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of promitto, being sent forth; let hang down; (Promissis capillis, with hair hanging down;) being promised.
- prōmitt-o**, prōmis-i, prōmiss-um, prōmitt-ēre, 3 v. a., to send forth, let go; let hang down; promise, assure, engage. (pro, mitto.)
- prōmōv-eo**, (ō)l, (ō)lum, ēre, 2 v. a., to move forward, advance, shift further on, remove; promote. (pro, moveo.)
- prompt-us**, a, um, literally, brought forth or out: hence, apparent, visible; ready, at hand: active, quick, well skilled

- Perf. part. or promo, for proemo, to bring forth: In promptu, easy.
- prōn-us**, a, um, bending or leaning forward, stooping, bending down; sinking, setting, (as the sun); inclined to, prone to. (pro.)
- propāg-o**, propāgin-is, f., a set or layer of a plant, a shoot: hence, an offspring, child, descendant. prō or prō. (pro, and pag, root of pango.)
- prōpātūl-us**, a, um, open in front; uncovered, exposed: as a subst., n., propatulum is often used in the abl.: In propatulo, openly, publicly: In propatulo aedium, in the court before the house. (pro, patulus.)
- prōpē**, adv., and pr.p. with acc., near, nigh, hard by; (of time,) not far off, at hand, about, nearly, almost.
- prōpell-o**, prōpāl l, propulsum, propellere, 3 v. a., to drive or push forward or before one; drive away, repulse; overturn; hurl, propel. (pro, pello.)
- prōpērē**, adv., hastily, speedily, soon. (properus, active.)
- prōpēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. ā. and n., to hasten, prepare hastily: n., to make haste, hasten, be quick. (properus, active.)
- prōpinquitas**, prōpinquitāt-is, f., nearness, proximity; intimacy, friendship; relationship. (propinquus.)
- prōpinqu-us**, a, um, near, neighbouring, close to, bordering on: as subst., a relative, kinsman. (prope.)
- prōpi-or**, or, us, gen. propiōr-is, comp. of prope, nearer, (of place, time, or relationship); later, more recent.
- prōpius**, adv., and neut. of propior, (governs acc. and dat.,) nearer, closer, nearer to. (prope.)
- prōpōn-o**, prōpōsul, prōpōstūm, prōpōn-ere, 3 v. a., to set forth; place before (one); to show forth, display; propose; point out; report; lay before (one); purpose; offer. (pro, pono.)
- Prōpontis**, Prōpontid-is, oi os, f., the Propontis, or Sea of Marmora
- prōpōsīt-um**, i, n., what is set forth (to others); a plan, design, purpose, determination. (propono.)
- propri-us**, a, um, one's own, peculiar (to one), especial, proper; lasting, permanent.
- propter**, adv., and prep. with acc., near, close by, at hand; prep., near, close to; on account of, because of, from, for, through, by means of. (prope.)
- propterea**, adv., therefore, on that account: Propterea quod, because that. (propter, eam, seil. rem. See antea.)
- prōpugnācūl-um**, i, n., a bulwark, rampart, defence, outwork, barrier. (propugno.)
- prōpugn-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., to fight in front of, or outside of; to fight forth from, (i.e., to issue from—e.g., from the woods—to fight;) to fight in defence of. (pro, pugno.)
- prōpuls-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to drive off; ward off; repel, repulse; avert. (pro, pulso.)
- prōsequ-or**, prōscīt-us, (or prosequutus) prōscīqu-i, 3 v. a. dep., to follow forth, follow after; accompany, convoy; pursue. (pro, sequor.)
- prōspect-us**, ūs, m., a look-out; distant view, prospect: Esse in prospectu, to be in sight. (prospicio.)
- prosper**, or prospēr-us, a, um, literally, according to one's hope: hence, favourable, prosperous, successful. (pro, spes, or spero.)
- prospērē**, adv., favourably, fortunately, successfully. (prosper.)
- prōspicio**, prospexi, prospectum, prōspic-ere, 3 v. n. and a., to look forth; watch, be on the look-out; to take care of, provide for: a., to see at a distance, descry; take a survey of, command a view of. (pro, and specio, as in conspicio, &c.)
- prōstern-o**, prostrāv-i, prōstrāt-um, prostern-ere, 3 v. a., to strew in front of, or before; throw down, overthrow, prostrate; defeat utterly, rout. (pro, stern-)
- prōstrāv-** prōsul, prōdesse, v. n. irreg., literally, to be for, or in front of (one); hence, to defend; be of service to, avail, profit, do good to. (pro, sum.)
- prōtēnus**, adv., (or protinus,) forward to the end: hence, straight forward, right on, farther on; continuously; immediately, instantly. (pro, tenu.)
- Prōt-eus**, Prot-eos, and ei, m., (acc. ea.) Proteus, a sea god, the keeper of Neptune's sea calves. He was famed for the power of changing his shape.
- prōtīnus**, adv. See protenus.
- prōvect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of provelo, carried forward, advanced.

prōvēh-o, provexi, provectum, prōvēh-ere, 3 v. a., to carry forward; conduct; transport; exalt, raise. (pro, veho.)

prōvid-ēo, provid-i, provīsum, provid-ere, 2 v. n. and a., to see or look to beforehand, make preparation, provide for, make provision for: u., to foresee, prepare, provide. (pro, video.)

prōvinci-a, ac, f., a province, (i.e., a portion of a foreign country gained by the Romans, and put under Roman administration;) hence, administration, government; command; office, duty. (Etymology very doubtful. Some connect the word with proventus, produce or revenue, because paying tribute; others with providentia, care, charge, because entrusted to the care of some one; and others with provinco, to conquer before, as being the first part of a country conquered, or a country into which conquest had been pushed forward.)

proximē, adv., nearest, next; very near; very closely; immediately. (proximus.)

proxim-us, u, um, superl. of prope, (see propior,) nearest, next; very near; shortest: hence, (of time,) immediately preceding, or following; previous, foregoing, last; next ensuing.

prūdēns, gen. prudent-is, adj., foreseeing; knowing, skilled, experienced; wise, discreet, judicious, sagacious; clever. (Contracted for providens.)

prūdenti-a, ac, f., a foreseeing: hence, knowledge of, skill in; wisdom; prudence; intelligence; discretion; wariness; sagacity. (prudens.)

prūin-a, ac, f., hoar-frost; snow; winter.

prūinōs-us, u, um., full of hoar-frost, frosty, wintry; cold. (pruina.)

Prūsi-as, ae, m., Prusias, king of Bithynia.

pūblicē, adv., in the public name; at the public cost; on behalf of the public; openly, publicly. (publicus.)

pūblic-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make public property, confiscate; to declare to the people, publish. (publicus.)

pūblic-us, a, um, (also poplicus and poplicus, in Inscriptions,) belonging to the people, or to the community, public, common: as subst., public-us, i, m., a public officer, magistrate: neut., public-um, l, the public territory, revenue, purse, place, &c. (Contracted for populicus, from populus.)

pūd-ēo, ui, or pudtūm est, pūd-ēre, 2 v. a. and n., to make ashamed, or be ashamed: impersonally, pudet, ū ashamed.

pūdet. See pudeo.

pūdic-us, u, um, having a sense of shame: hence, modest, chaste, virtuous. (pudeo.)

pūdor, pūdor-is, m., shame; modesty; shyness, bashfulness; respect, regard for; good breeding. (pudeo.)

puell-a, ac, f., a girl, maiden, young woman, young wife. (Fem. of puellus, for puerulus, a dimin. of puer.)

puer, puēr-i, m., a child, (boy or girl;) especially, a boy, lad, youth; slave.

puērīl-is, is, e, suited to, or characteristic of a boy; childish, boyish, youthful-juvenile, silly. (puer.)

pūērūl-us, i, m., a very little boy. (Dimin. of puer.)

pugn-a, ae, f., literally, a fight with fists; a battle, contest, engagement, struggle. (pug, root of pungo, pug-ug-i, and of pug-nus.)

pugn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., to fight, engage in battle, contend, struggle. (pugna.)

pugn-us, i, m., a fist. (pug, root of pungo.)

pulcher, pulchr-a, um, (or pulceer,) beautiful, fair; handsome; noble; glorious: honourable.

pūl, a, um, blackish; black; dusky, dark, sombre; sad, mournful.

pūls-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to push; strike, beat; strike against; agitate. (Freq. from pello.)

pūls-us, a, um, perf. part. of pello, beaten, struck, buffeted.

pūls-us, ūs, m., a pushing; beating; a blow, stroke; playing (of a musical instrument). (pell'o.)

pūlvērūlent-us, a, um, full of dust, dusty. (pulvis.)

pūlvīs, pūlvēr-is, m., dust, powder; a cloud of dust.

pungo, pūpūg-i, punctum, pung-ere, 3 v. a., to prick, puncture, pierce; sting; reze. (The root is pug, as seen in pugio, a dagger, pug-na, pug-nus, pug-il, &c.)

pūnice-us, a, um, reddish, purple-coloured, or Punie,—the Phoenicians being famed for purple dye. (P'unleus.)

Pūnic-us, a, um, Punie, Carthaginian; purple-coloured, purple-red. (P'oeni.)

pān-io, *ivi*, or *ii*, *itum*, *ire*, 4 v. a., (also *pūn* for, *itus*, *iri*, 4 v. a. dep.,) to inflict punishment, punish. (poena.)
pupp-is, *is*, *f*., the *lander part of a ship*, stern, poop.
purg-o, *āvī*, *ātum*, *āre*, 1 v. a., to make clean, cleanse, purify, purge; clear, justify, excuse; apologise; expiate, make atonement for. (Said to be contracted for *purum ago*.)
purpūr-a, *ae*, *f*., the purple-fish; purple colour; purple clott; a purple robe, "the purple." (πορφύρα.)
purpūre-us, *a*, *um*, purple-coloured, purple; (applied also to many shades of colour, as, reddish, violet, brownish, blackish; clothed in purple; brilliant; beautiful. (purpura.)
pūt-o, *āvī*, *ātum*, *āre*, 1 v. a., literally, to cleanse: hence, to prune; adjust, settle:

and so, to reckon, estimate; consider, think, suppose; believe; judge.
Pyd-na, *ae*, *f*., *Pydna*, a Macedonian town, on the Thracian Gulf.
Pýram-us, *i*, *m*., *Pyramus*, the lover of Thisbe.
Pyreñae-us, *a*, *um*, *Pyrenean*, relating to the Pyrenees. (♀ or ♀.)
Pýrōis, or *Pyrociis*, *Pýroent-is*, *m*., *Pyrois*, (i.e., the Fiery,) one of the horses of the Sun. (Hypōeis.)
pýrōp-us, *i*, *m*., *pyropus* (a mixed metal); bronze; gold bronze. (πυρρῶς.)
Pýrrh-a, *ae*, *f*., *Pyrrha*, daughter of Epimetheus, and wife of Deucalion.
Pýthi-a, *ae*, *f*., (scil. sacerdos,) *Pythia*, —i.e., the priestess who uttered the responses of the oracle of Apollo at Delphi.

Q.

Q., as a praenomen, stands for *Quintus*.
quā, adv., by what way; in which direction; in which place, where; as long as; as far as, in so far as; in what manner, how. (Abl. fem. of *qui*.)
quācunq̄ue, or **quacumq̄ue**, adv., wherever, whithersoever.
quadrāgintā, num. adj., forty.
quadrījūg-us, *a*, *um*, (or *is*, *is*, *e*.) yoked four together; belonging to a team of four: as subst. pl., quadrījūgī, four horses. (quatuor, jugum.)
quadringent-i, *ae*, *a*, num. adj., four hundred.
quadrūpes, **quadrūpēd-is**, adj., going on four feet, four-footed: as subst., a quadruped. (quatuor, pes.)
quaer-o, **quaesivī**, or **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, **quaer-ēre**, 3 v. a., to search for, seek, endeavour to get; obtain, get; ask, inquire; examine into, investigate.
quaesit-us, *a*, *um*, perf. part. of *quaero*, sought out, searched for; gained, procured; select, special.
quaestio, **quaestio-nis**, *f*., a seeking, searching; inquiring into, investigation; question; trial. (quaero.)
quaestor, **quaestōr-is**, *m*., a searcher, examiner: hence, a quaestor, —i.e., a Roman magistrate, who had charge of the public revenues. See Ramsay's "Antiquities." (For quaesitor, from quaero.)

quaest-us, *ūs*, *m*., a seeking; gaining; making of money; acquiring; gain, profit; a means of making money, business, occupation. (quaero.)
quāl-is, *is*, *e*, of what kind, of what nature. It is used interrogatively, and also as the correlative of *talls*. (quis.)
quam, adv., how, in what manner; or to what degree; as much, as much as. It is often the correlative of *talls*, and means *as*. After: terms denoting comparison, and such words as *contra*, *ultra*, *alius*, it means *than*: as, *Plus quam*, more than. It is often used with superlatives and the verb *posse*: as, *Quam maximas copias potuit*, as great forces as he could. (qui.)
quamdiu, adv., as long as; until; during. (quam, diu.)
quamobrem, adv. interrog., wherefore? on what account? why? It is used relatively at the beginning of a clause or sentence, on which account, —i.e., and on this account; wherefore. See Caes. B. G., i. 34, 1. (quam, ob, rem.)
quamprimum, adv., as soon as possible, immediately. (quam, primum.)
quamquam, or **quanquam**, conj., though, although.
quamvis, adv. and conj., as much as you will, ever so much, very much, exceeding-

Q

R

S

T

U

V

X

- ly*: conj., *as much as you will; although.*
(quam, and vis, from volo.)
- quando**, adv. interrog., *at what time? when?* adv. relative, *at what time, at the time when, when; at any time, ever*: conj., *since, because.*
- quanquam**, or *quamquam*, *though, although.*
- quantum**, adv., neut. of *quantus*, *how much; as much, so much; as far as.*
- quant-us**, a, um, *how great, how large; as great as, as much as*: in pl., *as many as.* After *tantus* it may generally be translated as. (quam.)
- quārē**, adv. Interrog. and relative, *by which means; on what or which account; wherefore, why.* (Qua, re. Cf. Fr. *car*.)
- quart-us**, a, um, *the fourth*: *quartum*, n., *for the fourth time.* (quatuor.)
- quāsī**, adv., *as if, just as, as it were; nearly, almost.*
- quāter**, adv. num., *four times.* (quatuor.)
- quātio**, [quasi,] *quassum, quāt-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to strike; shake; shatter; drive; agitate*
- quātuor**, (or *quattuor*) card. num., *four.*
- quē**, conj., *and*: *que-que*, or *et-que*, *both-and, partly-partly.* It never stands alone, but is always attached to another word—usually the second of the two coupled by it. It is sometimes equal to *sed*, *but*, when it follows a negative.
- queo**, *quīvi* and *quī*, *quītum*, *qu-īre*, 4 v. n. irreg., *to be able*: *Queo*, *I can.*
- querc-us**, ūs, f., *an oak, oak tree.*
- quērēl-a**, ae, f., *a complaint; lamentation, wailing.* (queror.)
- quēr-or**, *quest-us*, *quēr-i*, 3 v. a. and n. dep., *to complain; bewail, lament.*
- quest-us**, ūs, m., *a complaint; lamentation.* (queror.)
- quest-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *queror*, *having complained.*
- qui**, *quae*, *quod*, interrog., rel. and indef. pron.: 1. Interrog., *who? which? what?* 2. Relative, *who, which, that, what; what sort of.* 3. Indef., *any, any one, whoever.*
- quī**, adv., (old abl. *quī*) *by what means? in what manner? how? wherefore? why?*
- quīā**, conj., *because.* (Old acc. pl. n. of *qui*.)
- quicunq̄ue**, *quaecunq̄ue*, *quodeunq̄ue*, (or *quicumq̄ue*.) rel. pron., *whoever, whatever, whatsoever; every one who; every, or all that.*
- quīdam**, *quaedam*, *quoddam*, and *quīdam* (subst.), indef. pron., *a certain one, somebody, something.*
- quīdem**, adv., *indeed, certainly, in truth; at least*: *Ne quīdem*, *not even.*
- quīēs**, *quīēt-is*, f., *rest, repose; quiet, peace; sleep; death.*
- quiesc-o**, *quīēvi*, *quīētum*, *quiesc-ēre*, 3 v. n., *to rest, repose; keep still or quiet; sleep.* (quies.)
- quīēt-us**, a, um, (properly the part. of *quiesco*.) *resting, at rest, quiet, calm; peaceful, undisturbed.*
- quīlibēt**, *quaelibēt*, *quodlibēt*, or *quīlibēt*, indef. pron., *any one you please, any one at all, any; all.* (qui, libet.)
- quīn**, conj., *literally, in what manner not; by which not; how not; hence, that not; but that* (after verbs of doubting); *from* (after verbs of preventing); *why, not?* (as an interrog.) (*quī*, old abl. of *qui*; and *ne*, for *non*.)
- Quinti-us**, l, m., *Quintius*, a Roman praenomen, — e.g., *Quintius Flaminius.*
- quīndēcim**, num. adj., *fifteen.* (*quinque*, *decem*.)
- quīngent-i**, ae, a, num. adj., *five hundred.* (*quinque*, *centum*.)
- quīn-i**, ae, a, distrib. num., *five each* (time, person, &c.) (*quinque*.)
- quīnquāgēn-i**, ae, a, distrib. num., *fifty each.*
- quīnquāgīntā**, card. num., *fifty.*
- quīnque**, card. num., *five.*
- quīnquies**, adv., *five times.* (*quinque*.)
- quīnt-us**, a, um, ord. num., *the fifth.* (*quinque*.)
- Quint-us**, l, m., *Quintus*, a Roman praenomen.
- quīppe**, adv. and conj., *certainly, to be sure; indeed, forsooth*: *Quīppe qui*, *as one who; since, inasmuch as.* (*quīa-pe*.)
- Quīris**, or *Quīrīt-is*, *Quīrīt-is*, m., *an inhabitant of Cures, a Sabine town.* The term *Quirites* is often applied to the Romans in a civil, but not in a military capacity.
- quīs**, *quae*, *quod*, or *quīd*, interrog. and indef. pron., *who? which? what? neut., how? why? any one; some.*
- quīsnam**, *quāenam*, *quīdnam*, interrog.

odeunque,
whoever,
one who;

and quid-
a certain

y, in truth;
n.
ose; quiet,

quiesc-ere,
rep still or

the part of
quiet, calm;

o, or quid-
you please,
libet.)

at manner
t: hence,
s of doubt-
eventing);
(quid, old

a Roman
Flamin-

2. (quin-

five hun-

five each
c.)

lib. num.,

fty.

quinque.)
the fifth.

man prac-

only, to be
pe qui, as

(quia-
s, m., an

ne town.
applied to

not in a

errog. and
at? neut.,

interrog.

pron., who at all? which or what at all?
who, pray?

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam and
(subst.) quidpiam, or quippiam, Indef.
pron., any one, any body; any, some.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, or
quidquam, Indef. pron., any one, any
body; anything, something.

quisque, quaeque, quodque, and (subst.)
quicque, or quidque, each, every (per-
son or thing): Primo quoque tempore,
at the first moment possible.

quisquis, quaequae, quodquod, or
(subst.) quicquid, (l.c., quidquid,) Indef.
pron., whoever, whosoever, whatever;
each, any; all that.

quivis, quaevis, quodvis, and (subst.)
quidvis, Indef. pron., who or what you
will; any (person or thing).

quō, Adv. and conj., into what place?
whither? anywhere, wherever; for which
reason, wherefore; in order that; be-
cause; to what end or purpose. (Said
to be for quom, old acc. of qui.)

quoad, Adv., how long? as long as, until;
as far as; with reference to. (quo,
ad.)

quod, conj., that, in that, because; as re-
spects that, as to that; although, even if;
since that, whereas, but.

quōminus, conj., literally, in what num-
ber the less; that not, from (after verbs
of preventing.) (quo, minus.)

quōmodo, Adv., in what manner. (quo,
modo.)

quondam, Adv., at a certain time, at one
time; formerly.

quōniam, Adv., since, after that; seeing
that, whereas, because

quōque, Adv., also, too.

quōt, Indef. adj., how many.

quōtannis, Adv., every year, yearly.
(quot, annus.)

quōtidian-us, a, um, every day, daily,
common. Also quōtid. (quotidie.)

quōtidie, Adv., daily, every day. (quot,
dies.)

quōties, or quotiens, Adv., how often, as
often as.

quōtiescunque, Adv., how often soever,
as often as.

quum, conj., when; since, after that;
seeing that, as; after that, as soon as;
although.

R.

rādi-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n.,
literally, to supply with spokes: hence,
n., to emit beams or rays, shine, beam,
radiate. (radius.)

rādi-us, i, m., a staff, rod; spoke (of a
wheel); beam, ray. (Cf. Gk. πάβδος.)

rādi-x, rādie-is, f, a root (of a plant,
&c.): hence, the lower part (of any-
thing), as, the foot of a mountain; and
so of the foundation (of a thing), basis,
ground.

rām-us, i, m., a branch, bough, twig,
shoot; and so of the branches of a stag's
horns.

rāpīd-us, a, um, tearing away: hence,
(of heat,) fierce, violent, devouring, con-
suming; swift, rapid. (rapio.)

rāpīn-a, ac, f, robbery, pillage, rapine,
plundering: hence, booty, prey. (rapio.)

rāp-īo, ūi, tum, ēre, 3 v. a., to seize, take
hurriedly or with violence, snatch; drag,
tear away, carry off; sweep away, hurry
along or away; ravish; rob; carry off
by death. (Cf. Gk. ἀρπάγω.)

(135)

23

rapt-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freq., to seize
with violence and carry off; drag away
or along; ravage, plunder. (rapio.)

rapt-us, a, um, perf. part. of rapio,
seized, snatched away: the neut., rapt-
um, is used substantively for plunder;
as, Vivitur ex rapto, men live on plunder,
—i.e., by robbery.

rār-us, a, um, (opposed to densus,) not
tightly packed, not close (in position or
in texture); far apart, scattered, here
and there, dispersed; few; infrequent; in
scattered parties; rare, scarce.

rastr-um, i, n., (pl. rastri, m., most com-
monly, but also rastra, n.,) literally, an
instrument to scrape with; a hoe; rake;
mattock. (From rasum, supine of rado,
to scrape.)

rātīo, rātīōn-is, f, a reckoning, calcula-
tion, account, estimate; a list, register;
sum; business, affair, transaction; plan,
theory, mode, method, conduct, course,
way, means; nature, kind; the reason-
ing faculty, reason, judgment; view,

R
ST
U
VX
Y

- opinion; ground, motive, reason, consideration, regard. (The stem ra is said to be the same as that of ra-tus, from reor.)
- rāt-is**, is, f., a raft, float; boat, vessel, ship.
- rāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of roor, having thought, judged, supposed: as adj., reckoned, calculated, thought; settled, fixed, certain, ratified, confirmed.
- Raurāc-i**, orum, m., pl., the Rauraci, a people of Gaul who lived on the Rhine, near the position of the modern town of Bâle.
- rēbellio**, rēbelliōn-is, f., a renewal of war (by those formerly subdued); a revolt, rebellion. (re, bellum.)
- rēcēd-o**, rēcēss, rēcēss-um, rēcēd-ēre, 3 v. n., to go back, retire, retreat, withdraw, recede; go away, vanish. (re, cedo.)
- rēcens**, gen. rēcēnt-is, adj., fresh, young, recent, new; not exhausted, fresh, vigorous.
- rēcept-us**, a, um, perf. part. of recipio, received; usual, customary, &c.
- rēcept-us**, ūs, m., a drawing or taking back: hence, a retreat, flight; falling back; halt: also, a place of retreat, refuge; return. (recipio.)
- rēcīd-o**, ī, rēcīsum, rēcīd-ēre, (in poets sometimes rēcīdo.) 3 v. n., to fall back, recoil; fall back or down; return; be reduced to. (re, cado.)
- rēcīd-o**, ī, rēcīs-um, rēcīd-ēre, 3 v. a., to cut off or down. (re, caedo.)
- rēcīng-o**, (no perf.) rēcīnct-um, rēcīng-ēre, 3 v. a., to unbind, unbind, untie, unloose; strip off. (re, cingo.)
- rēcīpio**, rēcēp-ī, rēcēpt-um, rēcēp-ēre, 3 v. a., to take or get back, regain, recover: with se, to draw back, withdraw, betake one's self, retire; to get back, regain, recover (one's self); accept, receive, admit; to take on one's self, undertake, engage. (re, capio.)
- rēcīn-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., to lean back, recline, rest upon. (re, and root clin, as in κλίω.)
- rēcōncīlī-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to bring back again to friendship, reconcile, restore, recover. (re, concilio.)
- rēcōnd-o**, īdī, ītum, ēre, 3 v. a., to put back again, or put away; shut up; hide, conceal; bury. (re, condo.)
- rector**, rēctōr-is, m., a director, guide; a helmsman; leader, ruler, governor. (rego.)
- rect-um**, ī, n., that which is straight: hence, rectitude, right, uprightness, virtue. (rectus.)
- rect-us**, a, um, made straight, direct; in a straight line (along, or up and down); straight; upright; right, proper, correct; lawful, just; noble. (perf. part. of rego.)
- rēcūrv-o**, (no perf.) ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to curve or bend backwards, turn back; wind back again (as a river). (re, curvo.)
- rēcūs-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., literally, to allege a reason against: hence, to refuse, reject, decline. (re, causa.)
- rēd-a**, ae. Sec rheda.
- rēddīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of reddo, restored, returned, &c.
- rēdd-o**, īdī, ītum, ēre, 3 v. a., to put or give back, restore, return; give up, deliver, relinquish; give forth, produce; impart, assign, grant; administer justice; translate (from one language to another); give back again,—i.e., reflect, imitate, resemble; make or cause; render. (re, do.)
- rēdēmt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of redimo, bought up; contracted for, farmed.
- rēd-eo**, īvī, or īl, ītum, īre, 4 v. n. Irreg., to go back, come back, return; trend, slope towards; to come in (as one's due), be yielded as income; arise; come to, be reduced to. (re, eo.)
- rēdīg-o**, rēdīg-ī, rēdāct-um, rēdīg-ēre, 3 v. a., to drive, or lead, or bring back, restore; reduce (to a state or condition) lower, diminish, degrade; render. (re, ago.)
- rēdīm-o**, rēdēm-ī, rēdēmt-um, rēdīm-ēre, 3 v. a., to buy back, repurchase, redeem, ransom, release; buy up, purchase; gain, procure; contract for, hire, farm; atone for, make amends. (re, emo.)
- rēdīntegr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make fresh again, renew, restore, recruit. (re, integro, from Integer.)
- rēdītīo**, rēdītīōn-is, f., a going or coming back, return. (redeo.)
- rēdīt-us**, ūs, m., a coming back, return; a coming in, income, revenue. (redeo.)
- rēdūc-o**, rēdūx-ī, rēdūct-um, rēdūc-ēre, 3 v. a., to lead or bring back; cause to return; rescue; restore (to favour).
- rēduct-us**, a, um, perf. part. of reduco, brought back, restored, &c.

rēd
bu
(
rēfē
re
rēfē
rē
co
re
an
an
al
rēfē
a,
all
an
(r
rēfē
a,
re
rēg
roy
rēgī
pa
u:
rēgī
rēgī
rēgī
kin
regn
hav
hav
gov
regn
mer
mū
rēg-o
lea
to g
set
rēject
thro
rējīcī
a, t
puls
(re,
rēlāt-
carr
rēlax-
loose
levā
rēlict-
left
rēlīgī
one
stun

- rēdux**, gen. *rēducē-is*, adj.: act., *leaving back*; pass., *brought back, returned.* (reduco.)
- rēfect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *reficio*, *restored, refreshed, repaired, &c.*
- rēfer-o**, *rētūl-i*, (or *retūll*.) *rēlāt-um*, *rēferre*, 3 v. a. irreg., *to bring, put, or carry back, restore*; with *se*, *to go back, return*; *give back, return, restore*; *pay*; *answer, reply*; *report, bring back word, announce*; *trace back, ascribe, refer* (see also *refer*): *Referre pedem, or gradum, to retreat.* (re, fero.)
- rēfert**, *rētultit*, &c., v. n. impers., literally, *it has a bearing on one's affairs*: hence, *it concerns, is of importance.* (rem, fert.)
- rēfic-io**, *rēfēcēl*, *rēfect-um*, *rēfic-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to make again, renew*; *restore, refit*; *refresh, recruit.* (re, facio.)
- rēgāl-is**, is, e, *relating to a king, kingly, royal, regal.* (rex.)
- rēgī-a**, ae, f., (scil., domus.) *a royal house, palace; castle, court; royal city.* (regī-ū.)
- rēgīn-a**, ae, f., *a queen; princess.* (rex.)
- rēgīo**, *regiōn-is*, f., *a region, district.*
- rēgī-us**, a, um, *relating to a king, royal, kingly; princely; splendid.* (rex.)
- regn-o**, *āvī, ātūm, āre*, 1 v. n. and a., *to have rule; be a king, reign; prevail, have the mastery*: a., *to rule, sway, govern.* (regnum.)
- regn-um**, i, n., *kingly power or government, sovereignty, rule; kingdom, dominion, territory.* (rex.)
- rēg-o**, *rex-l*, *rect-um*, *rēg-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to lead in a straight line; make straight*; *to guide, direct*; *rule, govern, control*; *set right, correct.*
- rēject-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *reicio*, *thrown back, &c.*
- rējicio**, *rējicē-i*, *rējicē-um*, *rējicē-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to throw or fling back; beat back, repulse; cast off; repel, reject, disdain.* (re, jacio.)
- rēlāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *refero*, *carried back, reported, &c.*
- rēlax-o**, *āvī, ātūm, āre*, 1 v. a., *to unloose, loosen; open; widen; lighten, alleviate.* (re, laxo.)
- rēlict-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *relinquo*, *left behind, left, abandoned, &c.*
- rēligio**, (religio.) *rēligiōn-is*, f., *reverence for the gods, piety, religion; superstition; a religious scruple; religious awe*: in pl., *religiones, religious matters, (doctrines, ceremonies, omens, &c.)* (From *relego, to ponder over carefully; or from religo, to bind down.*)
- rēlinqu-o**, *rēliqui*, *relictum*, *rēlinqu-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to leave behind, leave; let remain; give up, surrender; forsake, abandon, desert, neglect*; (poet.,) *leave off, cease.* (re, linquo.)
- rēliqui-ae**, *ārūm*, f. pl., (or *relliquiae*.) *remains, leavings, remainder, rest.* (reliquus.)
- rēliqu-us**, a, um, *that which is left, or which remains, the remaining (part), the rest; (of time, future, subsequent.* (relinquo.)
- rēmān-ēo**, *si, sum, ēre*, 2 v. n., *to stay or remain behind; continue, abide; endure; remain.* (re, manco.)
- rēmīg-o**, *āvī, ātūm, āre*, 1 v. a., *to row.* (remex, an *carsman.*)
- rēmigr-o**, *āvī, ātūm, āre*, 1 v. a., *to return (to one's usual residence); return, go back.* (re, migro.)
- rēmīnisc-or**, *rēmīniscē-i*, 3 v. a. dep., *to call to mind, recollect, remember; imagine, conceive.* (re, and men, root of *memini.*)
- rēmīss-us**, a, um, *sent back; slack, relaxed, loose; mild, gentle; cheerful.*
- rēmītt-o**, *remisi*, *rēmīss-um*, *rēmītt-ēre*, 3 v. a., *to send back; let go back; loosen, slacken, abate, relax; remit; relieve; release; give up, resign; concede*: n., *to decrease, abate; lull.* (re, mitto.)
- rēmollēsc-o**, *ēre*, 3 v. n. incept., *to become soft again, grow soft; be mollified, be touched; relent.* (re, mollesco.)
- rēmōrāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *remoror*, *delayed, &c.*
- rēmōr-or**, *ātus, āri*, 1 v. n. and a. dep., *to stay back; linger, loiter*: a., *to keep back, detain, delay; obstruct, hinder; defer.* (re, moror.)
- rēmōt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *removeo*, *removed from, retired, distant, remote.*
- rēmōv-ēo**, (ō), *rēmōtūm*, *rēmōv-ēre*, 2 v. a., *to move back; take away, remove; change; withdraw.* (re, moveo.)
- rēm-us**, i, m., an oar.
- Rēm-us**, i, m., *Remus, brother of Romulus.*
- rēmōv-o**, *āvī, ātūm, āre*, 1 v. a., *to make new again, renovate, restore; refresh; repair.* (re, novo.)
- rēnūnti-o**, *āvī, ātūm, āre*, (or *renuncio*.)

S

T
U
V

X
Y

- 1 v. a., to carry back word, report, announce; renounce. (re, nuntio.)
- reor**, rātus, rēri, 2 v. a. dep., to think, suppose, deem, believe, judge.
- rēpāgūl-a**, ōrum, n. pl., bolts, bars; limits, boundaries, barriers. (re, and pag, root of pango.)
- rēpārābil-is**, is, e, what may be repaired or restored; retrievable. (reparo.)
- rēpār-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to get again; repair; retrieve; restore; refresh, recruit, renew. (re, and paro.)
- rēpell-o**, rēpūl-l, (or reppūl,) rēpūsum, rēpell-ēre, 3 v. a., to drive back, repulse, reject; drive away, reject, refuse. (re, pello.)
- rēpens**, gen. rēpent-is, adj., sudden, unexpected, *hasty*.
- rēpentē**, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly, all at once. (repens.)
- rēpentīn-us**, a, um, sudden, unexpected. (repens.)
- repercuss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of repercutio, struck back again, reflected.
- rēpercutio**, rēpercut-s-l, repercut-s-um, rēpercut-ēre, 3 v. a., to strike back again; cause to rebound; reflect; reverbate, re-echo. (re, percutio.)
- rēpēr-io**, i, (or repperi,) tum, ire, to find, meet with, discover; ascertain; perceive; invent, devise. (re, parlo.)
- rēpert-us**, a, um, perf. part. of reperio, found out.
- rēpēt-o**, i, vi, or li, itum, ēre, 3 v. a., to return, revisit, retrace; bring back; renew, repeat; resume; call to mind again, recollect; demand back or again; demand as one's due. (re, peto.)
- repl-eo**, ēvi, ētum, ēre, 2 v. a., to fill again; fill up, complete, supply; satiate; gorge. (re, pleo.)
- rēp-o**, si, tum, ēre, 3 v. n., to creep, crawl; advance with caution or difficulty. (Another form of serpo.)
- rēpōn-o**, rēpōsū-l, rēpōsīt-um, rēpōn-ēre, 3 v. a., to put or place back, replace, restore; lay up in store; lay aside or by, put away; reserve, preserve. (re, pono.)
- rēport-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to carry back; carry off or away; gain; bring back news, report. (re, porto.)
- reprēhend-o**, i, reprēhens-um, reprēhend-ēre, 3 v. a., to seize with the intention of pulling back; hence, to find fault with, blame, censure, reprove. (re, prehendo.)
- rēpugn-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to fight against; resist, oppose; set opposite to; contend against; counterbalance. (re, pugno.)
- rēpūl-s-a**, ac, f., a rejection, defeat, an unsuccessful candidature; denial, refusal. (repello.)
- rēpūl-s-us**, a, um, perf. part. of repello, driven back, repulsed, &c.
- rēpūt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to count again, reckon, calculate; think over, reflect, meditate. (re, puto.)
- rēquiesc-o**, rēquīēv-l, rēquīēt-um, rēquiesc-ēre, 3 v. n. incept., to come to a state of rest again; rest, repose; sleep; rest in the grave. (re, quiesco.)
- rēquīr-o**, rēquīsv-l, or li, rēquīst-um, rēquīr-ēre, 3 v. a., to seek again, look after, search for, inquire after; require, need, want; miss; desiderate. (re, quero.)
- rēs**, rēi, f., a thing, affair, matter, event, circumstance, case, condition; substance, property; advantage, interest, benefit; cause, reason, account: Pro re, according to circumstances: Res publica, or respublica, the commonwealth, state: Res novae, political changes, a revolution.
- rēsacr-o**, (or resacro,) āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to uncurse, liberate from a curse; beseech again, implore. (re, sacro.)
- rescind-o**, rescīd-l, rescīss-um, rescīn-l-ēre, 3 v. a., to cut off or away; tear down or asunder; break up; to repeal (a law), rescind. (re, scīndo.)
- (rescio.) See rescisco.
- resciso-o**, rescīvi, or li, rescīt-um, rescīsc-ēre, 3 v. n. incept., to come to the knowledge of, learn, ascertain, find out. (re, scisco.)
- resciss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of rescindo, torn open, rent.
- rescrib-o**, rescrips-l, rescript-um, rescrib-ēre, 3 v. a., to write again or anew; enroll anew, re-enlist; write back, reply. (re, scribo.)
- rēserv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to keep back, lay up, reserve; keep, retain. (re, servo.)
- rēsist-o**, restīt-l, rēsist-ēre, 3 v. n., to stand back; stand still, halt, stop; withstand, oppose, resist. (re, sisto.)
- rēsolv-o**, i, rēsōlūtum, rēsolv-ēre, 3 v. a., to untie, loosen, release, set free; relax; separate; annul, abolish; banish. (re, solvo.)

respi
ēre,
back
for
respo
2 v.
hen
a re
spou
respo
opin
eo.)
respu
com
respu
out
clim
restit
up
brin
rest-o
belin
resis
ava
rēsūp
on th
supl
rētīn-
a, t
strai
tene
retrō,
and
re-us,
eialy
peach
rēvell-
to ph
snat
rēvert
n., to
perfe
rēvert
to tur
turn.
rēvisi
ēre, 3
reviv
rēviv-
3 v. n
rēvoc-
back,
Revo
steps.
rēvuls-
torn a

- respicio**, respexi, respect-um, respicere, 3 v. a., to look back or behind, look back at; have regard to, consider; care for; review. (re, specio.)
- respond-eo**, i, respons-um, respond-ere, 2 v. a., literally, to promise in return: hence, to answer, reply, respond; give a response, (as, e.g., an oracle.) (re, spondeo.)
- respons-um**, i, n., a reply, answer; opinion; oracular response. (respond-eo.)
- respublica**, gen. rei-publicae, f., the commonwealth, state. (res, publica.)
- respu-o**, i, ere, 3 v. a., literally, to spit out again: hence, to reject, refuse, decline. (re, spuo.)
- restitu-o**, i, (re)stitum, ere, 3 v. a., to set up again; replace, restore; rebuild; bring back. (re, statuo.)
- rest-o**, ita, are, 1 v. n., literally, to stop behind; stand still: hence, to withstand, resist, stand firm; to remain, be left; await. (re, sto.)
- resupin-us**, a, um, bent backward; lying on the back, supine, face upward. (re, supinus.)
- retin-eo**, ui, retent-um, retin-ere, 2 v. a., to hold back, detain, check, restrain; hold fast; preserve, keep. (re, teneo.)
- retrō**, adv., backwards; behind. (re, and the syllable tro, as in ultro, citro.)
- re-us**, i, m., a party in a law plea; especially, a defender, one accused or impeached.
- rēvell-o**, i, revuls-um, rēvell-ere, 3 v. a., to pluck back, out, or away; drag from; snatch from. (re, vello.)
- rēvert-o**, i, revers-um, rēvert-ere, 3 v. n., to return. Used principally in the perfect tenses. (See revertor.)
- rēvert-or**, reversus, rēverti, 3 v. n. dep., to turn back or about; come back, return. (re, verto.)
- rēvivisc-o**, revixi, revictum, rēvivisc-ere, 3 v. n. incept., to come to life again, revive. (re, vivo.)
- rēviv-o**, (no perf.) revetum, rēviv-ere, 3 v. n., to live again. (re, vivo.)
- rēvōc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to call back, recall; bring back; turn back: Revo-care gradum, to return, retrace the steps. (re, voco.)
- rēvuls-us**, a, um, perf. part. of revello, torn away, &c.
- rex**, rēg-is, m., a king, sovereign, prince; chief man, leader. (rego.)
- Rhe-a**, ae, f., Rhea (Sibvia), daughter of king Numitor, and mother of Romulus and Remus.
- rhēd-a**, ae, f., a carriage (with four wheels).
- Rhēn-us**, i, m., the Rhine, a river of Germany.
- Rhōdān-us**, i, m., the Rhone, a large river of Switzerland and France.
- Rhōdi-us**, a, um, Rhodian, relating to Rhodes: in pl. m., the Rhodians, inhabitants of Rhodes.
- Rhōdōp-ēs**, ēs, f., Rhodope, a range of mountains in Thraee.
- Rhōd-os**, i, or us, i, f., Rhodes, an island in the Aegean Sea.
- riect-us**, ūs, m., the opened mouth, gaping jaws. (ringor, to open the mouth.)
- rid-eo**, risi, ris-um, rid-ere, 2 v. n. and a., to laugh, smile: a., to laugh at, ridicule.
- rigor**, rigōr-is, m., stiffness, rigidity; numbness; firmness; hardness, inflexibility. (rigeo, to be stiff.)
- rim-a**, ae, f., a chink, cleft, crack.
- rip-a**, ae, f., a bank (of a river.)
- ris-us**, ūs, m., laughter; a laugh; mirth. (rideo.)
- rōbur**, rōbōr-is, n., hardness; strength: an oak (tree); power, vigour, force.
- rōbust-us**, a, um, strong, sturdy, robust, hardy. (robur.)
- rōg-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to ask, inquire, question; beg, request, solicit, beseech.
- rōg-us**, i, m., a funeral pile.
- Rōm-a**, ae, f., Rome.
- Rōmān-us**, a, um, Roman, relating to Rome: as subst., a Roman: in pl., Roman, the Romans. (Roma.)
- Rōmūle-us**, a, um, belonging or relating to Romulus. (Romulus.)
- Rōmūl-us**, i, m., Romulus, brother of Remus and joint-founder of Rome: as an adj., the same as Romuleus.
- rōr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., (used in third person, and often impersonally,) to drop dew; to drop, drip, trickle; distil.
- rōs**, rōr-is, m., dew: hence, anything liquid distilling or dropping in a similar manner,—as, rain, water, tears, milk, &c.
- rōs-a**, ae, f., a rose.

S

T

U

V

X44

rostr-um, *i*, *n.*, the bill or beak (of a bird); the nose or snout (of an animal); hence used of things of similar shape,—as, the curved point (of a bill-hook); the prow (of a ship). The pl., rostra, was applied to the raised platform in the Forum from which speakers addressed public meetings. It was so called because adorned with the beaks of ships taken from the people of Antium. (rodo, to gnaw, or scrape)

rōt-a, *ac*, *f.*, a wheel: hence used by the poets for a car or chariot.

rōtāt-us, *a*, *um*, perf. part. of roto, whirled round, made to revolve.

rōt-o, *āvi*, *ātum*, *āre*, *1* v. *a.* and *n.*, to turn round (like a wheel), whirl round: *n.*, to turn or roll round, revolve. (rota.)

rūber, *rubr-a*, *rubr-um*, red, ruddy: Rubrum Mare, the Eastern or Indian Ocean.

rūbesc-o, *rūbui*, *rūbesc-ēre*, *3* v. *n.* in-cep., to grow red, redder. (rubeo, to be red; and that from ruber.)

rūbēt-a, *orrum*, *n.* pl., bramble thickets. (rubus.)

rūb-us, *i*, *m.*, a bramble or blackberry bush.

rūd-is, *is*, *e*, in a natural state, unwrought; rudely fashioned; in an unfinished state; untilled; rough; raw; coarse; wild; unpolished; unlearned, unskilled; awkward, clumsy.

Rūf-us, *i*, *m.*, Rufus, a Roman surname, signifying red, red haired: P. Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's generals.

Rūmīn-a, *ae*, *f.*: Rumina flens, the fig tree of Romulus and Remus. In a temple near this fig tree a goddess, Rumina (the Suckler), was worshipped. Her name is said to be derived from rumis, a breast or teat.)

rūmor, *rumōr-is*, *m.*, a report, hearsay; common talk, popular opinion; fame, reputation.

rump-o, *rūp-i*, *rupt-um*, *rump-ēre*, *3* v. *a.*, to burst asunder, rend, tear open; force a passage, burst through; violate; destroy, ruin.

ru-o, *i*, *tum*, (fut. part. sometimes ruitrus,) *ēre*, *3* v. *n.* and *a.*, to fall down with violence, tumble; go to wreck or ruin; hasten, hurry; rush, dash: *a.*, to dash or hurl down; cast or throw up.

rūp-es, *is*, *f.*, a rock, cliff.

rursum. See rursus.

rursus, and rursum, adv., backwards, back; on the other hand; again, anew. (Contracted for revors-us, or um; from revertō, or revertō.)

rūs, *rūr-is*, *n.*, (in pl. only nom. and acc. used,—rura,) the country (in opposition to the town); fields; a country seat; farm; estate.

rūtīl-us, *a*, *um*, red; golden; shining, glittering.

rutr-um, *i*, *n.*, a spade, shovel; hoe.

S.

Sābīn-i, *ōrum*, *m.* pl., the Sabines, a people of Italy, whose territory adjoined that of Rome.

Sābīn-us, *a*, *um*, Sabine.

Sābīn-us, *i*, *m.*, Sabinus (Q. Titurius), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sācell-um, *i*, *n.*, a sanctuary, shrine, chapel. (sacrum.)

sācer, *sacer-a*, *um*, consecrated, holy, sacred; devoted to a deity for destruction: hence, accursed; impious.

sācerdōs, *sacerdōt-is*, *m.* or *f.*, a priest or priestess. (sacer, and do, root of do, to give, and of donum.)

sacrārī-um, *i*, *n.*, a repository for things holy; a shrine, chapel. (sacer.)

sacrifici-um, *i*, *n.*, a sacrifice, offering. (sacrifico, and that from sacer, facio.)

sacrific-o, *āvi*, *ātum*, *āre*, *1* v. *a.*, to offer a victim, sacrifice, present an offering to the gods. (sacer, facio.)

sacrīlēgi-um, *i*, *n.*, the robbing of a temple, plunder of things sacred; sacrilege, violation of sacred things. (sacrilegus, a stealer of things sacred; and that from sacer and lego.)

sacr-o, *āvi*, *ātum*, *āre*, *1* v. *a.*, to set apart as holy, consecrate, devote (to a deity); devote to destruction, curse. (sacer.)

sacr-um, *i*, *n.*, a sacred thing: in pl., sacer-a, orum, *n.*, religious rites, mysteries, secrets; sacred utensils; holy things, (as images of the gods, &c.)

saccul-um, *i*, *n.*, a generation, age: century; race of men.

sacp
sacp
oft
sacp
sacp
sacv
ciō
han
sāgā
pen
nes
sāga
tion
(sa
sāgi
Sāgu
oc,
slep
was
Pur
lāl,
in t
the
Sālā
ing
Sālā
Sala
isla
Ath
sāl-i
leap
all
salter
(Sal
or
men
goo
salt-t
mou
past
sāl-u
open
σάλ
sālūs
safe
of sa
Sām-
off t
sanc-
sanc
estat
sanc
Gk.
sanct
also
holy

- saepe**, adv., often, frequently.
- saepēnūmēr-ō**, adv., very frequently, oftentimes, again and again.
- saep-io**, si, tum, ire, 4 v. a. See *sepo*.
- saepius**, adv., oftener: comp. of *saepe*.
- saev-us**, a, um, enraged; furious; ferocious, fierce, cruel, savage; violent; harsh, relentless, severe.
- sāgācītas**, sāgācītāt-is, f., keenness of perception, acuteness; sagacity, shrewdness. (*sagax*.)
- sāgax**, gen. sāgāc-is, adj., keen of perception, acute, keen; sagacious, shrewd. (*saglo*, to perceive quickly.)
- sāgīt-a**, ae, f., an arrow
- Sāgunt-um**, i, n., (or *Sagunt-us*, i, or os, i, f.) *Saguntum*, a city in Spain, the siege of which by Hannibal (b.c. 219) was the immediate cause of the Second Punic War.
- sal**, sal-is, m., (sometimes n.; the pl. in the masc. only.) salt: (in the poets,) the sea; sea water. In pl., salticisms.
- Sālāmīni-us**, a, um, relating or belonging to *Salamis*.
- Sālām-is**, is, or Inis, f., (Gk. aec. *Salamina*.) *Salamis*—now *Colour*—an island in the *Saroule Gulf*, opposite *Athens*.
- sāl-io**, il, or ul, tum, ire, 4 v. n., to leap, spring, bound jump. (Cf. Gk. ἄλλομαι.)
- saltem**, adv., at least, at all events. (Said to be a contraction for *salutem*, or *salutem*, from *salvus*; so that it means originally, that which still holds good.)
- salt-us**, ūs, m., a leap, bound, spring; a mountain pass; valley, (wooded); forest-pasture, glade. (*sallo*.)
- sāl-um**, i, u., (only in sing.) the high or open sea, the main, the deep. (Cf. Gk. σάλος.)
- sālūs**, sālūt-is, f., a healthy state; welfare, safety. (Said to be a contracted form of *salutus*, from *salvus*.)
- Sām-os**, (or us,) i, f., *Samos*, an island off the coast of *Asia Minor*.
- sanc-io**, sanx-i, sanet-um, (or *sanctum*.) sane-ire, 4 v. a., to render sacred; establish, enact, ordain; confirm, ratify, sanction. (Root *sac*, as in *saecr*. Cf. Gk. ἅγιος, as in ἅγιος.)
- sanc-t-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *sanclo*: also adj., sacred, inviolable; divine; holy, pious; just.
- sanguinōlent-us**, a, um, full of blood; bloody, sanguinary. (*sanguis*.)
- sanguis**, sanguin-is, m., blood: hence, relationship by blood, descent, race, stock; vigour, strength.
- sānītas**, sānītāt-is, f., soundness of body, health; soundness of mind, right reason, sanity; discretion.
- Santōn-es**, um, (also *Santon-i*, ōrum,) m. pl., the *Santones*, a Galle tribe in *Aquitania*, near the mouth of the *Garonne*.
- sān-us**, a, um, sound in body or mind; healthy, whole; safe; rational, in (one's) right reason, sober; discreet.
- sāpiens**, gen. *sapient-is*, pres. part. of *saplo*, to be wise: also adj., wise, sensible, discreet, judicious: as subst., a wise (sensible, shrewd, discreet) man.
- sāpīenti-a**, ae, f., wisdom, discretion, judgment, good sense; knowledge, learning. (*sapiens*.)
- sarcīn-a**, ae, f., a package; burden, load. (*sarelo*, to patch, &c.)
- Sard-es**, inum, (or *Sard-is*.) f., *Sardis*, the chief city of *Lydia*, in *Asia Minor*.
- sarment-um**, i, n., twigs; brushwood; a fogot. (*sarpo*, to prune.)
- sāt-a**, ōrum, n. pl., crops. (See *satus*.)
- sātis**, and *sāt*, adj., or subst., and adv., enough, sufficient: adv., enough, sufficiently.
- sātisfāc-io**, sātisfēc-i, sātisfāc-tum, sātisfāc-ere, 3 v. n. and a., to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; make amends to; excuse, apologise. (*satis*, *facio*.)
- sātisfāctio**, sātisfāctiōn-is, f., a satisfying; amends; excuse, apology. (*satis*, *facio*.)
- satrāp-es**, is, or ae, (or *satrāp-a*, ae,) m., a *satrap*,—i.e., a governor of a Persian province. (*σατραπης*.)
- sātur**, sātūn-a, um, full of (food), sated; well supplied with. (*satis*.)
- Sātūrn-us**, i, m., *Saturn*, father of *Jupiter*, *Neptune*, *Pluto*, *Juno*, *Ceres*, &c. He was dethroned by *Jupiter*, and confined in *Tartarus*.
- sāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *sēro*, sown, planted: hence, pl. n., *sat-a*, *orum*, crops, standing corn.
- sauci-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to wound; hurt; tear; (of the ground,) to tear up with the plough. (*sauclius*.)
- sauci-us**, a, um, wounded; hurt, injured;

- torn up, (as, e.g., the earth by the plough.)
- sax-um**, *i*, *n.*, a stone, large stone, rock.
- scand-o**, *i*, *seaus-um*, *scand-ère*, 3 *v. a.* and *n.*, to climb, get up, mount, ascend: *n.*, to mount, rise, ascend. (Root *sead*. Seen also in *seala*, a ladder.)
- scāph-a**, *ae*, *f.*, a light boat, skiff, canoe. (*σκάφη*.)
- scēlērāt-us**, *a*, *um*, (perf. part. of *scelero*, to pollute,) polluted by crime, wicked; heinous; impious; accursed: as subst., a wretch, miscreant. (*scelus*.)
- scēlus**, *scēlēr-is*, *n.*, a wicked action; heinous crime; sin; enormity.
- scienter**, *adv.*, knowingly, skilfully; wisely. (*sciens*.)
- scienti-a**, *ae*, *f.*, being skilled in; wisdom; knowledge, skill; expertness; science. (*sciens*, knowing.)
- scilicet**, *adv.*, literally, it is permitted to know,—like our "to wit:" hence, it is evident, plain; of course, certainly: In an ironical manner, no doubt; forsooth; to be sure: namely, to wit. (From *sci*, root of *scio*, and *licet*.)
- scind-o**, *scid-i*, *sciss-um*, *scind-ère*, 3 *v. a.*, to split cleave; rend, tear asunder; separate, branch off, (as a road.)
- scio**, *sciv-i*, or *scii*, *scit-um*, *scire*, 4 *v. a.*, to know, understand, perceive; be skilled in.
- scipio**, *Sciplōn-is*, *m.*, *Scipio*, the name of a famous family of the gens *Cornelia*, which supplied many distinguished men to the state; especially *P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus major*, in the Second Punic War, and *P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus Africanus minor*, in the Third.
- ss-us**, *a*, *um*, perf. part. of *scindo*, torn, rent, &c.
- Scorpi-os**, (or *us*.) *i*, *m.*, with *Gk.* acc. *Scorpion*, the *Scorpion*, one of the signs of the *Zodiac*.
- scrib-o**, *scrips-i*, *script-um*, *scrib-ère*, 3 *v. a.*, to scratch (with a sharp point): hence, to write; draw; describe; draw up, compose.
- scūt-um**, *i*, *n.*, an oblong shield, buckler.
- Scyth-a**, *ae*, *m.*, a *Scythian*.
- Scythi-a**, *ae*, *f.*, *Scythia*.
- sē**, *acc.* and *abl.* of the reflexive pron. *se*,—which see.
- sē**, an inseparable particle, prefixed to many words, to indicate (1) separation or division,—as, *securus*, free from anxiety; *sepono*, to lay aside: (2) the undoing of the action of the simple verb,—as, *sejuncto*, to disjoin. (So is an old form of *sine*.)
- sēcius**, *adv.*, comp. of *sēcus*, (which see,) otherwise; worse.
- sēc-o**, *ul*, *tum*, *äre*, 1 *v. a.*, to cut; cut off, or up; divide, separate; pass through; sail, run, fly, flow, or travel through: *Secare vlam*, to take one's way.
- sēcrētō**, *adv.*, apart, separately; secretly, in private. (*secretus*, part. c' *seerno*, to separate.)
- sect-us**, *a*, *um*, perf. part. of *seco*, cut; passing through, &c.
- sēcūl-um**, *i*, *n.*, a generation, age, &c. (See *saeculum*.)
- sēcundum**, *adv.* and *prep.*, after, behind; in the next place: *prep.* with *acc.*, after, behind; along; by; immediately after, next to; in accordance with, according to; as to. (*secundus*.)
- sēcund-us**, *a*, *um*, following after, next, second (in time, place, rank, &c.); favourable, fair, advantageous, (as wind, tide, place, &c.) propitious, fortunate; successful. (*sequor*.)
- sēcūr-us**, *a*, *um*, free from care or anxiety; quiet, tranquil; free from danger, safe, secure. (see, *cura*.)
- sēcus**, *comp.* *sēcius*, *adv.*, otherwise, differently; otherwise than could be wished; ill, badly: *prep.*, by, along, beside, on.
- sēd**, *conj.*, literally, apart from; setting (other things) aside; except: hence, but, yet, on the contrary. (The same as *sē*, apart, which was also written *sed*.)
- sēdēcim**, or *sexdecim*, *card. num.*, sixteen. (*sex*, *decem*.)
- sēd-eo**, *sēd-i*, *sess-um*, *sēd-ère*, 2 *v. n.*, to sit, be seated; sit still, remain; settle down, subside. (Cf. *Gk.* *ἕζομαι*, *ēdos*, and *ἔδρα*; and *Eng. sit*.)
- sēd-ēs**, *is*, *f.*, a seat, chair, throne; settlement, abode, residence; ground, situation, site. (*sēdeo*.)
- sēdīl-e**, *is*, *n.*, a seat, chair, stool, &c. (*sēdeo*.)
- sēditios-us**, *a*, *um*, *f.*, given to mutiny; factious, seditious, mutinous, inflammatory. (*seditio*, mutiny; and that from *se*, apart, and *do*, to put or give.)
- Sedusi-i**, *ōrum*, *m.*, the *Sedusii*, a people of Germany, on the *Rhine*.

- sēgēs**, sēgēt-is, f., a corn field; a corn
sēgēt-is, is, e, slow, inactive, sluggish, de-
 void of energy.
- Segonax**, Segonāc-is, m., *Segonax*, one
 of the princes of Kent. (Cæsar. B. G.,
 v. 22, 4.)
- Segontiac-i**, ōrum, m., the *Segontiaci*, a
 British tribe, in Hampshire.
- sēgrēg-o**, āvi, ātūm, āre, 1 v. a., to se-
 parate from the herd or flock; separate,
 remove (se, grec.)
- Sēgusiān-i**, ōrum, n., (ū or ū.) the
Segusiani, a Gallic tribe, bordering on
 the Allobroges.
- sējung-o**, sejūnxī, sejunct-um, sejung-
 ēre, 3 v. a., to disunite, separate, divide.
 (se, Jungo.)
- sēmēl**, num. adv., once; once for all; at
 first; at any time, at some time. (The
 stem is sem or sim, one; as in sim-
 plex, sim-ul, sim-llis sem-per, stu-
 gulus, &c.)
- sēmen**, sēmīn-is, n., that which is sown,
 seed; posterity, offspring. (For ser-
 men, from sero, sevi.)
- sēment-is**, is, f., a sowing (of seed).
 (semcn.)
- Sēmīrām-is**, is, or Idīs, f., *Semiramis*,
 wife of Ninus, and queen of As-
 syria.
- sēmīt-a**, ae, f., a foot-path, narrow way,
 lane.
- semper**, adv., ever, always, at all times.
 (Root sem. See semel.)
- Semprōni-us**, i, m., or a, ac, f., *Sempro-
 nius*, a Roman gentile name,—e.g.,
 T. Sempronius Gracchus.
- Sēnāt-us**, ūs (or i), m., the Senate (at
 Rome); supreme council. (sen, root of
 scruex.)
- Sēnātusconsult-um**, i, n., a decree of
 the Senate.
- sēnesc-o**, sēnu-l, sēnesc-ēre, 3 v. n., to
 grow old or aged; to become hoary; de-
 cay, fade. (senex.)
- sēnex**, gen. sēn-is, adj., old, aged: as
 subst., m. or f., an old person, man or
 woman. (Cf. Ital. *signore*, Fr. *seigneur*;
 Eng. *sire*.)
- sēn-i**, ae, a, num. distrib., six each (time,
 person, &c.)
- sens-us**, ūs, m., feeling, perception, sensa-
 tion; affection; sense; capacity; judg-
 ment; thought; disposition. (sentio.)
- sententi-a**, ae, f., a way of thinking
 of ion, sentiment; purpose; decision,
 decree: Ex sententia, to one's satisfac-
 tion. (From sent, root of sentio.)
- sent-īo**, sens-l, sens-um, sent-īre, 4 v. a.,
 to discover by the senses; feel, hear, &c.;
 perceive; experience, suffer, undergo;
 think, judge, consid., suppose.
- sēpārātīm**, adv., separately, individu-
 ally, apart. (separātus, part. of se-
 paro.)
- sēpār-o**, āvi, ātūm, āre, 1 v. a., to put
 apart or by themselves; separate, divide,
 distinguish. (sc. paro.)
- sēpēl-īo**, ivi, or ii, sepult-um, sēpēl-īre,
 4 v. a., to bury, inter.
- sēp-īo**, si, tuni, īre, (or saepio,) 4 v. a.,
 to hedge in, enclose, fence round, hem in,
 surround. (sepes, a hedge.)
- septem**, card. num. Indecl., seven.
- septentrio**. See septentriones.
- septentrio**. See septentriones.
- septentrion-es**, um, m., the seven
plough-oxen; seven stars near the
 North Pole, called *Charles's Wain*, or
 the *Great Bear*; also seven stars of the
Little Bear: lucce, the northern re-
 gions, the n. l. (septem, and trionca,
plough-oxen.)
- septim-us**, a, um, ord. num., the seventh.
- septingent-i**, ae, a, card. num., seven
 hundred. (septem, centum.)
- septuāgēsīm-us**, a, um, ord. num., the
 seventieth.
- septuāginta**, card. num., seventy.
- sēpulchr-um**, i, n., (or sepulcrum,) a
 grave, tomb, sepulchre. (sepello.)
- sēpultūr-a**, ae, f., a burying, burial, in-
 terment, sepulture. (sepello.)
- sēpult-us**, a, um, perf. part. of sepello,
 buried.
- Sēquān-ē**, ae, m., the *Seine*, a river of
 France.
- Sēquān-i**, ōrum, m., the *Sequani*, a Gal-
 lic tribe, who lived on the banks of the
 Seine.
- Sēquān-us**, a, um, belonging or relating
 to the *Sequani*.
- sēquor**, sēcūtus, sēquī, 3 v. a. dep., to
 follow, pursue, come after, attend. (Cf.
 Gk. *ἐρωμαι*, and Fr. *suivre*.)
- sērēn-us**, a, um, clear, bright, cloudless,
fair, serene; cheerful; joyous; tranquil.
- sērius**, adv., later; too late. (Comp. of
 sero.)
- sermo**, sermōn-is, m., a speaking with,
 conversation; discourse; discussion;

- common talk, report, rumour; language, style. (From sero, to connect together.)
- sēr-o**, ul, tum, ērr, 3 v. a., to put; to put in a row; connect: interweave, entwine, plait; combine; compose; contrive. (The primary meaning of sero is *to put*,—as, consero, to put together; exsero, to put out: hence, to put in a row, or in order; plant seeds in rows,—which meaning was attached to the following verb, sero, sēvi.)
- sēr-o**, sēvi, sātum, sēr-ēre, 3 v. a., to sow, plant; beget, bring forth, produce; scatter, disseminate; propagate. (Same stem as sero, serui,—which see.)
- sēro**, adv., late; too late (serus.)
- serpens**, serpent-is, f., and sometimes m., a creeping thing, serpent, snake; the SERPENT, a constellation between the GREAT and the LITTLE BEAR. (Properly the partleip. of serpo, to creep, with bestia, beast, understood.)
- sert-um**, i, n., a wreath (of flowers), a garland. (Nunt. of sert-us, a, um, part. of sero, to entwine.)
- sēr-us**, a, um, late; after a long time; too late.
- servil-is**, is, e, belonging or relating to a slave; slavish, servile: Servillus tumultus, the SERVILE WAR. (servus.)
- Servili-us**, i, m., Servilius, a Roman gentile name: Cn. Servilius Geminus (Nep. Hann. iv.)
- serv-io**, ivi, or ii. itum, ēre, 4 v. n., to serve; to serve: with dat., to be devoted to; be subject to; be of service to; comply with, gratify; pay court or attention to. (servus.)
- servit-ūs**, fitis, f., a state of slavery, serfdom, servitude, subjection, bondage. (servus.)
- serv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to save, deliver, preserve, protect; keep, retain; observe, watch, pay attention to; keep close to a place; dwell in, inhabit.
- servūl-us**, i, m., a young slave, servant lad. (Dimin. of servus.)
- serv-us**, i, m., a slave, servant: as adj., serv-us, a, um, slavish, servile.
- seu**, or sive, conj., or if: sen—seu, whether—or. (See sive.)
- Seuth-ēs**, is, m., Seuthes, king of the Thracians. (Nep. Ale.)
- sex**, card. num. adj., six. (Gk. ἕξ; Eng. six.)
- sexāginta**, card. num. adj., sixty. (sex.)
- sexcent**, ae, a, card. num. adj., six hundred. (sex, centum.)
- sexdecim**, (or sēdecim,) card. num. adj., sixteen. (sex, decim.)
- sext-us**, a, um, ord. num. adj., sixth.
- si**, conj., if, since.
- sic**, adv., in this manner, in such a manner; so, thus; so much, to such a degree.
- sicc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., to make dry, dry up, drain: n., to become dry. (siccus.)
- sicc-us**, a, um, dry, parched with heat; husky (in voice); thirsty.
- Sicili-a**, ae, f., Sicily.
- sicūt**, or sicūti, adv., so as, just as, as; just, exactly. (sic, ut.)
- sidus**, sidēr-is, n., a star, constellation: hence, the way, the heavens.
- signific-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to make a sign, show, indicate, make known, intimate, signify; point out; portend, give warning. (signum, facio.)
- sign-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to mark, mark out, designate; mark with a seal or stamp, imprint; engrave. (signum.)
- sign-um**, i, n., a mark, sign, token, signal; a (military) standard: (hence such phrases as Conferre signa, to engage in battle; Convertere signa, to wheel about; Signa ferre, to break up the encampment and advance; Signa inferre, to advance to battle:) a statue, image, figure.
- silenti-um**, i, n., quietness, silence, stillness; repose, tranquillity. (sileo.)
- Silē-us**, i, m., Silenus, a Greek historian. (Nep. Hann., xlii. 12.)
- sil-eo**, ul, ēre, 2 v. n. and a., to be silent, keep silence, be still: a., not to speak of, be silent regarding.
- silv-a**, ae, f., a wood, forest; grove: thicket.
- silvestr-is**, is, e, belonging or relating to a wood; woody, wooded; woodland; wild; rustic. (silva.)
- Silvi-a**, ae, f., (scil. gens.) the Silvian family; especially, Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.
- simil-is**, is, e, one with; like, similar, resembling. (Root sim, or sem. See semel.)
- simul**, adv., at once, together, at the same time: Simul—atque, as soon as: Simul—simul, partly—partly. (For root see semel.)

- simulac**, or **simulac**, or **simulacque**,
adv. as soon as.
- similācer-um**, l. n., a likeness, image,
form; representation, figure; shade,
apparition. (simulo.)
- simulatio**, simulatiō-is, f., a false
show, pretence, feint, deceit. (simulo.)
- simul-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., (or
simillo), to make like, imitate, copy;
feign, pretend, counterfeit. (simillis.)
- sin**, conj., if not, if otherwise, if on the
contrary, but if. (si, ne.)
- sine**, prep. with abl., without,—i.e., not
having. (Old form was sē, or sed; so
that the primary meaning is *apart*
from.)
- singul-us**, a, um, distrib. num., one to
each; single, separate, individual, each:
Singuli, one by one.)
- sinister**, sinistr-a, um, left, on the left
(hand or side): hence, unlucky, un-
favourable, ill-omened.
- sinistr-a**, ac, f., the left hand, the left
side. (sinister.)
- sinistrorsus**, or **sinistrorsum**, adv., to
the left, in a direction to the left.
(Contracted for sinistro-vorsus, or
versus; and that from sinister and
verto.)
- siv-o**, siv-l sit-um, siv-ēre, 3 v. a., liter-
ally, to put down; leave, let (alone):
hence, to let, allow, permit, suffer. (See
situs.)
- siv-us**, ūs, m., a curve, bend; the folds or
bosom of a robe; the bosom; lap (of a
person); a bay, gulf.
- siqui**, siqua, siquod, if any; whoever,
whatever. (si, qui.)
- siquis**, neut. siquid, if any; whoever,
whatever. (si, quis.)
- sist-o**, stitl, stiatum, sist-ēre, 3 v. a. and
n., to cause to stand; set, place; stop,
check, stay, keep back; fix, fasten: n., to
set one's self; stand, halt, stop, remain.
(Sisto is a reduplication of sto.)
- sit-is**, is, f., thirst: hence, drought, dry-
ness; strong desire, greediness. The
acc. is sitim, and the abl. almost al-
ways sitl. No plural.
- sit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of sino, liter-
ally, put down; let alone: hence, as
adj., lying, situated; also, buried
- sit-us**, ūs, m., situation, site, positio.
(See sit-us, a, um.)
- sive**, or **seu**, conj., or if, whether, either:
Sive—sive, whether—or
- smaragd-us**, i, m. or f., emerald, beryl,
jasper, &c.
- sobol-es**, is. See suboles.
- socer**, socer-l, m., a father-in-law.
- sociāl-is**, is, e, belonging to companion-
ship, relating to allies; pertaining to
marriage (e.g., soeialis torus), conjugal.
(soeius.)
- societas**, sociētāt-is, f., fellowship, part-
nership, alliance, association, society.
- soci-us**, l, m., a partner, sharer, com-
panion, associate, ally, confederate.
- Socrāt-es**, is, m., Socrates, an Athenian,
one of the most celebrated of the an-
cient philosophers.
- Sol**, Sol-is, m., the Sun; sunshine, light:
sometimes used for a day.
- sol-eo**, Itus, ēre, 2 v. n., to be accustomed
to, be wont.
- solers** and **solertia**. See soliers and
solertia.
- solid-us**, a, um, firm, dense, solid, (as
Ad solidum, to the solid or level
ground;) whole, complete; sound, genu-
ine; solid.
- solitudo**, solitūdīn-is, f., loneliness, soli-
tarity; a lonely place; desert, waste,
wilderness, solitude. (solus.)
- solit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of soleo, ac-
customed, usual, habitual, ordinary.
- soli-um**, l, n., a seat; throne, chair of
state.
- sollenn-is**, is, e, that which takes place
every year, yearly: hence, stated, estab-
lished, appointed; religious; festive;
common, usual, ordinary: n. subst.,
sollenne, a solemn rite, festival. (sollus,
an Oscan word for totus, and annus.)
- soliers**, gen. soliert-is, adj., skilled; clever,
dexterous; ingenious; sagacious; in-
ventive. (sollus, Oscan for totus, and
ars.)
- sollerti-a**, ac, f., skill; shrewdness, sa-
gacity; expertness; ingenuity. (soliers.)
- sollicit-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to
move with violence; stir, shake, agitate,
excite; arouse; instigate; canvass, soli-
cit. (sollicitus.)
- sollicit-us**, a, um, moved to the very
centre: hence, agitated, tossed, dis-
turbed; uneasy, troubled, anxious, soli-
citous. (sollus, an Oscan word, equal
to totus, and cieo.)
- sol-um**, l, n., the lowest part, bottom,
foundation; floor; ground, earth, land,
soil.

- solum**, adv., *only, alone, merely.* (solus.)
- sol-us**, a, um, *alone, only, single, sole; lonely, solitary, unfrequented.*
- solut-us**, a, um, perf. part. of solvo, *unloosed, unbound, free, unrestrained; independent; loose, wild, extravagant.*
- solv-o**, i, solūt-um, solv-ēre, 3 v. a., *to loosen, untie; unharness; disengage; break up; to discharge an obligation, pay, perform; free, deliver. acquit.*
- somn-us**, i, m., *sleep.* (Root sop, as in sop-lo, ire.)
- sonit-us**, ūs, m., *a sound, noise, din.* (sono.)
- son-o**, ui, Itum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to make a noise, sound; resound, re-echo, ring: a., to sound, utter, call, cry out.*
- son-us**, i, m., *a noise, sound.* (sono.)
- sordid-us**, a, um, *dirty, filthy, unclean, foul, squalid, defiled; stained, besmeared: hence, low, base, mean, despicable, disgraceful.* (sordeo, *to be dirty; and that from sordes, filth.*)
- sōror**, sōror-is, f., *a sister.*
- sors**, sort-is, f., *a lot; decision by lot; response of an oracle; prophecy: hence, fate, destiny, fortune; condition, rank.*
- sortior**, ūtus, ūri, 4 v. n. and a. dep., *to draw or cast lots: a., to cast lots for, fix by lot; assign, apportion, appoint; divide, share; choose, select; obtain, receive.* (sors.)
- sortit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of sortior, *having allotted, having obtained* (by lot).
- Sōsil-us**, i, m., *Sosilus, a Laecdeemonian, friend of Hannibal.* (See Nep. Hann., xlii. 12.)
- sparg-o**, spars-i, spars-um, sparg-ēre, 3 v. a., *to strew, scatter, throw here and there; bestrew, besprinkle, bespatter; separate, divide, disperse, distribute, spread.*
- spars-us**, a, um, perf. part. of spargo, *spread, scattered, &c.*
- Spartān-us**, a, um, *Spartan: as subst., in pl., Spartani, the Spartans.*
- pāti-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. n. dep., *to take a walk, walk about; go on, proceed.* (spati-um.)
- spāti-um**, i, n., *room, space; a race-course; distance, interval; space of time, period; leisure, opportunity.*
- spēci-es**, ei, f., *a seeing, sight, view; but oftener, that which is seen; appearance, shape, figure; show, ornament; beauty; semblance, pretence; vision, apparition; image, likeness; sort, kind, species.* (specio.)
- spēct-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freq., *to look at, gaze at, observe, watch; to be a spectator of; (of places,) to look toward, —i.e., lie toward, face; to regard, consider; try, test.*
- spēculātor**, spēculātor-is, m., *one who keeps a look-out; a scout, spy; searcher, inquirer.* (speculator.)
- spēculātorī-us**, a, um, *pertaining to spies or scouts: Speculatoria navigia, spy-boats.* (speculator.)
- spēcūl-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., *to spy out; keep watch for; examine; explore; observe; reconnoitre.* (specula, *look-out, or watch tower.*)
- Sperchē-is**, ūdis, adj., *belonging to the Spercheus.*
- Sperchē-os**, i, or Sperchī-us, i, m., *the Spercheus, a river of Thessaly, rising in Mount Pindus.*
- spērn-o**, spērv-ī, spērt-um, spērn-ēre, 3 v. a., *literally, to sever, separate: hence, to despise, contemn, reject, scorn.*
- spēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to look for, expect; hope; promise one's self; apprehend.* (spes.)
- sp-ēs**, ēi, f., *a looking for, expecting; hope; expectation.* (Probably spes, spēr-is, anciently, as the nom. pl., speres, is found in very old writers.)
- spīce-us**, a, um, *made of ears of corn.* (spīca, *an ear.*)
- spīrīt-us**, ūs, m., *a breath of air; breeze; a breath, breathing; the breath of life; haughty spirit, pride, arrogance; spirit, soul; mind; courage.* (spīro.)
- spīr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to breathe; blow; draw breath, respire; be alive: a., to breathe out, exhale, emit.*
- splēndīd-us**, a, um, *bright, shining, brilliant: hence, magnificent splendit, sumptuous; illustrious, distinguished; showy.* (splēdeo, *to shine.*)
- splēndor**, splēndōr-is, m., *brightness, brilliance, lustre; magnificence, sumptuousness; honour, dignity.* (splēdeo.)
- spōli-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to strip, rob of one's covering; rob, plunder, spoil, pillage.* (spolium.)
- spōli-um**, i, n., *the skin taken off an animal caught in hunting: hence, the armour taken off a vanquished foe; spoil, booty, prey.*
- spond-co**, sponpondi, sponsum, spond-

- ĕre*, 2 v. a., to promise solemnly, pledge one's self, engage, undertake, take on one; betroth,—i.e., promise in marriage; vow.
- sponte**, abl. and spontis, gen., f., the only two cases of the word which occur. Sponte is most commonly found, and almost always with a possess. pron.,—*mea, tua, sua, &c.*,—of one's own accord, spontaneously, freely, willingly; by one's self, or one's own means; alone; on its own account, for its own sake: *Suae spontis esse, to be one's own master.*
- spūm-a**, ac, f., foam: froth, scum. (*spūo, to spit out.*)
- spūm-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., to foam, froth: n., to cover with foam.
- stābilitas**, stābilitāt-is, f., a standing firm; steadiness, firmness, steadfastness, stability. (*stabilis.*)
- stābūl-um**, i, n., a standing-place; stall; stable; enclosure, pen. (From *sta*, root of *sto*.)
- stagn-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n., to become stagnant, form a pool, stagnate; be overflowed, or inundated. (*stagnum, a pool; from sta, root of sto.*)
- stātīm**, adv., literally, in standing; firmly; forthwith, immediately, instantly, at once. (*sta, root of sto.*)
- stātio**, stātīōn-is, f., a standing still; hence, a fixed abode, residence; post, station, (especially as a military term); guard-house: In *statione, on guard.* (*sta, root of sto.*)
- stātu-a**, ac, f., a statue, image, figure. (*sta, root of sto.*)
- stātu-o**, i, (stātum), ĕre, 3 v. a., to cause to stand; set up, place, post, station; raise, erect, build; to establish in one's mind, believe; assert; decide, determine, resolve. (*status, from sto.*)
- stell-a**, ac, f., a star.
- stern-o**, strāv-i, strāt-um, stern-ĕre, 3 v. a., to spread out; strew; stretch out; lay flat; smooth; level; calm; throw down (flat), lay low, overthrow, prostrate.
- Stesagōr-as**, ac, m., *Stesagoras*, brother of *Miltiades*.
- still-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., to drop, drip, trickle: a., to cause to drop, let fall in drops, distill. (*stilla, a drop.*)
- stimūl-us**, i, m., a goad (for driving cattle, &c.); a sting, torment; incentive, spur; a pointed stake (concealed near the ground to harass an enemy). (The root is *stig, prick*; as in *in-stig-o, extī(n)g-uo, stig-ma*; and Gk. *στυγ*, as in *στυγω*.)
- stīpūl-a**, ac, f., a stalk, stem; blade (of corn); straw, stubble. (*stipes, a trunk or stem.*)
- stīrps**, stīr-is, f., (sometimes m.,) a stock, stem; root; a stock of men, race, lineage; source, origin.
- stīv-a**, ac, f., a plough-handle.
- sto**, stēti, stātum, st-āre, 1 v. n., to stand, stand still or fast, remain; stand to, abide by; to stand one in,—i.e., to cost, (with the abl.)
- strāmen**, strāmīn-is, n., straw; litter (sterno.)
- strāment-um**, i, n., straw, litter; a covering, rug, &c. (*sterno.*)
- strēnu-us**, a, um, prompt; active, pushing, vigorous, strenuous.
- strēpīt-us**, ūs, m., a noise, din; bustle; creaking; clashing; clanking; rumblyng. (*strepo, to make a noise.*)
- strict-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *stringo*, drawn, unsheathed, &c.
- strīd-eo**, i, ĕre, 2 v. n., and *strīd-o, i, ĕre, 3 v. n., to creak; rattle; whiz; whistle; hiss, &c. (Cf. *τρίζω*.)*
- string-o**, strīnxī, strīct-um, string-ĕre, 3 v. n., to tie tight; press together; grasp; touch lightly, graze; pull off, pluck or strip off; prune.
- Strýmon**, Strýmōn-is, m., the river *Strymon*, in Thrace,—now the *Strouma*.
- stūd-eo**, ui, ĕre, 2 v. a. and n., to be eager for; busy one's self with; strive after, pursue eagerly, be anxious for; to favour a person; to apply to learning.
- stūdiōsē**, adv., studiously, carefully; eagerly, zealously. (*studiosus.*)
- stūdiōs-us**, a, um, zealous, eager, anxious for, eager after; fond of; studious of; attached or devoted to (a person, thing, &c.) (*studium.*)
- stūdi-um**, i, n., zeal, assiduity, eagerness; fondness; endeavour; study. (*studeo, to study.*)
- stultō**, adv., foolishly, sillily. (*stultus, foolish.*)
- stūp-eo**, ui, ĕre, 2 v. n. and a., to be struck senseless, be stunned; be astonished; be confounded; be stupified: a., to wonder at, admire.

- stūpesc-o**, ēre, 3 v. n. incept., to become astonished, confounded, &c. (See stupeo.)
- Stygi-us**, a, um, *Stygian*,—i.e., belonging to the Styx, one of the rivers of the lower regions.
- suād-eo**, suās-i, suās-um, suād-ēre, 2 v. n. and a., to advise, recommend, exhort; to impel; dispose toward one.
- sūb**, a prep. with abl. and acc.: 1. With abl., under, below, underneath. 2. With acc., expressing motion, under, below, underneath; near to, close to; (from beneath) up to; (of time,) toward, about; immediately after. In composition sub implies,—1. (a) under, and inferiority; as submergo, subcenturio: (b) slightly; as subdolos; (c) secrecy; as suborno: (d) substitution; as succedo: (e) succession; as subco. 2. (a) from below; as suspicio: (b) near, close; as subsequor.
- subālār-is**, is, e, placed under the arm; carried under the arm: as in Nepos, Subalare telum. (sub, ala, arm-pit.)
- subdīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of subdo, put under or near; substituted, &c.
- subd-o**, idi, itum, ēre, 3 v. a., to put or place under; to put near; apply; furnish; put in place of, substitute; forge, counterfeit. (sub, do.)
- subdūc-o**, subdux-i, subduct-um, subdūc-ēre, 3 v. a., to draw from under; draw up, lift up, raise; draw up (ships); draw off (forces); carry off; with free from; take away steamer. (sub, dūco.)
- sūb-eo**, subii, subitum, sub-īre, 4 v. n. and a., to come or go under; sink; come up; spring up; come after, succeed; advance; steal upon; come up (to the mind), occur: a., to go under; enter; approach; occur to; come under, undergo, submit to, suffer. (sub, eo.)
- sūoig-o**, subēg-i, subact-um, subig-ēre, 3 v. a., to bring under, or up to; put down, subdue; impel, compel, constrain; dig up; till, plough. (sub, ago.)
- sūbitō**, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly. (subitus.)
- sūbit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of subeo: also adj., coming secretly: hence, sudden, unexpected.
- subject-us**, a, um, perf. part. of subjicio, lying under, or close to; bordering on, adjacent; subject to.
- subjic-io**, subjēc-i, subject-um, subjic-ēre, 3 v. a., to throw or bring under, or near; place beneath; throw from under, or up; substitute for; suborn; make subject to, subject; expose; put after; let follow; suggest to. (sub, jacio.)
- sublāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of tollō, taken away, &c.: as adj., uplifted, elated; proud.
- sublāv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to lift up, raise up; support; assist, encourage; mitigate. (sub, levo.)
- sublim-is**, is, e, uplifted, high, lofty, elevated; distinguished, eminent.
- subministr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to aid by giving; give, supply, furnish. (sub, ministro.)
- submiss-us**, a, um, perf. part. of submitto, sent up, &c.: as adj., lowered, low,—as, Submissa voce.
- submitto**, submit-i, submiss-um, submit-ēre, 3 v. a., to put or send under; send up; bring up, rear; send secretly; send up for help to, (i.e., to help.) (sub, mitto.)
- submōt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of submoveo, removed.
- submōv-eo**, (ō), submōtum, submōv-ēre, 2 v. a., to move away; drive off; remove, displace; clear away. (sub, moveo.)
- sūbōl-es**, is, f., (or soboles), literally, a growth from below; a sprout, offshoot, offspring; stock, race. (sub, and ol, to grow, as in ad-ol-esco.)
- subrū-o**, i, tum, ēre, 3 v. a., to tear down at the base; undermine; dig under, or out; overthrow. (sub, ruo.)
- subsequ-or**, subsēcūt-us, subsēqu-i, 3 v. n. and a. dep., to follow up or after, succeed, ensue. (sub, sequor.)
- subsīd-i-um**, i, n., originally, the reserve ranks of an army; a body of reserve: hence, relief, aid, assistance, help, support; protection. (subsido.)
- subsid-o**, subsēd-i, subsess-um, subsīd-ēre, 3 v. n. and a., to crouch down; settle down, subside, fall, abate, decrease, (as floods of water;) lie in ambush; a., to waylay, lie in wait for, lurk for. (sub, sīdo.)
- subsist-o**, substāti, subsist-ēre, 3 v. n., to stand still, remain; halt, stop; keep one's ground, stand firm, hold out, withstand, resist; cease: rarely active, to make a stand against. (sub, sisto.)

subst
und
stat
sub-s
be
rem
the
Alc.
subvē
ēre,
vey u
subvē
up;
(sub,
succēd
cēd-ā
under
proac
succē
(sub,
succen
3 v. a
light.
is fou
canus
succen
cēdo
kindle
succid-
a., to
(sub, c
succis-
cul fro
succum
succum
under;
(sub, c
succurr
run up
come in
succ-us,
(sugo, f
German
Suev-us,
suffect-us
lected in
sufficio, s

- substitu-o**, i, (f)tem, ěrc, 3 v. a., to put under; put in place of, substitute. (sub, statuo.)
- sub-sum**, (no perf.) esse, v. n. Irreg., to be under, close to, among, or behind; remain, be or exist any longer,—as in the phrase, *Nec suberat causa* (Nep. Alc., l. 12). (sub, sum.)
- subvĕh-o**, subvĕxi, subvĕctum, subvĕhĕre, 3 v. a., to carry or bring up, convey up. (sub, veho.)
- subvĕn-io**, (ĕ)l, tum, ĩrc, 4 v. n., to come up; come to one's help; aid, relieve. (sub, venio.)
- succĕd-o**, success-i, success-um, succĕdĕre, 3 v. n., to go under; go from under; go up, ascend; march up, approach; follow after, come in place of, succeed, follow; turn out well, prosper. (sub, cedo.)
- succĕnd-o**, i, succens-um, succĕndĕre, 3 v. a., to kindle from below, set fire to, light. (sub, and ean, the same root as is found in *candeo*, *eandela*, *candidus*, *eanns*, &c.)
- succĕns-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *succĕndo*, and also of *succĕnseo*, set on fire, kindled; inflamed with anger, enraged.
- succid-o**, i, succĕis-um, succidĕre, 3 v. a., to cut from beneath, fell, cut down. (sub, caedo.)
- succĕis-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *succido*, cut from beneath, cut down.
- succumb-o**, succĕubu-i, succĕubĕt-um, succumbĕre, 3 v. n., to lay one's self under; fall down; yield or surrender to. (sub, eumbo.)
- succurr-o**, i, &c., (see *curro*), 3 v. n., to run up to the aid of; help, succour, assist; come into the mind, occur to. (sub, *curro*.)
- succ-us**, i, m., (or *sucus*) juice, sap. (*sugo*, to suck.)
- succĕt-io**, success-i, succĕss-um, succĕtĕre, 3 v. a., to toss or fling up (from beneath); fling or toss aloft. (sub, quatlo.)
- sud-es**, is, or *sud-is*, is, f., a stake, pile, pale.
- sudor**, sudor-is, m., sweat, perspiration; moisture: hence, toil. (*sudo*, to sweat.)
- Suĕv-i**, orum, m., the *Suevi*, a people of Germany.
- Suev-us**, a, um, *Suevan*.
- suffect-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *sufficio*, elected instead of, &c.
- sufficio**, suffĕci, suffect-um, sufficĕre, 3 v. a. and n., to put under or among; imbue, suffuse; furnish, supply, afford; put in place of, choose or elect instead of, substitute: a., to be sufficient, suffice. (sub, facio.)
- suffod-io**, (f)l, suffoss-um, suffodĕre, 3 v. a., to dig or pierce underneath; stab in the belly. (sub, fodio.)
- suffragi-um**, i, n., a voting tablet; vote, suffrage; right of voting; a decision, judgment; opinion. (*suffrago*, a knuckle or ankle bone.)
- suffrag-ir**, atus, ĩri, 1 v. n. dep., to vote for, support with one's influence, favour, recommend. (*suffragium*.)
- sui**, sibi, se, reflect. pron. of third pers. of himself, herself, or itself.
- sule-us**, i, m., a furrow: hence, a ditch; track of a vessel (in the water); ploughing; wrinkle, &c.
- Sull-a**, ae, m., *Sulla*, a surname in the gens *Cornelia*.
- Sulpici-us**, i, m., *Sulpicius*, a Roman gentile name. (See *Nep. Hann.*, vii. 4, and xiii. 5.)
- sum**, fui, esse, v. n. irreg. (imper. *sibi*), forem, as well as *essem*; and *infin. fore*, as well as *futurum esse*, to be, exist, live; be present; happen; stay, remain.
- summ-a**, ae, f., the main thing, chief point; chief power, whole direction; final decision (*Caes. B. G.*, vi. 11, 8); the sum total, amount, whole amount. (*summus*.)
- summĕistro**. See *subministro*.
- summiss-us**, a, um. See *submissus*.
- summitto**. See *submitto*.
- summotus**. See *submotus*.
- summoveo**. See *submoveo*.
- summ-us**, a, um, superl. of *superus*, uppermost, highest, topmost; most exalted; consummate; most excellent. (See *superus*.)
- sũm-o**, sumps-i, sumpt-um, sũmĕre, 3 v. a., to take up, assume, take; choose, select; assume; maintain; suppose; apply; employ; spend: *Sumer poenas*, to inflict punishment. (Said to be contracted for *subimo*, from *sub emo*.)
- sumptuos-us**, a, um, expensive, costly, sumptuous; extravagant. (*sumptus*.)
- sumpt-us**, ũs, m., expense, cost, charge. (*sumo*.)
- sũper**, adv.; also prep. with *acc.*, and sometimes with *abl.*: 1. Adv., above, over, on the top of; (of numbers,) over, besides, left, remaining, (*Nep. Alc.*, viii.

- 7.) 2. Prep. with acc., *over, above, upon*; (of numbers,) *over, above, beyond*. 3. With abl. (rare), *over, above, upon; concerning, in regard to*; (of time,) *about, near*.
- sūperbē**, adv., *proudly, haughtily*. (superbas.)
- sūperb-us**, a, um, literally, *uplifted; uppish* (in mind), *proud, arrogant, insolent; tyrannical*; also, in good sense, *exalted; superior; splendid, magnificent*. (super.)
- sūpēri-or**, or, us, gen. sūpēriōr-is, *higher, superior to; former*. (Comp. of superus, — which see.)
- sūpēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to go over, overtop, surpass; overcome; exceed; be abundant; to be left over, remain over and above; survive: a., to pass over, surmount, overtop; go beyond; sail past, or "double" (a cape); surpass, excel; subdue, vanquish*. (super.)
- sūperstēs**, gen. sūperstīt-is, adj., literally, *standing over, beyond, or longer*; hence, *surviving, outliving*: as subst., *a survivor*. (supersto.)
- super-sum**, fui, esse, v. n. irreg., (sometimes written separately, as in Nep. Ale. viii. 7.—Erat super.) *to be over and above, be left, remain; survive, outlive; be in abundance, abound; excel*. (super, sum.)
- sūpēr-i**, ōram, m., *the gods above*; as opposed to inferi, *the gods of the lower world*.
- sūpēr-us**, a, um, comp. superior. superl. supremas or summus, *that which is above, upper, higher*: De supero, *from above*. (super.)
- suppēdit-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a. freq., *to be supplied in abundance; abound; be enough, suffice: a., to supply abundantly; give, afford*. (Probably for suppetito, from suppeto.)
- suppēt-o**, ivi, or ii, itum, ēre, 3 v. n., *to be at hand; be in store; be present; suffice*. (sub, peto.)
- suppl-eo**, ēvi, ētum, ēre, 2 v. a., *to fill up, complete, supply; restore, repair*. (sub, pleo.)
- supplex**, gen. supplē-is, adj., *begging humbly; submissive, humble; suppliant*: as subst., *a suppliant*. (sub, plico, to fold.)
- suppliciter**, adv., *in a suppliant manner; humbly, submissively*. (supplex.)
- supplici-um**, i, n., *an act of supplication; worship; public prayer*: hence, *a sacrifice, offering; punishment; torture, suffering*. (sapplico.)
- support-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to bring or carry up*. (sub, porto.)
- suprā**, adv. and prep., *on the upper side, above*; (of time,) *before, previously*; (of amount,) *more than, beyond, over*: prep. with acc., *above, over, beyond*; (of time,) *before*; (of amount,) *over, more than, above*. (Old form was sūpērā, abl. of superus.)
- suprēm-us**, a, um, superl. of superus, *highest, loftiest, topmost; most exalted, greatest*: (of time,) *latest, last, final*.
- surg-o**, surrexi, surrectum, surg-ere, 3 v. a. and n., *to lift up, raise, elevate: n., to rise, get up; grow up*, (as plants, &c.) (Contracted for surrigo, from sub and rego.)
- surr-uo**. See snruo.
- Susametr-es**, is, m., *Susametes*, uncle of Pharnabazus.
- suscip-io**, suscep-i, suscep-um, suscip-ere, 3 v. a., *to take up; raise up; prop, support; to bring up (a child) as one's own, rear; beget, bear; to undertake, assume; submit to, undergo, suffer*. (sub, capio.)
- suspend-o**, i, suspens-um, suspēnd-ere, 3 v. a., *to hang up, suspend; to make uncertain, keep in suspense; put an end to, stop; check, suspend*. (sub, pendo.)
- suspens-us**, a, um, perf. part. of suspendo, *raised, suspended; in doubt, in suspense*.
- suspicio**, suspexi, suspectum, suspic-eri, 3 v. a. and n., *to look up, or up to; admire; respect, esteem; to look from under; suspect, mistrust*. (sub, specio.)
- suspicio**, suspiciōn-is, f., *distrust, suspicion; jealousy*. (suspicio.)
- suspici-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., *to mistrust, suspect; surmise, suppose, imagine; believe*. (suspicio.)
- suspīri-um**, i, n., *an underbreath, deep breath, sigh*. (suspiro, to sigh.)
- sustīn-eo**, ui, sustentum, sustin-ere, 2 v. a., *to hold up, support, sustain, uphold; persevere, hold out against; endure, bear; have the hardihood to (do so and so); hold in, check, restrain; withstand*. (sub, teneo.)
- sus*ūli**, perf. of tollo, — which see.
- su-us**, a, um, *her own, his own, its own*

their
subst.,
party,

T., an a
præno
tābell-a
a little
ment.
tābellā
as subs
(tābell
tābernā
(tabern
tābūl-a,
tablet;
state po
tāc-ēo, u
silent, h
less: a.
tācīt-us
which h
that reb
hidden,
taed-a,
torch;
taed-et,
loathing
Taenāri
us, a ca
caeni-a,
Tāg-us,
Spain.
tāle-a, ad
planting
by the B
tālent-ur
(tālar
tāl-is, is,
kind; so
tam, adv.
tāmen, a
less, yet
Tāmēs-is
Britain.
tāmetsi,
Tāmphil
family n
tamquam
Tāna-is,
river of
tandem,
(tam, an

their own; one's own peculiar: as a subst. m. pl., suos, his own men, troops, party, people, &c.

Syracusān-us, a, um, *Syracusan; of Syracuse, in Sicily.*
Sýri-a, ae, f., *Syria, a district of Asia.*

T.

T., an abbreviation for *Titus*, a Roman praenomen.

tābell-a, ae, f., *a small board or tablet; a little bark or boat; a writing, document.* (tabula.)

tābellāri-us, a, um, *belonging to tablets: as subst., a courier, carrier of despatches.* (tabella.)

tābernācūl-um, i, n., *a tent; shed.* (taberna, a shed.)

tābūl-a, ac, f., *a board, plank; writing tablet; letter; contract; public record, state paper; register, list.*

tāc-eo, ui, itum, ēre, 2 v. n. and a., *to be silent, hold one's peace; be still, noiseless: a., to pass over in silence; conceal.*

tācīt-us, a, um, perf. part. of *tacco*, *that which holds its peace; silent, noiseless; that which is not mentioned, kept secret, hidden, concealed.*

taed-a, ae, f., *a pine tree: hence, a torch; a wedding, marriage.*

taed-et, uit, impers., *it grieves; causes loathing.*

Taenāri-us, a, um, *belonging to Taenarus, a cape on the south coast of Greece.*

taeni-a, ae, f., *a ribbon, fillet.*

Tāg-us, i, m., *the Tagus, a river of Spain.*

tāle-a, ae, f., *a setting, layer, or stake (for planting); an oblong piece of iron used by the Britons as money.*

tālent-um, i, n., *a talent, sum of money.* (τάλαντον.)

tāl-is, is, e, of *this kind; such, of such a kind; so great, so excellent.*

tam, adv., *so far, so much; equally, as.*

tāmēn, adv., *notwithstanding, nevertheless, yet still, however.* (tam.)

Tāmēs-is, is, m., *the Thames, a river in Britain.*

tāmetsi, conj., *although.*

Tamphīl-us, i, m., *Tamphilus, a Roman family name.* (See *Nep. Hann.*, xiii. 5.)

tanquam. See *tanquam*.

Tāna-is, is, m., *the Tanais, or Don, a river of Russia.*

tandem, adv., *at length, at last, finally.* (tam, and suffix dem.)

tang-o, tētig-i, tact-um, tang-ēre, 3 v. a., *to touch; reach, arrive at; beat, strike; move, affect (the mind).* (The root is tag, or tac, as in *Gk. ἔ-θι-γ-ο-*.)

tanquam, (or *tanquam*), adv., *as much as, just as, like as, as if, as it were.*

tantūl-us, a, um, *dimin. of tantus, so very little, so small, so insignificant.*

tantum, adv., *so much, so greatly; so; only, merely, but, alone.* (tantus.)

tant-us, a, um, *so large, so great, so much: pl., so many.* (tam.)

tardē, adv., *slowly; remissly.* (tardus.)

tard-us, a, um, *slow, sluggish, tardy; remiss; dull, heavy, stupid.*

Tarquīni-us, i, m., *Tarquinius.*

Tartār-us, i, or os, i, m.: pl. ā, ōrum, n., *the infernal regions, Tartarus.*

Taur-us, i, m., *Mt. Taurus, in Cilicia.*

taur-us, i, m., *a bull, bullock, ox.*

Taximagūl-us, i, m., *Taximagulus, a king of Kent.*

Tectōsāg-es, um, (or i, orum), m., *the Tectosages, a Gallic tribe.*

teet-um, i, n., *a roof; house; shelter; abode.* (tego.)

teet-us, a, um, perf. part. of *tego*, *covered, hidden, concealed.*

tēcum, for *enm te*, *with thee.* (See *tu*.)

tēg-o, tex-i, teet-um, tēg-ēre, 3 v. a., *to cover, hide, conceal; shelter, protect.*

tellūs, tellūr-is, f., *the earth, globe; land, ground; a district, country.*

tēl-um, i, n., *a weapon for fighting at a distance; a missile; dart, javelin; sword, dagger, &c.* (Cf. τῆλε.)

tēmērāri-us, a, um, *rash; thoughtless, imprudent, inconsiderate; audacious (temere.)*

tēmēre, adv., *by chance, at random; rashly; heedlessly; readily.*

tēmo, tēmōn-is, m., *a pole (of a carriage), beam.*

temperanti-a, ae, f., *moderation, sobriety, temperance, self-control.* (temperans.)

temperāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of *tempero*; also *adj., moderated, limited; mitigated; temperate.*

tempĕri, or **tempĕri**, or **tempĕre**, at the right time, the "nick" of time. (tempus.)

tempĕr-o, **āvi**, **ātum**, **āre**, 1 v. a. and n., to divide in due proportion; qualify, temper, moderate; check, restrain: n., to forbear, refrain, abstain. (tempus.)

tempeſtas, **tempeſtāt-is**, f., a portion of time; space, season, period; weather; a storm, tempest; danger. (tempus.)

templ-um, i, u., a space set apart for a sacred purpose; a place for observation in augury; sanctuary, temple, shrine. (temno, which primarily means to cut off. Cf. τέμενος.)

tempus, **tempĕr-is**, n., a period of time; time; the proper time; opportunity, occasion; state, condition: Tempore, or ad tempus, at the right time (see tempĕri): Pro tempore, as the time demands, according to circumstances: Ex tempore, on the spur of the moment. (teni, root of tem-no. See templum.)

tend-o, **tĕndĕ-i**, **tent-um** and **tens-um**, **tend-ĕre**, 3 v. a. and n., to stretch, stretch out, extend; direct (e.g., one's course:); n., to strive, exert one's self; aim at; tend to; strive, contend. (The root is ten, as found in τένω, teneo, tenuis, tenuis, &c.)

tĕnĕbr-ae, **ārum**, f. pl., darkness; night; figuratively for death; the darkness of a swoon or fainting fit; gloom, obscurity; a dark place.

tĕnĕbrōs-us, a, um, dark, gloomy. (tenebrae.)

tĕn-eo, ni, tum, ĕre, 2 v. a. and n., to hold fast or tightly; occupy; maintain; have, hold, keep, retain, possess; contain; reach, attain to; hold back, detain, check, restrain: n., to maintain one's position; hold on (e.g., one's course;) continue; prevail. (Root ten. See tendo.)

tĕner, **tĕnĕr-a**, um, tender, delicate; soft: hence, young, weak.

tent-o, **āvi**, **ātum**, **āre**, 1 v. a. freq., (also tempto), to stretch out to; feel, touch; try, prove the strength of, test; attack; attempt; tempt; sound, explore. (tendo.)

tĕnū-is, is, e, literally, stretched out: hence, thin, fine, slender; narrow; slight; small, little; weak; poor, low, mean, insignificant; gentle. (Root ten. See tendo.)

tĕnus, prep. with abl., reaching to, up to, as far as. It is an old accus., and therefore is sometimes followed by a genitive. (Root ten. See tendo.)

tĕp-eo, ĕre, 2 v. u., to be somewhat warm, to be tepid; to be inflamed with love.

tĕpese-o, **tĕp-ni**, **tĕpese-ĕre**, 3 v. u. incept., to become somewhat warm, tepid, lukewarm. (tepeo.)

tĕpid-us, a, um, somewhat warm, lukewarm, tepid. (tepeo.)

tĕr, num. adv., three times, thrice. (tres.)

Tĕrenti-us, i, m., Terentius, a Roman gentile name: especially, C. Terentius Varro. (Nep. Hann., iv. 13.)

terg-um, i, n., the back: Vertere terga, to turn the back, —i.e., take to flight: A tergo, on the rear, behind: Post terga, behind. Another form is tergus, tergor-is, n.

tern-i, ae, a, (or trin-i, ae, a,) distrib. num., three each, three. (tres.)

tĕr-o, **triv-i**, **trit-um**, **tĕr-ĕre**, 3 v. a., to rub; bruise; grind; smooth, polish; wear away, pass (time), spend.

terr-a, ae, f., the earth; land, soil.

terrĕn-us, a, um, pertaining to the earth, earthy; earthen, made of earth.

terr-eo, ui, itum, ĕre, 2 v. a., to frighten, terrify, alarm. (Cf. τρέω, tremo, trepidus, &c.)

terrestr-is, (or terrester,) is, e, relating or belonging to the earth, or to land: Terrestres excreitus, land forces.

terrĭbĭl-is, is, e, dread-causing, frightful, terrible, dreadful. (terreo.)

terror, **terrĕr-is**, m., terror, alarm, dread. (terreo.)

terti-us, a, um, uum, adj., the third. (tres.)

testāment-um, i, n., a deed solemnly attested: hence, a will, testament. (testor.)

testāt-us, a, um, perf. part. of testor, having called to witness.

testimōni-um, i, n., evidence, witness, testimony, proof; token. (testis.)

test-is, is, m. or f., a witness, evidence; spectator.

test-or, **ātus**, **āri**, 1 v. a. dep., to be a witness; testify, prove, show; declare, allege; to make a will, call on as a witness, invoke. (testis.)

testūdo, **testūdĭn-is**, f., a tortoise; tortoise-shell: hence, of anything in the same shape, as a tyre; a shed (for pro-

tecting
a testu
made I
shields
testūl-a
a votiv
Tĕthys,
Oceanu
nymphi
tĕtĭgi, p
Teuthra
i.e., My
Teuthr
Teutōn-
toni, or
Theb-ae
Thĕmis,
Themis,
prophec
Thĕmist
famous
Theopom
native c
continu
Born ab
Thĕrāmĕ
Athenla
Tyrants
Thermōd
Thermōd
Thermoa
Thermōp
lae, a w
Mount O
Thisb-ĕ,
by Pyrr
Thrac-es,
people of
Thraci-a,
Turkey.
Thrasŷbŷ
Athenian
mental in
Thrax, Th
Thraeces.
Thŷcŷdĭd-
brated G
history c
(Born B.C.
Thŷri-i, o
Thŷrii, a
south of I
thŷs, thŷ
Thŷbr-is, i
Thĕrin-us
king of A
river Albu

teeting soldiers when besieging a town);
a testudo,—i.e., a temporary covering
 made by the soldiers overlapping their
 shields.
testül-a, ac, f. dimln., *a small potsherd*;
a voting table. (testa, a tile.)
Tēthys, Tēthý-os, f., *Tethys*, wife of
 Oceanus, and mother of many sea
 nymphs.
tētīgi, perf. of tango,—which see.
Teuthrante-us, a, um, *Teuthrastian*,—
 i.e., Mysian, (c.g., the river Calcus;) for
 Teuthras was a king of Mysia.
Teutōn-i, orum, (or es, um,) m., the *Teu-*
toni, or *Teutones*, a people of Germany.
Theb-ae, arum, f., *Thebes*.
Thēmīs, Thēmīd-is, f., acc. Themis.
Themis, the goddess of justice and of
 prophecy.
Thēmistōcl-es, is, m., *Themistocles*, a
 famous Athenian.
Theopomp-us, i, m., *Theopompus*, a
 native of Chios, who endeavoured to
 continue the history of Thucydides.
 Born about B.C. 378; died about 300.
Thērāmēn-ēs, is, m., *Theramenes*, an
 Athenian general, one of the Thirty
 Tyrants.
Thermōdon, Thermōdont-is, m., the
Thermodon, a river of Pontus.
Thermōpyl-ae, arum, f. pl., *Thermopy-*
lae, a well known pass at the end of
 Mount Oeta.
Thisb-ē, ēs, f., *Thisbe*, a maiden beloved
 by Pyramus.
Thrac-es, um, m., *the Thracians*, or
 people of Thrace: pl. of Thrax.
Thraci-a, ae, f., *Thrace*, part of modern
 Turkey.
Thrásýbül-us, i, m., *Thrasylbulus*, an
 Athenian, who was specially instru-
 mental in expelling the Thirty Tyrants.
Thrax, Thrac-is, n., *a Thracian*: pl.
 Thraeces.
Thucýdid-es, is, m., *Thucydides*, a cele-
 brated Greek historian, who wrote the
 history of the Peloponnesian War.
 (Born B.C. 471; died about 401.)
Thūri-i, orum, n., or Thuri-um, i, n.,
Thuri, a city of Magna Graecia, in the
 south of Italy, on the Tarentine Gulf.
thūs, thūr-is, n., *frankincense*. (See tus.)
Thýbr-is, is, m., *the Tiber*. (See Tiberis.)
Tiberin-us, i, m., *Tiberius*, an ancient
 king of Alba. He was drowned in the
 river Albula, and hence the name was

changed to Tiber. Also, as an adj.,
Tiberin-us, a, um, *belonging or relating*
to the Tiber.
Tibér-is, is, or Tibr-is, or Thybr-is, idis,
 m., acc. Thybrin, *the river Tiber*.
Tibéri-us, i, m., *Tiberius*, a Roman
 praenomen. (Nep. Hann., lv., 4.)
Tigr-is, is, or Idis, m., *the river Tigris*,
 in Mesopotamia.
tigr-is, is, or Idis, m. (or f.), *a tiger*.
Figurin-i, orum, m., *the Figurini*, a
 tribe of Helvetia, Switzerland.
Figurin-us, a, um, *belonging to the*
Figurini,—e.g., pagus, district, canton.
Timae-us, i, m., *Timaeus*, a historian of
 Sicily. Born about B.C. 350; died
 about 254.
tim-eo, ul, ēre, 2 v. a. and n., *to fear*, *be*
afraid of, *dread*; *be apprehensive of*.
timíd-us, a, um, *faint-hearted*, *timid*,
fearful, *afraid*; *cowardly*. (timco.)
timor, timōr-is, m., *fear*, *dread*; *alarm*.
 (timco.)
ting-o, tinx-i, tinct-um, ting-ēre, 3 v. a.,
 (also spelled tinguo), *to wet*, *moisten*;
soak; *dip* (as in colouring matter, &c.),
dye, *stain*. (Cf. Gk. τέγγω, and Eng.
 tinge.)
Tissaphern-es, is, m., *Tissaphernes*, a
 Persian satrap.
Titan, Titān-is, m., (acc. Titāna,) *Titan*,
 son of Coelus and Terra, and brother of
 Saturn. He was the ancestor of the
 Titans, who strove to gain supremacy in
 heaven. Hence the name is applied to
 several of his descendants,—as, e.g., to
 Prometheus, the Sun-god (Helios), &c.
Titāni-a, ae, f., *a daughter or descend-*
ant of Titan,—viz., Pyrrha, who was
 sprung from Epimetheus.
Titūri-us, i, m., *Titurius*,—e.g., Q. Titur-
 ius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
Tit-us, i, m., *Titus*, a Roman praenomen.
Tmol-us, i, m., *Mount Tmolus*, in Lydia.
tōlēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to*
bear, *support*, *endure*, *sustain*; *nourish*,
maintain. (Root tol, as in tollō.)
toll-o, sustūl-i, sublāt-um, toll-ēre, 3 v.
 a., *to lift up*, *raise*, *exalt*; *extol*; *take up*;
acknowledge; *bring up*, *educate*; *take*
away, *remove*, *carry off*; *destroy*, *kill*;
take on board (ship): *Tollere ancoras*, *to*
weigh anchor: *Tollere signa*, *to break*
up the camp and march onward. (The
 root is tol, whence tul-l, (t)latum. Cf.
 tolero, and Gk. τλάω, τολμάω, &c.)

U
 V
 X 4 Y

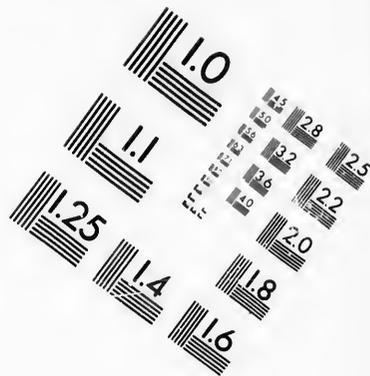
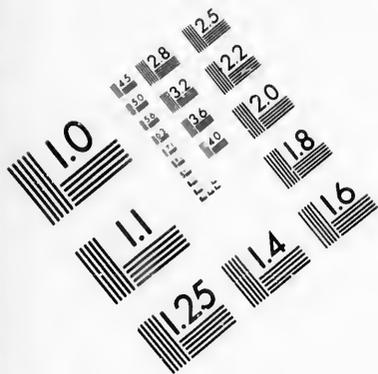
- Tolôsät-es**, ium, m., *the Tolosates*, or people of Tolosa,—now Toulouse.
- tônitr-u**, ūs, n. Soc tonitru
- tônitr-us**, ūs, m., or **tônitr-um**, l, n., *thunder*. The neut. form, **tônitrū**, seems to rest on no proper authority. (tono, to thunder.)
- torment-um**, l, n., literally, *an instrument with which to turn*, or *twist*, or *hurl*: hence, *an engine for hurling* (javelins, stones, &c.); *an instrument of torture, rack; torture, anguish, agony*. (torqueo.)
- torqu-eo**, tors-i, tort-um, torqu-ère, 2 v. a., *to turn, twist; bend; wrench* (as on the rack), *torture, rack; whirl round; hurl*. (The stem is ter, as in tero, to bore,—i.e., to pierce by turning round. Cf. Gk. τείρω and τ-ρῶσ-σκω.)
- torr-eo**, ui, tostum, torr-ère, 2 v. a., *to roast; parch, scorch; burn; dry up; (of cold,) to nip*.
- tortil-is**, is, e, *twisted, twined, wreathed; spiral, winding*. (torqueo.)
- tort-us**, a, um, perf. part. of torqueo, *twisted; crooked; wreathed, &c.*
- tōr-us**, l, m., *a protuberance, knot, bulge*: hence, *a mattress, couch, bed*,—from the inequalities caused by the through-stitching.
- torv-us**, a, um, *rolling, piercing*, (used especially of the eyes;) *wild, fierce, stern, grim, savage*. (Thought to be connected with torqueo.)
- tost-us**, a, um, perf. part. of torreo, *roasted; scorched, &c.*
- tōt**, num. indecl., *so many*. Its correlative is *quot*.
- tōtīdem**, num. indecl., *just as many; an equal number, as many*. (tot, and suffix dem.)
- tōt-us**, a, um, gen. totius, dat. toti, (also, gen. toti, &c., and dat. toto, &c., regular,) *all, the whole, the entire, total*.
- tract-us**, ūs, m., *a drawing, dragging; draught; extent; track, direction, course, trail, train, line; distance; region, tract of land, territory; (of time,) space, period*. (traho.)
- trādīt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of trado, *handed down, delivered up, &c.*
- trād-o**, ūdi, itum, ère, 3 v. a., *to hand over, give up, deliver, surrender; betray; consign; give in charge to, entrust; hand down (to memory), record; transmit*. (trans, do.)
- trādūc-o**, trādūx-i, trādūct-um, trādūc-ère, 3 v. a., *to lead or bring over, transport, transfer; to display in public; expose to ridicule; disgrace; malign; (of time,) to pass, spend*. (trans, dūco.)
- trāgūl-a**, ae, f., *a kind of dart or javelin; also, a drag-net*. (traho.)
- trāh-o**, trax-i, tract-um, trāh-ère, 3 v. a., *to draw, drag, haul; carry off; draw to, attract; protract, put off, delay*.
- trāject-us**, ūs, m., *a passing or crossing over; a place for crossing*. (trajicio.)
- trājicio**, trajēci, traject-um, trajic-ère, 3 v. a. and n., *to throw over; convey over, transport; cross, pass over; pierce, pass through*. (trans, jacio.)
- trān-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., *to swim over, or across, or through; to sail, float; fly*. (trans, no.)
- tranquillitas**, tranquillitāt-is, f., *quietness, stillness; a calm; tranquillity, serenity*. (tranquillus.)
- tranquill-us**, a, um, *quiet, calm, still, peaceful, serene*.
- trans**, prep. with acc., *across, beyond, on the other* (i.e., farther) *side, over*.
- trans-eo**, ūvi, or ūi, itum, ĩre, 4 v. u. irreg., *to go or cross over, pass by*. (trans, eo.)
- transfēr-o**, transtul-i, translāt-um, transfer-re, 3 v. a. irreg., *to carry over, bring across, transport, transfer; transcribe; translate*. (trans, fero.)
- transfig-o**, transfix-i, transfix-um, transig-ère, 3 v. a., *to pierce through, transfix, thrust through*. (trans, figo.)
- transfix-us**, a, um, perf. part. of transfigo, *pierced through, transfixed*.
- transig-o**, transēg-i, transact-um, transig-ère, 3 v. a., *to drive or thrust through, pierce, stab, transfix; to bring to an end; spend, pass*. (trans, ago.)
- transil-io**, ūi, or ūvi, ĩre, 4 v. n. and a., *to leap over, jump over or across*. (trans, salio.)
- transit-us**, ūs, m., *a crossing over, passage; transition*. (transeo.)
- transject-us**, ūs, m., same as *trajectus*.
- translāt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of transfero, *brought over, transported, transferred, &c.*
- transmārīn-us**, a, um, *belonging to places beyond the sea, transmarine; foreign*. (trans, marc.)
- transmiss-us**, ūs, m., *a sending or crossing over; passage*. (transmitto.)

transm
transi
carry
over;
transp
carry
transf
Trāsim
Etrur
for a
the R
Trēbi-a
tribut
gained
(nov
Trēbōn
Cuesn
wards
tribun
emme
five ye
trēcent
dred.
trēmēb
bling,
trēmēn
ful, dr
trēm-o,
quiver,
trēmor,
ing, tr
fear, d
trēpid-c
to hur
anxiou
confusi
afraid
trēpid-t
agitate
bling,
cording
to fligh
trēs, trē
Gk. τρε
Trēver-
Trevir
the val
tal wa
modern
Tribōc-e
the Tr
banks
district
tribūn-t
officer
kinds o

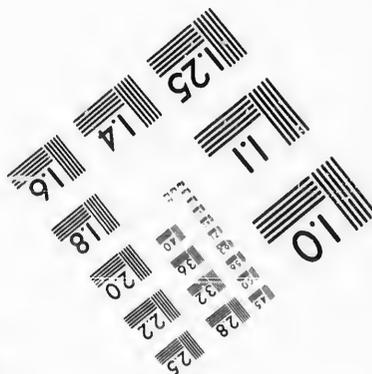
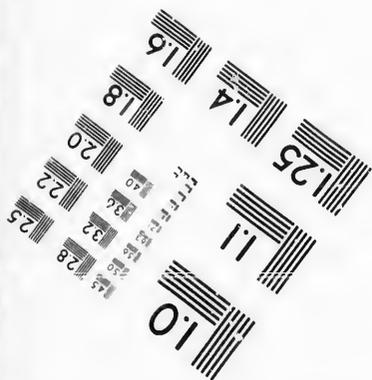
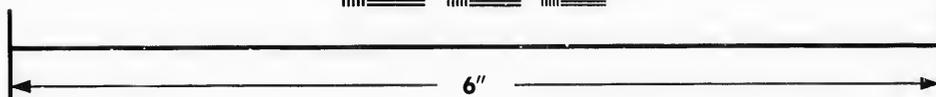
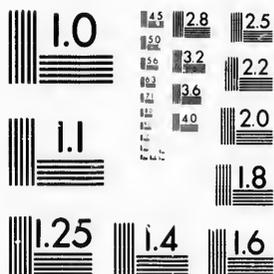
- transmitt-o**, **transmis-i**, **transmiss-um**, **transmitt-ere**, 3 v. a. and n., *to send or carry over, transmit; despatch*: n., *cross over; pass; traverse*. (trans, mitto.)
- transport-o**, **āvī**, **ātum**, **āre**, 1 v. a., *to carry over or across, transport; remove; transfer*. (trans, porto.)
- Trāsimēn-us**, 1, m., *Lake Trasimene*, in Etruria, (now Lago di Perugia,) famed for a victory gained by Hannibal over the Romans.
- Trēbi-a**, ac, m., *the river Trebia*, a tributary of the Po, famed for a victory gained by Hannibal over the Romans; (now Trebbia.)
- Trēbōni-us**, 1, m., *Trebonius (C.)* one of Caesar's lieutenants. He was afterwards one of his assassins. When tribune, he gained for Caesar the government of Gaul for a second term of five years from B.C. 53 to the end of 49.
- trēcent-i**, ac, a, card. num., *three hundred*. (tres, centum.)
- trēmēbund-us**, a, um, *in dread; trembling, quivering, shaking*. (tremo.)
- trēmend-us**, a, um, *to be dreaded; fearful, dreadful, terrible*. (tremo.)
- trēm-o**, ui, ēre, 3 v. n. and a., *to tremble, quiver, shake*: a., *tremble at, dread*.
- trēmōr**, trēmōr-is, m., *a shaking, quaking, trembling, tremor; an earthquake; fear, dread*. (tremo.)
- trēpid-o**, āvī, ātum, āre, 1 v. n. and a., *to hurry or bustle about* (in a state of anxious alarm); *to be in alarm, or in confusion; tremble*: a., *to tremble at, be afraid of*. (trepidus.)
- trēpid-us**, a, um, *in trepidation, alarmed; agitated; anxious; timid, fearful; trembling*. (Connected with tremo; or, according to Festus, with τρέπω, *to turn to flight*.)
- trēs**, trēs, tria, card. num., *three*. (Cf. Gk. τρεῖς, Germ. drei, Eng. three.)
- Trēvēr-i**, ōrum, (or Treviri,) m., *the Treviri*, a Gallic people, who occupied the valley of the Moselle. Their capital was Augusta Treverorum, the modern Trèves.
- Tribōc-es**, um, m., (or Tribocē-l, orum,) *the Triboces*, a German tribe on the banks of the Rhine, in or near the district now called Alsace.
- tribūn-us**, 1, m., *a tribune, or chief officer of a tribe*. There were several kinds of tribunes, the most important
- of which were the "Tribunes of the People," and the "Military Tribunes" (of whom there were six for each legion). See Smith's or Ramsay's 'quittes.' (tribus, a tribe.)
- trib-**, 1, (f) tum, ēre, 3 v. a., *to give; assign; distribute; allot; bestow; grant; yield, give up; allow, concede*. (tribus.)
- trib-us**, ūs, f., *a tribe*. Originally and properly, *a third part of the Roman people, who were divided into three tribes*. (Said to be from tres, and bu, same root as fu-l.)
- tribūt-um**, 1, n., *a stated payment; tribute*. (tribuo.)
- tricuspis**, gen. tricuspīd-is, adj., *having three points; three-pointed, or three-pronged*. (tres, enspis.)
- tridens**, gen. trident-is, adj., *having three teeth or prongs*: as subst., *a three-pronged spear, trident*, attributed to Neptune. (tres, dens.)
- tridu-um**, 1, n., *the space of three days; three days*. (tres, dies.)
- trienni-um**, 1, n., *the space of three years; three years*. (tres, annus.)
- trifid-us**, a, um, *three-cleft, cloven into three parts, three forked, or pronged, or tongued*. (tres, findo.)
- trigint-a**, card. num., *thirty*.
- trin-i**, ac, a, (or terni,) distrib. num., *three each; a set of three; threefold, triple*. (tres.)
- Trinobant-es**, um, m., *the Trinobantes*, a tribe in the east of Britain.
- trio**. See triones.
- trion-es**, um, m. pl., *the ploughing oxen*: hence, the constellation of the *Wain*, or the *Two Bears*; *the north*. (See septentriones.)
- tripartito**, (or tripartito,) adv., *in or into three parts, in three divisions*. (From tripartitus; and that from tres, and partior, *to share*,—from pars.)
- triplex**, gen. triplē-is, adj., *threefold, triple*: sometimes used by the poets for *three*: *very great*.
- triquetr-us**, a, um, *having three corners; three-cornered, triangular*. Also written triquatus. (tres, quatuor.)
- trirēm-is**, is, e, *having three banks of oars*: as subst., *a trirème*, or vessel with three tiers of oars. (tres, remus.)
- trist-is**, is, e, *sad, sorrowful, mournful, melancholy; miserable; gloomy; harsh, severe; ill-boding*.

U
V
X
Y





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

15 28
32 25
22
20

10

tristiti-a, ae, f., *sadness, sorrow, melancholy, grief, dejection; sternness, severity, harshness.* (tristis.)

Triton, Tritōn-is, m., (Gk. aec. Tritona.) *Triton, a sea god, son of Neptune.*

trit-us, a, um, perf. part. of *tero*, *rubbed off or away; hence, beaten, frequented, common; commonplace, trite, thread-bare.*

Troezen, Troezēn-is, f., (Gk. aec. Troezena.) *Troezen, a city of Argolis, in Greece.*

trōpae-um, i, n., *a memorial of victory, a trophy; hence, a victory; token; monument.* (τρόπαιον.)

tū, tūi, second pers. pron., *thou*: pl. vos. Often strengthened (in the nom., voc., aec., and abl. sing.) by the addition of *te*,—as *tute, tete*; or *met*,—as *vosmet, vobismet, tūbinst*: sometimes by both, as *intemet*.

tūb-a, ae, f., *a trumpet, war trumpet.* (Same stem as *tubus*, *a pipe or tube.*)

tu-eor, itus, (or *tūtus*), ēri, 2 v. a. dep., *to look at, inspect, behold; watch, guard, preserve, protect, defend; uphold.*

Tuling-i, orum, m., *the Tulingi, a tribe in Gallia Belgica.*

tum, adv. and conj., *then; at that time, or this time; thereupon.* Often repeated: *tum—tum, at one time—at another time; both—and.* It sometimes follows *quam*, with the meaning, *both—and.*

tūm-eo, —, ēre, 2 v. n., *to swell; be swollen, be puffed up; be excited; ready to burst.*

tūmesc-o, tūmu-i, tūmese-ēre, 3 v. n. inep., *to begin to swell; be swollen, be puffed up; be excited; be violent; be ready to burst forth.* (tumeo.)

tūmult-us, ūs, (rarely gen. i.) m., *an upheaving, violent commotion; uproar; sudden rising or outbreak, insurrection, rebellion; impending war.* (tumeo.)

tūmūl-us, i, m., *a swelling of the earth,*

mound, hillock; sepulchral mound, grave, tumulus. (tumeo.)

tunc, adv., *then, at the very time; immediately; at this or that time.* (tum, and suffix *ec.*)

tūnic-a, ae, f., *a tunic, or under garment* (worn by the Romans of both sexes); *a membrane; coating, husk.*

turb-a, ae, f., *an uproar, riot, tumult; confusion; quarrel; a crowd; rabble, mob; multitude, throng; troop, band* (Supposed root *ter*, *to whirl.* See *torqueo.*)

turb-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to throw into confusion; disturb, confuse, disorder; to make thick or muddy, (as water.)* (turba.)

turbo, turbū-is, m., *a rapid whirling motion; revolution, rotation; a whirlwind, tornado, hurricane; a reel, wheel, spindle; a spinning-top.* (Root *ter*, *to whirl*, as in *torqueo.*)

turm-a, ae, f., *a troop (of horse); a crowd, throng; band.* (Supposed to be from stem *ter*, and connected with *torqueo.*)

turp-is, is, e, of *disgusting appearance, unsightly; foul, filthy; shameful, disgraceful, base, dishonourable, discreditable.*

turr-is, is, f., *a tower; especially a military tower; any high building; castle, citadel.*

tūs, tūr-is, n., (or *thus*), *frankincense.*

tūt-us, a, um, perf. part. of *tueor*: also adj., *safe, secure, free from danger.*

tu-us, a, um, possess. pron. of second pers., *thy or thine, your, your own*: hence, *suitable, favourable.* (tu.)

Tybr-is, or Thȳbr-is, is, or Idis, m., *the river Tiber.* (See *Tiberis.*)

tȳrannis, tȳrannī-is, or os, f., *the rule of a tyrant, despotic sway, tyranny.* (τυραννίς.)

tȳrann-us, i, m., *a harsh ruler, despot, tyrant.* (τυραννος.)

U.

ūber, ūbēr-is, n., *a teat, pap, udder; richness, fertility, fruitfulness.*

ūber, gen. ūbēr-is, adj., *rich, fruitful, fertile; plentiful, copious; productive.*

ūbi, adv., (I or D), *in which, or in what place, where* (both rel. and interrog.):

(of time,) *when, at what time; as soon as.* It is sometimes used like a rel. pron., and is equal to *in which* of whom, *by which* or *whom*, *with which* or *whom.*

Ubi-i drum, m., *the Ubi, a German*

- tribe on the Rhine, near the site of the modern Cologne.
- fid-us**, a, um, *wet, damp, moist*. (Perhaps contracted for *avidus*. Cf., in Gk., *ῥῆ, ῥῆσῶ*; and in Lat., *u(r)nda, humeo, humidus*.)
- alcisc-or**, ultus, ulcisc-i, 3 v. a. dep., *to avenge one's self on, take vengeance; punish; avenge*.
- ull-us**, a, um, gen. *ullius, any, any one*. (Contracted for *unulus*.)
- ulm-us**, l, f., *an elm (tree)*.
- ulter**, ultra, ultrum,) obsolete. See *ulterior*.
- ultēri-or**, or, us, gen. *ultēriōr-is*, comp. of obsolete *ulter, farther; on the other side; beyond, ulterior*.
- ultērius**, comp. adv., *farther, beyond; further, longer*. (ultra.)
- ultim-us**, a, um, superl. of obsolete *ulter, farthest, most remote, extreme, last; oldest, first, earliest; last, latest, final; utmost, extreme, greatest*.
- ultrā**, adv., and prep. with acc.: *adv., beyond, farther; over, besides, more; prep., on the farther side, beyond; longer than; past; more than, over, above*.
- ultra**, adv., *to the farther side, beyond; besides, moreover; contrary to what might be expected; of one's own accord, voluntarily*.
- ult-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *ulciscor, having avenged*.
- umbr-a**, ae, f., *a shade; shadow; a ghost; an uninvited guest*.
- umquam**, adv., *ever, &c*. See *unquam*.
- inā**, adv., *together with, at one and the same place or time*.
- und-a**, ae, f., *water; a wave, billow*. (Stem *ud*, as in *indus*.)
- unde**, adv., *whence, from which (place or time)*.
- undēcim**, card. num., *eleven*. (unus, decem.)
- undique**, adv., *from or on all sides*.
- ung-o**, (also *unguo*.) unx-i, unct-um, ung-ēre, 3 v. a., *to anoint; spread over*.
- ungu-o**, unx-i, unct-um, ungu-ēre. See *ungo*.
- ūnivers-us**, a, um, literally, *turned into one; hence, all together, the whole, collective, general, universal*. (unus, verba.)
- unquam**, (or *umquam*.) adv., *at any one time; ever*. (unum, quam.)
- ūn-us**, a, um, gen. *unius* or *unus*, dat. *uni*, (also, but rarely, gen. *un-i*, ae, i, and dat. *un-o*, ae, o,) card. num., *one* or *an; sole, only, single, alone; some one*. (Cf. Gk. *ἓν*, Eng. *one*, and Scotch *ane*.)
- urb-s**, is, f., *a walled town, city; the city Rome*.
- urg-ēo**, urs-i, urg-ēre, 2 v. a., (also *urguco*.) *to press, push, drive, impel, urge, press onward; press hard or close, beset, oppress*.
- urn-a**, ae, f., *a water-pot, jar, urn, pitcher*.
- ūr-o**, uss-i, ust-um, ūr-ēre, 3 v. a., *to burn, consume; scorch, parch; pain; to nip (with cold); blast; to glow, be heated; be enamoured*.
- ūr-us**, i, m., *a wild ox, auroch, bison*.
- usquam**, adv., in *any place, anywhere; to any place*.
- usque**, adv., *all the way, even to; even; continuously, constantly; as long as, until*.
- ust-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *uro, burned; scorched, parched*.
- ūs-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *utor, having employed, used, &c*.
- ūs-us**, ūs, m., *a making use of; use, employment; service, benefit, advantage; exercise, practice, custom; need, necessity; Esse usul, or Ex usu, to be of service. (utor.)*
- ūt**, or *ūtī*, adv. and conj.: *adv., in what manner, how, as; such as, for example; inasmuch as, for; when; conj., that, in order that, as that*.
- ūter**, utr-a, um, gen. *ius*, dat. *i*, (also *i* and *o*, &c.) *which or whether of two; either one*.
- ūter**, utr-is, m., *a bag or bottle (of hide or leather), a wine-skin*.
- ūterque**, ūtrāque, utrumque, gen. *utriusque*, &c., *both the one and the other, both; each. (uter, que.)*
- ūtī**, conj., *that*. (See *ut*.)
- ūtī**, pres. inf. of *ūtor*,—*which see*.
- ūtīl-is**, is, e, *able to be used; useful, serviceable; fit, suitable; advantageous. (utor.)*
- ūtīlitas**, ūtīlītāt-is, f., *use, utility; profit, benefit, advantage. (utīlis.)*
- ūtīnam**, adv., *oh that! I wish that! would that!* (ut.)
- ūt-or**, ūs-us, ūt-i, 3 v. a. dep., *to make use of, use, employ, apply; exercise, practise; occupy; enjoy. (Usually governs the abl., rarely the acc.)*

utpöð, adv., *as possibly; as being; inasmuch as, since, seeing that; namely.*
utrinque. See *utrinque*.
utrinque, (or *utrinque*.) adv., *on both sides, on either hand; by both parties.* (*uterque*.)
utrôbique, (or *utrôbique*.) adv., *on both sides or parts.* (*utrôbi*—i.e., *uter ubi*—and *que*.)
utrum, adv., *whether? whether or no?*
 It is used, both in direct and in indirect

clauses, to introduce the first part of a disjunctive interrogation. It is responded to by *an*. It sometimes, though rarely, introduces the second clause of an interrogation. Its force may often be expressed in English merely by the tone of the voice.

Ûv-a, ae, f., a bunch or cluster of grapes; a cluster.

uxor, uxôr-is, f., a wife, spouse.

V.

văcătio, văcătïôn-is, f., a being free from (duty, &c.); exemption, immunity. (*vaco*.)

vacc-a, ae, f., a cow.

văc-o, âvi, âtum, âre, 1 v. n., to be empty or vacant, to be void of; free from; be without, want; to have leisure; be uninhabited.

văcu-us, a, um, empty, void; free from; devoid of, wanting, without; free from business, disengaged, unoccupied. (*vaco*.)

văd-um, i, n., a shallow place; ford; shoal; the bottom (of a stream, pool, &c.): in pl., the depths.

văg-io, ivi, or ii, itum, îre, 4 v. n., to cry, squall (like infants).

văg-or, âtus, âri, 1 v. n. dep., to stroll about, wander, roam, rove. (*vagus*.)

văg-us, a, um, strolling about, wandering, roving, roaming; hence, unsteady, wavering, uncertain.

valdê, adv., strongly, vehemently, exceedingly; very, very much. (Contracted for *valide*.)

vălê, imper. of *valeo*, farewell. (See *valeo*.)

vălens, gen. *vălent-is*, part. of *valeo*: also adj., strong, powerful, vigorous, stout, mighty; healthy, hale.

văl-eo, ui, itum, êre, 2 v. n., to be strong, stout, or vigorous; to be healthy, hale; to have power or influence; be effective, have the effect of, be of avail, be good for; to be worth; be equal to; signify, mean: *Vale*, or *valens*, farewell.

Vălêri-us, i, m., *Valerius*, a Roman gentile name.

vălêtûdo, vălêtûdin-is, f., state of health; health (good or bad), but especially good health, soundness of body. (*valeo*.)

vălid-us, a, um, strong, stout, powerful, mighty; sound, healthy; influential. (*valeo*.)

vall-is, is, (or *vall-es*, is,) f., a valley, vale, hollow.

vall-um, i, n., an earthen rampart or dyke (set with stakes forming a palisade); a rampart, mound, fortification. (*vallus*.)

vall-us, i, m., a stake, pale; a palisade.

valv-ae, ârum, f. pl., the leaves of a door; folding doors or gates.

Vangïôn-es, um, m., the *Vangiones*, a German tribe on the Rhine, near the position of the modern Worms.

văp-or, vâpôr-is, m., steam, vapour; heat; heated air.

văriêtas, vâriêtât-is, f., diversity, difference, variety; fickleness, inconstancy. (*varius*.)

vări-us, a, um, spotted; striped; party-coloured, variegated; changeable; various, diverse, unlike; uneven; fickle, inconstant, wavering, veering.

văs, vâd-is, ni., one who goes surety (for another); a bail, security, surety.

văs, văs-is, n.,—pl. *văs-a*, ōrum, n. of the Second Decl.,—a vessel, dish; utensil, implement.

văst-o, âvi, âtum, âre, 1 v. a., to make void or vacant; hence, to deprive of inhabitants; lay waste, ravage, devastate; ruin, destroy. (*vastus*.)

văst-us, a, um, empty, unoccupied; waste, desert, desolate; ravaged, devastated; vast, enormous, immense, huge.

văt-es, is, m. or f., a prophet or prophetess; seer; soothsayer; a poet or poetess.

vătïcïnătio, vătïcïnătïôn-is, f., a prophesying; prediction, prophecy. (*vătïcïnor*,—i.e., *vates*, and *cano*, to prophesy.)

vč,
 &
 a
 th
 vec
 to
 ru
 p
 vec
 in
 (v
 vec
 ca
 včh
 ly
 str
 (S
 or
 th
 no
 ve
 us
 ve
 včh-
 ca
 pa
 ric
 včl,
 su
 (I
 ch
 včlâ
 me
 včl-
 ve
 (ve
 včlô
 vel
 včlô-
 fec
 včl-u
 a s
 včlû
 like
 (ve
 včn-
 hen
 vein
 or
 nat
 včnâ
 chas
 včnâ
 vend-
 for
 trac

- vē**, an enclitic conj., *or*, joined to *ne*, *si*, &c.—*neve*, *sive*. Used also like *que*, and generally attached to the second of the two words which it connects.
- vectigal**, **vectigāl-is**, *n.*, a *toll*, *tax*, *customs-duty*, *impost*, paid to the State; *revenue*, *income*, *rents*. (*vectus*, *perf. part. of veho*.)
- vectōri-us**, *a, um*, adapted for carrying: *Vectoria navigia*, *transport-ships*. (*vectus*, *perf. part. of veho*.)
- vect-us**, *a, um*, *perf. part. of veho*, *carried*, *conveyed*, &c.
- vēhementer**, *adv.*, *impetuously*; *eagerly*; *vehemently*; *excessively*; *violently*; *strongly*, *forcibly*; *extremely*, *very much*. (Said to be from *vē* or *vēh*, a negative or intensive particle, and *mens*; so that the literal meaning would be, *not with judgment*, or *discretion*. Cf. *vecors*, *without heart*, *heartless*; *vesanus*, *mad*, &c. The shorter form is *vemens*.)
- vēh-o**, **vex-i**, **vect-um**, **vēh-ēre**, 3 *v. a.*, to carry, convey (by any means): in a pass. or reflective sense, *to be borne*; *to ride*; *sail*.
- vēl**, *conj.*, *or*, *or even*, *or indeed*; *even*; *surely*; *indeed*: *Vel—vel*, *either—or*. (*Imperat. of volo*,—meaning, therefore, *choose*; *which you will*.)
- vēlāmen**, **vēlāmin-is**, *n.*, a *covering*, *garment*; *clothing*. (*velo*.)
- vēl-o**, **āvī**, **ātum**, **āre**, 1 *v. a.*, to cover, veil; wrap up, envelop; clothe; hide. (*velum*.)
- vēlōcitas**, **vēlōcitat-is**, *f.*, *swiftness*, *velocity*, *speed*. (*velox*.)
- vēlox**, *gen. vēlōc-is*, *adj.*, *swift*, *quick*, *fleet*, *rapid*, *nimble*, *speedy*.
- vēl-um**, *i, n.*, a *covering*, *veil*, *curtain*; *a sail*.
- vēlūt**, *or* **vēlūtī**, *adv.*, *even as*, *just as*, *like as*, *as it were*; *as if*, *as though*. (*vel*, *uti*.)
- vēn-a**, *ac, f.*, a *vein*, *blood-vessel*, *artery*: hence, figuratively, a *water-course*; a *vein* or *seam of mineral deposit*; *interior* or *natural quality*; *genius*; *disposition*, *natural bent*.
- vēnatio**, **vēnatiōn-is**, *f.*, *hunting*, *the chase*; *a hunt*. (*venor*, *to hunt*.)
- vēnator**, **vēnator-is**, *m.*, a *hunter*.
- vend-o**, **idī**, **itum**, **ēre**, 3 *v. a.*, to set up for sale; sell; give up, betray. (Contracted for *venum*, *sale*, and *do*.)
- vēnēnāt-us**, *a, um*, *perf. part. of veneno* (*to poison*), *poisoned*; *dipped in poison*; *poisonous*, *venomous*.
- vēnēn-um**, *i, n.*, a *drug*, *poison*; especially, *poison*; a *magical charm*; a *dye*, *paint*.
- Vēnēt-i**, **ōrum**, *nt.*, the *Veneti*, a tribe in the west of France, a little north of the mouth of the Loire.
- Vēnētīc-us**, *a, um*, *Venetīc*, *belonging or pertaining to the Veneti*.
- vēni-a**, *ac, f.*, *favour*, *grace*, *indulgence*; *leave*, *permission*; *pardon*, *forgiveness*, *remission*.
- vēn-ic**, **vēn-i**, **vent-um**, **vēn-īre**, 4 *v. n.*, to come, arrive.
- vēn-or**, **ātus**, **ārī**, 1 *v. n.* and *a.*, to hunt, pursue, chase.
- venit-ō**, **āvī**, **ātum**, **āre**, 1 *v. n.* freq., to come often or frequently; be constantly coming. (*venio*.)
- vent-us**, *i, m.*, the *wind*.
- Vēnūsi-a**, *ac, f.*, *Venusia*, a city of Apulia, where Hannibal defeated a Roman army. It was the birth-place of the poet Horace.
- vēr**, **vēr-is**, *n.*, the *spring season*, *spring*.
- Verbīgēn-i**, **orum**, *m.*, the *Verbigeni*, or people of the Pagus Verbigenus.
- Verbīgēn-us**, *i, m.*, (*secl. pagus*), the *Canton Verbigenus*, in Helvetia. (See *Caes*, B. G., i. 27.)
- verb-um**, *i, n.*, a *word*: in pl., *words*, *language*; *conversation*; *a speech*.
- vērē**, *adv.*, *truly*, *in fact*; *rightly*, *properly*. (*verus*.)
- vēr-eor**, **ītus**, **ērī**, 2 *v. a.* and *n. dep.* to be in awe of; reverence; fear, be afraid of: *Veritus navibus*, *fearing for* (the safety of) *his ships*.
- verg-o**, **ēre**, (*perf.*, **versī**, doubtful.) 3 *v. a.* and *n.*: *a.*, to turn; *incline*, *verge*: usually *n.*, to *incline*, or be inclined to; to lie or lean toward; be situated; *trend*.
- Vergōbrēt-us**, *i, m.*, (or *Virgobretus*), *Virgobretus*, the title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.
- vērissimē**, *adv.*, *superl. of vere*, *most truly*, &c.
- vērīt-us**, *a, um*, *perf. part. of vereor*, *fearing*.
- vērō**, *adv.*, *in truth*, *certainly*, *truly*, *surely*; *but indeed*; *however*. (*verus*.)
- versāt-us**, *a, um*, *perf. part. of versor*, *busied*, *engaged*, *occupied*, &c.

- vers-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to turn, twist, wind, whirl about; turn up; turn or drive about; change; vex, disturb; ponder over, reflect on. (verto.)
- vers-or**, ātus, āri, 1 v. a. dep., to turn one's self about in: hence, to dwell in, remain in; to be circumstanced; to be busied, or busy one's self; be engaged, employed, occupied with. (verto.)
- vers-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *verto*, turned, &c.
- vers-us**, ūs, m., literally, a turning: hence, a furrow; a row, line; line or verse of poetry. (verto.)
- versus**, adv., and prep. with acc., turned in the direction of, towards. (verto.)
- vertex**, vertic-is, m., (also written *vertex*.) literally, that which turns: hence, a whirl, eddy, vortex; the top or highest part, peak, summit; crown of the head; the head; the pole (of the heavens): A vertice, from on high; from above. (verto.)
- vertigo**, vertigin-is, f., a whirling round, whirl, revolution: hence, giddiness (of the head), vertigo. (verto.)
- vert-o**, (or *vorto*.) i, vers-um, vert-ere, 3 v. a. and n., to turn round; turn over, (e.g., the earth with a plough;) change, alter: n., to turn, turn about; change; issue in, turn out. (The stem *ver* is found in *veru*, a spit; *vermis*, a worm; *vergo*, to turn toward.)
- Verucloeti-us**, i, m., *Verucloetius*, a Helvetian chief.
- vĕrum**, adv., truly, just so; but in truth; but yet. (*verus*.)
- vĕr-um**, i, n., the truth: neut. of *verus*.
- vĕr-us**, a, um, true, real, genuine; right, proper, reasonable, just.
- Vĕsontio**, Vĕsontion-is, m., *Vesontio* (now Besançon), a city in Gallia Belgica, capital of the Sequani.
- vesper**, vespĕr-is, or i, m., the evening, eve; evening star: Ad *vesperum*, till the evening: Sub *vesperum*, toward evening. (ἑσπερος.)
- Vest-a**, ae, f., *Vesta*, daughter of Saturn, goddess of the household, and of flocks and herds.
- Vestāl-is**, is, e, belonging or pertaining to *Vesta*: as a subst., a vestal virgin; especially *Rhea Silvia*.
- vester**, (or *voster*.) *vestr-a*, um, your, belonging to you. (*vos*.)
- vestigi-um**, i, n., a footstep, step; footmark, track; vestige, token, trace; point of time, moment, instant. (*vestigo*, to follow in a track.)
- vestment-um**, i, n., clothing; a garment, vesture. (*vestio*.)
- vest-io**, i, vi, or il, itum, ire, 4 v. a., to cover with garments, clothe, dress; cover; adorn. (*vestis*.)
- vest-is**, is, f., a covering, garment, robe; clothing: also a carpet; curtain. (Gk. ἔσθῆς; with digamma, *Ἐσθῆς*.)
- vĕtĕrān-us**, a, um, old, veteran: *Veterani*, veteran soldiers. (*vetus*.)
- vĕtĭt-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *veto*, forbidden, denied (to one).
- vĕt-o**, ui, (rarely *avi*.) itum, āre, 1 v. a., to forbid, disallow, prohibit, hinder.
- vĕt-us**, gen. *vĕtĕr-is*, adj., of long standing; aged, old, ancient; former: as subst., *veteres*, the ancients; ancestors.
- vĕtustas**, vĕtustāt-is, f., length of time; old age; long duration or existence; antiquity. (*vetus*.)
- vex-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., to shake or jolt (while carrying); to toss: hence, to annoy, harass, tease; injure; vex; molest. (*velio*.)
- vi-a**, ae, f., a way, road, path, street; march, journey; way, method, manner.
- vibr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., to move rapidly to and fro; brandish; shake, agitate; launch, hurl: n., to quiver, tremble, vibrate tremulously: hence, glitter, sparkle. (ī or I.)
- vicĕn-i**, ae, a, distrib. num., twenty each. (*viginti*.)
- vicĕsim-us**, a, um, (or *vigesimalis*.) ord. num., the twentieth. (*viginti*.)
- vicies**, adv., twenty times. (*viginti*.)
- vicĭni-a**, ae, f., neighbourhood, nearness, vicinity; the neighbours,—i.e., people of the neighbourhood; likeness, resemblance. (*vicinus*.)
- vicĭnitās**, vicĭnitāt-is, f., nearness, neighbourhood, vicinity; the neighbours. (*vicinus*.)
- vicĭn-us**, a, um, near, neighbouring; like to, resembling, (like the English: "neighbour" in the sense of a match for, similar to:) as subst., *vicin-us*, i, m., or a, ae, f., a neighbour. (*vicus*, a village.)
- vĭ-cis** (gen.), acc. *vĭcem*, abl. *vĭce*, pl.

- nom. and acc. vices, dat. and abl. vicibus, f., *change; interchange; succession; place, room, stead (of another); vicissitude, the changes of fate; misfortune*: In vicem, or invicem, *in turn, by turns.*
- victim-a**, ae, f., *a beast for sacrifice, victim.* (vincio.)
- victor**, victōr-is, m., *a conqueror, victor.* (vinco.)
- victōri-a**, ae, f., *victory, success.* (victor)
- vict-us**, a, um, perf. part., *conquered, &c.*
- vict-us**, ūs, m., *means of life, nourishment, provisions, victuals; mode of life, way of living.* (vivo.)
- vici-us**, i, m., *a district of a city; a village; country seat.* (Cf. Gk. οἶκος, i.e., *Foikos*; and in Eng., *wick* or *wich*,—as in *Ber-wick, Nor-wich, &c.*)
- vid-eo**, vid-i, vis-um, vid-ēre, 2 v. a., *to see, behold, look at; perceive, mark, observe; look or see to; think of; care for, provide*: in a reflexive sense, *to seem, appear, be regarded; to seem right or proper.* (Cf. Gk. ἰδῆναι, εἶδον; Germ. *wissen*; Eng. *wit, wot.*)
- vid-eor**, vis-us, vid-ēri, 2 v. n. dep., *to be seen; appear, seem*: often used impersonally, *it appears.* (Pass. of video.)
- vidu-us**, a, um, literally, *separated from*: hence, *deprived or bereft of; destitute of; widowed*: Vidua, as a subst., *a widow.*
- vig-eo**, —, ēre, 2 v. n., *to be vigorous; thrive, bloom, flourish.*
- vigesc-o**, vigui, vigesc-ēre, 3 v. n. incept., *to become vigorous; thrive, flourish.* (vigeo.)
- vigēs-imus**, a, um. See *vicesimus*.
- vigil**, gen. vigil-is, adj., *awake; alert, on the watch; wakeful*: as subst., *a watchman, sentinel.* (vigeo.)
- vigili-a**, ae, f., *wakefulness, sleeplessness; a watching or guarding*: hence, *a watch*,—i.e., *the time during which watch was kept; also, the men on guard, the watch, sentinels.* (vigil.)
- viginti**, card. num., *twenty.*
- vigor**, vigōr-is, m., *liveliness, activity; vigour, force.* (vigeo.)
- vill-a**, ae, f., *a country seat; farm; villa.* (Said to be contracted for *vicula*, dim.:n. of *vicus*.)
- vinum**, vimīn-is, n., *a twig, osier, switch,*
- pliant branch.* (vi, root of *vico*, *to bind.*)
- vinc-io**, vinx-i, vincit-um, vine-īre, 4 v. a., *to bind, fetter; confine, restrain; secure.*
- vinci-um**, i, n., for *vincium*.
- vinc-o**, vic-i, vict-um, vine-ēre, 3 v. a., *to conquer, defeat, subdue, overthrow, vanquish, get the better of; win, gain; surpass, excel.*
- vincit-us**, a, um, perf. part. of *vincio*, *bound, &c.*
- vincūl-um**, i, n., *a bond, band, rope, cord, fetter, chain; a prison; confinement.* (vincio.)
- vindex**, vindic-is, m. or f., *a claimant, protector, deliverer; vindicator; avenger, punisher.*
- vine-a**, ae, f., *a plantation of vines, a vineyard*; but more especially, as a military term, *a pent-house, a shed* (in the shape of a vine arbour, for sheltering the besiegers of a town). (vinum.)
- vinēt-um**, i, n., *a plantation of vines, vine-grove, vine-yard.* (vinum.)
- vine-us**, a, um, *belonging to wine.* The fem., *vinca*, is used substantively, *a vineyard, &c.*
- vinōlent-us**, a, um, *full of wine, drunk; given to drink.* (vinum.)
- vin-um**, i, n., *wine.* (Cf. Gk. οἶνος, i.e., *Foivos*; and Eng. *wine.*)
- violēt-us**, a, um, *forcible, violent, impetuous, boisterous; furious; strong* (violens.)
- viol-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to do violence to, injure; dishonour, profane, violate.*
- vir**, vir-i, m., *a man; a husband; a man of courage, a man of honour.* (Cf. *vireo*, and *vires*, pl. of *vis*.)
- vir-es**, lum, f., pl. of *vis*, *strength, might.*
- viresc-o**, ēre, 3 v. n. incept., *to become green; shoot forth.* (*vireo*, *to be green.*)
- virg-a**, ae, f., *a twig; sprout; rod; wand; staff.*
- virgīne-us**, a, um, *pertaining to a maiden, maidently*: *Virgineus Helicon, Helicon, the abode of the Virgins*,—i.e., *the Muses.*
- virgo**, virgīn-is, f., *a maiden, virgin, young woman, girl; the constellation VIRGO.* (Contracted for *virago*.)
- virid-is**, is, e, green (in all its shades); *fresh, blooming; young; vigorous.* (vireo.)

- virtūs**, virtūt-is, f., *manliness*,—i.e., everything that adorns the perfect man in mind and body; *merit, excellence* (of all kinds); *strength; courage; moral perfection, virtue; military talent, bravery; worth, value.* (vir.)
- vis**, (gen. vis, dat. vi, rare,) acc. vim, abl. vi, pl. vires, f., *strength* (of body or mind), *power, force, vigour, energy; violence*: Per vim, by violence, violently: Magna vis, a great quantity, (cf. in English, the vulgar phrase, "a power of") (The stem is vir, as seen in the pl. vires. The nom., vis, is for vira.)
- viscēr-a**, um, n. pl., *entrails, &c.* (See viscus.)
- viscus**, viscēr-is, n., (usually in pl. viscera,) *the internal organs, the viscera*, (heart, lungs, liver, stomach, entrails, &c.); *flesh*, (all below the skin:) *the inmost parts*: hence, Viscera terrae, *the interior or bowels of the earth.*
- vis-o**, i, um, ēre, 3 v. a., *to view; visit.*
- vis-um**, i, n., *a thing seen, a sight, appearance, vision.* (video.)
- vis-us**, a, um, perf. part. of video, *seen, &c.*
- vis-us**, ūs, m., *a seeing, looking; glance; sight, vision; apparition, sight.* (video.)
- vī-t-a**, ae, f., *life; a living, support, sustenance; life, career.* (For victa, from vivo.)
- vī-ti-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to make faulty, spoil, vitiate, injure, corrupt, infect.* (vitium.)
- vī-ti-um**, i, n., *a fault, defect, blemish; vice; offence, crime.*
- vīt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to avoid, shun, evade.*
- vitr-um**, i, n., *glass*; also *wood*, a plant for dyeing blue.
- vīv-o**, vīx-i, vīct-um, vīv-ēre, 3 v. n., *to live, have life; enjoy life; last, endure; to support life, sustain life; reside in.*
- vīv-us**, a, um, *having life, living, alive.* (vivo.)
- vix**, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely, hardly, barely.*
- vōcīt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. and n., *to call frequently or earnestly; be wont to call; call loudly.* (voco.)
- vōc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to call, call upon, summon, invoke, cite; invite* (as a guest); *call* (by name), *name.* (vox.)
- Vōcontī-i**, orum, m., *the Vocontii, a Gallic tribe near the Rhone, between the*
- rivers Isara (Isere) and Druentia (Durance).*
- Voctio**, Voctiōn-is, m., **Voctio**, a prince of Nericum.
- Volc-ae**, arum, m., *the Volcae* (Tectosages), a Gallic tribe, whose capital was Tolosa (Toulouse).
- vōl-o**, ul, vel-le, v. n. and a. irreg. and defect., *to will, be willing; wish, desire; intend, purpose; determine, ordain, decree; mean, signify.*
- Volso**, Volsōn-is, m., **Volso** (Cn. Manlius), a Roman consul. (See Nep. Hann., xlii. 9.)
- vōlūcer**, or voluer-is, is, e, *flying, winged; swift, rapid.* (vol-o, are, to fly.)
- vōlucr-is**, is, f., (scil. avis,) *a bird.* u or ū. (volo.)
- vōlūmen**, vōlūmln-is, n., *a roll of writing, scroll; book, volume; a fold, wreath, coil; revolution.* (volvo.)
- vōluntas**, vōluntāt-is, f., *will, wish, choice, desire, inclination; good-will, favour.* (volo.)
- vōluptas**, vōluptāt-is, f., *enjoyment of one's wish, satisfaction, pleasure, delight.* (From adv. volupe, agreeably; and that from volo.)
- Volusēn-us**, i, m., **Volusenus** (C.), one of Caesar's officers, sent to examine Britain. (B. G., iv. 21.)
- vōlūt-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. freq., *to roll or tumble about; turn, twist; enwine; roll one's self, wallow; turn over* (in the mind), *ponder.* (volvo.)
- volv-o**, i, vōlūt-um, volv-ēre, 3 v. a., *to roll, turn about or over; tumble; ponder, meditate.*
- vōmer**, or vomis, vōmēr-is, m., *a plough-share.*
- vōm-o**, ul, itum, ēre, 3 v. n. and a., *to vomit, emit, discharge, belch forth, pour forth.*
- vōt-um**, i, n., *a solemn promise* (to a deity); *vow, oath; wish, desire, longing.* (voveo.)
- vōv-ēo**, vōv-i, vōt-um, vōv-ēre, 2 v. a., *to promise solemnly, vow; devote, dedicate, consecrate.*
- vox**, vōc-is, f., *a voice; sound; cry, call; word, expression, sentence; speech, language.*
- Vulcāni-us**, a, um, *pertaining to Vulcan.*
- Vulcān-us**, i, m., **Vulcan**, the god of fire: hence, as a common noun, *fire.*

vulg
mo
vulg
tit
the
vuln
wo

Xan
Tro

Zam
in
Zeph
win
soug

vulgō, adv. *in common, everywhere, commonly, publicly.* (vulgus.)
vulg-us, i, n. (or m.), *a crowd; the multitude, the public, the people (generally); the mob, rabble; populace.*
vulnēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a., *to wound, hurt, injure.* (vulnus.)

vulnus, vulnēr-is, n., *a wound, lesion (of any kind,—as a hole, crack, rent, &c.)*
vult-us, ūs, m., (or vultus), *the countenance, visage, features; air, aspect, expression; face.*

X.

Xanth-us, i, m., *the river Xanthus, near Troy.* | **Xerx-es**, is, m., *Xerxes, king of Persia, son of Darius Hystaspes.*

Z.

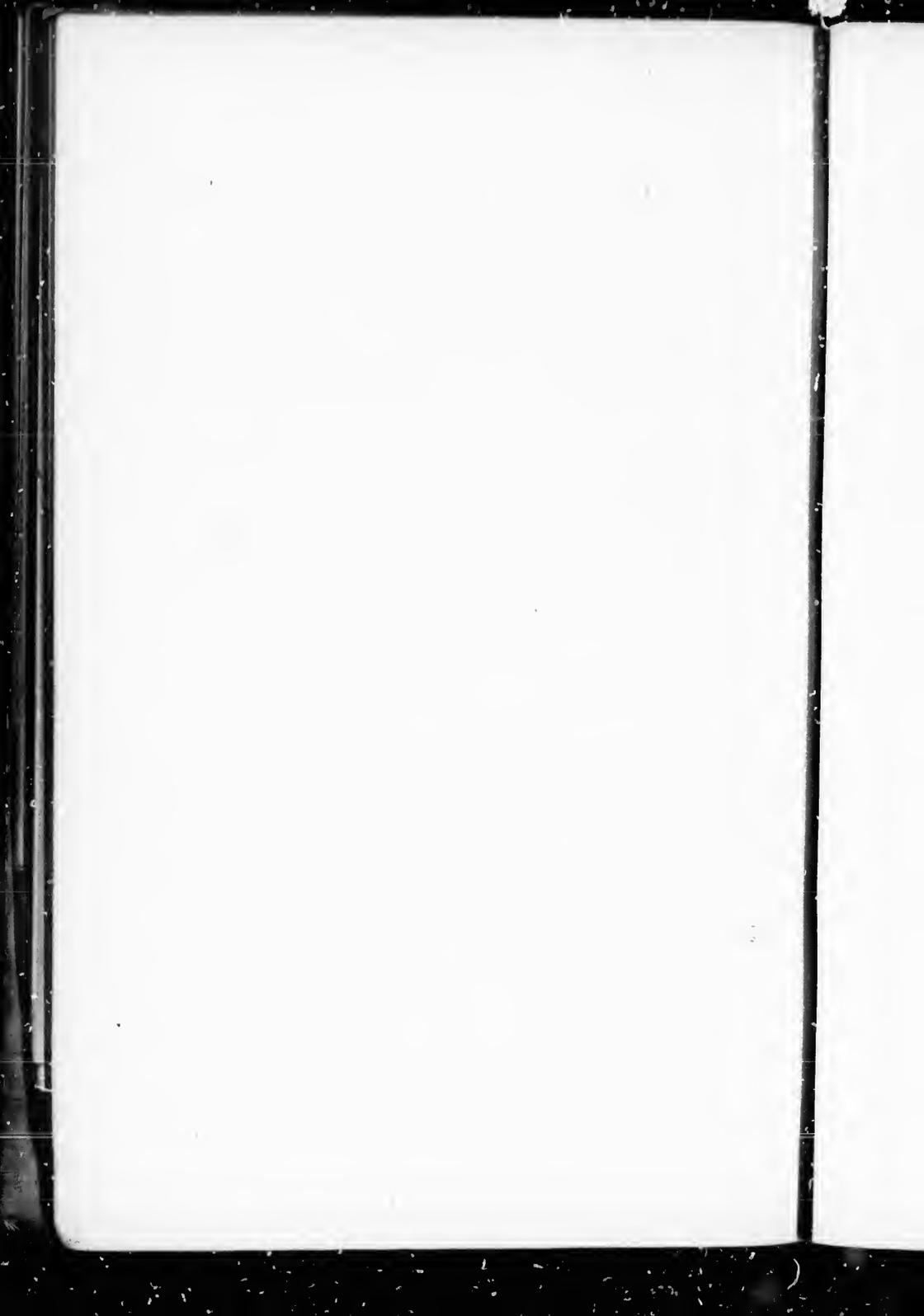
Zam-a, ae, f., *Zama, a city of Numidia, in Africa.* | figure of grammar, in which two nouns are connected with a verb strictly applicable to one of them only. (See Note on Nep. Them., i. 9.)
Zēphyr-us, i, m., *Zephyrus, the west wind; a gentle wind.*
zeugma, zeugmāt-is, n., *zeugma, a zōn-a*, ae, f., *a belt, girdle, zone.*

X 4 1

GREEK NOUNS.

	NOMINA- TIVE.	GENITIVE.	DATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.	VOCA- TIVE.	ABLA- TIVE.
I. Decl.	e	es or he	ae	en	e	e
	as	ae	ae	eni or ani	æ	a
Plur.:	es	ae	ae	en, eni or nin	a or e	n or o
	ae	arum	is	as	æ	is
II. Decl.	os	i	o	on or um	o	o
	on (n.)	i	o	on	on	o
III. Decl.	a (n.)	atis	ati	a	a	ate
	Pl. ata	atum	atis (or atibus)	ata	ata	at's (or atibus)
	as	anos or nnis	ani	ana	as	ane
	as	antis	anti	anta or em	as or a	ante
	as	ados or adis	adi	ada or adem	as	ade
	en	euis	eni	ena	en	ene
	es	is or i	i or ei	em or ea	es or e	e or i
	etis	cos or ei	ei or eo	ea or eum	eu	eo
	is	is or idos	idi	im or in	is or i	ide
	is	idos or idis	idi	idem or ida	i	ide
	is	idis or idos	idi	idem or in	is or i	ide
	on	ontis	oni	ona	on	one
	on	ontis	onti	onta	on	onte
	ys	yos or yis	yi	ym or yn	y or ys	ye
	ys	ydis or ydes	ydi	ydem or yda	ys	yde
	us	untis	unti	unta	us	unte
	is	entis	enti	enta	is	ente

—
D



Part Seventh.

IMITATIVE EXERCISES.

1. Th
hopes
that h
sent t
inhabi
Delphi
to emp
of the
when

6. Th
choos
be (*j*)
for Le
island
when
against
Cherso
the Le
him (*r*).

(a) "
(c) *Summ*
160. — (*g*)
fut. perf.
sect. i. 9,
(e) Synt.,
14, chap.

NEPOS.

MILTIADES.

EXERCISE I.—CHAPTER I.

[Read Syntax, chap. ii., sect. i., p. 130, *sqq.*]

1. THE Athenians were already beginning, not only to entertain (*a*) hopes in regard to Miltiades, but even to feel-a-confident-assurance that he would turn-out (*b*) an excellent (*c*) general. 2. Colonists were sent to the Chersonese, who were-to-drive-out (*d*) the Thracians, then inhabiting those regions. 3. The Athenians send chosen men to Delphi, to ask (*e*) Apollo what leader more-than-another they are (*f*) to employ. 4. Miltiades and his brother consulted-for-the-good (*g*) of the state. 5. The priestess of Apollo advises the colonists, when consulting her, to take (*h*) Miltiades as their military-leader. 6. The priestess of Apollo tells the Athenians that if they will choose (*i*) Miltiades as their military-leader, their undertakings will be (*j*) successful. 7. Miltiades and (*k*) a picked body-of-men started for Lemnos, and endeavoured (*l*) to reduce the inhabitants of that island under the power of the Athenians. 8. It happened that when the colonists were leaving Athens, the wind blew (*m*) right against them (*n*). 9. A great number (*o*) of colonists started for the Chersonese along with Miltiades. 10. Miltiades demanded that (*p*) the Lemnians should, of their own accord, give-up (*q*) the island to him (*r*).

(*a*) "Were-beginning-to-entertain-hopes," Imperf. indic. of *spero*.—(*b*) *Evado*.—(*c*) *Summus*.—(*d*) *Expello*.—(*e*) See Synt., p. 148, note †.—(*f*) See Synt., xii. 2, *a*, p. 160.—(*g*) See *consulo* in Vocabulary.—(*h*) See p. 166, note 12.—(*i*) *i.e.*, "will have;" fut. perf. See Synt., p. 162, 9.—(*j*) See Synt., p. 148, 3, *b*; and p. 132, 11.—(*k*) Synt., sect. i. 9, p. 131.—(*l*) *Conor*.—(*m*) Synt., xii. 2, *b*, p. 160.—(*n*) Synt., 7, *b*, p. 140.—(*o*) Synt., i. 8, p. 131.—(*p*) See p. 167, note 16.—(*q*) *Dedo* or *trado*.—(*r*) See p. 167, note 14, chap. ii.

EXERCISE II.—CHAPTER II.

1. Miltiades in a short time scattered the forces of the barbarians. 2. When he had settled (*a*) in (their) allotments-of-land the colonists whom he had brought with him, he enriched them by frequent expeditions. 3. The Athenians gain possession of the entire territory which they had desired. 4. The army of the enemy was defeated not less by the prudence of Miltiades than by the valour of the soldiers. 5. Miltiades obtained the position of supreme-ruler among the colonists in the Chersonese (*b*) more by his fair-dealing than by his military-authority. 6. To perform (one's) duties to his country (*c*) is (an) honourable (thing) (*d*). 7. Miltiades settled the affairs of the Chersonese with the greatest wisdom and justice. 8. Affairs turned out contrary to the expectation of the Lemnians; and they (*i.e.*, who) (*e*) did not venture to oppose (*f*) Miltiades. 9. By which circumstances it was brought about that the Carians departed from Lemnos. 10. Miltiades had his home in the Chersonese (*b*). 11. The islands called Cyclades were reduced under the power of the Athenians by Miltiades with equal good fortune.

(*a*) Express by "ablative absolute," (and see note 1, chap. iv., p. 169); or by the pluperf. subj.—(*b*) See Synt., sect. vii. 13, p. 144.—(*c*) *Patria*.—(*d*) *Honestum*. See Synt., sect. i. 10, p. 131.—(*e*) See note 1, chap. vi., p. 172.—(*f*) Synt., p. 139, 4, *b*.

EXERCISE III.—CHAPTER III.

1. The Athenians determined to wage war on the barbarians. 2. A bridge was made over the Danube by Darius, for-the-purpose-of (*a*) conveying his troops across that river (*b*). 3. Darius gave supreme military-power over their own cities to those chiefs severally whom he had left as guardians, during his absence, of the bridge over the Hister. 4. The king of the Persians wished to retain under his own power those (*i.e.*, the) inhabitants of Asia who spoke (*i.e.*, speaking) Greek. 5. Let us not lose the opportunity which fortune has presented, of freeing our native-country. 6. Miltiades urged the chiefs to (*c*) break up (*d*) the bridge. 7. The advice of Miltiades reached the ears of Darius. 8. If the kingly-power (*e*) of Darius is destroyed, we shall be driven from office, and shall be punished by our fellow-citizens. 9. Histiaeus of Miletus opposes the breaking up of the bridge. 10. Most approved of the opinion of Histiaeus of Miletus, that the bridge should not be broken up.

(*a*) Use *qua*, or *quo*, or *ut*, and see p. 148, note †; also p. 158, sect. ix., 1, *c*.—(*b*) Synt., p. 136, 8.—(*c*) See note 12, chap. i.—(*d*) *Rescindo*.—(*e*) *Regnum*.

EXERCISE IV.—CHAPTER IV.

1. About the same time (*a*) a fleet of five hundred ships was speedily equipped by Darius, for-the-purpose-of (*ut*) waging war against the Greeks. 2. Miltiades fearing that (*b*) his advice would reach the ears of Darius, left the Chersonese, and returned again to Athens (*c*). 3. Neither Datis nor Artaphernes was able (*d*) to reduce Greece under the power of Darius. 4. Miltiades again changed-his-residence to Athens, alleging as a reason, that he was not sufficiently safe (*e*) in the Chersonese (*f*). 5. The Ionians, with the assistance of the Athenians, took Sardis by storm, and put the garrison of the king to the sword (*g*). 6. The forces of the Persians were led down by the generals of the king into the plain of Marathon, which is about ten miles distant from Athens (*h*). 7. Phidippus, a courier of that kind which is called Hemerodromoe, was sent to Lacedemon, to announce that the Persians had captured (*i*) Eretria, and were approaching Athens (*j*). 8. Eretria was taken by the Persian fleet, and several other cities (*k*). 9. We have need of speedy assistance. 10. Let us go against the enemy ϵ^+ the first moment possible.

(*a*) Synt., p. 147, 29.—(*b*) *Vereor ne*, with subj.—(*c*) See Synt., p. 137, 10.—(*d*) See Synt., p. 131, 7.—(*e*) *Satis tutum esse*.—(*f*) Synt. p. 144, 13.—(*g*) "Put to the sword," *interficio*.—(*h*) Synt., p. 146, 24 and 25.—(*i*) Infin. mood. See p. 148, 3, *b*.—(*j*) Synt., p. 137, 10, 11, and 12.—(*k*) Synt., p. 131, 5.

EXERCISE V.—CHAPTER V.

[Read Syntax, chap. II., sect. II., p. 132, *sqq.*]

1. The opinion of Miltiades prevailed over that of (*a*) his colleagues, seeing-that (*b*) the Plataean contingent (*i.e.*, band) burned with an extraordinary desire of fighting. 2. Miltiades led forth ten thousand armed men from Athens, and pitched his camp in a suitable place, in order that he might, at the first moment possible, oppose the enemy and risk a general engagement (*c*). 3. The day following, he drew out his line of battle at the base of the mountain. 4. The Spartans did not at this crisis assist (*d*) the Athenians. 5. Miltiades, relying on the valour of his soldiers, joined battle in a place disadvantageous to the Persians. 6. The generals of the king thought it advantageous to fight before (*e*) any state should come to the help of the Athenians. 7. Never had so small a band dared

to fight against so great a force (*f*). 8. The consequence was (*g*), that up to this day nothing (*i.e.*, no exploit) is more famous than the battle of Marathon.

(*a*) Say, "The opinion of Miltiades rather (*i.e.*, more) than (that) of his colleagues prevailed."—(*b*) *Quoniam*, with subj.—(*c*) "Risk," &c., *acutè decerno*.—(*d*) See p. 140, 10, with note †.—(*e*) See p. 157, 4, c.—(*f*) "So great a force," *tantus opes*.—(*g*) *Quo factum est*.

EXERCISE VI.—CHAPTER VI.

1. The battle of Marathon was painted in the portico which is called Pœcile. 2. We find that very great honour was awarded to Miltiades, who, with a small band, had routed an enemy ten times as numerous. 3. Miltiades and the nine Praetors who secured the freedom (*a*) of Attica and the whole of Greece, were honoured (*b*) with a reward of little (intrinsic) value. 4. The king's generals and fleet having started (*c*) from Eretria, approached (the coast of) Attica. 5. We find that honours were at an early period (*i.e.*, formerly) sparingly-conferred and of little-value, among the Romans. 6. After the Athenians were debased by the bribery of (*i.e.*, practised by) the magistrates, three hundred statues were decreed to Demetrius of Phalerum.

(*a*) *Libero*.—(*b*) *Honoro*.—(*c*) See *Synt.*, p. 133, 7 and 8.

EXERCISE VII.—CHAPTER VII.

1. After the battle of Marathon, the Athenians equip a fleet of seventy ships, and appoint Miltiades to the command of it (*a*), that he may harass in war the islands which had aided the barbarians. 2. During the tenure of which office, he again reduced most of the islands under the power of the Athenians. 3. The Athenian commander determined (*b*) to surround the city of Paros with military-works, and to deprive it of all supplies. 4. Miltiades feared that (*c*) the Parians would not return to their duty. 5. After the battle of Marathon, Miltiades returned to Athens, to the great joy (*d*) of his fellow-citizens. 6. When Miltiades was just on the point of capturing the city of Paros, he abandoned it without accomplishing his object. 7. By some chance or other, the king's fleet did not approach near the city (*e*). 8. Miltiades feared that he should be accused of treason. 9. I fear that Miltiades will not be able to pay, on the spot, the fine of fifty talents. 10. Miltiades was thrown

into the public prison, to the great disgust of all good men.
11. There were some(*f*) who feared that Miltiades would be condemned to death.(*g*)

(*a*) Chap. iv., line 3.—(*b*) See chap. ii., line 7.—(*c*) See note on line 13 of chap. vii.—(*d*) *Gaudium*.—(*e*) See note 7, chap. vii., on *prope*, and translate the sentence in two ways.—(*f*) "There were some who," *erant qui*, with the verb "feared" in the subj. See Synt., sect ix. 3, p. 159.—(*g*) "Condemn to death," *damnare capitis*.

EXERCISE VIII.—CHAPTER VIII.

1. The Athenians accused Miltiades on a charge regarding Paros; yet the cause of his condemnation was different. 2. Pisis-tratus had been supreme ruler at Athens(*a*) a few years before. 3. In consequence of which(*b*) the Athenians dreaded-exceedingly the power of Miltiades, who, being much engaged in offices-of-military-command, was thought to be resistlessly-impelled(*c*) to a desire of rule by the habit (of enjoying it). 4. Miltiades dwelt in the Chersonese many years(*d*), and there he enjoyed among the colonists the position of king(*e*), although he had not the name. 5. It was not by violence, but by the good-will of his fellow-citizens, that Miltiades obtained the *tyrannis*. 6. Pisis-tratus was called and was considered a despot, because he enjoyed an unbroken tenure-of-power in his own state. 7. We wish the chief-men, though innocent, to be punished, rather than that we should always be in dread.

(*a*) Synt., p. 146, 23.—(*b*) See chap. v., line 4.—(*c*) *Traho*.—(*d*) Synt., p. 137, 14.—(*e*) See chap. ii., line 7.

THEMISTOCLES.

EXERCISE IX.—CHAPTER I.

1. The vices of Themistocles, the son of Neocles, in early man-hood, were atoned for by very great merits, so much so that few are (even to this day) preferred to him. 2. The wife of Neocles was of high birth. 3. A citizen of Halicarnassus married(*a*) Neocles, the father of Themistocles. 4. Themistocles was by no means(*b*) approved of by the Athenians. 5. There is no doubt but that(*c*) Themistocles was disinherited by his father. 6. This insult, how-ever, was blotted out by (his) very great perseverance. 7. Let us

devote ourselves entirely to the state. 8. This disgrace cannot be blotted out, except by (*i.e.*, without) the greatest exertions (*d*). (9.) It is a breach of duty (*e*) to squander (one's) patrimony. 10. Themistocles is said to have often attended the public assembly (*f*). 11. Themistocles is said to have often addressed the public assembly.

(*a*) *Nubo*, which see in Vocab.—(*b*) "By no means," *minime*.—(*c*) *Non est dubium quin*, with the verb in the subj.—(*d*) *Industria*.—(*e*) *Contra officium est*.—(*f*) See note to line 11 of this chap.

EXERCISE X.—CHAPTER II.

1. Let us first crush the Carians, and then, by hunting down the pirates, let us render the sea safe (for navigation). 2. By this means (*a*) we shall both enrich the citizens, and render them very skilful in naval war. 3. What a (great) source-of-security this will prove to the whole of Europe will be discovered in the next (*b*) war. 4. Themistocles prevails on the people to build a fleet of two hundred ships with the public money which was yielded by the mines. 5. The fleet of the Persians consisted of one thousand four hundred and twenty-two ships of war, which were attended (*c*) by three thousand six hundred and eighty-six transports. 6. His land forces, on the contrary, consisted of eight hundred thousand five hundred and fifty-five infantry, and five hundred thousand three hundred and sixty-four cavalry. 7. The king of the Persians determined to wage war on the Athenians by sea and land with all his forces. 8. If (we) Athenians seem (*d*) to be specially the object-of-attack, we shall send (men) to Delphi to ask what-at-all we shall do concerning our affairs. 9. Defend yourselves with wooden walls. 10. Fellow-citizens, convey yourselves and your property on board (your) ships, for they (*e*) are the wooden walls indicated by the priestess.

(*a*) *Sic*, or *in quo*.—(*b*) *Proximus*.—(*c*) *i.e.*, which three thousand six hundred and eighty-six transports followed. Make the numerals agree in case, gender, and number with *onerariae*.—(*d*) *Videor*.—(*e*) See Synt., p. 133, 9.

EXERCISE XI.—CHAPTER III.

1. If this advice displease (*a*) your princes, let us fight by land, 2. The Athenians resolve (*i.e.*, it pleased the Athenians) (*b*) to send picked (*c*) (men) with Leonidas to take possession of Thermopylae, and not allow the Persians to advance farther. 3. Bear up against

the
4. In
miste
lest,
by a
see ()
Athe
their
moth
(*a*)
chap. i
princip

1. X
and at
stroys
and n
the sa
of (*b*).
separa
most f
of the
5. If c
labour
down
their c
city of
secret
the nex
extend
(*a*) See
ways.—(
with the
Synt., p.

1. T
driven f

the violent-onset of the enemy, lest we all perish in this place. 4. In the naval battle off Artemisium the Athenians employed(*d*) Themistocles as their commander. 5. Let us not remain in this place, lest, if part of the enemy's ships double(*e*) Euboea, we be pressed by a twofold danger. 6. The general sends part of his ships to see(*f*) whether(*g*) the barbarians had doubled Euboea. 7. The Athenians set-sail (*i.e.*, departed) from Artemisium, and stationed their fleet out-opposite Athens, near Salamis. 8. The father and mother of Themistocles were of-high-birth (*h*).

(*a*) Pres. subj.—(*b*) Perf. of *placet*, with dat.—(*c*) See Synt., p. 134, 13.—(*d*) See Millt., chap. i., line 9.—(*e*) Synt., p. 131, 8.—(*f*) Synt., p. 133, 11.—(*g*) "Whether," *ne* after principal word of clause, or *si* introducing clause.—(*h*) Synt., p. 132, 5.

EXERCISE XII.—CHAPTER IV.

[Read Syntax, sect. iii, p. 134, sq.]

1. Xerxes, king of the Persians, approaches (*a*) the city (of Athens), and after slaying the women whom he found in the citadel, he destroys it by fire. 2. The men-of-the-fleet did not dare to remain, and most advised that they should abandon the city, and entrust the sacred things and the citadel to the priests, to be taken care of (*b*). 3. All-of-us-together are able to match the barbarians: (if) separated, we shall perish. 4. By night Themistocles sends the most faithful slave he has to announce to Eurybiades, commander of the Lacedaemonians, as from him, that the Persians are in flight. 5. If our adversaries get off, we shall finish the war with greater labour and longer delay, since we shall be compelled to hunt them down one-by-one. 6. The Athenians elected (*c*) Themistocles as their commander. 7. The Persians burned Athens, a most famous (*d*) city of Greece. 8. The barbarians, not thinking that there was any secret trick in the advice (*e*) of Themistocles, engaged in battle the next day in a (part of the) sea so narrow that they could not extend-in-line the immense number of their ships.

(*a*) See note to line 1, and construct the phrase "approaches the city"—in three ways.—(*b*) See Them., chap. ii., line 27, with note. Make the participial adj. agree with the subst. nearest to it.—(*c*) *Creo*. See Synt., p. 134, sect. iii. 3.—(*d*) *Nobilis*. See Synt., p. 135, 6.—(*e*) Put dative after *subesse*; and see Synt. p. 140, 6.

EXERCISE XIII.—CHAPTER V.

1. Themistocles certifies Eurybiades that Darius had been driven from his vantage-ground by him. 2. Themistocles, fearing

that he would be driven from his vantage-ground, gave orders (*a*) that the bridge which the barbarians had made over the Hellespont should be broken down. 3. Let us endeavour (*b*) to convince Darius of this. 4. The Persians returned into Asia in less than thirty-five days, and considered themselves as not having been overcome but preserved by Themistocles. 5. Nepos is of opinion (*censere*) that the victory off Salamis may be compared with the success of Marathon. 6. Themistocles with a small number of ships defeated, off Salamis, a fleet the greatest (which has existed) since men began to record events (*c*). 7. Themistocles and Enrybiades, commanders (*d*) of the combined fleet (*e*) of Greece, engaged in battle with (*f*) the Persians off Salamis, in 480 (*g*) B.C. (*h*), in a place most favourable to themselves, (but) on the contrary most disadvantageous to the enemy (*i*). 8. I do not doubt that (*j*) Themistocles will become (*k*) a very-distinguished (*l*) general (*m*).

(*a*) *Jubeo*, with accus. and infin. See Synt., p. 148, 3.—(*b*) *Conor.*—(*c*) See note on line 12.—(*d*) See Synt., p. 135, 4.—(*e*) See chap. iii., line 5.—(*f*) *Configere cum.*—(*g*) Express the date by the ordinal number, "the four hundred and eightieth," and in the ablative.—(*h*) *Ante Christum natum.*—(*i*) See chap. iv., line 16.—(*j*) *Non dubito quin*, with subj.—(*k*) Fut. subj. of *evado.*—(*l*) *Summus.*—(*m*) Synt., p. 134, sect. iii. 2.

EXERCISE XIV.—CHAPTER VI.

[Read Syntax, sects. iv. and v., p. 135, sqq.]

1. The harbour of Phaleron, which the Athenians hitherto (*a*) used (*b*), was neither capacious nor good. 2. The Athenians, by the advice of Themistocles, formed the three-basined harbour of Piræus. 3. The Athenians surrounded (*c*) the Piræus with walls thirty feet high (*d*) and ten feet broad (*e*). 4. It is said that Themistocles (*f*) restored the walls of Athens at his own especial risk. 5. The Lacedæmonians said that it was inexpedient that the fortifications of Athens should be restored. 6. Fellow-citizens (*g*), I doubt not that the Lacedæmonians will endeavour (*h*) to prevent us from restoring (*i*) the walls of Athens; for (*j*) they wish the Athenians to be as helpless as possible. 7. Let us send ambassadors to Athens (*k*), to forbid (*l*) the walls of the city to be built up. 8. The Athenians promised (*m*) to send ambassadors to the Lacedæmonians about this matter. 9. Let the rest of the ambassadors start by the time that the wall seems raised sufficiently high: meantime, let all of you, bond and free (*n*), engage in the work, and spare (*o*) no place, whether

belong
togeth
(purp
(*a*) *A*
x. 1.—
Express
"Them
p. 135,
and see
137, 10.
Synt., p
Synt., p

1. L
until (*b*)
tion re
his col
done, h
to the
Athens
send to
held (*d*)
detai
enclose
nations
househ
be able
posed (*e*)
the fle
wrecke
unfairly
their ov
Greece.
yon hav
will nev
Lacedæ

(*a*) *Dar*
ait.—(*d*)
(*f*) Synt.
—(*i*) See
line 22.—
2. *b.*—(*m*)
(*n*) Use t

belonging to religion or to individuals, or to the public, and gather together from every quarter whatever you deem suitable for building (purposes).

(a) *Adhuc*.—(b) See Synt., p. 136, 3, and 145, 9; also, as to the mood, p. 158, sect. x. 1.—(c) We can say either *circumdare urbem moenibus*, or *circumdare moenia urbi*. Express this sentence both ways.—(d) See Synt., p. 137, 14.—(e) *Latus*.—(f) Say, "Themistocles is said to have restored."—(g) "Fellow-citizen," *civis*. See Synt., p. 135, sect. iv. 2.—(h) Fut. subj. of *conor*.—(i) Express this phrase in three ways, and see note on line 10.—(j) "For," *enim*, standing second in clause.—(k), Synt., p. 137, 10.—(l) Synt., p. 158, sect. lx. 2, a.—(m) *Polliceor*. See Synt., p. 148, 5.—(n) Read Synt., p. 159, *sq.*, sect. xi. This sentence must be written in the *oratio directa*. See Synt., p. 151, sect. xiii.—(o) P. 139, 4, a.

EXERCISE XV.—CHAPTER VII.

1. Let us do-our-best (a) to protract the time as long as possible, until (b) we hear (or, shall have heard) that not much of the fortification remains to be done. 2. When Themistocles had heard from his colleagues that not much of the fortification remained to be done, he had an interview with the Lacedemonian magistrates, and to them he boldly affirmed that it was necessary for the city of Athens to have walls. 3. It is fair, says (c) Themistocles, that you send to Athens men of good character and of high rank, who have held (d) the highest offices, to examine (e) this matter; meantime, detain me as a hostage. 4. The Athenians, by my advice, have enclosed with walls (a thing which (f), by the common law of nations, they are entitled to do) their country's gods and their household deities, in order that they may (g) the more easily be able (h) to defend them from the enemy. 5. Our city is opposed (i) as a bulwark against the barbarians, and upon it (j) the fleets of the king (of Persia) have twice already been shipwrecked. 6. The Lacedemonians are acting with-bad-policy, and unfairly, inasmuch (k) as they regard rather that which may tend to their own supremacy than that which may be advantageous to all Greece. 7. If you wish (l) to recover your own ambassadors whom you have sent to Athens, give me leave to return; otherwise you will never (m) welcome (n) them to their fatherland again. 8. The Lacedemonian magistrates granted the request (o) of Themistocles.

(a) *Dare operam*.—(b) *Dum*. See Synt., p. 157, 3, and p. 162, 9.—(c) *Inquit* or *ait*.—(d) *Fungor*. See Synt., p. 145, 9.—(e) See Synt., p. 158, sect. ix. 2, a.—(f) Synt., p. 133, 10.—(g) Synt., p. 154, sect. iv. 4.—(h) Synt., p. 160, sect. xii. 2, a.—(i) See note to line 21, and Synt., p. 133, 8.—(j) On *quam*, see latter part of note, line 22.—(k) *Qui*, &c. See Synt., p. 159, sect. ix. 2, c.—(l) See Synt., p. 155, sect. v. 2, b.—(m) Put *nunquam* last in the sentence, to make it specially emphatic.—(n) Use the compound, *recepturus sum*.—(o) See note to line 10.

EXERCISE XVI.—CHAPTER VIII.

1. There is no doubt that Themistocles having been ostracised (*a*), retired to Argos to live. 2. Themistocles lived at Argos (*b*) in great honour after (*c*) he had been expelled from his own state. 3. There is no one but (*d*) believes (*e*) that Themistocles was condemned (*f*) of treason in his absence. 4. Themistocles did not fly-for-refuge to Admetus, king of the Molossi, until (*g*) he saw that he was not sufficiently safe at Corcyra (*h*). 5. The chief men of Corcyra feared (*i*) that war would be proclaimed against them by (*j*) the Lacedemonians and Athenians, on account of Themistocles. 6. Nothing hinders (*k*) Admetus from making-good his promise to Themistocles. 7. Themistocles hoped (*l*) that he would be safe with (*m*) Admetus. 8. Themistocles affirmed that he had never (*n*) entered into an agreement with the Persian king for (the purpose of) crushing Athens. 9. If the Athenians and Lacedemonians should demand your extradition in the name of the states, I shall give orders that you be conducted to Argos, and I shall provide-you-with (*o*) a sufficiently strong guard (as convoy). 10. Themistocles, consulting-for-his-own-safety, embarked on board a ship, unknown to all the crew, and was carried by a very violent storm to Naxos, where the Athenian forces then were (lying). 11. If you keep (*p*) the ship at anchor in the (deep) sea, at a distance from the island, for two days and three nights, I shall return you a recompense for such deserts.

(*a*) *i.e.*, "banished from the state by the votes of the potsherds."—(*b*) Synt., p. 146, 28; also line 8 of this chap.—(*c*) *Postquam*. See Synt., p. 156, sect. vii., 1 and 2.—(*d*) See Synt., p. 155, 5.—(*e*) *Credo*.—(*f*) Accus. with *infin.* See Synt., p. 148, 3, *a*.—(*g*) See Synt., p. 157, 4; also lines 8, 15, and 16 of this chap.—(*h*) Synt., p. 144, 13.—(*i*) See note on Millt., vii. 13.—(*j*) See Synt., p. 144, 6.—(*k*) See Synt., p. 155, 6; also p. 160, xii. 2.—(*l*) *Spero*; for "would be" use *fore*. See Synt., p. 148, 5.—(*m*) "With," *apud*.—(*n*) Say, "Denied that he had ever" (*unquam*).—(*o*) *Do*.—(*p*) See Synt., p. 162, 9.

EXERCISE XVII.—CHAPTERS IX. AND X.

1. Most (writers) have recorded that Admetus did not betray (*a*) Themistocles, his suppliant, and that he warned him to consult for his safety. 2. Nepos has recorded that Themistocles most frankly confessed (*b*), in the presence of Artaxerxes, that, of all the Greeks, *he* had brought the greatest number of calamities on his house: that he the same, however, had done more good services, after Xerxes had begun to be in danger, and he himself in safety. 3. (He said),

moreover
to him,
to Arta
it was c

5. Th
to the
6. The
mistock
of Asia
memory
friends.
10. Th

(*a*) See
(*d*) See S
Synt., p.

1. In
seems t
by all t
in vicer
biades,
that he
able cor
have le
Alcibia
the tim

6. It
house
Hippor
had gi
the ma
number
bestow

(*a*) Us
Them., 12

moreover, that, seeking his friendship, he had then fled for refuge to him, being harassed by all Greece. 4. When Themistocles came (*c*) to Artaxerxes, he begged him to allow him a year's time, and after it was ended to permit him to come to him.

5. Themistocles is said to have devoted himself for one year (*d*) to the literature and the every-day language of the Persians. 6. Themistocles concealed (*e*) nothing from Artaxerxes. 7. Themistocles betook (*f*) himself to Magnesia, a very flourishing (*f*) city of Asia. 8. Many writers have recorded (*i.e.*, handed down to memory) that Themistocles was buried secretly in Attica by his friends. 9. Themistocles lived a happy life (*g*) at Magnesia. 10. The friends of Themistocles grieved for (*h*) his misfortunes.

(*a*) See chap. viii., line 18.—(*b*) See chap. vii. 16.—(*c*) See chap. viii., line 8.—(*d*) See Synt., p. 137, 14.—(*e*) See Synt., p. 136, 6.—(*f*) See Synt., p. 137, 13.—(*g*) See Synt., p. 136, 5.—(*h*) Synt., p. 136, 4.

ALCIBIADES.

EXERCISE XVIII.—CHAPTERS I. AND II.

1. In (the case of) Alcibiades, son of Clinias, the Athenian, Nature seems to have tried what she could produce. 2. It is agreed upon by all that no one (*a*) was more conspicuous than Alcibiades (*b*), either in vices or in good qualities. 3. Nepos has recorded concerning Alcibiades, that he was by far the handsomest man of all his coevals (*c*), that he was qualified for business of every kind, and that he was a very able commander both by sea and land. 4. It is agreed upon by all who have left a record of those times (*d*) that nobody could (*e*) withstand Alcibiades in (public) speaking. 5. Alcibiades adapted himself to the times most adroitly.

6. It is agreed upon by all that Alcibiades was brought up in the house of Pericles, (and) that he was taught by Socrates. 7. To Hipponicus, the father-in-law of Alcibiades, nature and fortune had given very many (*f*) blessings. 8. If I were anxious to have the making of my own lot, I could not think of blessings more in number or greater in value than nature and fortune have (already) bestowed upon me.

(*a*) Use *nemo*.—(*b*) Synt., p. 146, 20.—(*c*) *i.e.*, "of all of his own age."—(*d*) See Them., ix., line 3.—(*e*) Accus. with infin.—(*f*) *Plurimus*.

EXERCISE XIX.—CHAPTERS III. AND IV.

1. There is no doubt that Alcibiades was chosen commander to conduct the war which the Athenians had declared against the Syracusans, in conjunction with (a) two colleagues, Nicias and Lamachus. 2. Nothing hinders us (b) from throwing down in one night all the statues of Hermes which are in the town of Athens. 3. Let us throw down all the Hermae except the one which is before the door of Alcibiades. 4. There were some who thought (c) Alcibiades to be both more powerful and more exalted than (d) a private person. 5. There were some who believed that Alcibiades celebrated the mysteries in his own house,—a thing which (e) was an impiety according to the practice of the Athenians. 6. Let us endeavour (f) to lay as many as possible (g) under obligation to us by our liberality and our service in the law courts.

7. If you wish any action to be taken concerning me, rather hold the inquiry on me while still with you, than accuse me in my absence on a charge which-will-make-me-detested (h). 8. His enemies accused (i) Alcibiades in his absence of throwing down the statues of Mercury. 9. Alcibiades was condemned to death (j) by the Athenians in his absence. 10. Alcibiades being accused (k) by the Athenians of wishing (l) to crush the liberty of the people, was conveyed in a trireme to Cumae (m), in Italy; thence he went first to Elis and then to Thebes.

(a) *Cum*.—(b) *Synt.*, p. 155, 6.—(c) *Synt.*, p. 159, ix. 3.—(d) See *Synt.*, p. 146, 21.—(e) *Synt.*, p. 133, 10.—(f) *Conor*.—(g) *Quam plurimus*.—(h) *i.e.*, "on a charge of envy." See note.—(i) See lines 9 and 10.—(j) See line 19.—(k) *Reus factus*.—(l) See lines 9 and 10.—(m) *Cum-ae, -arum, f.*

EXERCISE XX.—CHAPTERS V. AND VI.

1. It cannot be but that (a) Alcibiades, induced by love for his father-land, should carry on war against (b) the Persians. 2. The Lacedaemonians were not able to conceal (c) this any longer from Alcibiades. 3. Alcibiades is (a man) of such penetration as not to be able to be deceived. 4. Alcibiades was soon admitted into (d) the most intimate friendship with Tissaphernes, King Darius' general. 5. The Lacedaemonians beg peace of the Athenians (e). 6. It cannot be denied that (f) the Lacedaemonians lost three hundred triremes, which, being captured, came into the power of the Athenians.

7. It
coast o
8. T
meet A
9. The
come a
not a
agreed
Alcibia
the par
not to k

(a) *Fie*
136, 6.—
with sub
it imper
(k) See c

1. It
war was
pleasure
war by
biades

4. Whe
favour.

tained)

6. I fea
not con

that the
and that

to Pacty
state to

himself

9. Let
that he

should o
disaster

is a risk
by one b

(a) See
(d) See lin

7. It cannot be denied that there were many Greek cities on the coast of Asia.

8. The whole community went down to the Piræus (in a body) to meet Alcibiades, just as if he was the only one who (g) had arrived.

9. The citizens were convinced (h) that their present prosperity had come about by means of Alcibiades. 10. The Lacedæmonians are not a match for the Athenians, either by sea or land. 11. It is agreed upon, by all who have written a history of these times, that Alcibiades received with tears the (expression of) kindly feelings (on the part) of his fellow-citizens. 12. No one is so uncivilized (i) as not to be influenced (j) by love for (k) his native country.

(a) *Fieri non potest, quin*, with the subj.—(b) See chap. iv., line 24.—(c) Synt., p. 136, 6.—(d) *i.e.*, "came into."—(e) See Synt., p. 136, 7.—(f) *Negari non potest, quin*, with subj.—(g) Express as in the text, "as if he alone had arrived."—(h) Express it impersonally, as in the text, "It was persuaded to," &c.—(i) *Ferus*—(j) *Duco*.—(k) See chap. v., line 4.

EXERCISE XXI.—CHAPTERS VII. AND VIII.

1. It is agreed upon by all that the whole state at peace and at war was given over to Alcibiades, to be managed according to his pleasure. 2. It cannot be denied that Alcibiades conducted the war by no means to-the-satisfaction of his fellow-citizens. 3. Alcibiades imagines that there is nothing which he cannot effect. 4. Whence it came to pass that Alcibiades fell again into disfavour. 5. There is no doubt that the extravagant opinion (entertained) of his talent and valour was a cause of misfortune to Alcibiades. 6. I fear that the citizens will lay (a) on me the blame of all things not conducted to their satisfaction. 7. When Alcibiades heard that the Athenians had deprived (b) him of his office in his absence, and that they had appointed another in his room, he betook himself to Pactye. 8. Alcibiades was the first (man) of a (*i.e.*, any) Greek state to penetrate into (the heart of) Thrace, and to procure for himself the solid (c) friendship of some of the princes of that land.

9. Let us protract the war as long as possible. 10. Philocles felt that he would be (a person) of no weight with the army if Alcibiades should drive the Lacedæmonians from the (dry) land. 11. If any disaster (d) occur, I alone shall be accused of that fault. 12. There is a risk (e) of the Lacedæmonians putting an end to the whole war by one blow.

(a) See chap. vi., line 6. and vii. 8.—(b) Accus. with infin.—(c) *i.e.*, "great."—(d) See lines 17 and 18.—(e) See line 20.

EXERCISE XXII.—CHAPTERS IX. AND X.

1. After the defeat of the Athenians, Alcibiades hoped to be able to conceal his fortune most easily if he were to hide (*a*) himself in the heart of Thrace. 2. It cannot be denied that Alcibiades derived fifty talents of revenue from Fort Gryniium every year. 3. The citizens will not allow Lacedemon, though conquered, to be in bondage to Athens. 4. Cyrus was at that time secretly preparing (for) war against his brother, the king of the Persians, with the help of the Lacedemonians.

5. Trusty men are sent into Asia to Lysander by Critias and the other rulers (*i.e.*, tyrants) of the Athenians, to certify him (*b*) that Alcibiades is urged by his every thought (*c*) to liberate Athens. 6. Let Alcibiades be delivered up to me dead or alive. 7. Trusty men were sent to slay Susametes and Bagaens. 8. Susametes and Bagaens entrusted to the people of-the-neighbourhood the task of slaying Alcibiades. 9. Snatch-hastily and throw into the fire all the garments which you have at hand, that (*d*) we may escape (*i.e.*, pass) the violence of the blaze. 10. Most writers have recorded (*e*) that Alcibiades died when he was about thirty-eight years old.

(*a*) Pluperf. subj.—(*b*) Synt., p. 160, sect. xii., 2.—(*c*) Chap. ix., line 13.—(*d*) *Quo*, with the subj.—(*e*) Them., ix. 1.

HANNIBAL.

EXERCISE XXIII.—CHAPTERS I. AND II.

1. It cannot be denied that the Roman people surpassed all (other) nations in valour and in endurance (*a*). (2.) Nepos has recorded that the Carthaginians always came off victorious, as often as they engaged-in-battle with the Roman people in Italy. 3. There is no doubt that Hannibal kept up against the Romans his father's enmity, (which had been) left to him, as it were, by inheritance. 4. I shall lay down my life sooner than (I shall forget) my father's enmity against the Romans.

5. Many generals, not to mention (chap. ii. 1) Hannibal, have been banished from their country, and have needed the aid of strangers. 6. It is true that Antiochus was the most powerful king of all in

these da
very litt
father, I
20), tha
nibal ga
bal aske
with the

(*a*) *For*

1. AD
whole an
on Hann
very lar
less than
5. The
ing (the
away fro
have con
his forc
Romans
them-fro
line 6) I
engaged
name (*j*)
Etruria,

(*a*) Say,
p. 138, 19.
(*e*) See no
(*j*) *Pello*.—
facere iter.

1. No
Ca) ua.
posed-on
camp for
inspired
one dare
5. Not v

(155)

these days. 7. Hannibal related to Antiochus that (*b*) when he was a very little boy, not more than nine years old, (line 11, chap. ii.,) his father, Hamilcar, ordered him to swear, whilst he held the altar (line 20), that he would never be at friendship with the Romans. 8. Hannibal gave to his father the promise which he demanded. 9. Hannibal asked Antiochus (line 15) whether he wished to be at friendship with the Romans. 10. Do not conceal from me your plan (*c*).

(*a*) *Fortitudo*.—(*b*) Accus. with infin.—(*c*) *Consilium*.

EXERCISE XXIV.—CHAPTERS III. AND IV.

1. After the death of Hasdrubal, Hannibal commanded the whole army. 2. When Hasdrubal was slain, the soldiers conferred on Hannibal the supreme command. 3. Having mustered (*a*) three very large armies, he started for Italy. 4. When Hannibal was less than twenty-five years old he crossed (*b*) the Alps with an army. 5. The Alpine-tribes endeavour to prevent Hannibal from crossing (the Alps). 6. It cannot be denied that Hannibal let no one away from him without conquering him. 7. Hannibal is said to have constructed roads over (*c*) the Alps, by which he might transport his forces into (*d*) Italy. 8. Hannibal engaged in battle with the Romans, in 218 B.C. (*e*), on-the-banks-of (*f*) the Ticinus, and drove-them-from-the-field (*g*). 9. In (*h*) the next three years (chap. iii., line 6) Hannibal routed (*i*) the Romans as often as (chap. i. 5) he engaged with them in Italy. 10. Many historians of very weighty name (*j*) have recorded that Hannibal, when marching (*k*) through Etruria, was affected with a very severe disease of the eyes.

(*a*) Say, "Three very large armies having mustered;" abl. absolute—(*b*) Synt., p. 138, 19.—(*c*) *Per*. See Caes. Bell. Gall., p. 48, i. 10, 11.—(*d*) Synt., p. 138, 18.—(*e*) See notes *g* and *h* to Ex. on chap. v. of Them.—(*f*) *Apud*. Synt., p. 138, 17.—(*g*) *Pello*.—(*h*) Synt., p. 137, 15.—(*i*) *Profligo*.—(*j*) See Ale., xi. 1.—(*k*) "To march," *facere iter*.

EXERCISE XXV.—CHAPTERS V. AND VI.

1. Not long afterwards (chap. iv. 11), Hannibal returned to Capua. 2. It is agreed upon among historians that Hannibal imposed-on Fabius, a most crafty general. 3. Hannibal kept his camp for several days in the mountains near Rome. 4. Hannibal inspired such terror into the Romans, that for several years (*a*) no one dared to meet him in a pitched battle. (See line 19, chap. v.) 5. Not very many days after (*b*) the battle of Cannae (*c*), which was

fought (*d*) in 216 B.C., Hannibal started for Capua. 6. It is tedious to enumerate the exploits (*e*) of Hannibal in Italy. 7. It is better (*f*) to put an end to the war by treaty (*g*) for the present, so that we may at an after time engage (in it) with-greater-resources (*h*). 8. Hannibal not only escaped the Numidians, who had plotted-against-his-life (*i*), but he also crushed them. 9. The Carthaginians were defeated by Scipio at Zama. 10. Hannibal escaped from the battle in-company-with some Numidians.

(*a*) *Per aliquot annos.* See Synt., p. 137, 16.—(*b*) Line 11, chap. v.—(*c*) Line 19, chap. v.—(*d*) "Was fought," perf. indic. of *fiō*.—(*e*) *Res gestae*.—(*f*) *Praestat*, with infin.—(*g*) "Put-an-end-to-by-treaty," *componere*.—(*h*) Use the proper case and number of *valentior*.—(*i*) *Insidiar*.

EXERCISE XXVI.—CHAPTERS VII. AND VIII.

[Read Syntax, sect vi., p. 139, *sqq.*]

1. There is no one but believes (*a*) that Hannibal commanded (*b*) the army of the Carthaginians. 2. In the consulship of P. Sulpicius and C. Aurelius (*c*) the Carthaginians sent ambassadors to Rome, to beg that the prisoners should be restored. 3. Return (our) thanks to (*d*) the Senate and Roman people for having (*i.e.*, because they have) made peace with us. 4. The prisoners we will not restore, because you retain Hannibal, (a man) of-most-hostile-feelings to the Roman name (*e*), in your army with military command. 5. It cannot be denied that the war was undertaken by Hannibal's exertions. 6. From the new taxes (their) money has been paid to the Romans, in accordance with the treaty, and there is also a surplus to be laid up in the treasury. 7. It is agreed upon by all, that Hannibal embarked secretly on board a ship, and escaped into Syria to Antiochus. 8. Hannibal prevails (*f*) on Antiochus to start for Italy with an army. 9. If, Antiochus, you follow (*i.e.*, obey) (*g*) my counsels in the management of the war, you will contend for empire with the Romans nearer the Po (*h*) than the Orontes (*i*). 10. The wind blew-right-against (*j*) Hannibal when starting from Rhodes (*k*). 11. Hannibal humoured (*l*) Antiochus, although he saw that he was attempting many things indiscreetly.

(*a*) Them., chap. viii.—(*b*) See Synt., p. 139, 4, *d*.—(*c*) Say, "P. Sulpicius and C. Aurelius being consuls."—(*d*) See Synt., p. 139, 2; also p. 141, 14.—(*e*) Synt., p. 140, 8, *a*.—(*f*) Synt., p. 139, 4, *c*.—(*g*) See Synt., p. 162, 9; also, p. 139, 4, *b*.—(*h*) *Padius*. See Synt., p. 140, 9; also, Milt., note 7, chap. vii.—(*i*) See *Orontes*, in Vocab.—(*j*) See Synt., p. 140, 7, *b*.—(*k*) See *Rhodus*, in Vocab.—(*l*) See Synt., p. 140, 7, *b*, and Them., vii. 10, note.

3. I fe
put (*b*) m
betake ou
concernin
amphorae
and silve
vents us
king of I
Eumenes
7. By Ha
collected
men-of-th
king Eum
king sail
that it wi
a great re
arms, on

(*a*) Pres.
(*e*) Perf. pa
versus, with
(*k*) See line

EX.

1. A c
Hannibal
all the I
2. Emmer
him into
Eumenes
ity with I
until (*e*) h
which we
body doub
stratagem
6. The
that he w
7. The R

EXERCISE XXVII.—CHAPTERS IX. AND X.

1. I fear that Antiochus will give (*a*) me up to the Romans, if I put (*b*) myself in his power. 2. Let us deliberate where we are to betake ourselves (*c*). 3. A report had spread among (*d*) the Cretans concerning the money which Hannibal carried with him. 4. Many amphorae filled (*e*) with lead, whose tops he covered over with gold and silver, he deposited in the temple of Diana. 5. Nothing prevents us from (*f*) taking such a plan (as the following). 6. Prusias, king of Bithynia, was waging war both by sea and land against (*g*) Eumenes, king of Pergamum, who was most friendly to the Romans (*h*). 7. By Hannibal's orders (*i*), very many poison-charged serpents are collected alive, and put into clay jars. 8. Hannibal ordered (*j*) the men-of-the-fleet to do nothing else (*k*) than rush against the ship of king Eumenes. 9. I shall see to it that you know in what ship the king sails. 10. If you either capture or slay Eumenes, I promise that it will bring (*l*) to you a great reward, (*literally*, "be to you for a great reward.") 11. Prusias was not a match for (*m*) Eumenes in arms, on account of the alliance of the Romans.

(*a*) Pres. subj.—(*b*) Synt., p. 162, 9.—(*c*) Synt., p. 160, xii. 2, *a*.—(*d*) Inter.—(*e*) Perf. particip.—(*f*) See Synt., p. 155, 6.—(*g*) *Cum*, with *abl.*; or *contra*, or *adversus*, with *accus.*—(*h*) Synt., p. 140, 8, *a*.—(*i*) *Jussu Hannibalis*.—(*j*) See line 17.—(*k*) See line 3 of chap. x.—(*l*) See Synt., p. 140, 10.—(*m*) Synt., p. 140, 8, *b*.

EXERCISE XXVIII.—CHAPTERS XI, XII, AND XIII.

1. A courier bearing (*i.e.*, with) a herald's wand was sent by Hannibal to Eumenes, in a boat, that it might be made evident to all the Bithynians in what spot the king of Pergamum was. 2. Eumenes will find nothing in the letter but what tends to turn him into ridicule. 3. There is no doubt (*a*) that the ship of king Eumenes was attacked by the Bithynians in-a-mass (*b*), in conformity with Hannibal's orders. 4. Eumenes did not secure his safety until (*c*) he had betaken himself within (the lines of) his own guards, which were stationed on the nearest (part of the) shore. 5. Nobody doubts that Hannibal conquered the fleet of king Eumenes by stratagem.

6. The Romans send ambassadors to king Prusias, to beg him that he would surrender to them Hannibal, their greatest enemy. 7. The Romans surrounded with a great number of armed men (*d*)

the fort which king Prusias had given to Hannibal as a gift. 8. Hannibal, fearing that the Romans would surround his house with a large number of armed-men, ordered the slave to tell him whether all the outlets were beset. 9. Hannibal is said to have devoted no inconsiderable time to literature. 10. Hannibal died (*i.e.*, fell asleep) in his sixty-fourth year, in the consulship of M. Claudius Marcellus and Q. Fabius Labeo.

(a) See *Imit. Ex.* on *Them.* i., note c.—(b) *Universi*.—(c) *Donec*. See *Synt.*, p. 156, sect. vii. 1 and 3.—(d) *Armatus*.

PA

1. Caesar
in his day
was inha
third by
language.
mans inc
as tend t
are next
Belgians
starts (*h*)

(a) See *N*
or *suis temp*
Synt., p. 14
gning.

1. Org
his fellow
2. It is ve
ourselves
sovereign

a gift.
house
ll him
ve de-
d (*i.e.*,
audius

Synt., p.

C A E S A R.

B O O K I.

PART I.—THE HELVETIAN WAR.

EXERCISE XXIX.—CHAPTER I.

[Read Syntax, sect. vii., p. 141, *sqq.*]

1. Caesar has recorded (*a*) that Gaul, in-its-widest-extent (*b*), was in his day (*c*) divided into three parts. 2. One portion of Gaul (*d*) was inhabited by the Belgæ, the second by the Aquitani, and the third by the Celts. 3. The Gauls were called Celts in their own language. 4. The Belgæ used-to-carry on (*e*) war with the Germans incessantly. 5. It is a breach of duty to import such things as tend to effeminate the minds of the citizens. 6. The Germans are next neighbours (*f*) to the Belgians. 7. The territory of the Belgians looks to the north-east (*g*). 8. The territory of the Gauls starts (*h*) at the river Rhine.

(*a*) See Nep. Hann., xiii. 10, and Them., ix. 1.—(*b*) *i.e.*, *omnis*.—(*c*) *Sua ætate*, or *suis temporibus*.—(*d*) See Synt., p. 142, 5.—(*e*) See Synt., p. 127, 19, *b*.—(*f*) See Synt., p. 140, 8, *b*.—(*g*) *i.e.*, between the north and the east.—(*h*) *i.e.*, takes its beginning.

EXERCISE XXX.—CHAPTER II.

1. Orgetorix, by far the wealthiest of the Helvetii (*a*), prevails on his fellow-citizens to leave their territory (*b*), with all their resources. 2. It is very easy for us (*c*), since we excel all (*d*) in valour, to possess-ourselves (*e*) of the whole of Gaul. 3. Let us endeavour to seize the sovereignty of all Gaul. 4. Nothing hinders us from (*f*) gaining the

sovereignty of the whole of Gaul, since we excel all in military-provess. 5. The river Rhine, (which is) very broad and very deep, forms-the-boundary-between (*i.e.*, divides) the Germans and the Helvetii. 6. The Helvetii could not easily wage war on the neighbouring-states, because they were hemmed in on all sides by the natural-features (*g*) of the district. 7. On which point the Helvetii, being desirous of (*h*) making-war, are filled with great regret. 8. It cannot be denied that the territory of the kingdom is limited (*i.e.*, narrow), which extends in length three hundred and sixty-seven miles, (and) in breadth two hundred and thirty-eight.

(*a*) Synt., p. 142, 5, and 6, c.—(*b*) Synt., p. 146, 22 and 23.—(*c*) See p. 140, 8, *a*—(*d*) See p. 139, 4, *d*.—(*e*) See p. 145, 10.—(*f*) See p. 155, 6.—(*g*) *i.e.*, *natura*.—(*h*) See p. 143, 8.

EXERCISE XXXI.—CHAPTER III.

1. The Helvetii prepare those things which have reference (*a*) to their expedition. 2. Let us buy up as great a number as possible of horses and of oxen. 3. A period-of-two-years, as it appears (*b*) to me, will be enough to complete these arrangements (*c*). 4. I shall endeavour to persuade Casticus to seize the sovereign power among the Sequani. 5. The daughter of Orgetorix married (*d*) Dumnorix, the Aeduan. 6. There is no doubt that Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was very much beloved by (*e*) the people. 7. It is very easy for us (*f*) to accomplish our attempts, because I myself am about to obtain supreme-military-power in my own state. 8. The chief power in the state was for several (*g*) years held by Catamantaledes, the father of Casticus. 9. I shall prove to you that to gain the sovereignty, each (*h*) in his own state, is (a matter) of very easy accomplishment. 10. The Romans made themselves masters of all Gaul in the year 50 B.C.

(*a*) See p. 160, sect. xii. 2. *a*.—(*b*) *Ut mihi videtur*.—(*c*) *Res*.—(*d*) See *nubo* in Vocab.—(*e*) See p. 141, 11.—(*f*) See p. 149, sect. x. 2.—(*g*) *Aliquot*.—(*h*) *Quisque*.

EXERCISE XXXII.—CHAPTERS IV. AND V.

1. According to the customs (see p. 145, 11) of the Helvetii, it behoved traitors (*a*) to plead (*b*) their cause in chains. 2. It is the duty (*c*) of the magistrates (*d*) to throw traitors into prison (*e*). 3. Orgetorix determined to bring together to (his) trial as great a number as possible of his clients and debtors; in order that (*f*) by their means (*g*) he might

the m
cause.
had co
three t
many v
were n
had co
7. L
depart
they w
the m
except
the ho
to bra
individ
month

(*a*) *Pa*
Milt. vii.
sect. ix.
and 23.—
p. 141, 1

1. T
from h
a singl
the m
impuni
by C.
toward
on the
is hast
intenti
since v
do so
there v
by whi
the en

(*a*) *Se*
sum, qui

the more easily save himself from (the necessity of) pleading his cause. 4. On the day appointed for pleading his cause, Orgetorix had collected from every quarter all his clients, to (the number of) three thousand five hundred and forty-seven men. 5. There were many who thought (*h*) that Orgetorix committed (*i*) suicide. 6. There were not wanting suspicions, as the Helvetii thought, that Orgetorix had committed (*j*) suicide.

7. Let us endeavour to do that which we have determined, viz., to depart from (*k*) our territory. 8. When the Helvetii thought that they were ready to start (*l*), they resolved to burn all their towns to the number of twenty-three. 9. By burning up (*m*) all the corn, except what we are to take with us, let us deprive the people of (*n*) the hope of returning home, in order that we may be the more ready to brave all dangers. 10. The magistrates gave orders that each individual should carry with him from home ground corn for two months (supply).

(*a*) *Patriæ proditor*.—(*b*) *Infin.*—(*c*) See p. 142, 4.—(*d*) *Magistratus*.—(*e*) See *Nep. Milt.* vii.—(*f*) See p. 154, sect. iv. 4.—(*g*) See p. 144, 6, with remark.—(*h*) See p. 159, sect. ix. 3.—(*i*) *Accus.* with *infin.*—(*j*) See p. 160, sect. xii. 2, *b*.—(*k*) See p. 146, 22 and 23.—(*l*) See chap. iii. 2.—(*m*) See p. 151, sect. xii. 2, *d*, and 3.—(*n*) *Tollo*. See p. 141, 14, with 139, 3.

EXERCISE XXXIII.—CHAPTERS VI. AND VII.

1. There are in all two routes by which the Helvetii can depart from home. 2. One of these (*a*) is (so) narrow and difficult that (*b*) a single file of waggons can scarce be drawn along it. 3. I am not the man (*c*) to allow the enemy to pass through my territory with impunity (*d*). 4. The Allobroges, who had been subdued in B.C. 61, by C. Pomptinus, the praetor, were not yet friendly-disposed (*e*) towards the Romans. 5. Let all assemble on the bank of the Rhine on the 25th of June. 6. It was reported to the Helvetii that Caesar is hastening into Gaul by as great marches as he can. 7. It is our intention to march through the province, without (doing) any injury, since we have no other way. 8. We beg that we may be allowed to do so with your consent. 9. Caesar replied to the Helvetii that there was another route, (viz.,) through the (country of the) Sequani, by which they could depart from home. 10. It is the intention of the enemy to break down the bridge which is over the river Danube.

(*a*) See p. 142, 6, *c*.—(*b*) See note on line 4, and references to *Syntax*.—(*c*) *Non is sum, qui*. See p. 158, sect. ix. 2, *b*.—(*d*) *Impune*.—(*e*) See note 11, with reference.

EXERCISE XXXIV.—CHAPTERS VIII. AND IX.

1. Caesar had with him one legion and (those) soldiers whom he had imposed on the province (to levy). 2. Caesar ran a wall of twenty-two miles (long), and eighteen feet high, from Mount Jura to the Lake of Geneva. 3. The ambassadors return to Caesar on the day which he had appointed. 4. I cannot, in-accordance-with-the-practice and precedents of the Roman people, grant a route to any (individual) through the province; and if you endeavour to use violence I shall prevent you. 5. It is your duty (a) to prevent the Helvetii, if they endeavour to cross against my will. 6. The Helvetii say that they cannot (b) break through the defences (c) of the Romans. 7. Since (d) we are not able to burst through, let us abandon this attempt. 8. Dumnorix says that he is not anxious for political changes. 9. There is no doubt that Dumnorix wished to have as many individuals as possible under obligation to him by his services. 10. The daughter of Orgetorix, whom Dumnorix married, was like (e) her father (in disposition).

(a) See p. 142, 4, *Exc.*—(b) See line 9 of chap. viii.—(c) *Munitio.*—(d) *Quum.*—(e) See p. 143, 9

EXERCISE XXXV.—CHAPTERS X. AND XI.

1. It is reported to Caesar that the Helvetii are anxious for political-change. 2. If the Helvetii were-to-make their march through Aednan ground into the territory of the Santones, Caesar well-knew that it would be attended with the greatest danger to the province. 3. The Helvetii are certified that it is Caesar's intention to stop them in the march (a). 4. It was reported to the Helvetii that Caesar had appointed T. Labienus to guard (b) that fortification which he had made, so long as he himself should be absent (c). 5. Caesar appointed T. Labienus, his lieutenant, to the command of the two legions which he had very recently (d) enrolled in Italy. 6. Caesar, after defeating (e) the Alpine-tribes (f) in very many engagements, reached Lyons (g) on the eighteenth day, from Ocelum. 7. The Aedui certify Caesar that they are not able to defend themselves and their towns from the Helvetii. 8. The Aedui send as ambassadors to Caesar the most noble men of the state, to beg (h) assistance. 9. We have on all occasions deserved well (i) of the Roman people; our fields, therefore (j), should not be laid waste,

our chi
of you
territor

(a) Ch
—(d) "V
(h) Expr
(j) Haqu

1. T
itself in
current
it (e) in
the He
and bo
that th
forces o
the He
concea
the cor
made t
was th
Roman

8. Ca
the gre
the rive
the for
Helvet
constru

(a) Ex
tus.—(d)
136, 8.—
6.—(j) S
had brou
p. 143, 8

T
"Supp
lay asi

our children led into bondage, and our towns sacked almost in sight of your army. 10. Nothing is left (*k*) to us but the soil of our territory.

(*a*) Chap. x., line 13.—(*b*) "Appointed-to-guard," *praeficio*.—(*c*) See Nep. Milt., iii. 4.—(*d*) "Very recently," *nuperrime*.—(*e*) Abl. absolute.—(*f*) *Alpici*.—(*g*) *Lugdunum*.—(*h*) Express this phrase in the different ways indicated in note †, p. 148.—(*i*) *Bene*.—(*j*) *Ilaque*.—(*k*) On the gen. *reliqui*, see p. 142, 5 and 6, *a*.

EXERCISE XXXVI.—CHAPTERS XII. AND XIII.

1. The Saone, a river of amazing gentleness-of-current (*a*), empties itself into the Rhone at (*b*) Lyons. 2. Such (*c*) is the gentleness-of-current of the Saone that you cannot decide (*d*) by merely looking at it (*e*) in which direction it flows. 3. The scouts certify Caesar that the Helvetii are (in the act of) crossing over (*f*) the Arar on rafts and boats (which they have) constructed. 4. It is reported to Caesar that the Helvetii have already transported (*g*) two-thirds (*h*) of their forces over the Saone. 5. Caesar is certified by (*i*) (his) scouts that the Helvetii have betaken themselves to flight, and have fled-for-concealment to the nearest woods. 6. In our fathers' days, L. Cassius, the consul, had been slain by the Helvetii, and his army had been made to pass under the (*j*) yoke. 7. The canton of the Tigurini (*k*) was the first to pay full satisfaction for having (*l*) inflicted on (*m*) the Roman people a notable disaster.

8. Caesar accomplished in one day what the Helvetii had with the greatest difficulty done in eighteen days,—viz., the crossing of the river. 9. If you continue to harass us in war, bear in mind (*n*) the former defeat of the Roman army, and the tried (*o*) valour of the Helvetii. 10. Caesar led across his army by a bridge which he had constructed over the Saone.

(*a*) Express this phrase as indicated in p. 142, 7, and 146, 16.—(*b*) *Apud*.—(*c*) *Tantus*.—(*d*) See p. 154, iv. 3.—(*e*) *i.e.*, "by the eyes."—(*f*) See p. 138, 19.—(*g*) See p. 136, 8.—(*h*) "Two-thirds," *i.e.*, two parts (viz., out of three).—(*i*) See p. 144, viii. 6.—(*j*) See p. 138, 18.—(*k*) *i.e.*, the Tigurine canton.—(*l*) *i.e.*, "because (*quod*) it had brought." See p. 153, sect. viii., 1, *b*.—(*m*) See p. 141, 14, and 139, 4, *d*.—(*n*) See p. 143, 8, *b*.—(*o*) "Tried," *i.e.*, "of old standing," "pristine."

EXERCISE XXXVII.—CHAPTER XIV.

Turn into the *direct narrative*, from middle of line 7, thus:—
"Supposing (*a*) I be willing to forget the former insult, can I also lay aside the recollection of recent acts of wrong—that against my

will you have endeavoured to force a way through the province, (and) that you have harassed the Aedui, the Ambarri, and the Allobroges? That you boast so insolently because of your own victory, and that you are amazed at my having so long borne your acts of injury without (exacting) punishment, (these circumstances) point in the same direction. For, in order that men may experience more grievous affliction in consequence of a change of circumstances, the immortal gods are in the habit of granting greater prosperity sometimes, and a more lengthened exemption from punishment, to those whom they wish to chastise for their crimes. Although these things are so, yet if hostages are given to me by you, so that I may distinctly understand that you will do what you promise, and if you give satisfaction to the Aedui for the wrongs you have done them and their allies, likewise if you satisfy the Allobroges, (then) I shall make peace with you."

(a) *i.e.*, if.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.—CHAPTERS XV. AND XVI.

1. The day after, Caesar shifted his camp from that place, and sent forward all his cavalry to see (a) into what parts the enemy had marched. 2. The Roman cavalry joined battle with the rear-guard of the Helvetii in a place most disadvantageous to themselves, (but) most favourable (b) for the enemy. 3. The rear-guard of the Helvetii provoked the Romans to battle. 4. For about twenty-two days not more than nine or ten miles intervened (each day) between the rear of the Helvetii and the Roman van. 5. It is Caesar's interest (c) to restrain his men from battle for the present.

6. Meantime Caesar sends ambassadors to demand (d) from the Allobroges (e) the grain which they had promised on the public credit. 7. The Romans were not able to have the benefit (f) of that grain, which Caesar had arranged to be brought up (g) the Saone in ships. 8. The day is at hand on which we must measure out corn to the soldiers. 9. Caesar accused the Aedui of treachery (h). 10. A great quantity of timber (i) is every year (j) carried up the Rhine in rafts.

(a) See note 4, with reference; also p. 160, xii. 2, b.--(b) See Nep. Them., iv. 16.—(c) See p. 143, 8, c.—(d) P. 148, note †.—(e) See note 1, with reference.—(f) *Uter*.—(g) Use *curo* with the gerundive, as in chap. xiii., line 2. On *Avare* in abl., see note 6, with reference.—(h) See p. 143, 12.—(i) *Magna vis arborum*.—(j) *Quotannis*.

EXERCISE XXXIX.—CHAPTERS XVII. AND XVIII.

1. There are some individuals whose influence is (*a*) all powerful with the common people. 2. These persons have more power in a private station than the magistrates themselves. 3. Why don't you (*b*) contribute the corn which it is your duty to supply? 4. I well know with how great danger I have publicly-declared the matter to Caesar; and for that very reason I have concealed it as long as I could.

5. There is no doubt that Dumnorix is a man of the greatest daring (*c*), in great favour with the people on account of his generosity, (and) eager for (*d*) political change. 6. Dumnorix has for several years had all the taxes of the Aedui, (having) bought (them) up for a small sum (*e*). 7. The influence of Dumnorix is very great, not only at home (*f*), but also in the neighbouring states. 8. Caesar is assured by Liscus that Dumnorix is anxious for political-change. 9. The Aedui appointed Dumnorix to the command of the cavalry, which they sent to Caesar's assistance (*g*). 10. A man of very high rank and very great power among the Bituriges had married the mother of Dumnorix.

(*a*) See p. 159, ix. 3.—(*b*) See p. 155, note *.—(*c*) See p. 142, 7, and 146, 16.—(*d*) See p. 143, 8.—(*e*) See last two lines of note 8, with references; also p. 143, 11.—(*f*) p. 144, 14.—(*g*) See p. 140, 10.

EXERCISE XL.—CHAPTERS XIX. AND XX.

[Read Syntax, sect. viii., p. 144, *sqq.*]

1. To my suspicions the most undoubted facts are added. 2. Dumnorix saw to it (*a*) that hostages should be given between the Sequani and Helvetii. 3. The lieutenant did all these things without my order (*b*) and (that) of the king. 4. Dumnorix was accused of treason (*c*) by the chief men (*d*) of the Aedui. 5. I think there is sufficient cause (*e*) why I should either punish (*f*) him myself, or request the state to do so (*i.e.*, to punish him). 6. I fear that I should offend (*f*) the mind of Divitiacus by punishing (*g*) his brother Dumnorix. 7. I have the greatest confidence in regard to all matters (*h*) in C. Valerius Procillus (*i*), the chief man of the Gallic province.

8. Divitiacus was older (*j*) than his brother (*k*) Dumnorix. 9. Although no one experiences more grief (*l*) from this circumstance

than I (do), yet I am much-moved by brotherly affection (*g*).
 10. Your friendship is of so great value (*m*) to me, that at your entreaties (*n*), I pardon the past-faults of your brother Dimmorix.
 11. Divitiacens in tears begged of Caesar with (*o*) many words not to come to any decision of a severe character (*p*) in regard to Dimmorix. 12. I regard the favour of Dimmorix very lightly (*q*).

(*a*) *i.e.*, "took care."—(*b*) P. 145, 11.—(*c*) P. 143, 12, and p. 144, 13.—(*d*) P. 144, 3 and 6.—(*e*) P. 142, 6, *b*.—(*f*) P. 160, xii. 2, *a*.—(*g*) P. 141, 2.—(*h*) P. 141, vii. 2, *b*.—(*i*) P. 140, 7, *a*.—(*j*) P. 145, 12.—(*k*) P. 146, 20.—(*l*) P. 142, 6, *a*.—(*m*) P. 143, 10.—(*n*) P. 141, 14.—(*o*) P. 144, 3.—(*p*) See line 2 of chap. xx.—(*q*) P. 143, 10.

EXERCISE XLI.—CHAPTERS XXI. AND XXII.

1. The next (*a*) day the scouts certified Caesar that the Helvetii had taken-up-a-position at the foot of the hill, three miles from his camp (*b*). 2. It was reported to Caesar that the ascent of the mountain was easy if one went round to the opposite side (*c*). 3. There are some who say (*d*) that Publius Considius was very skilled in (*e*) military tactics. 4. The Helvetii sent (a person) to discover where (*f*) Caesar had pitched his camp. 5. At dawn of day it was reported to Caesar that the top of the mountain was occupied by Labienus and the two legions which he had taken (*g*) with him. 6. Caesar found out from prisoners that (*h*) neither his arrival nor (that) of Labienus was known (*i*) to the Helvetii. 7. The mountain which you wished (*j*) to be seized by Labienus is occupied by the Helvetii: I know it (*k*) from the Gallie arms and standards. 8. Caesar had given instructions to Labienus to abstain from battle, and await the arrival of his forces, so that a simultaneous attack might be made on the enemy from every side. 9. Considius being terrified, had reported as seen what he had not seen. 10. Caesar pitched his camp two miles and a half (*l*) from that of the Helvetii.

(*a*) *Posterus*.—(*b*) See on line 2, and p. 137, 14 and 15.—(*c*) See note.—(*d*) P. 159, ix. 3, *a*.—(*e*) P. 143, 8 and 9.—(*f*) *Quo loco*.—(*g*) *i.e.*, "led."—(*h*) Accus. with infin. —(*i*) P. 131, 7.—(*j*) P. 158, ix. 1, *a*.—(*k*) See note 6, with reference.—(*l*) See line 2, chap. xxii.

EXERCISE XLII.—CHAPTERS XXIII. AND XXIV.

1. The day is at hand (*a*) when we must measure out corn to the soldiers. 2. Bibracte, by far the largest and most wealthy town of the Aedui, is distant not more than twenty-three miles from

Caes
from
4. I
suppl
rear
6.
had
the
hagg
agai
base
stan
mon
bron
thos
Helv
(form
Rou
(*a*)
1. *a*.—
xxiv.
(*k*) *i.e.*

1.
(tbo
take
soldi
of th
Rou
the s
blow
soldi
from
Gaul
selve
8.
to th
a dou
sessio

Caesar's camp. 3. The day after that day (*b*) the Romans diverged from (the route of) the Helvetii, and hastily marched on Bibracte. 4. It behoves (*c*) a general to take-precautionary-measures for a supply of corn (*d*). 5. Let us pursue and harass the enemy on the rear.

6. When the commander of the Helvetii perceived that (*e*) Caesar had led up his forces to the nearest hill, and that he had posted on the topmost ridge two legions, he ordered his-men (*f*) to collect the baggage into one place, and in very compact array to march up (*g*) against the first line of the Romans. 7. Caesar draws up at the base (*h*) of the hill a double (*i*) line of three veteran legions, to withstand (*j*) the attack of the enemy. 8. The highest ridge of the mountain was filled with men. 9. The (smaller) baggage being brought into one place on the slope (*k*) of the hill, was defended by those who had taken-their-position (*l*) in the upper line. 10. The Helvetii, all their baggage having been collected (*m*) into one place, (forming) in a very compact array, repelled the cavalry of the Romans.

(*a*) See chap. xvi. 9.—(*b*) See note 1, with reference.—(*c*) See line 2.—(*d*) P. 139, 1. *a*.—(*e*) Accus. with infin.—(*f*) Use *suus* without a subst.—(*g*) See line 11 of chap. xxiv.—(*h*) *Sub* with the abl. of *mons*.—(*i*) *Duplex*.—(*j*) See line 2 of chap. xxiv.—(*k*) *i.e.*, "middle."—(*l*) *Consisto*.—(*m*) Abl. absolute, see p. 147, 34, with reference.

EXERCISE XLIII.—CHAPTERS XXV. AND XXVI.

1. Caesar removed out of sight first his own horse, and then (those) of all (his staff), in order that the hope of flight might be taken away, the danger of all being rendered equal. 2. The Roman soldiers make a rush on the enemy with drawn swords (*a*). 3. Each (*b*) of the Romans (*c*) slays an enemy with (his) lance (*d*). 4. The Roman soldiers drew their swords and joined bat! 5. Many of the shields of the Gauls were transfixcd and pinned together by one blow (*d*) of the lances, which proved a great hindrance (*e*) to the soldiers in fighting. 6. Many of the Gauls flung away the shield from their hand, and fought with the body (*f*) unprotected. 7. The Gauls being exhausted with wounds (*d*), retreated, and betook themselves to a mountain which was about two miles behind (them).

8. I fear that (*g*) the Boii and Tulingi will (*h*) prove a protection (*e*) to the rear-guard of the enemy. 9. When they had fought (*i*) in a double battle from the sixth hour till evening, Caesar gained possession (*j*) of the waggons and the (smaller) baggage of the enemy.

10. In that battle a son, and one of the daughters of Orgetorix *was* captured (*k*). 11. About one hundred and thirty-three thousand men, who survived that battle, march without intermission throughout the whole of that night (*l*), and endeavour to reach the territory of the Lingones on the third day. 12. Caesar sends a despatch to the Lingones in these (*m*) words:—"I cannot pursue the Helvetii, because it behoves me (*n*) to remain here for the burial of the slain: do you take care (*o*), however (*p*), that you do not assist them with corn or any other thing; for (*q*) if you do assist (*r*) them, I shall regard you in the same light as (I do) the Helvetii."

(*a*) P. 145, 11.—(*b*) *Quisque*, which must not be placed first word in the clause.—(*c*) See p. 142, 6, *c*.—(*d*) P. 144, 3.—(*e*) P. 140, 10.—(*f*) P. 145, 11.—(*g*) See List of Phrases.—(*h*) Pres. subj.—(*i*) See note 1, chap. xxvi.—(*j*) P. 115, 9.—(*k*) P. 133, 8.—(*l*) P. 137, 14 and 15.—(*m*) *Hic*.—(*n*) See chap. xvi., line 10.—(*o*) *Caveo*, with *ne* and subj.—(*p*) *Tamen*.—(*q*) Use *qui*, and see note.—(*r*) Fut. perf.

EXERCISE XLIV.—CHAPTERS XXVII., XXVIII., AND XXIX.

1. The ambassadors of the Helvetii flung themselves at Caesar's feet, and in tears sought for peace. 2. When Caesar ordered (*a*) them to await his arrival in that place where they then were, the Helvetii obeyed. 3. Three thousand men of that canton, which is called the Tigurine, having started (*b*) from the camp of the Helvetii at the tenth hour, marched incessantly all that night (*c*).

4. When the Helvetii sued (*d*) for peace, Caesar replied that he would receive them in surrender, if they delivered (*e*) to him hostages, their arms, and the deserters. 5. The Tulingi were-without (*f*) corn, all their crops being lost. 6. That place from which the Helvetii had departed was without (*g*) inhabitants. (*h*) 7. We have need of (*i*) corn, because there is nothing at home by which we can bear up against hunger. 8. I fear lest we be in difficulty in the matter of corn (*j*). 9. There is no doubt that the Boii were endowed with (*k*) extraordinary valour. 10. There is no reason why (*l*) Orgetorix should not be fined (*m*) fifty talents (*n*). 11. He is worthy (*o*) of a far greater (*p*) punishment. 12. The sum total of those who left home (*q*) was as much as (*r*) three hundred and sixty-eight thousand.

(*a*) Use the participle, "to Caesar ordering them," &c., and refer to p. 139, 4, *b*.—(*b*) See line 12.—(*c*) See chap. xxvi. 13.—(*d*) *Id est*, "to the Helvetii suing for," &c. (*e*) Express this clause by the abl. absolute, as in the text.—(*f*) *Caveo*. See p. 145, 14.—(*g*) *Caveo*, or *vaco*. See foregoing reference.—(*h*) *Incola*.—(*i*) See p. 145, 15.—(*j*) See p. 145, 13.—(*k*) *Praeditus*. See p. 144, 4.—(*l*) *Nihil impedit*. See p. 155, 6.—(*m*) See p. 146, 17.—(*n*) *Talentum*.—(*o*) P. 146, 18.—(*p*) P. 146, 19.—(*q*) P. 147, 28.—(*r*) See note 8, chap. xxix.

PART II.—THE GERMAN WAR.

EXERCISE XLV.—CHAPTERS XXX. AND XXXI.

[Read Syntax, sects. ix. and x., pp. 148 and 149.]

1. On the conclusion of the Helvetian war, the states of almost all Gaul sent ambassadors to Caesar to congratulate him. 2. We beg that we may be allowed (*a*) to call a meeting of all the states of Gaul for the ninth day before the kalends of April (*c*). 3. We have certain things which we wish to ask of you after the consent of all (has been gained). 4. Let us make-a-solemn-pledge to one another by an oath, that no one publish (the result of our deliberations) unless those to whom it shall be (*c*) entrusted by common consent.

5. All the ambassadors throw themselves in tears at the king's feet, and beg to be allowed (*i.e.*, that it be allowed them) to consult for (*d*) their own safety and that of all. 6. Ariovistus, king of the Germans, has settled-down in our territory, and has taken possession of two thirds of our land, which is the best in all Gaul. 7. The Gallic soil cannot be compared with the German. 8. I wish all things to be done at my beck and wish. 9. Ariovistus demanded as hostages the daughters of all the highest nobles (*e*), and on them he exercised every torture.

(*a*) "It may be allowed to us." See p. 148, 2.—(*b*) See note 15 on chap. vi., p. 204.—(*c*) P. 162, 9.—(*d*) See Nep. Them., chap. viii. 19.—(*e*) *i.e.*, of each most noble, &c.

EXERCISE XLVI.—CHAPTERS XXXII. AND XXXIII.

[Read Syntax, sect. xi., p. 149.]

1. The Sequani alone, of all who were present, did not beg assistance from the Roman people. 2. The others fling themselves at Caesar's feet with much wailing, suing-for (*a*) peace. 2. He hung his head, and (with) sorrowful (aspect) looked-steadily-at the ground. 4. The condition of the Sequani is more wretched and more severe than (that) of the others, on this account, that they cannot complain even in secret. 5. The Sequani having once (*b*) complained of (*c*) the cruelty of Ariovistus, he replied that they must of necessity endure (*d*) every torment.

6. I promise (you) that this matter will be a care to me. 7. When

these things were known, ambassadors were sent to Caesar to implore (*e*) assistance. 8. It cannot be but that Ariovistus, being induced by the weight of Caesar's name (*f*), will leave off (*g*) his acts of wrong. 9. Caesar, this matter requires (*h*) to be carefully-reflected-on by you, and taken in hand. 10. The Aedui, who have (*i*) been often called brothers and kinsmen by the Senate, are held in (a state of) servitude by the Germans; a thing which, under so powerful an empire (as that) of the Roman people, is most disgraceful to myself and to the republic. 11. Ariovistus has assumed such airs that he appears (*j*) insufferable. 12. This matter must be taken up by Caesar (*k*).

(*a*) See p. 149, xi. 3. — (*b*) *Quondam*. — (*c*) *De*. — (*d*) *i.e.*, "every torture must be endured." See p. 149, xi. 5. — (*e*) See p. 149, xi. 4. — (*f*) "Weight of name," *auctoritas*. — (*g*) *i.e.*, "put an end to." — (*h*) See p. 149, 5. — (*i*) Use the participle. — (*j*) See p. 160, xii. 2. — (*k*) See p. 150, 7. Use the prep.

EXERCISE XLVII.—CHAPTER XXXIV.

1. Caesar resolved (*a*) to send an ambassador to the king of the Germans, to demand of him that he would select for a conference some place half-way between them. 2. I wish, said he, to treat with you in regard to matters of the highest importance to both of us. 3. If Caesar wishes (*b*) anything with me, he ought to come to me. 4. What business (*c*) have you, or the Roman people at all, in my province, which I have conquered in war? 5. To me it appears a wonderful thing that Ariovistus dares to come without his forces into that part of Gaul which Caesar possesses.

(*a*) *i.e.*, say, "It pleased Caesar." — (*b*) See p. 145, 15. — (*c*) See p. 142, 6, a.

EXERCISE XLVIII.—CHAPTERS XXXVII. AND XXXVIII.

[Read Syntax, sect. xii., p. 150.]

1. The Aedui and the Treveri send ambassadors to Caesar, to complain that the Harudes, who had lately crossed the Rhine into Gaul, are laying waste their territory. 2. A hundred cantons of the Suevi have taken up their position on the bank of the Rhine, and they (*a*) are endeavouring to cross the river into Gaul. 3. I must make haste (*b*), lest a new band of Suevi unite with the forces which Ariovistus formerly possessed. 4. The supply of corn I must (*c*) provide as quickly as possible, in order that there may be abundance (*d*) on the march. 5. Ariovistus hastened on to capture (*e*) Vesontio, which (*f*) is the largest town of the Sequani, before (*g*) Caesar should come to its aid (*h*). 6. You must take great precautions, lest

Ariovistus is so for for prot by the r compass

(*a*) "Ar chap. iii. 4 and trans subsidio.—

1. W (getting German (the use but we their ey fear, tha dismaye said ren friends, selves in up your of the fo is assure to be str will the cannot b

(*a*) See (*e*) "Cov

1. W ponder 2. In n friendsh readily c defeated shall loc 5. To-m

Ariovistus capture the town of Vesontio. 7. The town of Vesontio is so fortified by the nature of the ground as to afford great facility for protracting (*i*) the war. 8. Almost the whole town is surrounded by the river Doubs, as if it (its course) were described by a pair of compasses.

(*a*) "And they" is equal to "who."—(*b*) See p. 150, 6.—(*c*) Use *oportet*.—(*d*) See chap. lii. 4.—(*e*) Express this by the gerundive, as in p. 150, 8.—(*f*) See p. 133, 9, and translate "which" in both ways.—(*g*) *Præquam*. See p. 157, 4.—(*h*) *Venire subsidio*.—(*i*) P. 150, 8.

EXERCISE XLIX.—CHAPTER XXXIX.

1. We must (*a*) delay at Vesontio a few days, for the purpose of (getting) provisions. 2. There were some who said (*b*) that the Germans were (men) of huge size of body (*c*), and of amazing skill in (the use of) weapons-of-war. 3. We have often fought with them, but we could not stand their fierce-looks, and the keen-glance of their eyes. 4. The whole army was suddenly seized with so great fear, that the minds and the spirits of all were in no small degree dismayed. 5. One alleged one ground, another another, which he said rendered it necessary for him to start (*d*). 6. Remain, my friends, that you may escape the suspicion of fear. 7. Hide yourselves in your tents, ye cowards (*e*), lament the common danger, seal up your wills! 8. It is not the enemy we fear, but the vast extent of the forests which intervene between us and Ariovistus. 9. Caesar is assured by the military tribunes, that when he orders (*f*) the camp to be struck (*i. e.*, shifted), the soldiers will not obey the orders, nor will they move forward. 10. Some fear that the supply of corn cannot be provided in sufficient quantity.

(*a*) See p. 150, 6.—(*b*) P. 159, ix. 3.—(*c*) P. 146, 16.—(*d*) P. 151, xii. 2 c.—(*e*) "Coward," *ignavus*.—(*f*) Fut. perf. See p. 162, 9.

EXERCISE L.—CHAPTERS XL. AND XLI.

1. Why do you suppose that it is your business to inquire or to ponder in what direction or for what purpose you are being led? 2. In my consulship Ariovistus most eagerly sought-to-gain the friendship of the Roman people: why do you suppose that he will so readily depart from his allegiance? 3. The Germans have often been defeated by the Helvetii, and *they* cannot match our soldiers. 4. I shall look after the provision of corn and the narrow roads (*a*). 5. To-morrow night about the third watch I shall strike camp, that

I may learn as soon as possible whether shame and a sense of duty, or fear, have power with you. 6. If no one else follow me, still I shall go with the tenth legion alone, of which I have no doubts. 7. Caesar is said to have favoured the tenth legion in an especial degree, and to have put the utmost trust (in it), on account of its bravery.

8. The soldiers of the tenth legion thanked Caesar, and assured him that they were most ready to carry on the war (*b*). 9. The centurions and the rest of the soldiers apologised to Caesar. 10. It is the duty of the commander to see to it (*c*) that the supply of corn be provided in sufficient quantity.

(*a*) *i.e.*, "the provision-of-corn and the narrowness of the route will be for a care to me."—(*b*) P. 150, 8.—(*c*) *Cavere* with *ut* and subj.

EXERCISE LI.—CHAPTERS XLII. AND XLIII.

[Read Syntax, chap. lli., sects. 1., ii., iii., and iv., p. 151, *sqq.*]

1. Ariovistus having received certain intelligence (*a*) of Caesar's approach, sent ambassadors to him to (*b*) demand a conference. 2. Caesar thought that the terms should (*c*) not be rejected by him. 3. Caesar thinks that Ariovistus is now coming back to his senses, since (*d*) he promises unmasked what he formerly denied. 4. I am beginning to entertain great hope (*e*) that, in consideration of the benefits of the Roman people to him, great-as-they-have-been (*f*), it will prove (*g*) that (*h*) he is abandoning his obstinate-line-of-conduct. 5. The ninth day from that day was named for striking the camp (*i*). 6. Ariovistus demands that Caesar should bring no infantry to the conference, in order (*j*) that he may the more easily beset the Roman commander by an ambuscade. 7. I fear that I shall be treacherously surrounded by armed men. 8. Caesar mounts on horses the soldiers of the tenth legion, in order that he may have a body-guard as friendly as possible, should there be any need for action. 9. Nothing hinders (*k*) Ariovistus from surrounding Caesar by treachery. 10. No one doubts that (*l*) Caesar put the very highest trust in the tenth legion. 11. The tenth legion was stationed two hundred paces (*m*) from a mound of earth which was situated (*n*) in a wide plain. 12. Caesar and Ariovistus conversed together (*o*), and brought to the conference nine men each.

(*a*) *i.e.*, "being certified."—(*b*) See p. 154, iv. 2 and 7.—(*c*) P. 150, 6.—(*d*) P. 158, viii. 2.—(*e*) *i.e.*, "am coming into great hope."—(*f*) Express this whole phrase by the proper case of *tantus*.—(*g*) *Fore*.—(*h*) P. 154, iv. 3.—(*i*) See p. 150, 8. Express by the dat. of the gerundive.—(*j*) P. 154, iv. 4.—(*k*) P. 155, 6.—(*l*) P. 155, 5.—(*m*) P. 137, 15.—(*n*) *Situs*.—(*o*) *Inter se*.

EXERCISE LII.—CHAPTERS XLVI. AND XLVII.

[Read Syntax, sects. v. and vi., pp. 155, 156.]

1. Whilst (*a*) Ariovistus and Caesar are conversing, the German cavalry approached nearer the camp, and threw stones and javelins at our soldiers. 2. If the horsemen of Ariovistus throw (*b*) stones and javelins at you, do not hurl back any missile at all at them. 3. If (*i. e.*, since) you have made (*c*) an end of speaking, I shall betake myself to the camp. 4. If I (were to) come (*d*) to a conference, you would endeavour to circumvent me by treachery. 5. If the soldiers of Ariovistus attacked us (*e*), we would throw back their own weapons against themselves. 6. If the Roman cavalry had made an (*f*) attack on the forces of Ariovistus, which he brought down (*g*) with him to the mound, he would have said (*f*) that he and his men had been surrounded at the conference, in violation of good faith. 7. Although it was reported to Caesar that the cavalry of Ariovistus had made an attack on the tenth legion, which he had brought down with him on horseback, yet he forbade his soldiers to hurl back on the enemy any missile. 8. After (that) it was noised-abroad (*h*) among the general-body of the soldiers that (*i*) the cavalry of Ariovistus had made an attack on our men during the conference, a much greater zeal for fighting, and a greater alacrity was inspired into the army (*j*).

9. Although (*k*) Ariovistus sent ambassadors to Caesar a second time concerning a conference, yet there did not appear to Caesar any cause for conferring together. 10. Although (*l*) there be no cause for conferring together, yet I shall send to Ariovistus an ambassador of the greatest prudence and justice.

(*a*) See p. 156, vii. 1.—(*b*) P. 155, v. 1, b.—(*c*) P. 155, v. 1, a.—(*d*) P. 155, v. 2.—(*e*) P. 156, v. 2, b.—(*f*) P. 156, v. 2, c.—(*g*) Chap. xliii, line 4.—(*h*) P. 156, vii. 1.—(*i*) Accus. with infin.—(*j*) P. 131, 5.—(*k*) *Quamvis*, with indic.—(*l*) P. 156, vi. 1, b.

EXERCISE LIII.—CHAPTERS XLVIII. AND XLIX.

[Read Syntax, sect. vii., pp. 156, 157.]

1. The next day the Germans took up their position at the base of a mountain, three miles beyond Caesar's camp. 2. When (*a*) Ariovistus had led his forces beyond Caesar's camp, he took up his position at the base of a mountain. 3. Caesar shifted his camp when (*b*) he saw that it was the intention of (*c*) Ariovistus to shut

him out from corn and supplies. 4. If Ariovistus wishes to fight in battle, an opportunity will not be wanting to him. 5. The Germans make their camp five miles beyond Caesar's, with this intention, that they may prevent the Romans from (receiving) the corn and supplies which (*d*) are being brought up from (the country of) the Sequani and the Aedui. 6. If any one had received a serious wound, the soldiers used-to-gather-around him. 7. So great is the speed of the foot-soldiers by practice, that, supporting themselves by the manes of the horses, they keep up with them. 8. When (*e*) Caesar had made a second (*f*) camp, he drew up his army in three lines. 9. The first and second lines remained under arms, until (*g*) the third should fortify the camp. 10. Fifteen thousand light-armed troops are sent by Ariovistus to terrify (*h*) our men, and prevent them from (the work of) fortification.

(*a*) P. 156, vii. 1.—(*b*) P. 157, 2, *b*.—(*c*) See Caes., Bk. I. 7, 10.—(*d*) See chap. xviii. 4, and p. 133, 8.—(*e*) *Ubi*, p. 156, vii. 1.—(*f*) *Alter*.—(*g*) P. 157, 3.—(*h*) P. 158, ix. 2, *a*.

EXERCISE LIV.—CHAPTERS L. AND LI.

[Read Syntax, sects. viii. ix. and x., p. 157, *sqq.*]

1. Caesar fortified his lesser camp before (*a*) he gave the Germans an opportunity of fighting. 2. When Caesar inquired (*b*) of the prisoners why the Germans did not go forth (*c*) from their camp, he found that this was the reason, that it was (*d*) a custom among them for the matrons to declare by lots and prophecy whether it would be (*c*) to their advantage to fight with the enemy in a pitched battle (*e*) or not. 3. When Caesar asked why Ariovistus did not lead forth his forces from the camp for seven successive days, he found that it was not lawful for the Germans to fight in battle before the new moon. 4. The next day they fought fiercely on both sides from morning (*f*) even till evening. 5. All the auxiliaries were posted in front of the lesser camp, in sight of the enemy, because (*g*) in proportion to the enemy's numbers, Caesar was by no means strong in the muster of legionary soldiers. 6. Caesar employed the auxiliaries for show. 7. The women were placed on cars and waggons. 8. With outstretched hands he implored the soldiers not to fight in battle with the Romans. 9. No hope is left in flight. 10. The Germans were placed according to their tribes, with equal intervals (between them).

(*a*) P. 157, 4.—(*b*) P. 157, 2, *a*.—(*c*) P. 159, x. 2.—(*d*) P. 158, viii. 1, *b*.—(*e*) *Decer-tare proelio*.—(*f*) *Ortus solis*.—(*g*) P. 158, viii. 1, *a*.

1. javeli
2. TH
third
caval
4.
not c
5. A
bank.
boats
escap
by na
cause
ourat
frien
us ta
by fir
two v
up in
into l

(a)

EXERCISE LV.—CHAPTERS LII., LIII., AND LIV.[Read Syntax, sects. xl. and xii., p. 159, *sqq.*]

1. There were found many Roman soldiers who flung away their javelins in the battle, and fought hand to hand with swords.

2. The Romans defeated the Germans on the right wing. 3. The third line was sent by P. Crassus, a young man who commanded the cavalry, to help the legionary soldiers in distress.

4. There is no doubt that the enemy turned their backs, and did not cease to flee until (*a*) they approached (*b*) the river Rhine.

5. Ariovistus escaped in a small boat which he found moored to the bank. 6. Among those who secured their own safety by finding boats was Ariovistus, who found a boat moored to the bank, and escaped in it. 7. Ariovistus had married two wives, one a Suevan by nation, the other a Norian, sister of king Voctio. 8. It was a cause of great joy (*c*) to Caesar, that one (who was) the most honourable man in the province of Gaul, (who was) his own intimate friend and guest, was rescued from the hands of the enemy. 9. Let us take counsel by the lots whether he is to be at once put to death by fire, or to be reserved to another time. 10. Caesar terminated two very serious wars in one summer, and his army having been put up in winter quarters among the Sequani, he himself hastened (*d*) into Hither Gaul to hold the assizes.

(*a*) P. 157, 4.—(*b*) *Accedo*.—(*c*) Say, "It was for great joy."—(*d*) *Contendo*.

LIST OF PHRASES.

The student will refer to the text, to assure himself of the proper construction of each phrase.

- Agreed upon**—"It is agreed upon by all;" *Constat inter omnes.* Nep. Alc. i. 2.
- Agreement**—"According to agreement;" *Ex pacto.* Nep. Milt. ii. 13.
- "As from him;"** *Suis verbis.* Nep. Them. iv. 10.
- B.C.; So-and-so.** See notes (*g*) and (*h*) on Ex. xiii., p. 392.
- Breach of duty**—"It is a breach of duty;" *Contra officium est,* with infin. Nep. Them. i., Ex., note (*e*).
- "Certifies;"** *Facit certiozem.* Nep. Them. v. 4.
- "Condemn to death;"** *Damnare capitis.* Nep. Milt. vii., Ex., note (*g*).
- "Consult for (the good of);"** *Consulere,* with dat. Nep. Them. viii. 19.
- "Convince (one) of;"** *Persuadere id (alicui).* Nep. Them. v. 6.
- Denied**—"It cannot be denied;" *Negari non potest.* Nep. Alc. v., Ex., note (*f*).
- Denies that he can—i.e., "Says that he cannot."** *Negat se posse.* Caes. B. G., I., viii. 9.
- "Do one's best;"** *Dare operam.* Nep. Them. vii. 2.
- Doubt**—"There is no doubt;" *Non est dubium.* Note (*c*) to Ex. on Nep. Them. i., p. 390.
- Doubt**—"I do not doubt, but;" *Non dubito, quin.* Note (*j*) to Ex. on Nep. Them. v., p. 392.
- Fear**—"I fear, that;" *Timeo, or vereor, ne.* Nep. Milt. vii. 13.
- Fear**—"I fear, lest," i.e., "that not;" *Timeo, or vereor, ut.* Note 13 on Nep. Milt. vii., p. 173.
- First**—"Was the first, who (did it, came, entered," &c.); *primus (fecit, venit, introiit, &c.)* Nep. Alc. vii. 18.

Free—
B.
Give—
mo
Happen
Hinder
mi
Hopes—
se
"Impo
"Impu
"It ca
Ne
Marria
Marry,
Mentic
Momen
M.
"More
i.
"Most
sin
Need o
N
Not to
Opinic
"Oppo
A
Point
Preve
Prison
M
"Prox
se
Punis
w
Risk—
Satisf
se

- Free**—"To free one's self from the necessity of;" *Eripere se, ne.* Caes. B. G., I., iv. 7
- Give**—"To give (a daughter) in marriage;" *Dare (filiam) in matrimonium.* Caes. B. G., I., iii. 15.
- Happen**—"It happened, that;" *Accidit, ut.* Nep. Milt. i. 5.
- Hinders**—"Nothing hinders (or prevents) from;" *Nihil impedit, quominus.* Note (k) to Ex. on Nep. Them. viii., p. 394.
- Hopes**—"He hopes to live"—*i.e.*, "he hopes that he will live;" *Sperat se victurum esse.*
- "**Impose on one**"—*i.e.*, outwit; *Dare verba alicui.* Nep. Hann. v. 6.
- "**Impute as a fault**;" *Culpaē tribuere, or vitio dare.* Nep. Alc. vi. 6.
- "**It cannot be, but that**;" *Fieri non potest, quin.* Note (a) to Ex. on Nep. Alc. v., p. 397.
- Marriage**—"Give in marriage." See "Give," above.
- Marry**, (said of the female); *Nubo*, with dat. See Vocab., under *Nubo*.
- Mention**—"Not to mention;" *Ut omittam.* Nep. Hann. ii. 1.
- Moment**—"First moment possible;" *Primo quoque tempore.* Nep. Milt. iv. 19.
- "**More-than-another**"—*i.e.*, in preference; *Potissimum.* Nep. Milt. i. 9.
- "**Most faithful slave he had**;" *De servis suis, quem habuit fidelissimum.* Nep. Them. iv. 10.
- Need of**—"We have need of;" *Opus est nobis*, with abl. of thing needed. Nep. Milt. iv. 15.
- Not to mention.** See "Mention."
- Opinion**—"To be of opinion;" *Censere.* Nep. Them. v. Exercise xiii. 5.
- "**Oppose**" (the enemy); *"Ire obviam" (hostibus).* Nep. Milt. iv. 18.
Also, *obicere se*, with dat.; or *resistere*, with dat.
- Point of**—"To be on the point of;" *Esse in eo, ut.* Nep. Milt. vii. 8.
- Prevent**—"Nothing prevents from." See "Hinder," above.
- Prison**—"To throw into prison;" *Conjicere in publica vincula.* Nep. Milt. vii. 23.
- "**Promises to come**"—*i.e.*, "Promises that he will come;" *Potlicetur se venturum esse.*
- Punish**—"To be punished," or "to suffer punishment;" *Dare poenas*, with dat. Nep. Milt. iii. 22.
- Risk**—"There is a risk, that;" *Periculum est, ne.* Nep. Alc. viii. 20.
- Satisfaction**—"To my (thy, his) satisfaction;" *Ex mea (tua, sua, &c.) sententia.* Nep. Alc. vii. 6.

- "Says he has not"—*i.e.*, "denies that he has;" *Negat se habere*.
- "Says he is not able;" *Negat se posse*. *Caes. B. G., I., viii. 9.*
- Shipwreck—"To make shipwreck," *i.e.*, be ruined; *Facere naufragium*.
Nep. Them. vii. 22.
- "Some or other;" *Nescio, quis*. *Nep. Milt. vii. 9.*
- "There is no one, but believes;" *Nemo est quin credat*. *Ex. on Nep. Them. viii., note (d), p. 394.*
- "There were some, who;" *Erant, qui*, followed by the subj. *Ex. on Nep. Milt. vii., note (f), p. 389.*
- "To the great disgust;" *Magna cum offensione*. *Nep. Milt. vii. 15.*
- Unsuccessful—"To be unsuccessful;" *Male rem gerere*. *Nep. Milt. iii. 11.*
- "Wage war on;" *Inferre bellum*, with dat. of person. *Nep. Milt. iii. 2.*

ENGLISH READING-BOOKS,

ADAPTED TO THE
STANDARDS OF THE REVISED CODE.

"A more interesting set of Reading-books we have never seen. We are not surprised by their great popularity and extensive sale.... We have had the advantage of examining with care the entire Series, and we cannot too strongly express the sense we entertain of the taste and judgment the books display, or of their great educational value."—*The Rev. Dr. Hall (in the Evangelical Witness), Commissioner of National Education, Ireland.*

THE SERIES IS NOW COMPLETE AS FOLLOWS:—

STANDARD I.

1. **STEP BY STEP**; or, *The Child's First Lesson-Book.* 18mo. Parts I. and II. Price 2d. each.
2. **SEQUEL TO "STEP BY STEP."** 18mo. Price 4d.

STANDARD II.

3. **THE YOUNG READER**—New No. 3. Beautifully Illustrated. Price 6d.

STANDARDS III. & IV.

4. **NEW FOURTH BOOK.** Beautifully Illustrated. Price 10d.
"Out of sight the best Elementary Reading-book we have seen"—*Museum and English Journal of Education.*

STANDARD IV.

5. **JUNIOR READER. No. I.** Post 8vo, cloth. Price 1s. 3d.

STANDARD V.

6. **JUNIOR READER. No. II.** Post 8vo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

STANDARD VI.

7. **THE SENIOR READER.** Post 8vo, cloth. Price 2s. 6d.
8. **THE ADVANCED READER.** Post 8vo. 400 pages. Price 2s. 6d.
"We have no hesitation in pronouncing this the best 'Advanced Reader' that we know... The book is one of deep interest from beginning to end, and will be read by the teacher as well as the pupil with growing pleasure."—*The Museum and English Journal of Education.*

EXTRA VOLUMES.

9. **READINGS FROM THE BEST AUTHORS.** Edited by A. H. BRYCE, LL.D. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.
10. **READINGS FROM THE BEST AUTHORS.** Second Book. Edited by A. H. BRYCE, LL.D. Post 8vo, cloth. Price 2s.

ENGLISH READING-BOOKS.

EXTRA VOLUMES.

- HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.** In a Series of Biographical Sketches. By W. F. COLLIER, LL.D. 12mo, cloth. Price 3s. 6d.
"As a text-book, specially designed for youthful students, we believe that Dr. Collier's Biographical History of English Literature is not surpassed by any similar treatise in our language."—*Review*.
- THE LITERARY READER: Prose Authors.** With Biographical Notices, Critical and Explanatory Notes, &c. By the Rev. HUGH G. ROBINSON, M.A., Cantab., Incumbent of Bolton Abbey, Canon of York, &c. 12mo, cloth, 430 pages. Price 3s.
"We scarcely ever saw so useful an aid to the study of English Literature. The Editor has supplied an Introductory Essay on English Literature, a Biography of each Author, and an Account of his Works, with Notes on the passages extracted, every part of his task being very ably and carefully executed."—*The Athenæum*.
- CLASS-BOOK OF ENGLISH LITERATURE;** with Biographical Sketches, Critical Notices, and Illustrative Extracts. For the use of Schools and Students. By ROBERT ARMSTRONG, English Master, Madras College, St. Andrews; and THOMAS ARMSTRONG, Edinburgh; Authors of "English Composition" and "English Etymology." Post 8vo. Price 3s.
- MILTON'S PARADISE LOST AND PARADISE REGAINED** With Notes. For the Use of Schools. By the Rev. J. EDMONDSTON. 12mo, cloth. Price 2s. 6d.
- THE SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL READER.** From the Works of Recent and Eminent Authors. 12mo. Price 2s. 6d.
- THE CHEMISTRY OF COMMON THINGS.** By STEVENSON MACADAM, F.R.S.E., F.G.S. With upwards of 60 Diagrams. 12mo. Price 1s. 6d.
"It contains a very considerable amount of information, conveyed in clear and untechnical language."—*Educational Times*.
- NEW CLASS-BOOK OF ENGLISH POETRY.** Part I.—JUNIOR DIVISION. Small Type, Price 6d. Large Type, 1s.
PART II.—SENIOR DIVISION. Small Type, Price 6d. Large Type, 1s.
THE TWO PARTS BOUND IN ONE. Small Type, Price 1s. Large Type, 2s.
- THE ENGLISH WORD-BOOK:** A Manual Exhibiting the Sources, Structure, and Affinities of English Words. By JOHN GRAHAM. Price 1s.
- WORD EXPOSITOR AND SPELLING GUIDE:** A School Manual Exhibiting the Spelling, Pronunciation, Meaning, and Derivation of all the Important and Peculiar Words in the English Language. With Copious Exercises for Examination and Dictation. By GEORGE COUTER, A.M. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 3d.

GEOGRAPHICALS, ATLASES, &c.

GEOGRAPHIES.

NEW CLASS-BOOK OF GEOGRAPHY. Physical and Political. By ROBERT ANDERSON, Head Master, Normal Institution, Edinburgh. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 9d.

"We can speak favourably of this improved edition of a well-known work. There is a valuable introduction on physical geography, and throughout the book prominence is given to the natural features, climate, and productions of each country. One new feature, which we think good, is the employment of our own country as a standard for comparing the size, latitude, and distance of others."—*Athenæum*.

MODERN GEOGRAPHY. For the Use of Schools. By ROBERT ANDERSON. Folsioap 8vo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

EXERCISES IN GEOGRAPHY. Adapted to Anderson's Geography. 18mo, cloth. Price 6d.

GEOGRAPHY FOR JUNIOR CLASSES. By ROBERT ANDERSON. 18mo, cloth. Price 11d.

ELEMENTARY GEOGRAPHY. By THOMAS G. DICK. Post 8vo, cloth. Price 1s.

THE GEOGRAPHY AND ATLAS COMBINED. Containing a complete Geography, 17 Full-coloured Maps, and numerous Diagrams. Small quarto, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. For the use of Schools. With Complete Index. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. Post 8vo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

BIBLE GEOGRAPHY. By the Rev. W. G. BLAIRIE, D.D., LL.D. With Coloured Maps. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s.; or with the Maps mounted on Cloth, 1s. 3d.

ATLASES.

With Divisions and Measurements in English Miles.

NELSON'S ATLAS OF THE WORLD. Containing 23 Large Quarto Maps, full coloured. Reduced copies of Nelson's Wall Maps. In boards. Price 2s. 6d.

NELSON'S SHILLING ATLAS. Containing 16 Maps, plain. Stiff wrapper, 4to.

ARITHMETICS.

THE STANDARD ARITHMETICS. Adapted to the New Requirements of the Committee of Council on Education. STANDARDS II., III., Price 1d. each; STANDARD IV., Price 2d.

THE FIRST BOOK OF ARITHMETIC FOR YOUNG CHILDREN. By W. STANYER. 18mo. Price 3d.

THE SECOND BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. PART I. By W. STANYER. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d. With "Answers to the Exercises," Price 1s. 9d.

EXERCISES IN MENTAL AND SLATE ARITHMETIC FOR BEGINNERS. By J. COPLAND. 18mo, cloth. Price 4d.

MENTAL ARITHMETIC FOR ADVANCED CLASSES. By WILLIAM KENNEDY, Training College, Moray House, Edinburgh. 12mo. Price 6d.

SCHOOL HISTORIES.

BY W. F. COLLIER, LL.D.

OUTLINES OF GENERAL HISTORY. Post 8vo, cloth. Price 3s.

"A very useful compendium, well adapted for reference, and more readable than such works generally are."—*The Athenæum*.

HISTORY OF ROME FOR JUNIOR CLASSES. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF GREECE FOR JUNIOR CLASSES. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

"In terse and pointed language, Dr. Collier outlines the chief events of Grecian and Roman History, keeping prominently in view the personal or biographical element, upon which so much of the interest of history depends."—*Glasgow Herald*.

HISTORY OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE. With Tables of the Leading Events of each Period—List of Contemporary Sovereigns—Dates of Battles—Chapters on the Social Changes of each Period, &c. 12mo, cloth. Price 2s.

** An Enlarged Edition of this work, with copious Questions, is now issued, under the title of **THE SENIOR CLASS-BOOK OF BRITISH HISTORY.** Price 2s. 6d.

HISTORY OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

"Extremely well adapted for giving young persons intelligent general notions respecting those events that have most largely influenced the character of the present age."—*Educational Times*.

THE GREAT EVENTS OF HISTORY, from the Beginning of the Christian Era till the Present Time. 12mo, cloth. Price 2s. 6d.

BY THE REV. J. MACKENZIE.

HISTORY OF SCOTLAND. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

BY THE REV. R. HUNTER.

HISTORY OF INDIA, from the Earliest Ages to the Fall of the East India Company, and the Proclamation of Queen Victoria in 1858. 282 pages, with Woodcuts. Foolscap 8vo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

BY THE REV. W. G. BLAIKIE, D.D., LL.D.,

BIBLE HISTORY, in Connection with the General History of the World. With Descriptions of Scripture Localities. 470 pages, 12mo, with Maps. Price 3s.

QUESTIONS ON BLAIKIE'S BIBLE HISTORY. Price 6d.

BY JOHN LOCKHART, LL.D.

THE BIBLE MANUAL: A Handbook, Historical and Biographical, of the Leading Facts of the Bible. With an Epitome of Ancient History. Post 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

CLASSICAL SERIES.

FIRST LATIN BOOK. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D., of Trinity College, Dublin. Fifth Edition. 249 pages, 12mo. Price 2s.

This is intended as a First Latin Book, supplying everything which a pupil will require during his first year. It contains—

I. The leading facts and principles of Latin Grammar, with the inflexions of Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs, set forth at full length; and also a Synopsis of the Syntax of Simple Sentences.

II. A numerous set of Simple Exercises, with Lists of the Words used in them.

III. A series of easy and interesting Lessons in continuous reading, consisting of a few simple Fables of Phaedrus, &c.

IV. A Vocabulary, in which the quantities of Syllables are marked, and the derivation of words given.

The two great features in the plan of the book are—*First*, That pupils are enabled daily, and from the very first, to *make practical use* of grammatical facts and principles so soon as they are learned; and *Secondly*, That acquisitions, when once made, are impressed by constant repetition.

Key to the above. Price 6d.

The Key will be sold to Teachers only; and all applications must be addressed direct to the Publishers.

SECOND LATIN BOOK. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D., of Trinity College, Dublin. Fourth Edition. 354 pages. Price 3s. 6d.

This Volume is intended as a Sequel to No. I. It contains—

I. EXTRACTS FROM NEPOS.

II. EXTRACTS FROM CÆSAR.

III. EXTRACTS FROM OVID.

IV. Notes on the above, with Tables for the Declension of Greek Nouns.

V. A System of Syntax, in which the illustrative examples are taken from the Reading Lessons, and to which constant reference is made in the Notes.

VI. A full Vocabulary (proper nouns being inserted), in which are noted Peculiarities of Inflexion, Conjugation, and Comparison. Quantities are carefully marked, and Derivations given, with frequent illustrations from modern languages.

VII. IMITATIVE EXERCISES ON NEPOS AND CÆSAR. Adapted to the Extracts, and illustrating the Peculiarities of Construction in each chapter.

*** It will be seen that the First and Second Latin Books supply everything that is necessary for pupils during at least the first two years of their course, and that the expense of books is thus reduced to a minimum.*

Key to Imitative Exercises in Second Latin Book. Price 6d.

The Key will be sold to Teachers only; and all applications must be addressed direct to the Publishers.

CLASSICAL SERIES.

GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. 12mo, 268 pages. Price 2s. 6d.

In preparing this Grammar the author has endeavoured to unite simplicity of arrangement with fulness of detail—to form a book which will be entirely suited for an initiatory class, and which will at the same time supply to more advanced students all the information required, previous to a study of such larger works as those of Zumpt, Madvig, Donaldson, &c. Those questions which are of essential importance in a first course will be indicated by a variety of type.

ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. 12mo, 176 pages. Price 1s. 3d.

This work is an abridgment of the larger Latin Grammar, forming part of the same Series. It is designed for the use of beginners, and of those who intend to prosecute classical studies only to a limited extent.

FIRST GREEK BOOK. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. Third Edition. 222 pages. Price 2s. 6d.

The plan of the Greek Book is the same as that of the Latin, and seeks to carry out the same principles. The Extracts for Reading are such as to interest and amuse the young, consisting of selections from the Witticisms of Hierocles, from Anecdotes of Famous Men, and from the Fables of Æsop, with a few easy Dialogues of Lucian.

Key to the above. Price 6d.

The Key will be sold to Teachers only; and all applications must be addressed to the Publishers.

SECOND GREEK BOOK. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. 12mo, 432 pages. Price 3s. 6d.

This Second Greek Book is formed on the same plan as Dr. Bryce's Second Latin Book, and contains:—EXTRACTS FROM LUCIAN—ANABASIS OF XENOPHON—EXTRACTS FROM GREEK TESTAMENT: The Sermon on the Mount—HOMER: Explaining the general subject of the Iliad; Helen on the Tower, pointing out to Priam the Grecian Chiefs; the parting of Hector and Andromache; the Death of Hector; Priam begging Hector's dead body from Achilles—A SYNOPSIS OF SYNTAX—NOTES ON THE EXTRACTS—VOCABULARY—IMITATIVE EXERCISES.

HORACE. Edited by Dr. FREUND, Author of "Latin Lexicon," &c., and JOHN CARMICHAEL, M.A., one of the Classical Masters of the High School, Edinburgh. With Life of Horace, Notes, Vocabulary of Proper Names, and Chronological Table. 12mo, cloth. Price 3s. 6d.

VIRGILII MARONIS CARMINA. Edited by Dr. FREUND. With Life, Notes, and Vocabulary of Proper Names. 12mo, cloth. Price 3s. 6d.

THE ROYAL SCHOOL SERIES.

THE SHAKESPEARE READER,

CONTAINING SHAKESPEARE'S GREATEST WORKS.

Edited by WALTER SCOTT DALGLEISH, M.A.,

English Master in the International College, London.

In preparing this Work, those Plays have been preferred which are best adapted for Educational purposes. The following are the leading features of the Work;—

- I. The Plays are ABRIDGED, but each Play is a COMPLETE NARRATIVE.
- II. OBJECTIONABLE words and passages are EXCLUDED.
- III. AN ARGUMENT, giving in simple language the STORY OF THE PLAY, is prefixed to each.
- IV. HISTORICAL AND GRAMMATICAL NOTES are appended to each Play.
- V. A VOCABULARY, with Etymological Notes, is appended to each Book. This is also a VERBAL INDEX.
- VI. A GRAMMATICAL INDEX to each Book

It is hoped that these Books, however unpretentious their immediate aim, may be useful in deepening and extending, through the common schools of the country, a knowledge of Shakespeare's works; and that many may be induced, by a perusal of these pages, to undertake a closer study of his language and wonderful modes of thought.

** The Twelve Plays selected have been arranged in Three Books, as follows. Each book can be had separately:—

FIRST BOOK contains—King Richard II.; The First Part of King Henry IV.; King Richard III.; The Merchant of Venice. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 3d.

SECOND BOOK contains—King John; Coriolanus; The Tempest; King Henry VIII. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 3d.

THIRD BOOK contains—Julius Cæsar; Hamlet; Macbeth; King Lear. 12mo, cloth. Price 1s. 3d.

Or, **THE THREE BOOKS** in One Volume. 12mo, cloth. Price 3s.

Also Now Ready, Separately, Price 3d. each,

1. **THE MERCHANT OF VENICE**, with Notes, &c.
2. **KING JOHN**, with Notes, &c.
3. **RICHARD II.**, with Notes, &c.
4. **JULIUS CÆSAR**, with Notes, &c. Price 4d.
5. **HAMLET**, with Notes, &c. Price 4d.

TO BE FOLLOWED BY OTHERS.

THE ROYAL SCHOOL SERIES.

DR. COLLIER'S
NEW HISTORIES OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

I.

JUNIOR CLASS-BOOK.

HISTORY OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE. With Copious Questions.
By W. F. COLLIER, LL.D. 12mo, 208 pages, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

The Questions appended to this work will be found of great use, not only for class-examination, but also as the headings for easy Exercises in Composition. Every teacher is aware of the suggestive force upon intelligent children of well arranged questions. They not only recall the information received, but prompt its expression in a variety of forms, which prove that the pupil has made it his own. It is suggested, therefore, that—especially in schools where the teacher has more than one class to superintend—the questions be used as Notanda, from which to compose a short narrative of the events recorded in each chapter or section.

II.

SENIOR CLASS-BOOK.

HISTORY OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE. With Copious Questions.
By W. F. COLLIER, LL.D. 12mo, 392 pages, cloth. Price 2s. 6d.

* * This work is an Enlarged Edition, with Copious Questions, of Dr. Collier's "History of the British Empire," published at 2s., and which can still be had. To prevent mistakes, Teachers wishing the new work are requested to order it under the title of "The Senior Class-Book of British History."

"Dr. Collier's book is unrivalled as a school history of the British Empire. The arrangement is admirable."—*English Journal of Education*.

III.

ADVANCED CLASS-BOOK.

THE ADVANCED CLASS-BOOK OF BRITISH HISTORY. Crown
8vo, 515 pages. Price 3s. 6d.

"The specialty of this work is that it endeavours to treat more fully than has hitherto been done in school-books the interesting subject of national life. The costume, manners, and ways of living of the people, which, for old or young, are more important to be known than the doings of kings and courtiers, are here sketched in a graphic and attractive style. On the whole, we have seldom seen such a mass of varied information condensed into so narrow a compass. The multifarious contents of the book are admirably digested, and the style of composition is at once lively and concise. While calculated to be eminently useful as a school-book, it requires only to be known to commend itself for purposes of general reading."—*Scotsman*.

"A model of what a school history should be."—*Review*.

RE.

ons.

not
aises
pon
ecall
y of
ted,
han
rom
each

ons.

t, of
and
new
ass-

ish
aca-

own

illy
of
ole,
the
at-
of
lti-
of
be
om-

